K Eckhardt
Room 23 SHS

Heath's Modern Language Series.

GERMAN GRAMMARS AND READERS.

Nix's Erstes deutsches Schulbuch. For primary classes. Illus. 202 pages. 35 cts.

Joynes-Meissner German Grammar. A *working* Grammar, elementary, yet complete. Half leather. $1.12.

Alternative Exercises. Can be used, for the sake of change, instead of those in the *Joynes-Meissner* itself. 54 pages. 15 cts.

Joynes's Shorter German Grammar. Part I of the above. Half leather. 80 cts.

Harris's German Lessons. Elementary grammar and exercises for a short course, or as introductory to advanced grammar. Cloth. 60 cts.

Sheldon's Short German Grammar. For those who want to begin reading as soon as possible, and have had training in some other languages. Cloth. 60 cts.

Babbitt's German at Sight. A syllabus of elementary grammar, with suggestions and practice work for reading at sight. Paper. 10 cts.

Faulhaber's One Year Course in German. A brief synopsis of elementary grammar, with exercises for translation. Cloth. 60 cts.

Krüger and Smith's Conversation Book. 40 pages. Cloth. 25 cts.

Meissner's German Conversation. Not a *phrase* book nor a *method* book, but a scheme of rational conversation. Cloth. 65 cts.

Harris's German Composition. Elementary, progressive, and varied selections, with full notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 50 cts.

Wesselhoeft's German Composition. With notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 83 pages. 40 cts.

Hatfield's Materials for German Composition. Based on *Immensee* and on *Höher als die Kirche*. Paper. 33 pages. Each, 12 cts.

Horning's Materials for German Composition. Based on *Der Schwiegersohn*. 32 pages. 12 cts.

Stüven's Praktische Anfangsgründe. A conversational beginning book with vocabulary and grammatical appendix. Cloth. 203 pages. 70 cts.

Foster's Geschichten und Märchen. The easiest reading for young children. Cloth. 25 cts.

Guerber's Märchen und Erzählungen, I. With vocabulary and questions in German on the text. Cloth. 162 pages. 60 cts.

Guerber's Märchen und Erzählungen, II. With vocabulary. Follows the above or serves as independent reader. Cloth. 202 pages. 65 cts.

Joynes's German Reader. Progressive, both in text and notes, has a complete vocabulary, also English exercises. Half leather, 90 cts. Cloth, 75 cts.

Deutsch's Colloquial German Reader. Ancedotes, table of phrases and idioms, and selections in prose and verse, with notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 90 cts.

Boisen's German Prose Reader. Easy and interesting selections of graded prose, with notes, and an index which serves as a vocabulary. Cloth. 90 cts.

Huss's German Reader. Easy and slowly progressive selections in prose and verse. With especial attention to cognates. Cloth. 233 pages. 70 cts.

Spanhoofd's Lehrbuch der deutschen Sprache. Grammar, conversation and exercises, with vocabulary for beginners. Cloth. 312 pages. $1.00.

Heath's German-English and English-German Dictionary. Fully adequate for the ordinary wants of the student. Cloth. Retail price, $1.50.

Heath's Modern Language Series.

ELEMENTARY GERMAN TEXTS.

Grimm's Märchen and Schiller's Der Taucher (van der Smissen). Notes and vocabulary. *Märchen* in Roman type. 65 cts.

Andersen's Märchen (Super). With notes and vocabulary. 70 cts.

Andersen's Bilderbuch ohne Bilder. With notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt, Washington, D.C. 30 cts.

Leander's Träumereien. Fairy tales with notes and vocabulary by Professor Van der Smissen of the University of Toronto. 40 cts.

Volkmann's (Leander's) Kleine Geschichten. Four very easy tales, with notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 30 cts.

Easy Selections for Sight Translation. (Deering.) 15 cts.

Storm's In St. Jürgen. Notes and vocabulary by Prof. A. S. Wright, Case School of Applied Science. 30 cts.

Storm's Immensee (Bernhardt). With notes and vocabulary. 30 cts.

Heyse's Niels mit der offenen Hand. Notes, vocabulary and English exercises by Prof. E. S. Joynes. 30 cts.

Heyse's L'Arrabbiata (Bernhardt). With notes and vocabulary. 25 cts.

Von Hillern's Höher als die Kirche (Clary). With vocabulary. 25 cts.

Hauff's Der Zwerg Nase. With introduction by Professor Grandgent of Harvard University. No notes. 15 cts.

Hauff's Das kalte Herz. Notes and vocabulary by Professor Van der Smissen, University of Toronto. (Roman type.) 40 cts.

Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves. With introduction by Prof. Grandgent of Harvard University. No notes. 20 cts.

Schiller's Der Taucher. With notes and vocabulary by Professor Van der Smissen of the University of Toronto. 12 cts.

Schiller's Der Neffe als Onkel (Beresford-Webb). Notes and vocab. 30 cts.

Baumbach's Waldnovellen. Six little stories, with notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 35 cts.

Spyri's Rosenresli. With notes and vocabulary for beginners, by Helene H. Boll, of the High School, New Haven, Conn. 25 cts.

Spyri's Moni der Geissbub. With vocabulary by H. A. Guerber. 25 cts.

Zschokke's Der zerbrochene Krug. With notes, vocabulary and English exercises by Professor E. S. Joynes. 25 cts.

Baumbach's Nicotiana *und andere Erzählungen.* Five stories, with notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 30 cts.

Elz's Er ist nicht eifersüchtig. With vocabulary by Prof. B. W. Wells. 25 cts.

Carmen Sylva's Aus meinem Königreich. Five short stories, with notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 35 cts.

Gerstäcker's Germelshausen (Lewis). Notes and vocabulary. 25 cts.

Wichert's Als Verlobte empfehlen sich ——. Notes and vocabulary by Dr. Geo. T. Flom, Iowa State University. 25 cts.

Benedix's Nein. With notes, vocabulary and English exercises by A. W. Spanhoofd. 25 cts.

Benedix's Der Prozess. With notes, vocabulary, and list of irregular verbs by Professor B. W. Wells. 20 cts.

Zschokke's Das Wirtshaus zu Cransac. Introduction, notes and English exercises by Prof. E. S. Joynes, So. Carolina College. 30 cts.

Heath's Modern Language Series

A GERMAN GRAMMAR

FOR

Schools and Colleges

BASED ON THE

PUBLIC SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR

OF

A. L. MEISSNER, M.A., PH.D., D.LIT.
PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN QUEEN'S COLLEGE, BELFAST

BY

EDWARD S. JOYNES, M.A.
PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE

R

BOSTON, U. S. A.
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
1906

Copyright, 1887, 1898 and 1904,
By D. C. Heath & Company.

PREFACE.

THIS book is based, by arrangement with the author and the original publishers, upon the "Public School Grammar," by Dr. A. L. MEISSNER, of Queen's College, Belfast (1885), which has attained great popularity in the United Kingdom.

In the present book the material thus furnished has been freely used and, where occasion seemed to require, freely modified. The changed title will, to a great extent, explain the scope of such modifications. The term "Public School Grammar" would seem to restrict the original design to purely elementary work. In this book the attempt has been made to carry forward the same method so as to include also college and university study — in a word, to meet the wants of students of every grade — up to the point where the demand arises for the higher study of historical and scientific grammar. This higher study, let it be said at once, is not included in the scope of the present work.

In carrying out this design there has been on the one hand much condensation, and on the other much expansion, of the original material. The changes in Parts I. and II. have been both in detail and in arrangement; yet the subject-matter remains essentially the same. The Syntax (Part III.) has been almost wholly rewritten, upon a scale more comprehensive than that of the original work, to meet the more enlarged scope of the present book. Just what should be here included, and what omitted, is a point on which perhaps no two would agree. The writer, guided by his own experience, has sought to include all that might be important for the student, and nothing more. A comprehensive chapter on the Order of Words, a brief summary of the Relation of German to English, an alphabetical list of Strong and Irregular Verbs. and Vocabularies, an Appendix, and Indexes have also been added. It is hoped that the occasional Suggestions to Teachers will be pardoned, even when not needed or followed; and, more especially, that the large use made of parallels and contrasts from English grammar will be acceptable to those who, like the editor, have found that, with most students, one of the chief obstacles to progress in German is the want of a sound knowledge of English.

In the preparation of this edition the editor has availed himself of the usual well-known German sources. Outside of these he acknowledges with pleasure that obligation to Whitney's and Brandt's German Grammars which no American scholar could deny. Many helpful examples have been taken from Tiarks' German Grammar.

The personal obligations of the editor are larger than he could briefly express. Many scholars have kindly aided with valuable suggestions. Where so many deserve mention it is difficult to discriminate; but special acknowledgment is due to Prof. Van der Smissen, of Toronto; Prof. Sheldon, of Harvard; Prof. Primer, of the College of Charleston; Prof. Super, of Dickinson College; and particularly to Prof. Fay, of Tufts College, and Prof. Harrison, of Washington and Lee University, who have read the entire proofs with painstaking and helpful care. Dr. Meissner's own cordial sympathy has also been felt at all times as a grateful encouragement.

For himself, the editor may say, in conclusion, that the labor of this edition has been hardly less — in some directions, indeed, greater — than would have been required for an original work; and it has been performed in the midst of constantly engrossing occupation. For this he asks no indulgence, but only that the book be judged with reference to its avowed purpose: not as a scientific or exhaustive exposition of the German language, but as a *working grammar*, based on the experience of the class-room, and aiming to present, in simple form and within moderate limits, what is necessary for the use of pupils and teachers in the ordinary school and college study of German. If it fulfill this modest design, there will be ample room for its usefulness.

SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE, August 15, 1887.

NOTE. — The method of using the book will vary, of course, with the plan of instruction and the views of individual teachers. For ordinary purposes, however, the editor would suggest that Part I. should be first gone through, with the exercises *from German to English only*, and that all translation from English to German be deferred until the review is begun, and the student is prepared to read an independent text; and, generally, that this independent reading should be begun as early as possible, according to the grade of different classes of pupils. This first study and the review, with the reverse exercises, of Part I., will constitute a fair *first year's course in German*, sufficiently complete in itself, for younger pupils.

IN preparing successive revisions I have carefully taken into account all the suggestions kindly contributed by others, as well as those found in my own teaching. At various points important corrections and additions have been made, and no pains have been spared to make the book permanently worthy of the favor with which it has been received. I beg leave also to add:

1. While the book is not intended expressly for the oral or "natural" method, yet its Exercises may be equally so used, and like exercises may be indefinitely extended from the same materials.

2. On the other hand it is not implied that all the Exercises shall be used with all pupils. Range was left, purposely, for subdivision, selection, and review, according to the wants of classes. I should not need to add that the Exercises are intended not for literature, but purely for the application of the grammatical forms.

3. Likewise the Paradigms are, for convenience, given entire, without

implying, however, that they must needs be so learned at once — or, indeed, at all. Of this — as of all the details of method — each teacher will judge.

4. I beg leave to repeat and emphasize the suggestions made in the Note to the first preface, both as to the Exercises and as to the early use of an independent text. By a judicious selection of leading topics the way may be prepared for such reading in from twelve to twenty lessons, according to the grade of the pupils.

5. I desire especially to ask the attention of teachers to the reasons given, in the introduction to the Vocabulary, for not giving the inflections (in a *grammatical* vocabulary) where these are perfectly regular.

I would again repeat my thanks to the many friends — teachers and others — who by their intelligent criticism have helped me to the correction and improvement of this book; — especially to Mr. Orlando F. Lewis of Tufts College, for his excellent (two) series of "Alternative English-German Exercises," with which the Grammar may be used to better advantage by successive classes. — Also to Dr. C. F. Kayser of New York, for the skillful "Supplementary Exercises" now bound with the book; and to Professor Otto Heller, Professor Hugo Schilling, Dr. H. P. Jones and Dr. G. B. Viles, for important additions and corrections.

In revising the present reprint (1904) of the entire text from new plates, advantage has been taken of the opportunity to introduce (besides the latest orthography) such occasional improvements as seemed to be practicable, without impairing the essential integrity of the book or causing confusion in its use along with earlier editions. The present is, therefore, a distinctly new and, it is hoped, improved edition.

E. S. J.

SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE, April, 1904.

CONTENTS.

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND ACCIDENCE.

PAGE

ALPHABET 1
PRONUNCIATION 3
ACCENTUATION 12
USE OF CAPITALS 15

LESSON
I. The Definite Article. First Class of Strong Declension . 19
II. The Indefinite Article. Second Class of Strong Declension 24
III. Declension of dieſer, etc. Third Class of Strong Declension. Present Ind. of ſein 28
IV. The Weak Declension. Past Ind. of ſein 32
V. Peculiarities in Declension. Perfect and Pluperfect of ſein . 36
VI. Declension of Proper Names. Future of ſein . . . 40
VII. Declension of Foreign and Compound Nouns. Future Perfect of ſein 42
Synopsis of Declension of Nouns 46
Gender of Nouns 47
VIII. Strong Declension of Adjectives. Present of haben . . 48
IX. Weak Declension of Adjectives. Past of haben . . . 51
X. Mixed Declension of Adjectives. Perfect and Pluperfect of haben 55
XI. Comparison of Adjectives. Future of haben . . . 60
XII. The Predicate Superlative. Future Perfect of haben. Prepositions governing the Dative 64
XIII. The Auxiliary Verbs 67
XIV. The Auxiliary haben. First Rules of Position. Prepositions governing the Accusative; and Dative or Accusative . 71
XV. The Auxiliary ſein. Personal Pronouns. Address . . 78
XVI. The Auxiliary Verb werden. Contraction of Article with Prepositions. Possessives 85

LESSON PAGE
XVII. Weak Conjugation of Verbs. Rules of Position. Demonstratives 91
XVIII. Weak Conjugation, continued. Interrogatives . . 99
XIX. Strong Conjugation of Verbs. First Class of Strong Verbs, First Subdivision 104
XX. First Class of Strong Verbs, Second Subdivision. Relative Pronouns 110
XXI. First Class of Strong Verbs, Third Subdivision . . 115
XXII. First Class of Strong Verbs, Fourth Subdivision. Indefinites 119
XXIII. Second Class of Strong Verbs. First Subdivision. Second Subdivision 122
XXIV. Third Class of Strong Verbs. First Subdivision. Second Subdivision. Reflexive Verbs 126
XXV. Mixed Conjugation and Irregular Verbs. Synopsis of Strong Verbs 131
XXVI. Auxiliary Verbs of Mood 136
XXVII. The Passive Voice. Use of the Passive . . . 141
XXVIII. Inseparable Verbs. Spurious Prepositions . . . 146
XXIX. Separable Verbs 150
XXX. Variable Verb-Prefixes. Compound Prefixes . . 153
XXXI. Impersonal Verbs. Use of haben and ſein . . . 156
XXXII. Cardinal Numerals. Expressions of Time . . . 160
XXXIII. Ordinal Numerals. Dates, Measures, etc. . . . 164
XXXIV. Adverbs 167
XXXV. Conjunctions. Interjections 171
XXXVI. Order of Words: Summary and Synopsis . . . 177

PART II. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

XXXVII. Derivation of Verbs 186
XXXVIII. Composition of Verbs 190
XXXIX. Composition of Verbs (continued) 195
XL. Derivation of Nouns 198
XLI. Derivation of Nouns (continued) 202
XLII. Composition of Nouns 206
XLIII. Derivation of Adjectives and Adverbs 210
XLIV. Composition of Adjectives and Adverbs . . . 216
XLV. Relation of German and English: Summary . . 220

PART III. SYNTAX.

LESSON PAGE
XLVI. The Articles 229
XLVII. Additional Remarks on Nouns 233
XLVIII. The Cases: Nominative. Genitive 238
XLIX. The Genitive (continued) 241
L. The Dative 244
LI. The Dative (continued) 248
LII. The Accusative 251
Prepositions with Cases. Summary 254
LIII. Adjectives 255
LIV. Personal and Possessive Pronouns 260
LV. Demonstrative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . 263
LVI. Relative and Indefinite Pronouns 267
LVII. Subject and Predicate. Tenses of the Indicative . 271
LVIII. The Subjunctive. The Conditional 275
Modal Idioms. Summary 280
LIX. The Infinitive 283
LX. Infinitive Equivalents. The Participles . . . 287
LXI. Adverbs. Adverb Idioms. Adverb Clauses . . 293
Repetition: Summary 299
Idiom: Summary 300
CONTINUOUS PASSAGES, ENGLISH-GERMAN 302
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS . . . 307
ORTHOGRAPHY: THE NEW RULES 323
VOCABULARIES 325
APPENDIX: NOUNS; PREPOSITIONS 367
INDEX 379
GERMAN SCRIPT 385
ADDITIONAL EXERCISES 397

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND ACCIDENCE.

ALPHABET.

1. The German alphabet consists, like the English, of twenty-six letters.

(*a*) The type in which German books are usually printed is a variety of the Roman alphabet, and is that form of it which was used by the earlier printers throughout Europe. The Roman character called in Germany the "Latin," is used in scientific works, and is gradually, though slowly, superseding the old "black-letter."*

GERMAN LETTERS.	ROMAN LETTERS.	GERMAN NAMES.
𝔄, 𝔞	A, a	*ah.*
𝔅, 𝔟	B, b	*bay.*
ℭ, 𝔠	C, c	*tsay.*
𝔇, 𝔡	D, d	*day.*
𝔈, 𝔢	E, e	*ay.*
𝔉, 𝔣	F, f	*eff.*
𝔊, 𝔤	G, g	*gay.*
ℌ, 𝔥	H, h	*hah.*
ℑ, 𝔦	I, i	*ee.*
ℑ, 𝔧	J, j	*yot.*

---

* In like manner the Latin script (our ordinary English handwriting) is coming into more general use, and is universally understood in Germany. It may be left to the discretion of the teacher, to allow this to be used in German exercises or to require the German script — at any rate until the student has acquired some familiarity with the printed language. A copy of the German script, with reading exercises, is given at the end of the book.

K, k	K, k	*kah.*
L, l	L, l	*ell.*
M, m	M, m	*emm.*
N, n	N, n	*enn.*
O, o	O, o	*oh.*
P, p	P, p	*pay.*
Q, q	Q, q	*koo.*
R, r	R, r	*er.**
S, ſ, s	S, s	*ess.*
T, t	T, t	*tay.*
U, u,	U, u	*oo.*
V, v	V, v	*fow.*
W, w,	W, w	*vay.*
X, x	X, x	*ix.*
Y, y	Y, y	*ipsilon.*
Z, z	Z, z	*tset.*

The "round" s is used only at the end of a word or syllable.

2. (*a*) The following modified vowels are used:

Ä, ä   Ö, ö   Ü, ü

(*b*) and the diphthongs:

Ai, ai   Ei, ei   Eu, eu   Au, au   Äu, äu

(*c*) and the consonantal compounds — digraphs or trigraphs: ch, ck (for kk), ng, pf, ph, qu, ſch, ß (ſz for ſs), th, tz (tz for zz).

Several letters, very much alike, must be carefully noted:

B, V; C, E; K, N, R; f, ſ; n, u; r, x.

Note. — For an exercise, see p. 6. *Nouns begin with capitals.*

---

* Pronounce as *er* in *error.*

PRONUNCIATION.

Examples should be dictated in advance. Accent first syllable, unless otherwise marked.

Vowels.

3. The vowels are either short or long.

(*a*) A vowel followed by a double consonant is short. As: hatte, ſtellen, ſollen.

(*b*) A vowel is usually short before two consonants; but a long root-sound is retained before *affixes*. As: băld, Bĭld, bŭnt (short); but: lōb-te, Tāg-s, Lāb-ſal (long).

(*c*) A double vowel is long, with the same sound as the simple long vowel; as, Haar, Beet, Boot.

(*d*) A vowel followed by h in the same syllable is long; as, Ahn, ſehr, ihm, Sohn.

(*e*) A vowel is long when ending a syllable; as, Tā-ges, bē-ten, lō-ben; and usually before one consonant; as, gāb, dēn, Tōd, Mūt.

NOTE. — Except in unaccented affixes (§ 53), and in a few common monosyllables; as, das, des, es, etc.

4. A, a, sounds like *a* in *father*. Long: gab, nahm, Aal; short: Fall, kann, rannte.

5. E, e, long, sounds like English *ey* in *they;* as, geht, Mehl, ſehr, Heer, and in the first syllable of beten, geben, jeder. Short, like short *e* in *set;* as, denn, hell, ſchnell, and in the first syllable of ſtellen, ſelten, rennen.

In unaccented final syllables it has the obscure sound as in *over* — nearly the sound of *u* in *but;* as in the last syllable of lobte, lobten, Matro'ſe, Matro'ſen — where the sound of *e* in *set* is especially to be avoided.

6. I, i, long, has the sound of *i* in *machine*, or *ee* in *seen;* as, mir, dir, ihm, Igel. Short i sounds like *i* in *pin;*

as, biſt, iſt, ſitzen. The long sound of i is, however, generally represented by the combination ie; as, die, Liebe, Sieb. I is never doubled.

7. O, o, long, sounds like *o* in *hold;* as, Moos, wohl, loſen. Short, nearly like *o* in *off;* as, Gott, ſott, glotzen. Never the sound of *o* in *hop*, *do*, *done*, etc.

8. U, u, long, has the sound of *oo* in *boot:* gut, Uhr. Short, has the sound of *oo* in *good:* Hund, ſummen. Never the sound of *u* in *but*, *muse*, etc. U is never doubled.

9. Y, y, is found only in a few foreign words and has the same sound as i. But some prefer the sound of ü (§ 13.) As: Tyrann′, lyriſch.

Modified Vowels.

10. The vowels a, o, u, and the diphthong au, are modified, that is, they are changed into ä, ö, ü, äu, respectively. This change was produced originally by an i sound in the following syllable, which now often appears as e. For instance: Hand, Hände; Sohn, Söhne; geſund′, geſünd′er; Haus, Häuſer.

(*a*) This vowel modification, known as *Umlaut*, is a most important process in German inflection and derivation, as will appear hereafter.

(*b*) It was customary to express the modification of the vowel by a small e, printed in the case of capitals after, and in the case of small letters above, the original vowel. The small e was gradually reduced to a couple of strokes or dots over the letters. According to the modern spelling, only this latter mode is to be used.

NOTE. — In English transliteration the modification is represented by *e;* as, Maetzner, Goethe, Kuehner, Mueller.

11. Ae, Ä, ä, long, is between *a* in *hale* and *a* in *hare:*

Säge, prägen, mähen. Short ä, nearly like the English *e* in *set:* hätte, Bäcker, Männer.

12. Oe, Ö, ö, sounds like the French *eu* in *feu, peu;* but the sound cannot be exactly represented in English. Place the tongue as if to sound *a* in *fate;* round the lips as if to sound *o* in *so*. Long in: Söhne, Ströme, ſchön. Short in: können, öffnen, Örter.

NOTE. — The English sounds in *burn, burnt,* are perhaps the nearest equivalents for long and short ö; but the German sound is more rounded.

13. Ue, Ü, ü, sounds like the French *u* in *du, plus*. This sound also cannot be represented in English. Place the tongue as if to sound *ee* in *see;* round the lips as if to sound *u* in *rule*. Long in: Hüte, Schüler, Übel. Short in: Hütte, füllen, Bürſte.

14. Aeu, Äu, äu, sounds like the English *oi* in *oil*, and is always long: träumen, Kräuter, Bäume.

15. The modified vowels are never doubled; hence nouns which have a double vowel are spelled with only one vowel, when modified; as, Saal, Säle; Haar, Härchen.

NOTE.—It is important to remember that only a, o, u, au, are capable of this modification (Umlaut). These are known as *back* (or *low*) vowels; all others, as *front* (or *high*) vowels.

Diphthongs.

16. The diphthong äu has been included above.

The digraph ie is not properly a diphthong, and only represents the long sound of i (§ 6). When occurring in unaccented final syllables, in a few foreign words, i before e sounds like *y*; as Spanien, Linie (as *e* in *linear*) — usually Latin words. So, Fami'lie, Mate'rie, Ju'lie, (Latin); Melodie', Poeſie', Marie', (not Latin).

17. Ai, ai, is pronounced like *ai* in *aisle:* Mai, Saite, Hain.

18. Ei, ei, is pronounced like ai: Blei, kein, Heiterkeit.

The old forms ay, ey, are now rarely used.

19. Au, au, is pronounced like the English *ou* in *found:* Haus, laufen, heraus.

20. Eu, eu, is pronounced like äu; that is, like English *oi* in *oil:* Träume, Gäule, ſäuft; Eule, heulen, treu.

All diphthongs are long.

EXERCISE IN VOWEL PRONUNCIATION.

(*Consonants as in English.*)

1. *Monosyllables:* Aal, Art, Aſt, Raſt, feil, null, Neſt, Fall, Fluß, Blatt, Oſt, Luſt, Ohr, Uhr, ihm, biß, dünn, Öl, tief, dick, nett, nah, Mahl, dumm, kann, braun, frei, Klee, Bier, Glas, treu, aus, muß, lief, trink, Trunk, Loos, los, baar, Kern, toll, kaum, Hain, Eis, Heu, Hut, mir, Rock, mehr, der, die, dem, den, denn.

2. *With accent on first syllable:* Ende, aber, älter, rufen, baden, Bäder, Opfer, Ofen, Öfen, unter, über, Hütte, Mutter, Mütter, Fälle, bauen, Bäume, Eſel, eſſen, Liebe, lieben, Eier, übel, heller, Hölle, Hülle, Myrte, Nebel, öde, außer, gutes, bittet, hätte, Mine, ihnen, Fülle, heiter, Haide, hören, Höfe, freuen, geben, meine, ihr, euer.

3. *Short vowels in monosyllables:* an, das, des, es, bin, hat, bis, in, hin, man, mit, um.

NOTE.— These exercises should be continued at will by the teacher, until the sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are perfectly familiar.

Consonants.

Only those sounds will be given which depart from the usual English pronunciation.

21. The sonant b, d, at the end of a word or syllable, or preceding a consonant, terminate in the surd sounds of *p*, *t*, respectively; as, ab, Grab, gelb, abgeben, gehabt; mild, Abend, Kindlein (as if abp, mildt, etc.).

22. C, c, which now occurs only in a few foreign words, is pronounced like *ts* (German z), before the vowels e, i, y, or ä, ö; as, Cäſar, cedern, Cyprus. Elsewhere like *k:* as, Cato, Codex, Claudius.

NOTE. — Most words formerly written with c are now written with k or z.

23. G, g, initial, and when doubled, is pronounced like *g* in *go*, *get;* as, geben, ge=gen, Flagge. But at the end of a word or syllable, or before another consonant, some authorities give a guttural or palatal spirant (like ch, § 33); others allow this sound only in final -ig, retaining elsewhere the initial g sound; others give the final g a sound like gk (§ 21). There is great diversity of usage.

(*a*) When an inflection is added to a final g, some authorities retain the aspirate sound; but others give the initial g sound. Let the examples be carefully practiced with the teacher; as, Tag, Balg, Magd, bog, Krug, Krieg, König; Tage, balgen, böge, Krüge, Kriege, Könige.

(*b*) Both g and k are sounded before n; as, Gnade, Knabe.

24. H, h, is strongly aspirated at the beginning of a word or a syllable; as, Hammer, Holz, meiſterhaft, Faulheit, gehorſam. Following a vowel in a stem-syllable, it marks a long vowel, but is not heard: Höhe, ſehen, Nähe, wahr, ſah.

25. J, j, sounds like *y* (consonant) in *yon;* as, ja, jeder.

26. R, r, is sounded distinctly, by some with a lingual, by others with a palatal roll, or trill; as, Rad, Mutter, Bart, Geburt.

NOTE. — Be careful not to slur the vowel sounds before r, as in English *her*, *bird*, *fur*, etc. As: her, Hirt, Furt — each vowel clearly sounded.

27. S, ſ, s, has the surd or hissing sound only when final, doubled, or preceding a consonant; as, Haus, dies, eſſen, Raſt. Elsewhere it is sonant, like a soft *z* (see § 21) or *s* in *desire;* as, Sonne, Haſe, Beſen, Gläſer, dieſes.

28. S, ſ, initial, before p or t, is by the best authorities pronounced with a sound nearly like *sh* (German ſch); as, ſpringen, Spule; ſtehen, Stall.

29. V, v, occurs in German words mostly at the beginning and is there pronounced like the English *f:* Vater, voll, vier. In foreign words, or following a vowel, it is pronounced like the English *v:* Venus, Novem'ber, dividie're, Sklave; but final, always like *f:* brav, relativ'.

30. W, w, is pronounced like the English *v;* except after consonants, especially ſch and z, when it has a sound intermediate between English *v* and *w:* wollen, Werk, was; zwiſchen, zwei, Schwamm, Schweſter.

31. X, x, has the sound of *ks*, even in the beginning of a word: Knix, Axt, Hexe, Xerxes, Xenophon.

32. Z, z, always has the sound of *ts:* zu, ziehen, Herzog, heizen, Holz — never like English *z*.

Consonantal Digraphs and Trigraphs.

33. Ch, ch, is a spirant, which has two different sounds. It has a harsher, more guttural sound, when preceded by the vowels a, o, u, or the diphthong au; but a softer, more palatal sound, when preceded by any other vowel or diphthong, or by the liquids l, m, n, r. Examples of the rough guttural ch: Bach, Loch, Buch, auch, Tochter. Examples of the soft palatal ch: ich, reich, riechen, ſtechen, Licht, mancher. Kelch, Furcht.

(*a*) The aspirate sounds of g are similar. (See § 23).

NOTE.—These guttural, or palatal, sounds of ch and g are highly characteristic of German, as their absence is characteristic of English. They must be carefully practiced. Especially, care must be taken to avoid, on the one hand, the sibilant sound of *sh* (ſch), and, on the other, the closed sound of k. Thus: Bach, not Baſch nor Back; ich, not iſch nor ick; Kirche not Kirſche.

34. chs is pronounced like *ks*, when it forms part of the root of the word, as, Dachs, Luchs, Fuchs, Dachſes, Fuchſes, Lüchſe. But when the s is inflectional, or belongs to the second part of a compound or derivative, or to another word, ch has its proper aspirate pronunciation (§ 35). As: das Dach, gen. des Daches, contracted Dachs; but: durch=ſuchen; Nach=ſicht; ich's for ich es.

35. ck is simply a double *k*, marking a preceding short vowel: zurück, bücken, drücken, ſtecken.

36. ng sounds as in *sing*, *singer*—not as in *finger*: jung, ſingen, Klänge. Similarly, nk; as, ſank, ſinken. But when in distinct word-elements, the letters are pronounced separately; as, an=greifen, an=klagen.

NOTE.—But ng sounds as in *finger* in some proper names; as Ingo.

37. Pf, pf, is a quick combination of the sounds *p* and *f*. As, Pferd, Pfeffer, Pflug.

38. Ph, ph, has the sound of *f*: Philoſophie', Philipp'; but is now used only in foreign words.

39. Qu, qu, is pronounced like kw, with the intermediate sound of w, as § 30: Quelle, Qual, Quartier'.

40. Sch, ſch, is pronounced like the English *sh*: Schiller, Schütze, ſchrauben, Fiſch, rauſchen.

NOTE.—But, like chs, ng above, the sounds will be distinct when belonging to different elements; as, Häns=chen, bis=chen.

41. ß, pronounced *ss*, is written always instead of ſs at the end of a word. When not final, ß stands after a long

vowel or diphthong; the double ſſ after a short vowel (§ 3 *a*); but ß always before a consonant. This rule is important in inflected and derivative forms. As: Fūß, plural Füße; Flŭß, pl. Flüſſe; haſſen, haßte, häßlich, etc.

NOTE. — In Roman (English) letters ſſ is represented by ss; ß by sz; but also by ss or ſs — with some diversity of usage.

42. Th, th, sounded always like simple *t*, is now used only in foreign words and proper names; as, Kathe′der, Thee, Göthe.*

NOTE. — Till recently th was used before a long vowel; as, That, thun; and formerly much more largely; as, Thier, Thurm, Muth, rathen, etc.

43. tz, pronounced *ts*, stands for zz after a short vowel; as, Hitze (heizen), Platz, plötzlich. A few foreign words have zz; as, Skizze.

REMARK. — These compounds, except as expressly mentioned, count as single letters. Hence before ch, ſch, ng, ph, a vowel may be long or short.

Doubled Vowels and Consonants.

§ *At this point, or even earlier, the study of the grammar proper should be begun* (§ 71).

44. Doubled vowels are pronounced as long vowels; as, Boot, Saat, Beet. See also § 15.

45. Doubled consonants are pronounced like simple consonants. They serve mostly the purpose of indicating the short quantity of the preceding vowel; as, bitten, rennen, wenn (compare wen).

46. But vowels or consonants, apparently doubled, which belong to distinct parts of compound, derivative, or inflected words, must be kept distinct in pronunciation. As: be-erdigen, Genugtu-ung, Knie-e; Ab-bild, an-nehmen, ver-ra-ten, Mit-tag.

---

* For other recent changes in orthography see p. 321.

(*a*) Occasionally by composition or inflection triple letters may occur. As: Bett=tuch, Still=leben, Schwimm=meiſter, Armee=en.

Remark. — In general, letters belonging to different word-elements are kept distinct in pronunciation, and do not affect quantity; as (compounds): Bēt=haus, Bēt=pult, Lōb=preiſung, Blūts=tropfen, *drops of blood*, (§ 3).

Foreign Words.

47. Foreign words, even if words in daily use, have preserved more or less of their foreign pronunciation. As:

(*a*) G has frequently preserved its French sound, as in: Genie′, logie′ren, Loge, and some others (like *z* in *azure*).

(*b*) J likewise has preserved its French sound in: Journal′, Jalouſie′, and a few others (like *z* in *azure*).

(*c*) Ch, in words derived from Greek, is generally pronounced like K, as in: Charak′ter, Chor, Chriſt, Chronik. Sometimes it has the aspirate sound, as in: Chirurg′, Chemie′; and in words from the French, the sound of *sh*: Chef, Chiffre, Chara′de, Chauſſee′, changie′ren.

(*d*) t before unaccented i preceding an accented vowel in words derived from Latin, is pronounced like z (*ts*); Station′, Patient′, Venetia′ner. The corresponding words give the sound *sh* in English.

(*e*) Other foreign sounds will be learned by experience. In general, both in pronunciation and in accent, foreign words are much less fully naturalized in German than in English.

EXERCISE IN CONSONANT PRONUNCIATION.

1. *Monosyllables; the initial Consonants.* Geiſt, Gneiſt, Knall, Zinn, Zahl, Seil, Sohn, wenn, wo, voll, Thee, Thron, vor, was, ja, Jahr, pfiff, ſchnell, Gier, ging, zehn, Sprung, Stall, ſoll, rauh, roh, quer, Qual, Stroh, Spur; from Greek: Chor, Chriſt; from French: Chef, Charpie′.

2. *The final Consonants.* ab, Bad, Tag, log, Loch, auch, ich, Krieg, Teich, Holz, Ochs, taugt, Talg, Schild, Kalb, Pferd, Grab, Not, rot, Sieg, ſich, ſtach, Speck, Satz, Scherz, mild, gleich, Wachs, Fuchs, doch, dich, ſäugt, hoch, Glas, gib.

3. *Promiscuous German words: accent first syllable.* geben, Tochter, Töchter, Vater, Väter, Vetter, Wetter, eſſen, Beſen, trotzen, ſpringen, ſtehen, tragen, fragte, Dichtung, gegen, Gnade, Knabe, jeder, Finger, alſo, Träne, Achtung, Füchſe, jünger, Türe, Taten, heißen, heizen, zogen, ſprechen, leſen, gießen, ſcherzen.

4. *Foreign; accent as marked.* Citro′ne, Ga′ge, Genie′, Nation′, national′, Chemie′, Journal′, Jalouſie′, Patient′, Chro′nik, Charak′ter, Officier′, Chara′de, Concert′, Thea′ter.

Accentuation.

48. In words of more than one syllable a greater stress is laid on one syllable than on another, and, in compound words, one word is pronounced with greater force than another. This greater stress of voice is called *accent.*

49. A syllable may have the full (principal or *tonic*) accent, or a subordinate or secondary accent, or be unaccented. We give only the most important rules:

50. In German words of more than one syllable (not compounds), the full accent is laid on that syllable which contains the root, prefixes and suffixes being unaccented, or having only a secondary accent. As, lieb′lich, geliebt′.

51. Excepted are (*a*): the negative prefix un; as, un′treu, Un′ſinn (with a few exceptions).* Also the prefixes ant, erz, ur; as, Ant′wort, Erz′engel, Ur′laub.

(*b*) The noun suffix -ei; as, Schmeichelei′, Zauberei′, in consequence of its foreign origin (§ 56).

---

* On un the chief accent is quite constant in nouns; in adjectives also usually, especially when the simple form is in use; except some verb-derivatives in -bar, -lich, -ſam, and a few others. In some cases usage varies.

52. The use of the secondary accent, or accents, must be learned by practice. Unaccented are, in general, all endings of inflection, and prefixes and suffixes whose vowel is short e; as, Gefah'ren, gefähr'lich`; gefähr'lich`er, Kö'nig`e, etc.

53. In compound words, each component word receives its proper accentuation; but the principal accent is laid on the *determining* component; that is, generally, in compound nouns, adjectives and verbs, on the first component; in other parts of speech, on the second. As: Werk'zeug, Schul'haus, lieb'reich, ehr'los, dank'ſagen, teil'nehmen, le'bensluſtig, Ta'ſchen=tücher; berg=an', da=mit', wo=von', zu=fol'ge (*adverbs*); derſel'be (*pronoun*) etc.

54. The separable prefixes, in compound verbs and their corresponding nouns, etc., form proper compounds, and always take the principal accent; the inseparable prefixes leave the accent on the root: aus'gehen, an'fangen, An'fall, an'fällig; beſte'hen, entlaſ'ſen, vermiſ'ſen, Gebrauch', gewiß'.

NOTE. — The inseparable prefixes, § 277, might be conveniently learned at once.

55. In general, accentuation in German is much more logical and simple than in English. The few exceptions are easily learned by experience. Examples are: all=ein', allmäch'tig (compounds of all=), leben'dig (from le'bend), wahrhaf'tig (from wahr'haft), and a few others. In a few words a difference of meaning is distinguished by change of accent; as, da'bei and dabei'; da'rum and darum' — as will be learned hereafter.

Accentuation of Foreign Words.

56. Foreign words usually take the accent on the last syllable, unless they have become quite germanized: Religion', Advokat', Muſik', Mathematik', Student', Bibliothek', Nation', Melodie', Horaz', Vergil', Emil'.

57. But on other syllables in many words; as: Bota'nik, Gramma'tik, Mecha'nik, Lo'gik, E'thik, Profeſ'ſor, Dok'tor, Charak'ter, Fami'lie (§ 16), Ori'on, Dari'us, Ju'lius, Ju'lie, Ci'cero, and others. (§ 59, note).

58. Some foreign words shift their accent when derivative or inflectional suffixes are added. As: national', melo'diſch, Profeſſo'ren, Dokto'ren, Charakte're.

59. Verbs ending in –ieren, from French, or formed by French analogy, and their derivatives, keep the accent on –ie throughout; as, ſtudie'ren, ſtudiert', Regie'rung.

NOTE. — The general principle is, that foreign words retain the same accent as in their original language. As most of them are from French with final accent, or from Latin or Greek with an inflectional syllable dropped, the accent is, generally, on the last syllable. The same principle will also generally explain the exceptions to this rule, as well as the change of accent when suffixes are added (as above). But there are many irregularities.

60. In some cases foreign words are completely naturalized and then take German accent, as Fenſter (Latin, *fenestra*). But, in general, foreign words retain their distinctive accent, and are thus not so fully naturalized in German as in English. On the other hand, they are far less numerous, and are, for the most part, easily recognized. As a general rule, it may be added that they are usually words which, being derived from a common source, have the same or nearly the same form in German and in English.

General Remark. — The foregoing rules on Pronunciation and Accentuation aim to give only the simplest and most general directions. No written rules can here take the place of skillful oral instruction and careful practice. Let it be remarked, by way of caution to both student and teacher, that a good pronunciation, if not acquired at first, is far less likely to be ever acquired afterwards. This subject should continue to receive the most careful attention, with every lesson. Of course it is not implied that such rules should be studied *entire*, before the grammar proper is begun.

EXERCISE IN ACCENTUATION.

1. *German words with prefix; accent root.* Beruf, Empfang, Erſatz, Verluſt, entging, mißlang, erfuhr, verlor, gelang, Gebrauch, Geleit, zerriß, Verlag, geliebt, beſtellt, verſtand.

2. *German words with suffix or suffixes; accent root.* Achtung, ehrlich, leben, lebend, Tugend, artig, furchtſam, friedlich, Wohnung, Wohnungen, Übung, Übungen, reinlich, Reinlichkeit, finſter, Finſternis, Königs, Könige, Sohnes, Söhne, Nebels, gutes, ſchönes, ſchöneres, kurzes, kürzeſte, Freiheit, Freundſchaft, freundſchaftlich.

3. *German words with prefix, and suffix or suffixes; accent root.* berufen, empfangen, erſetzen, verloren, entgehen, Zerlegung, Zerlegungen, zerriſſen, geliebte, Erfahrung, Erfahrungen, gelegen, Gelegenheit, Gelegenheiten, verſtehen, Verſtändnis, Verſtändniſſe, verſchwenden, verſchwenderiſch, Erſparnis, Erſparniſſe, gebrauchen.

4. *Compounds* (*nouns*, *verbs*, *adjectives*). Bei=ſtand, bei=ſtehen, Aus=gang, aus=gehen, Oſt=wind, Mund=art, Zu=kunft, All=macht, Sonnen=ſchein, Groß=mutter, groß=mütterlich, auf=ſtehen, auf=geſtanden, Apfel=baum, Apfel=bäume, liebens=würdig, Liebens=würdigkeit. (*Adverbs*) da=bei, her=vor, hier=mit, vor=über, zu=wider.

5. *Foreign; accent as marked.* Soldat′, Student′, ſtudie′ren, ſtudiert′, regiert′, Regiment′, Poet′, Lec′tor, Lecto′ren, Harmonie′, Fami′lie, Dari′us, Ma′rius, Marie′, Emi′lie, Nation′, national′, Nationalität′.

Use of Capital Letters.

NOTE. — The following sections to § 71 are added for reference and might better be omitted at first.

61. With a capital initial are written the first word of a sentence, or of a direct quotation, and usually also the first word of each line in poetry. Also:

62. All nouns, and words used as nouns; as, der Gute (adjective), *the good (man);* ein Reiſender (participle), *a traveler;* das Streben (infinitive), *the effort,* etc.

63. The pronouns of the second person in epistolary correspondence; and, always, the pronouns of the third person plural when used for the second person (except the reflexive ſich.)

NOTE. — Also, usually, other forms when used figuratively; as plural for singular, or one person for another (§ 189).

64. (*a*) Adjectives and ordinal numerals in titles: Friedrich der Große, *Frederick the Great;* Heinrich der Vierte, *Henry the Fourth;* das Königliche Muſeum, *the Royal Museum;* Seine Majeſtät, *His Majesty.*

(*b*) Adjectives derived from names of persons and places, having a restricted, personal or local meaning: die Grimmſchen Märchen, *the Grimm stories;* der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne cathedral;* but: die lutheriſche Kirche, *the Lutheran church*, in a general sense.

(*c*) Adjectives derived from names of countries are to be spelled with a small initial except when used as nouns; as, deutſch, *German;* but der Deutſche, *the German.*

65. All other words are spelled with a small initial. Nouns, when used adverbially, for instance: morgens, *in the morning;* abends, *in the evening;* but des Morgens, des Abends.

Also indefinite pronouns; as, etwas, *something;* nichts, *nothing*, etc. But etwas Gutes, *something good* (the adj. as noun).

66. Modified capitals are to be marked by two dots or strokes; Ä, Ö, Ü; as, Ämter, not Aemter, as formerly.

Emphasis.

67. The emphatic force of our *italic* letters is expressed by printing the letters apart or *spaced* (geſperrt); as, e i n Wort, *one* word; but digraphs are never separated; as, n i ch t, *not.*

NOTE. — The marks of *punctuation* are, in general, the same as in English. But the punctuation is usually stronger, especially in the more frequent use of the comma, to mark subordinate clauses, etc.; and, generally, more than in English, to indicate the grammatical construction. All subordinate, including infinitive, clauses are regularly separated by a comma; but not the members of a contracted sentence; that is, two or more verbs with same subject, when connected by und, *and.*

Division of Syllables.

68. Syllables are, in general, divided according to pronunciation. The following points may be noted:

(*a*) A single consonant between vowels goes with the latter; as, tre=ten, le=ſen, Se=gen.

Note. — Even words like ſe=hen (§ 24) will be thus divided, though h properly belongs with the foregoing vowel.

(*b*) Two consonants, or double consonants, between vowels will be divided; as, Freun=de, Her=ren, här=ter, ſtel=len, Waſ=ſer, ſeg=nen. But not a mute and a liquid; as, A=pril′.

(*c*) The signs, ch, ſch, ph, th, ß are treated as single consonants: la=chen, A=ſche, Or=tho=gra=phie′, bü=ßen.

Note. — In other compound consonants, there is diversity of usage as, A=pfel or Ap=fel; Kno=ſpe or Knos=pe; Ka=ſten or Kas=ten; Kra=tzen or Krat=zen, etc.

(*d*) But compounds, and derivatives with consonant suffixes, will be divided according to their constituent parts. As: Aug=apfel, dar=aus, Donners=tag, voll=enden, Rös=chen, Kirch=lein.

Note. — The chief application of these rules is in the division of words between two lines. In doubtful cases, such division is best avoided.

The Hyphen (Bindeſtrich).

69. The division of the syllables of a word between two lines is marked, as in English, by the hyphen. The hyphen is also used to mark special compounds, usually proper names, titles, and phrase-compounds; also compounds of unusual length, and sometimes for the sake of distinction; but not in ordinary compounds. As: Jung=Stilling, Ober=Italien, Kaiſerlich=König=lich; das Stell=dich=ein; Oberlandesgerichts=Präſident, Erd=Rücken (dist. from erdrücken), etc. For a special use of the hyphen, see § 392.

The Apostrophe.

70. The apostrophe is used to mark the omission of a letter; as, ich lieb' ihn, iſt's (for ich liebe ihn, iſt es) — especially often in poetry, as Grenadier', heil'ge for Grenadiere, heilige), etc. The apostrophe is not to be used with genitives in –s; as, Karls, Alexanders; but will take the place of –s where this cannot be added; as, Demosthenes' Reden. It is written also in the more unusual contractions of the article, as, brach's (das) Röslein: um's (des) Himmels willen, etc.; but not in the regular contraction with prepositions, ans, etc. See § 191.

REVIEW EXERCISE.

Armut iſt keine Schande.
Poverty is no shame.

Geduld' überwin'det alles.
Patience overcomes all.

Mor'genſtun`de hat Gold im Munde.
Morning-hour has gold in the mouth.

Mü'ßiggang` iſt aller Laſter An'fang
Idleness is of all vices beginning.

Beim Ei'genſinn` iſt kein Gewinn'.
In [the] obstinacy is no profit.

Willſt du immer weiter ſchweifen?
Wilt thou ever further roam?

Sieh, das Gute liegt ſo nah;
See, the good lies so near;

Lerne nur das Glück ergrei'fen,
Learn only [the] happiness (to) seize,

Denn das Glück iſt immer da.
For [the] happiness is always there.

LESSON I.

Declension.

71. (*a*) There are in German two numbers — the Singular and the Plural.

(*b*) Four cases: — the Nominative, the case of the subject; the Genitive, representing, besides the English possessive, most of the relations expressed by the preposition *of;* the Dative, the case of the indirect object, often expressed by *to* or *for;* and the Accusative, the case of the direct object.

(*c*) Three genders, — the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter. But the gender of nouns does not in all cases depend upon their meaning.

The Definite Article.

72. (*a*) The definite article is declined as follows:

		Singular.		*Plural*
	masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*masc. fem. neut.*
Nom.	der	die	das, *the*	die, *the*
Gen.	des	der	des, *of the*	der, *of the*
Dat.	dem	der	dem, *to the*	den, *to the*
Acc.	den	die	das, *the*	die, *the*

(*b*) The following remarks are important:

1. In Gender: The definite article has in the nominative singular a distinct form for each gender. Hence these forms are conveniently used to mark the gender of nouns; as, der Tiſch (masc.), *the table;* die Tinte (fem.), *the ink;* das Buch (neut.), *the book.*

In the genitive and dative singular the masculine and the neuter have the same form; and all the genders have the same form in the plural.

2. In Case: The masculine singular alone has a distinct form for each

case. Elsewhere the accusative has the same form as the nominative; and in the feminine singular the genitive and the dative have the same form.

3. The definite article is frequently used — especially with *generic* and *abstract* nouns — when not employed in English. As, der Menſch, *man;* die Tugend, *virtue* (Lesson XLVI).

NOTE. — Some of the forms of the definite article suffer abbreviation in colloquial or poetic language — especially 's for das — less frequently 'n for den. For the contraction of the article with prepositions, see § 191

Declension of Nouns.

73. (*a*) There are two declensions of nouns in German, the *strong* and the *weak*. Nouns which form their plural in en or n are of the weak declension; all others are of the strong (except a few *mixed* nouns. Less. V.).

NOTE. — The *strong* is the older and more complete declension; the *weak* a later form. The two are usually defined by the genitive singular; but the definition by the plural is more convenient for feminine nouns.

(*b*) Feminine nouns remain unchanged in the singular.

(*c*) In all other nouns, the strong declension forms the genitive singular in es or s; the weak, in en or n. The other cases of the singular are known from the genitive — the neuter accusative being always like the nominative.

(*d*) The dative plural of all nouns ends in n. Other cases of the plural are like the nominative.

(*e*) Hence, generally, to decline a German noun, we must know the genitive singular and the nominative plural.

NOTE. — As will appear hereafter, the following points are important:

1. The gender — this is of capital importance.
2. The ending — which sometimes determines the declension.
3. The number of syllables — whether monosyllable or not.
4. The accent — as marking foreign words.
5. The root vowel — whether modified (if a, o, u, au).

The Strong Declension.

74. Nouns declined by the strong declension are subdivided into three classes:

(*a*) The *first class* contains nouns which take no additional termination in the nominative plural. (Sometimes called the *contracted* form.)

(*b*) The *second class* contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination e. (Sometimes called the *primary* form.)

(*c*) The *third class* contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination er. (Sometimes called the *enlarged* form.)

Note. — The chief difficulty of declension is in forming the plural. As will be seen, except in the *mixed nouns* (Less. V.), the whole declension may generally be known from the nominative plural.

First Class of the Strong Declension. Plural —, ¨*

75. (*a*) To this class belong all masculine and neuter nouns with the unaccented endings el, em, en, er, chen, lein, ſel; all neuters with prefix Ge and ending e; one masculine in –e, der Käſe, *the cheese;* and, in the plural, two feminines, § 77.

(*b*) Here belong also, by the ending en, infinitives used as nouns and contracted infinitives in –n (as hereafter). These are neuter and have no plural.

Note. — This class includes no nouns with accented endings; and no monosyllables, except the contracted infinitives Sein, Tun.

76. In the singular the genitive adds s; other cases, like the nominative. The nominative plural adds no ending; but some masculines in el, en, er, and the neuter das Kloſter, *the cloister*, modify the root vowel. The dative plural adds n, except to nouns ending in n.

---

*The symbol ¨ indicates modification of the root-vowel.

† See Appendix, p. 367.

77. The two feminines, die Mutter, *the mother*, and die Tochter, *the daughter*, form their plurals after this declension: Mütter, Töchter; but, like other feminines, remain unchanged in the singular.

78. Nouns ending in chen or lein are diminutive derivatives, and are always neuter; as, das Mädchen, *the girl* (from die Magd, the maid); das Fräulein, *the young lady*, *Miss* (from die Frau, the woman) — with modified vowel.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N.	der Spaten, *the spade.*	der Vater, *the father.*
G.	des Spatens, *of the spade.*	des Vaters, *of the father.**
D.	dem Spaten, *to the spade.*	dem Vater, *to the father.**
A.	den Spaten, *the spade.*	den Vater, *the father.*

Plural.

N.	die Spaten, *the spades.*	die Väter, *the fathers.*
G.	der Spaten, *of the spades.*	der Väter, *of the fathers.*
D.	den Spaten, *to the spades.*	den Vätern, *to the fathers.*
A.	die Spaten, *the spades.*	die Väter, *the fathers.*

Singular.

N.	das Gemälde, *the painting.*	die Mutter, *the mother.*
G.	des Gemäldes, *of the painting.*	der Mutter, *of the mother.*
D.	dem Gemälde, *to the painting.*	der Mutter, *to the mother.*
A.	das Gemälde, *the painting.*	die Mutter, *the mother.*

Plural.

N.	die Gemälde, *the paintings.*	die Mütter, *the mothers.*
G.	der Gemälde, *of the paintings.*	der Mütter, *of the mothers.*
D.	den Gemälden, *to the paintings.*	den Müttern, *to the mothers.*
A.	die Gemälde, *the paintings.*	die Mütter, *the mothers.*

---

* With names of living things, the genitive is often translated by the English possessive, *the father's*, etc. And the preposition is not always required in translating the dative.

Decline, without vowel change in the plural:* der Amerikaner, *the American;* der Engländer, *the Englishman;* der Adler, *the eagle;* der Maler, *the painter;* der Lehrer, *the teacher;* der Schüler, *the scholar, pupil;* der Himmel, *the sky, heaven;* das Bäumchen, *the little tree*; der Flügel, *the wing;* das Fenſter, *the window.*

Decline, modifying the vowel: der Acker, *the field;* der Garten, *the garden;* der Apfel, *the apple;* der Vogel, *the bird;* der Mantel, *the cloak;* der Bruder, *the brother;* das Klōſter, *the cloister;* die Tochter, *the daughter.*

EXERCISE I.

1. Der Spaten des Bruders. 2. Das Gemälde des Vaters. 3. Die Lehrer der Amerikaner. 4. Die Äpfel des Gartens. 5. Dem Vater des Engländers. 6. Den Brüdern des Schülers. 7. Die Fenſter des Kloſters. 8. Der Flügel des Vogels. 9. Die Mütter der Mädchen. 10. Die Mäntel der Töchter. 11. Die Äpfel des Bäumchens. 12. In den (*dative*) Gärten der Amerikaner. 13. In dem Kloſter — in den Klöſtern. 14. Die Lehrer des Fräuleins.

1. The pupils of the teacher. 2. The paintings of the American. 3. The apples of the garden. 4. To the gardens of the Englishmen. 5. To the birds of (the)† heaven. 6. To the teacher of the scholars. 7. The wings of the birds — of the eagles. 8. The windows of the cloister — of the cloisters. 9. The mother of the girl — of the girls. 10. To the teacher's daughters. 11. Of the girl's cloak — of the cloaks of the girls. 12. The apples of the little trees in (*with dative*) the gardens.

A new series of Exercises, of a somewhat more advanced character, will be found at the end of the book. See Note to Preface, p. V.

NOTE. — The genitive, especially of names of persons or living things (*possessive genitive*), will often precede the governing noun, and then excludes the article; as, des Mädchens Mutter, for die Mutter des Mädchens, etc.

---

[*] This distinction applies, of course, only to a, o, u, au.

[†] In the Exercises, (–) indicates that the equivalent should be supplied; [–], that it should be omitted.

LESSON II.

79. Declension of the Indefinite Article.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ein	eine	ein, *an*, *a*.
G.	eines	einer	eines, *of an*, *of a*.
D.	einem	einer	einem, *to an*, *to a*.
A.	einen	eine	ein, *an*, *a*.

The indefinite article, being originally the numeral ein, *one*, can have no plural.

80. The declension of the indefinite article differs from that of the definite article chiefly in having only two forms, instead of three, in the nominative singular — the masculine and neuter having no ending. Thus the indefinite article does not here, like the definite, distinguish the gender of masculine or neuter nouns.

NOTE. — Like the definite article, the indefinite also, but more rarely, suffers abbreviation in colloquial or poetic language; as, 'ne for eine, 'nen for einen, etc.

Second Class of the Strong Declension. Plural –e, ¨e.

81. This class includes all genders:

(*a*) *Masculine:* most monosyllables, and most other nouns not in Class I nor ending in e.

(*b*) *Neuter:* some monosyllables, and most other nouns not in Class I nor ending in tum.

(*c*) *Feminine:* (In the plural) some monosyllables, and a few nouns ending in nis, ſal.

82. (*a*) This is the largest and most heterogeneous of all the declensions. It is, however, prevailingly masculine, and includes most monosyllables.

(*b*) The neuter and feminine monosyllables here belonging are important groups of mostly common words. The neuters include all ending in –r. See Appendix, p. 368.

83. The form of the declension is as follows:

(*a*) The genitive singular adds es, the dative e, the accusative being like the nominative. The nominative plural adds e. Nouns ending in nis double the s (ſſ) before all endings (§ 41).

(*b*) Monosyllables, if masculine, will in the plural modify the root-vowel *generally;* if feminine, *always;* if neuter, *never.** In words of more than one syllable the root-vowel is generally left unmodified.

84. As will appear hereafter, compound nouns whose last component is a monosyllable, count as monosyllables in declension; as, der Apfelbaum, *the appletree;* plural, Apfelbäume; die Hauptſtadt, *the capital city;* plural, Hauptſtädte — like der Baum, die Stadt.

85. The e of the genitive (es) and of the dative singular may be omitted when euphony permits, especially in words of more than one syllable. The omission is more usual in conversation and in familiar writing than in formal style.

NOTE. — It is the regular omission of this e, as well as of the ending of the plural (after unaccented *liquid* or *vowel* terminations), that distinguishes the first class (or contracted form) of nouns. At first the omission was purely euphonic. Like examples will be found § 94; in adjectives, §§ 139, 150; in verbs, §214, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N.	der Sohn, *the son.*	das Jahr, *the year.*
G.	des Sohnes, *of the son.*	des Jahres, *of the year.*
D.	dem Sohne, *to the son.*	dem Jahre, *to the year.*
A.	den Sohn, *the son.*	das Jahr, *the year.*

---

* Except das Floß, *pl.* Flöße. See also § 105.

Plural.

N.	die Söhne, *the sons.*	die Jahre, *the years.*
G.	der Söhne, *of the sons.*	der Jahre, *of the years.*
D.	den Söhnen, *to the sons.*	den Jahren, *to the years.*
A.	die Söhne, *the sons.*	die Jahre, *the years.*

	Der Mo'nat, *the month.*	**Das Hindernis, *the obstacle.***
	Singular.	
N.	der Monat,	das Hindernis,
G.	des Monats,	des Hinderniſſes,
D.	dem Monat,	dem Hinderniſſe,
A.	den Monat.	das Hindernis.
	Plural.	
N.	die Monate,	die Hinderniſſe,
G.	der Monate,	der Hinderniſſe,
D.	den Monaten,	den Hinderniſſen,
A.	die Monate.	die Hinderniſſe.

Feminines:

	Die Hand, *the hand.*		**Die Kuh, *the cow.***	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N.	die Hand,	die Hände,	die Kuh,	die Kühe,
G.	der Hand,	der Hände,	der Kuh,	der Kühe,
D.	der Hand,	den Händen,	der Kuh,	den Kühen,
A.	die Hand,	die Hände.	die Kuh,	die Kühe.

With the indefinite article:

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
	Ein Freund, *a friend.*	**Eine Gans, *a goose.***	**Ein Meer, *a sea.***
N.	ein Freund,	eine Gans,	ein Meer,
G.	eines Freundes,	einer Gans,	eines Meeres,
D.	einem Freunde,	einer Gans,	einem Meere,
A.	einen Freund.	eine Gans.	ein Meer.

Decline with modification of vowel in the plural: der Stuhl, *the chair;* der Flŭß, *the river;* der Fūß, *the foot;* der Zahn, *the tooth;* der Gaſt, *the guest;* der Kopf, *the head;* der Rock, *the coat;* der Stock, *the stick;* der Tanz, *the dance;* der Baum, *the tree.* (See § 41).

Also the following feminines: die Bank, *the bench;* die Magd, *the maid-servant;* die Nacht, *the night;* die Stadt, *the town;* die Luft, *the air;* die Maus, *the mouse;* die Frucht, *the fruit;* die Nŭß, *the nut;* die Braut, *the bride.*

Without vowel modification, the masculines: der Arm, *the arm;* der Hund, *the dog;* der Schuh, *the shoe;* der Tag, *the day;* der Jüngling, *the youth;* der Offizier′, *the officer.* The feminines: die Beſorgnis, *the care;* die Trübſal, *the trouble.*

And the neuters: das Haar, *the hair;* das Heft, *the note-book;* das Pferd, *the horse;* das Paar, *the pair;* das Pfund, *the pound;* das Schiff, *the ship;* das Tor, *the gate;* das Zeug, *the stuff.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Die Söhne des Vaters. 2. Ein Bruder der Magd. 3. Die Hand eines Freundes. 4. Die Luft des Gebirges. 5. Die Kuh des Engländers. 6. Die Füße der Gänſe. 7. Die Röcke der Gäſte. 8. Die Tore der Stadt — der Städte. 9. Die Schuhe des Gaſtes. 10. Die Stöcke des Jünglings. 11. Auf (*dat.*) der Bank in dem Garten. 12. Auf den Bänken in den Gärten. 13. Die Schiffe der Engländer. 14. Auf den Schiffen der Amerikaner. 15. Die Mägde der Braut. 16. Die Beſorgniſſe der Mütter. 17. Die Pferde der Offiziere. 18. Die Monate des Jahres.

1. The trees of the garden. 2. To the brothers of the maid-servant. 3. The air of the town. 4. The guest of a friend. 5. The gardens of a convent. 6. The days of the month. 7. The teeth of a mouse. 8. To the friends of the brother. 9. The dances of the guests. 10. The benches of the garden. 11.

The chair of the maid-servant. 12. The chairs and (und) the benches of the scholars. 13. A night, a month, a year. 14. The officer's shoes. 15. The fruits of the trees. 16. The bride's brothers. 17. The mothers of the brides. 18. The days and the nights. 19. The fruits and the nuts. 20. The troubles of the youths. 21. On (auf, *dat.*) the officer's ship. 22. On the officers' horses. 23. The air in the towns. 24. The teeth of the mice.

LESSON III.

86. The adjective pronouns: dieſer, dieſe, dieſes, *this;* jener, jene, jenes, *that* (*yon*); welcher, welche, welches, *which, what;* jeder, jede, jedes, *each, every,** are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*m. f. n.*
Nom.	dieſ**er**,	dieſ**e**,	dieſ**es**.	dieſ**e**.
Gen.	dieſ**es**,	dieſ**er**,	dieſ**es**.	dieſ**er**.
Dat.	dieſ**em**,	dieſ**er**,	dieſ**em**.	dieſ**en**.
Acc.	dieſ**en**,	dieſ**e**,	dieſ**es**.	dieſ**e**.

87. This declension is like that of the definite article in giving three endings — one for each gender — in the nominative singular. But it has the ending –e instead of –ie, and es instead of –as. In these endings the definite article is irregular.

88. Like the indefinite article (§ 79) in the singular and like dieſer in the plural, are declined the possessives:

mein, meine, mein, *my.*
dein, deine, dein, *thy,* (*your*).
ſein, ſeine, ſein, *his, its.*
ihr, ihre, ihr, *her.*

---

* Jeder, however, has no plural.

unſer, unſ(e)re, unſer, *our.*
euer, eu(e)re, euer, *your.*
ihr, ihre, ihr, *their*, and the negative:
kein, keine, kein, *not a, no.*

Third Class of the Strong Declension; Plural ¨er.

89. To this class belong a large number of monosyllabic neuters, with a few masculines; nouns ending in tum; and a few other neuters of more than one syllable. No feminines. They form the genitive and dative singular, like Class II.; and the nominative plural in er, with vowel modification.

NOTE.—Neuter monosyllables are thus divided between II (§ 82, *b*), and III, and should therefore have special attention.

(*a*) Observe that the nouns in tum modify, not the radical vowel, but the vowel of the suffix.

(*b*) The e of the genitive and dative singular may be omitted under the same conditions as in the preceding declension. (§ 85).

EXAMPLES.

	Das Haus, *the house.*	**Das Fürſt'entum, *the principality.***
	Singular.	
N.	das Haus,	das Fürſtentum,
G.	des Hauſes,	des Fürſtentums,
D.	dem Hauſe,	dem Fürſtentum,
A.	das Haus.	das Fürſtentum.
	Plural.	
N.	die Häuſer,	die Fürſtentümer,
G.	der Häuſer,	der Fürſtentümer,
D.	den Häuſern,	den Fürſtentümern,
A.	die Häuſer.	die Fürſtentümer.

In the same manner: der Geiſt, *the spirit;* der Gott, *the god;* der Leib, *the body;* der Mann, *the man;* der Ort, *the place;* der

Rand, *the edge, margin;* der Wald, *the forest;* der Wurm, *the worm;* der Vormund, *the guardian;* der Irrtum, *the error;* der Reichtum, *the riches.*

NOTE.—This important list of the masculines of this class should be remembered. A few others are sometimes so declined. (See Appendix.)

The following examples of monosyllabic neuters: das Amt, *the office;* das Bad, *the bath;* das Blatt, *the leaf;* das Buch, *the book;* das Dach, *the roof;* das Dorf, *the village;* das Feld, *the field;* das Geld, *the money;* das Glas, *the glass;* das Kind, *the child;* das Land, *the land;* das Lied, *the song;* das Schlŏß, *the lock, castle;* das Tal, *the valley;* das Volk, *the people.*

And the following neuters of more than one syllable: das Gemach′, *the apartment;* das Gemüt′, *the feeling;* das Geſicht′, *the face;* das Geſchlecht′, *the sex;* das Geſpenſt′, *the spectre;* das Gewand′, *the garment;* das Regiment′, *the regiment;* das Spital′, or Hoſpital′, *the hospital*—all with *final accent.*

NOTE.—This list should also be remembered.

90. The Verb ſein, *to be.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich bin, *I am.*	wir ſind, *we are.*
du biſt, *thou art* (*you are*).	ihr ſeid, *you are.*
er iſt, *he is.*	ſie ſind, *they are.*
ſie iſt, *she is.*	Sie ſind, *you are.*[*]
es iſt, *it is.*	bin ich? *am I?* etc.

VOCABULARY.

gut, *good.*	grōß, *tall, large.*
ſchlecht, *bad.*	klein, *small, little.*

---

[*] The pronouns of the third plural—then written with capitals—are regularly used in ordinary address, to one or more persons. The corresponding possessive is then Ihr, Ihre, Ihr (§ 88). See also §§ 186–8.

kalt, *cold.*
warm, *warm.*
hoch, *high.*
grün, *green.*
jung, *young.*
alt, *old.*
neu, *new.*
fleißig, *industrious.*

91. Adjectives standing alone as predicate are not inflected.

EXERCISE III.

1. Ich bin ein Kind. 2. Wir ſind Kinder. 3. Die Bücher der Schüler ſind klein. 4. Die Blätter des Baumes ſind grün. 5. Dieſer Mann iſt der Vater jenes Kindes. 6. Die Brüder meines Vaters ſind ſeine Freunde. 7. Sind die Dörfer groß? 8. Iſt dieſer Mann der Bruder deines Vaters? 9. Iſt ſie die Tochter dieſes Mannes? 10. Sind die Schüler fleißig? 11. Die Häuſer des Dorfes ſind alt. 12. Die Bäume des Waldes ſind hoch. 13. Seid ihr die Kinder dieſes Mannes? 14. Die Mägde unſeres Bruders ſind jung. 15. Welches Haus iſt das Haus unſeres Freundes? 16. Die Bücher dieſes Schülers ſind neu. 17. Die Dörfer und die Schlöſſer dieſes Landes ſind klein. 18. Jenes Haus iſt alt; dieſe Häuſer ſind neu. 19. Dieſe Männer ſind unſere Freunde. 20. Die Vögel ſind in den Wäldern. 21. Die Gläſer ſind auf dem Rande des Tiſches. 22. Sind jene Mädchen die Töchter unſerer Gäſte? 23. In welchem Tale ſind die Felder jenes Mannes? 24. Die Vormünder dieſer Kinder ſind in dieſem Dorfe.

1. *Are you* a child? 2. Are you children? 3. We are the children of *your* friends. 4. The daughters of this man are tall. 5. The houses of the village are small. 6. The trees of the forest are green. 7. The scholars of this teacher are industrious. 8. The sons of our friend are young. 9. This song is old. 10. These books are new. 11. Are these children the sons of my friend? 12. The roofs of the houses are high. 13. She is the daughter of my brother. 14. The fields are green. 15. The air is cold. 16. The bath is warm. 17. The sons of

my guest are Englishmen. 18. In which lands are those villages? 19. The fields of these valleys are green. 20. These baths are cold. 21. The birds of the forest are industrious. 22. The apartments of the king's castle are large. 23. The officers of these regiments are old. 24. The songs of the people — of the peoples. (*See notes on the Exercises, preface p. V.*)

LESSON IV.

The Weak Declension.

92. The weak declension comprises all nouns of the feminine gender (except Mutter, Tochter, and those of the second class of the strong declension); most masculines ending in e; a few masculine monosyllables which formerly ended in e; and many foreign masculines accented on the last syllable. No neuters.

(*a*) This declension includes, therefore, all feminines of more than one syllable, except those in –nis and –ſal (II), and the two words Mutter and Tochter (I).

(*b*) Feminine monosyllables are nearly equally divided between this declension and the second class of the strong declension. The weak declension includes all foreign or derivative feminines, and those that once ended in –e.

(*c*) Foreign masculines are also divided between the same two declensions. Those in –al', –an', –aſt', –ier', belong to the strong; most others, including all that once ended in –e, belong to the weak declension.

(*d*) Hence, words in either of the foregoing groups must be carefully observed.

93. Nouns of this declension form their plural in –en or –n. The feminines remain unchanged in the singular, but the masculines take the termination –en or –n also in the singular, for all cases except the nominative.

94. Nouns ending in e, el, er, and ar, unaccented, take the termination n; all others take en. Thus: die Blume, die Blumen; die Nadel, die Nadeln; die Feder, die Federn; der Ungar, die Ungarn. But: die Tugend, die Tugenden; die Station', die Station'en; der Student', die Student'en; der Huſar', die Huſar'en (§ 85).

95. Feminine derivatives in –in double the n in the plural; as die Fürſtin, *the princess:* pl. die Fürſtinnen (§ 3, *a*).

For a special form in feminine singular, see § 106.

96. No noun of the weak declension modifies the root-vowel in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

	Die Blume, *the flower.*	**Der Knabe, *the boy.***
	Singular.	
N.	die Blume,	der Knabe,
G.	der Blume,	des Knaben,
D.	der Blume,	dem Knaben,
A.	die Blume.	den Knaben.
	Plural.	
N.	die Blumen,	die Knaben,
G.	der Blumen,	der Knaben,
D.	den Blumen,	den Knaben,
A.	die Blumen.	die Knaben.

Die Feder, *the pen;* gen. der Feder; pl. die Federn, etc.

Monosyllables: die Art, *the kind;* gen. der Art; pl. die Arten, etc. — Der Held, *the hero;* gen. des Helden; pl. die Helden, etc.

Foreign: der Poet', *the poet;* gen. des Poet'en; pl. die Poet'en, etc.

Decline like die Blume: die Stube, *the room;* die Freude, *the joy;* die Schule, *the school*, etc.

Like die Feder: die Nadel, *the needle;* die Mauer, *the wall;* die Schüſſel, *the dish*, etc.

Like die Art: die Uhr, *the watch;* die Frau, *the woman, wife;* die Tat, *the deed;* die Tür, *the door;* die Zahl, *the number*, etc.

Like der Knabe: der Preuße, *the Prussian;* der Affe, *the monkey;* der Neffe, *the nephew*, etc.

Like der Poet: der Advokat', *the lawyer;* der Student', *the student;* der Philoſoph', *the philosopher*, etc.

Like der Held: der Bär, *the bear;* der Chriſt, *the Christian;* der Fürſt, *the prince;* der Graf, *the count;* der Hirt, *the herdsman;* der Menſch, (*the*) *man;* der Mohr, *the Moor;* der Narr, *the fool;* der Ochs, *the ox;* der Prinz, *the prince;* der Tor, *the fool.*

Note. — This list — which comprises the most important masculine monosyllables of this declension — should be remembered. Apparently they would belong to the second class of the strong declension; but -e has been dropped from the nominative singular. (See Appendix.)

97. The noun, der Herr, *the Lord, gentleman* (also, *Mr.* or *Sir*) adds in the singular only n; in the plural en; as, des Herrn; pl. die Herren, etc.

98. Past Indicative of **ſein**, *to be.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich war, *I was.*	wir waren, *we were.*
du warſt, *thou wast* (*you were*).	ihr war(e)t, *you were.*
er war, *he was.*	ſie waren, *they were.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie waren, *you were.*

VOCABULARY.

und,	*and.*	wo,	*where.*
oder,	*or.*	war ich,	*was I?*
aber,	*but.*	warſt du,	*wast thou?*

ſehr, *very.*

EXERCISE IV.

1. Die Blumen des Gartens ſind die Freude meiner Mutter. 2. Jene Herren ſind Fürſten und Grafen. 3. Die Mauern der Stadt ſind hoch und alt. 4. Die Stuben ſind klein. 5. Das Land unſeres Herrn, des Fürſten, iſt ein Fürſtentum. 6. Die Preußen und die Ungarn waren fleißig. 7. Die Ochſen waren groß, aber die Kühe waren ſehr klein. 8. Dieſer Knabe iſt der Sohn des Grafen. 9. Die Uhr dieſes Herrn war neu. 10. Dieſe Uhren ſind ſehr alt aber gut. 11. Iſt er ein Preuße oder ein Ungar? 12. Die Taten des Helden. 13. Die Türen des Hauſes. 14. Die Neffen des Grafen. 15. Die Hefte des Studenten. 16. Dieſe Herren ſind Preußen. 17. Die Knaben ſind in der Schule — in den Schulen. 18. Die Zahl der Studenten iſt groß. 19. Die Taten der Chriſten. 20. Die Stuben des Hauſes. 21. Die Blumen der Gärten. 22. Die Schüler des Herrn. 23. Die Nadeln der Mädchen. 24. Die Schüſſeln ſind auf dem Tiſche.

1. The Prussians and the Hungarians are Christians. 2. These boys were pupils of my father. 3. The schools of this town are good. 4. It was the deed of a fool. 5. The daughters of the count were old, but the sons of the prince were young. 6. The hands of the ladies. 7. The doors of my house. 8. Where are my needles? 9. Where were the ladies and the gentlemen? 10. The boys were industrious. 11. These dishes are new. 12. The deeds of the heroes. 13. The watches of those gentlemen. 14. The number of the boys and of the girls. 15. The lands of the count. 16. The monkeys and the bears. 17. These princes are Christians. 18. The teeth and the feet of the oxen. 19. A daughter of a lawyer. 20. The wife of an officer. 21. That gentleman is a Prussian. 22. I was in the room. 23. We were in the rooms. 24. Was he the son of a poet?

NOTE. — For more advanced exercises see end of the book.

LESSON V.

Peculiarities in Declension.

99. The following masculines ending in e form their genitive in -ns, and their other cases in -n according to the weak declension:

der Friede, *peace.*
der Funke, *spark.*
der Gedanke, *thought.*
der Glaube, *faith.*
der Hauſe, *heap.*
der Name, *name.*
der Same, *seed.*
der Wille, *will.**

— with a few others, more or less variable.

100. Der Schade, *harm*, gen. Schadens, usually modifies the vowel in the plural, die Schäden; but sing. also der Schaden.

101. Der Schmerz, *the pain*, is occasionally declined in the same way: gen. des Schmerzens, dat. dem Schmerzen, etc.; but usually des Schmerzes, etc.; pl. die Schmerzen. And der Felſen, *the rock*, has also the shorter form, der Fels, gen. des Felſens or Felſen; pl. die Felſen.

102. One neuter, das Herz, *the heart*, forms its genitive in -ens, des Herzens, dat. dem Herzen, acc. das Herz; plur. die Herzen. (§73, *c*).

103. Some of these nouns have also the nominative in -en, and are then regularly of the first class of the strong declension; as, der Frieden, des Friedens, etc.

104. A few masculines and neuters follow the strong declension in the singular, and the weak in the plural. Such are:

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Plur.*
der Bauer, *farmer*, *peasant.*	des Bauers,	die Bauern,
der Maſt, *mast* (*of a ship*).	des Maſtes,	die Maſten.

---

*This declension is based on a (strong) nominative -e(n). See § 76.

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Plur.*
der Muskel, *muscle.*	des Muskels,	die Muskeln.
der Nachbar, *neighbor.*	des Nachbars,	die Nachbarn.
der Pantof'fel, *slipper.*	des Pantoffels,	die Pantoffel(n).
der See, *lake.*	des Sees,	die See(e)n.
der Staat, *state.*	des Staates,	die Staaten.
der Stachel, *sting.*	des Stachels,	die Stacheln.
der Stiefel, *boot.*	des Stiefels,	die Stiefel(n).
der Strahl, *ray.*	des Strahles,	die Strahlen.
der Vetter, *cousin.*	des Vetters,	die Vettern.
das Auge, *eye.*	des Auges,	die Augen.
das Bett, *bed.*	des Bettes,	die Betten.
das Ende, *end.*	des Endes,	die Enden.
das Hemd, *shirt.*	des Hemdes,	die Hemden.
das Ohr, *ear.*	des Ohres,	die Ohren.

and the foreign masculine titles in –or (§117); with a few foreign neuters; as, das Inſekt', *the insect.* See Appendix.

These constitute what is called the *mixed declension*, in which are sometimes included also the nouns, §§ 99–102, and the neuters, § 118 and §119.

105. Some of these words have double forms: des Bauern, des Nachbarn, etc.; also pl. die Pantoffel, and (better) die Stiefel. And there are a few other nouns in which usage is divided, in the singular or plural, or both, between the weak and the strong declensions, or even between different classes of the strong declension; as, der Baier, *the Bavarian;* gen. Baiers or Baiern; pl. Baier or Baiern; der Dorn; *the thorn;* pl. Dörner, Dorne, or Dornen; der Sporn, *the spur;* pl. Sporne or Spornen, or even Sporen; das Boot, pl. die Boote or Böte; das Rohr, pl. die Rohre or Röhre, etc. Such details must be found in the dictionaries. (See Appendix).

106. The n of an earlier weak inflection is retained regularly as dative singular in the phrase auf Erden, *on earth;* and sometimes elsewhere — especially in poetry.

NOTE 1.—In poetry the form is sometimes found with the article; as, in der Erden, etc.; and, rarely also in the genitive; as, die Güter dieſer Erden, *the goods of this earth.*

2. Note also such phrases as: vor Freuden, *for joy;* zu Ehren, *in honor* (*of*); zu Gunſten, *in favor* (*of*); von Seiten, *on the part* (*of*), etc.—some of which, however, were originally plurals.

107. A few words give two plurals in different senses, having both senses in the singular. Such are: das Band; pl. Bänder, *ribbons;* Bande, *bonds.* Die Bank; pl. Bänke, *benches;* Banken, *banks.* Das Wort; pl. Wörter, *words* (singly); Worte, *words* (connected). (§§ 424–426).

NOTE.—Colloquially—in imitation of French or English—are found plurals in s; as, Kerls, Säbels, Mädchens, etc.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF ſein.

108. The perfect and pluperfect of the verb ſein are formed by adding the perfect participle geweſen, *been*, to the present and past tenses of the same verb.

(*a*) Observe that ſein is here its own auxiliary, where in English we use *have.*

PERFECT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich bin geweſen, *I have been.*	wir ſind geweſen, *we have been.*
du biſt geweſen, *thou hast been.*	ihr ſeid geweſen, *you have been.*
er iſt geweſen, *he has been.*	ſie ſind geweſen, *they have been.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie ſind geweſen, *you have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

ich war geweſen, *I had been.*	wir waren geweſen, *we had been.*
du warſt geweſen, *thou hadst been.*	ihr war(e)t geweſen, *you had been.*
er war geweſen, *he had been.*	ſie waren geweſen, *they had been.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie waren geweſen, *you had been.*

(*b*) Observe that when the verb is used in a compound form, the participle stands at the end of the sentence. Thus: Du biſt gut geweſen. Der Knabe war fleißig geweſen.

VOCABULARY.

reich, *rich.*	ſtark, *strong.*	in, *in*	govern the dative
arm, *poor.*	ſchwach, *weak.*	auf, *on*	when expressing *rest.*
nützlich, *useful.*	ſcharf, *sharp.*	wie, *as, like;* nicht, *not.*	

EXERCISE V.

1. Der Vater dieſes Bauers war der Nachbar meines Vetters geweſen. 2. Die Jahre des Friedens ſind dem Staate ſehr nützlich geweſen. 3. Die Stiefel(n), die Pantoffel(n), die Hemden und die Röcke ſind neu geweſen. 4. Die Dornen ſind ſcharf wie Nadeln. 5. Der Sohn meines Nachbars war reich geweſen. 6. In dieſer Stube waren die Betten der Schüler. 7. Der Bruder unſeres Vetters war reich geweſen. 8. Seine Augen und ſeine Ohren ſind groß, aber ſeine Füße ſind klein. 9. Der Frieden des Herrn. 10. Meine Augen ſind ſchwach. 11. Die Schmerzen des Herzens. 12. Der Friede der Staaten. 13. Die Bänder der Mädchen. 14. Dieſe Bauern ſind Nachbarn geweſen. 15. Dieſe Wörter ſind die Namen jener Männer. 16. Die Worte [des] Glaubens. 17. Die Namen jener Inſekten. 18. Die Banken ſind in den Städten. 19. Die Bande [des] Friedens. 20. Jene Herren ſind Vettern.

1. The masts of this ship are very strong. 2. Your neighbors *have* been in this room. 3. The thoughts of the Christians. 4. The names of the peasants. 5. The brothers of my cousin *had* been poor. 6. My mother's slippers are old. 7. The hearts of (the) men. 8. His ears are large, but his eyes are very small. 9. My father's boots and my cousin's slippers and the shirts of the boys are not very new. 10. The beds of the scholars had been in this room. 11. The thoughts of my cousin are the thoughts of a Christian. 12. The eyes and the ears of a mouse are small. 13. The faith of the heart is strong. 14. These farmers are my neighbors. 15. The masts of the ships are high. 16. The peasants of these states have been very rich. 17. The ribbons of my slippers

are green. 18. The boots are on the benches. 19. The faces of the neighbors. 20. The thoughts and the words of (the) peace (see § 72, *b*, 3).

LESSON VI.

Declension of Proper Names.

109. Names of persons, places, and the neuter names of countries, when inflected, usually take –s in the genitive. Friedrich, *Frederick*, Friedrichs; Eliſabeth, Eliſabeths; Hilda, Hildas; Amerika, Amerikas; Straßburg, Straßburgs.

NOTE. — An earlier dative, or accusative, in –n or –en sometimes occurs colloquially; as, Peter–n, Juſt–en. (For plurals, see § 427.)

110. (*a*) Names of females ending in e may have in the genitive –ens, and in the dative and accusative –en: Sophi'e, Sophi'ens, Sophi'en; Ama'lie, Ama'liens, Ama'lien; but usually, only –s in genitive, and no ending in dative and accusative.

(*b*) Masculine names ending in a sibilant (s, ß, ſch, x, z, tz) may take –ens, –en, –en: Max, Maxens, Maxen; but if surnames, or foreign, they take the apostrophe only (§ 70); as, Voß' Werke.

(*c*) Place names ending in a sibilant are not declined; as, Paris, Mainz, etc.

111. In speaking of sovereigns and dignitaries, the preposition von is used in such phrases as: der Kaiſer von Rußland, *the Emperor of Russia;* die Königin von England, *the Queen of England;* der Bürgermeiſter von Magdeburg, *the mayor of Magdeburg.* This form may, generally, be used instead of the genitive of countries or places.

112. And, generally, the inflection of a personal name may be avoided by the use of the article; as, gen. des Karl, der Sophie, des Schiller, etc.; or of an apposition with the article; as, des Königs Heinrich (§§ 427–8).

113. The Latin nouns Chriſtus and Jeſus usually retain their Latin declension; thus:

N.	Chriſtus;	G.	Chriſti;	D.	Chriſto;	A.	Chriſtum.
N.	Jeſus;	G.	Jeſu;	D.	Jeſu;	A.	Jeſum.

The Future of the Verb ſein, *to be.*

114. The future of the verb ſein is formed by combining with the infinitive ſein the present tense of the auxiliary verb werden, *to become.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich werde ſein, *I shall be.*	wir werden ſein, *we shall be.*
du wirſt ſein, *thou wilt be.*	ihr werdet ſein, *you will be.*
er wird ſein, *he will be.*	ſie werden ſein, *they will be.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie werden ſein, *you will be.*

(*a*) And interrogatively: werde ich ſein? *shall I be?* wird er ſein, *will he be?* etc. Note that the infinitive goes to the end of the sentence; as, ich werde fleißig ſein, wird er fleißig ſein? etc.

VOCABULARY.

hier, *here.*	auch, *also.*
heute, *to-day.*	bald, *soon.*
morgen, *to-morrow.*	die Schweſter, *the sister.*
geſtern, *yesterday.*	mit, *with* (governs the dative).

EXERCISE VI.

1. Charlotte(n)s Mutter iſt heute hier geweſen, und der Vater Marie(n)s wird morgen auch hier ſein. 2. Der König von Spanien und die Königin von Portugal werden morgen in Madrid ſein. 3. Die Flüſſe Rußlands ſind groß. 4. Iſt er mit Sophie(n)s Schweſter in Amalie(n)s Garten geweſen? 5. Er wird mit Marie(n) in der Stube ſein. 6. Die Vettern Friedrichs werden auch bald hier ſein.

7. Die Häuſer von Paris ſind groß. 8. Der Vater und die Mutter [der] Marie ſind geſtern hier geweſen. 9. Werden ihre Brüder und ihre Schweſtern bald hier ſein? 10. Der Kaiſer und die Kaiſerin von Deutſchland ſind in Berlin. 11. Das Leben Jeſu. 12. Die Worte Jeſu Chriſti. (*Adverbs of time precede adverbs of place.*)

1. I am Mary's brother and thou art Charlotte's sister. 2. The sister of the Emperor of Russia will be here tomorrow. 3. He is with Mary in Frederick's garden. 4. The mayor of Strasburg has been here today. 5. The deeds of Frederick have been useful. 6. Will the father of Charles be here to-morrow? 7. He will be here to-morrow, and the mother of Sophia will also soon be here. 8. Has the mother of the Queen of Spain been here? 9. She will soon be here. 10. The rivers and the lakes of Russia are large. 11. The son of Elizabeth is a friend of our neighbor. 12. Mary's slippers and Charles' boots are new.

LESSON VII.

Declension of Foreign Nouns.

115. Nouns of foreign origin generally retain their foreign accent (see § 59, note), but most of them are declined like German nouns. Others retain some peculiarities.

116. Like German nouns are declined such words as: der Biſchof, *the bishop*, die Biſchöfe; der Kaplan′, *the chaplain*, die Kapläne; der Inſtinkt′, die Inſtinkte; das Monument′, die Monumente; das Hospital′, die Hospitäler; das Regiment′, die Regimenter, etc.; and the foreign masculines and feminines of the weak declension; as, der Advokat′, *the advocate;* die Republik′, *the republic*, etc.

117. Foreign titles of male persons ending in unaccented or take s in the genitive singular and en in the plural: der Dok'tor, des Doktors, die Dokto'ren, etc.; according to the *mixed* declension. (See § 104; for the accent, see §§ 57, 58.)

118. Foreign neuters in um and ium add s in the gen. sing., and change um to en in the plural; as das Stu'dium; gen. des Studiums; pl. die Studien, etc. Some have dropped ium in the singular, but retain ien in the plural; as, das Adverb', (or Adverbium); pl. die Adverbien, etc.*

119. Foreign neuters in al' and il' take s in the genitive singular and ien in the plural: das Material', des Materials, die Materialien; das Foſſil', des Foſſils, die Foſſilien.*

120. Words transferred from French, English, and other modern languages usually take s in the genitive singular and in the plural: Lords, Genie's, Solos, Dons, Paſcha's; but if ending in -s are not declined; as, der Kommis', *the clerk* (s silent).

(*a*) A few other foreign nouns, mostly of technical use, retain foreign plurals: as, Caſus, Modi, Facta, Cherubim, etc. And a few others form plurals in -en: as, das Drama, die Dramen. But there is much irregularity. Sometimes all inflection is omitted. Details must be learned by experience. (See also Less. XLVII.)

Declension of Compound Nouns.

121. Compound nouns are formed much more freely in German than in English (as will be explained hereafter). Such nouns are inflected according to the gender and declension of the last component, the rest remaining unchanged. (See §84. For accent, see §53.)

---

* These groups from Latin neuters, pl. *a*, *ia*, are now nearly like the mixed declension. A few other such nouns belong here; also the German das Kleinod, pl. die Kleinodien (or Kleinode).

122. There are a few exceptions: die Antwort, *the answer*, pl. Antworten (comp. of das Wort); der Abſcheu (comp. of die Scheu), and a few others. (See § 388.)

The Future Perfect of ſein.

123. The future perfect of ſein is formed by joining the perfect participle geweſen and the infinitive ſein to the present of the auxiliary verb werden.

Singular.

ich werde geweſen ſein,	*I shall have been*	or, *I have probably been*, etc.
du wirſt geweſen ſein,	*thou wilt have been*	
er wird geweſen ſein,	*he will have been*	

Plural.

wir werden geweſen ſein,	*we shall have been*	or, *we have probably been*, etc.
ihr werdet geweſen ſein,	*you will have been*	
ſie werden geweſen ſein,	*they will have been*	
Sie werden geweſen ſein,	*you will have been*	

(*a*) And interrogatively: werde ich geweſen ſein? etc. Observe that the participle and infinitive stand together at the end — the participle before the infinitive, *reversing the English order.*

NOTE. — As will be seen § 172, these form the *infinitive perfect.*

VOCABULARY.

der Augapfel,	*the pupil* (of the eye), *the pet.*
der Ackersmann,	*the husbandman.*
der Baumgarten,	*the orchard.*
der Blumengarten,	*the flower-garden.*
der Feldherr,	*the general* (§ 97).
der Hausherr,	*the landlord.*
das Herrenhaus,	*the House of Lords.*
das Landhaus,	*the country-house.*
der Tanzlehrer,	*the dancing-master.*
die Kinderſtube,	*the nursery.*
die Knabenſchule,	*the boys'-school.*

die Stadtmauer, *the city-wall.*
das Wörterbuch, *the dictionary.*
der Abt, *the abbot.*
der Papſt, *the pope.*
der König, *the king.*
Preußen, *Prussia.*

das Evange'lium, *the gospel.*
das Laborato'rium, *the laboratory.*
das Muſe'um, *the museum.*
der Student', *the student.*
die Univerſität', *the university.*
zu, *to,* (dat.).

EXERCISE VII.

1. Dieſe Stadt iſt reich an (in, *dat.*) Monumenten. 2. Der Kaplan des Biſchofs iſt ein Doktor [der] Theologie. 3. Die Kapläne der Päpſte ſind Biſchöfe. 4. Die Lords ſind in dem Herrenhauſe. 5. In dem Muſeum waren Foſſilien. 6. Das Wörterbuch dieſes Profeſſors wird gut ſein. 7. Die Söhne des Doktors werden mit dem Tanzlehrer in der Kinderſtube geweſen ſein. 8. Unſere Regimenter werden mit dem Feldherrn an (at, *dat.*) der Stadtmauer ſein. 9. Das Buch in der Hand unſeres Paſtors iſt ein Wörterbuch zu den Evangelien. 10. In dem Landhauſe des Grafen iſt ein Muſeum von Foſſilien. 11. Die Studenten der Univerſität ſind in dem Laboratorium des Profeſſors der Chemie. 12. Die Antwort des Feldherrn in dem Herrenhauſe war ſehr gut.

1. The hospitals of this town are near (an, *dat.*) the city-wall. 2. The kings of Prussia are rectors of the universities [of] Bonn and Berlin. 3. Here are the materials for (zu, *dat.*) a dictionary of the gospels. 4. The professors and the doctors have been in the orchard of the pastor. 5. In the museum of the bishop are fossils. 6. The dancing-master is in the nursery with the sons of the general and the daughters of the professor. 7. The monuments of this town are very old. 8. These bishops are doctors of (the) theology. 9. The flower-garden of the abbot is large. 10. The study of the gospels is the joy of the student. 11. The professor of chemistry is in the laboratory with the students of the university. 12. The answers are in the dictionaries.

Remark.—The comprehensive Table of Noun Declensions on the next page is intended only for reference or review.

124. In this table *m*, *f*, *n* = masculine, feminine, neuter; ″, modified vowel; —, monosyllable; —′ —, or — —′, polysyllable, with accent; -, ending. The numbers (IV) (V) are used for convenience. Remember that feminine nouns are unchanged in the singular.

Synopsis of Noun Declension.

STRONG			WEAK	MIXED
I	II	III	(IV)	(V)
m. n.	*m. f. n.*	*n. m.*	*f. m.*	*m. n.*
—′ -el, -em, -en, -er	*m.* —	*n.* — (see II)[2]	*f.* — (see II)	*m.* —
n. -chen, -lein, -ſel	*f.* — (see IV).[1]	*m.* — (*few*)[3]	*f.* — — (see I, II)	*m.* —′ —
n. ge—′-e	*n.* — (see III).[2]	*n.* — —′ (*few*)[4]	*m.* — (*few*)[5]	*m.* —′ -e(n)
n. Infinitives.	*m. n.* —′ —(see I)	*n. m.* -tum	*m.* — -e, — —′	*n.* (*few*)[6]
f. Mutter, Tochter.	*f.* -nis, -ſal	No fem.	No neut.	No fem.
Sing. gen. -s	-(e)s	-(e)s	-(e)n	-(e)s -(e)ns
PLURAL				
m. — —, ″— *n.* — —(ex. Kloſter) *f.* Mütter, Töchter	*m.* -e, ″e *f.* ″e (-niſſe, -ſale) *n.* -e	*n. m.* ″er -tümer	*f. m.* -(e)n	*m. n.* -(e)n

NOTES.— The following may be specially remembered: [1] *f.* — usually IV; about 30, II. [2] *n.* — nearly equal II, III. [3] *m. pl.* -er, p. 29. [4] *n.* — —′ *pl.* -er, p. 30. [5] *m.* — *pl.* -en, p. 34. [6] *n.* — *pl.* -(e)n, p. 37. [7] Note also: der Käſe, p. 21; der Herr, p. 34; das Herz, p. 36; Double plurals, p. 38.

For special details, see Appendix, p. 367.

Gender of Nouns.

125. The gender of nouns is important in itself, and also because it largely determines declension. But, as already seen, gender is in German to a great extent independent of meaning; and as to the form of words, no sufficient general rules can be given. The following are some of the most useful:

I. Generally: Sex names and appellations will follow the sex; except, das Weib, *the woman;* das Menſch, *the wench;* and neuter diminutives in –chen, –lein.

II. Masculine are: 1. Nouns ending in –ig, –ich, –ling, –m; and most nouns ending in –el, –en, –er.

2. Most strong derivatives; that is, derivatives formed of verb roots without suffix. (See § 382–3.)

3. Names of winds, seasons, months, days, mountains.

III. Feminine are: 1. Most nouns in –e, not of masculine meaning, and not beginning with ge–.

2. Derivatives in –t, –ei, –heit, –keit, –ſchaft, –ung, –in, –ie, –ion, –ur.

3. Most abstract nouns; and most names of plants, trees, flowers.

IV. Neuter are: 1. Most derivatives with prefix ge–, or suffix –nis, –tum.

2. All diminutives ending in –chen, –lein.

3. Infinitives, and other parts of speech, used as nouns (unless denoting persons).

4. Most collective nouns; most names of countries, places, metals.

5. Many generic names of animals — without regard to sex.

V. Foreign nouns usually retain their original gender.

VI. Compound nouns follow the gender of their last component. (Exceptions, see § 122.)

VII. Some nouns have two genders, with a difference of meaning; as, der Band, das Band, etc. These will be referred to hereafter. (§ 426.)

VIII. Some nouns are of uncertain gender, or at least of divided usage. These details must be found in the dictionary.

126. Yet, after all rules, the gender of German nouns must be learned largely by experience. The subject should, therefore, receive the constant attention of the student. Especially it is recommended that the habit should be formed of associating, with every noun that is learned, the appropriate form of the definite article, and of regularly using the article when naming a noun; as, der Zug, die Zucht, das Zeug, etc.

LESSON VIII.

The Declension of Adjectives.

127. Adjectives used as the predicate — that is, in connection with the verb — are not declined; as has been seen already.

128. Adjectives used appositively — that is after the noun — are also not declined; as, die Bäume, groß und grün, *the trees, large and green.*

NOTE. — This may be considered as a kind of elliptical predicate construction, for *the trees* (which are) *large and green.*

129. Adjectives used attributively — that is before a noun, expressed or understood — are declined; also adjectives when used as nouns.

130. There are two declensions of the attributive adjective, the *strong* and the *weak.* The combination of these forms the *mixed* declension. (See § 166).

NOTE. — The term *adjective* here includes only *qualifying* adjectives, not the pronominals.

The Strong Declension of Adjectives.

131. When the attributive adjective is not preceded by one of the articles, or by any other pronominal adjective of like inflection, it takes the endings of dieſer (§ 86).

NOTE. — It is usual to speak of this declension as like that of the definite article. But see § 87.

132. These endings are (see § 86):

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*m. f. n.*
Nom.	–er	–e	–es	–e
Gen.	–es	–er	–es	–er
Dat.	–em	–er	–em	–en
Acc.	–en	–e	–es	–e

Similarly, all adjective pronouns, except those in § 88.

With these endings decline in full, both *horizontally* and *vertically*, the adjectives gut, ſchlecht, alt, jung, neu, groß, klein, etc. Decline also with nouns, as follows (but see § 133):

EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	guter Wein, *good wine.*	gute Weine, *good wines.*
G.	gutes* Weines, *of good wine.*	guter Weine, *of good wines.*
D.	gutem Weine, *to good wine.*	guten Weinen, *to good wines.*
A.	guten Wein, *good wine.*	gute Weine, *good wines.*

FEMININE.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	große Freude, *great joy.*	große Freuden, *great joys.*
G.	großer Freude,	großer Freuden,
D.	großer Freude,	großen Freuden,
A.	große Freude.	große Freuden.

---

* Or guten, as § 133.

NEUTER.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	feines Tuch, *fine cloth.*	feine Tücher,
G.	feines* Tuches,	feiner Tücher,
D.	feinem Tuche,	feinen Tüchern,
A.	feines Tuch.	feine Tücher.

133. Before masculine and neuter genitives in es or s, the adjective genitive now usually ends in en instead of es. Thus: guten Weines, feinen Tuches, etc.

NOTE. — This is to avoid repetition of the same *strong* form.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **haben**, *to have.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich habe, *I have.*	wir haben, *we have.*
du haſt, *thou hast.*	ihr habt, *you have.*
er hat, *he has.*	ſie haben, *they have.*
ſie hat, *she has.*	Sie haben, *you have.*†
es hat, *it has.*	haben wir, *have we?* etc.

VOCABULARY.

blau, *blue.*
gelb, *yellow.*
weiß, *white.*

ſchwarz, *black.*
rot, *red.* lieb, *dear.*
breit, *broad.*

der Platz, *the place, square*
die Hütte, *the hut, cottage.*
die Flaſche, *the bottle.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. In den Gärten des Fürſten ſind große, grüne Bäume und ſchöne blaue und gelbe Blumen. 2. Weißes Brot iſt gut, aber ſchwarzes iſt auch gut. 3. Die Soldaten haben blaue oder rote Röcke. 4. Paris und London ſind große Städte. 5. Hier ſind lange Straßen und breite Plätze. 6. Gute Kinder ſind die Freude ihres Vaters und ihrer Mutter. 7. Fleißige Schüler haben nütz-

---

* Or feinen. † See *, p. 30.

liche Bücher. 8. Haſt du blaues oder weißes Papier? 9. Ich habe rotes. 10. Hat er rotes Papier? 11. Er hat weißes. 12. Meine Brüder haben neue Röcke und neue Pantoffel(n), aber alte Stiefel(n). 13. Die Häuſer reicher Fürſten ſind groß, aber die Hütten armer Bauern ſind klein. 14. Alter Freund, wo biſt du? 15. Liebes Kind, neue Bücher ſind oft ſchlecht; gute Bücher ſind oft alt. 16. Eine Flaſche roten Weines iſt auf (on, *dat.*) dem Tiſche.

1. The streets of large towns are long. 2. This (dies) is a day of great joy. 3. Young children and old men were in the garden of the prince. 4. Have you new slippers, new hats, and new coats? 5. The houses of poor peasants are often small huts. 6. Dear brother, you * are the joy of your father. 7. Dear sister, you are the joy of your mother. 8. Good scholars are industrious. 9. Have these soldiers blue or red coats? 10. They have red [ones]. 11. Have you † warm water? 12. We have cold [water]. 13. My father has good old friends. 14. In the nursery are good beds. 15. Dear children, you ‡ are industrious. 16. I am the teacher of industrious boys. 17. She has sharp needles. 18. They have bottles of old wine.

LESSON IX.

Weak Declension of Adjectives.

134. When the attributive adjective is preceded by the definite article or an adjective pronoun of three terminations (§ 87), it loses its own distinctive endings; that is, it takes in the nominative singular of all three genders, and in the accusative singular feminine and neuter, the termination –e, and in all other cases of the singular and plural, –en. This is called the *weak* declension.

---

* Use du, dein. † Use Sie. ‡ See § 187.

The combined endings, pronominal and adjective, will then be (the former *strong*, the latter *weak*):

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*m. f. n.*
Nom.	–er –e	–e –e	–es –e	–e –en
Gen.	–es –en	–er –en	–es –en	–er –en
Dat.	–em –en	–er –en	–em –en	–en –en
Acc.	–en –en	–e –e	–es –e	–e –en

Thus decline, *masc.* dieſer alte; *fem.* dieſe alte; *neut.* dieſes alte. Similarly, der gute, die gute, das gute (bearing in mind the peculiarities of the definite article). For the adjective endings alone, see Synopsis, p. 67.

It may be noted that the weak endings of the adjective are the same as of the weak masc. noun der Knabe (§ 96), except in the accus. sing. fem. and neut., where the nom. ending –e remains unchanged. Also, that there are only *five* forms in –e, all others –en. Other endings, –er, –es, –em are *always strong*.

135. It will be observed that the declension of the adjective itself is here less *explicit*, the forms of gender, number, case being for the most part expressed by the foregoing pronominal. It is therefore to the latter, chiefly, that in this combination the student will look to determine the form of the adjective or of the noun.

EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.

Dieſer grüne Baum, ***this green tree.***

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	dieſer grüne Baum,	dieſe grünen Bäume,
G.	dieſes grünen Baumes,	dieſer grünen Bäume,
D.	dieſem grünen Baume,	dieſen grünen Bäumen,
A.	dieſen grünen Baum.	dieſe grünen Bäume.

FEMININE.

Jene ſchöne Frau, *that beautiful woman.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	jene ſchöne Frau,	jene ſchönen Frauen,
G.	jener ſchönen Frau,	jener ſchönen Frauen,
D.	jener ſchönen Frau,	jenen ſchönen Frauen,
A.	jene ſchöne Frau.	jene ſchönen Frauen.

NEUTER.

Welches alte Schloß, *which old castle.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	welches alte Schloß,	welche alten Schlöſſer,
G.	welches alten Schloſſes,	welcher alten Schlöſſer,
D.	welchem alten Schloſſe,	welchen alten Schlöſſern,
A.	welches alte Schloß.	welche alten Schlöſſer.

Decline in the same way: jeder treue Freund, der gute Knabe, die liebe Tochter, das neue Haus, etc., etc.

(*a*) The ch of hoch is changed into h, in all inflections, before e (§ 156): der hohe Berg, *the high mountain;* hohe Tannen, *tall firs.*

Let the teacher add similar examples; and also, such as the following: Determine gender, number, case of des alten Mannes, den alten Mann, der neuen Bücher, den neuen Büchern, etc. And point out ambiguity of form; as in die alten Männer (nom. or acc. pl.), den guten Knaben (acc. sing. or dat. pl.), etc. Also, given the gender of the noun, decline, from root-forms only · dieſ– hoh– Baum, jen– blau– Blume; or with the article: d– lang– Jahr, etc. etc.

REMARK. — This is really a *combined declension* of the adjective with the preceding pronominal. The adjective endings occur only when so preceded, and the *two together* determine the form. For this reason the paradigms have been given in combination. The same principle applies to the *mixed* declension. (Less. X.)

THE PAST INDICATIVE OF **haben.**

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich hatte, *I had.*	wir hatten, *we had.*
du hatteſt, *thou hadst.*	ihr hattet, *you had.*
er hatte, *he had.*	ſie hatten, *they had.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie hatten, *you had.*

VOCABULARY.

zwei,	*two.*
der Schnee,	*the snow.*
die Erde,	*the earth, world.*
die Schweiz,	*Switzerland.*
der Norden,	*the North.*
der Süden,	*the South.*
der Maler,	*the painter.*
bedeckt,	*covered.*
berühmt,	*famous.*
fett,	*fat.*
preußiſch,	*Prussian.*
engliſch,	*English.*
franzöſiſch,	*French.*
unter,	*under.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. Der junge König und der alte Fürſt ſind in dem großen Schloſſe des reichen Grafen. 2. Jene alte Frau hat zwei ſchöne Töchter. 3. Die kleinen Knaben hatten neue Röcke. 4. Die tiefen Täler und die hohen Gebirge [der] Schweiz ſind mit grünen Tannen und mit weißem Schnee bedeckt. 5. Die ſtarken Völker der Erde ſind in dem kalten Norden. 6. Die Menſchen in dem warmen Süden ſind ſchwach. 7. Die warmen Bäder der kleinen aber alten Stadt Ems ſind berühmt. 8. Die reichen Bauern hatten ſchöne Häuſer. 9. Hatten die Kinder des berühmten Profeſſors das große neue Wörterbuch des [Herrn] Doktor Schwarz? 10. Sie hatten die alte Grammatik unſeres guten Lehrers. 11. Die fetten Ochſen und Kühe ſind unter den hohen Bäumen in dem grünen Felde. 12. Hatten die fleißigen Schüler die neue Grammatik des berühmten Profeſſors? 13. Unter den hohen Bäumen in dem großen Walde iſt noch tiefer, weißer Schnee.

1. The young princes are with their English teacher in the king's new castle. 2. This high tree has green leaves. 3. The famous old count had two young children. 4. The blue coats

of the Prussian soldiers. 5. The red coats of the English soldiers. 6. The French grammar of this famous professor. 7. In the beautiful houses of these rich ladies are the paintings of famous painters. 8. This famous painter has been in the South of England. 9. The snow of the cold North is deep. 10. Those white flowers are from (aus, *dat.*) our new garden. 11. The green fields are covered with white snow. 12. The warm beds of the little children are in the nursery. 13. This Englishman and this American have been on (auf, *with the dative*) the high mountains of Switzerland. 14. The long streets of this old town are broad. 15. The new names of the old streets of Paris. 16. This old teacher is the good friend of the poor scholars.

NOTE. — Use the article with feminine names of countries.

LESSON X.

The Mixed Declension of Adjectives.

136. It has been seen that when the distinctive endings of gender, number, case, are expressed by the preceding word, these are not repeated by the adjective, in the weak declension. The same principle determines the *mixed declension.*

137. When the adjective is preceded by the indefinite article, or by one of the pronominals declined like it (§ 88), it takes the distinctive forms of the strong declension where these words are without ending; that is, in the singular nominative, er for the masculine, es for the neuter; and es also for the accusative neuter. In all other parts the endings follow the weak declension.

138. The combined endings, pronominal and adjective, will then be as follows:

	SINGULAR.						PLURAL.	
	masc.		*fem.*		*neut.*		*m. f. n.*	
Nom.	—	**–er**	–e	–e	—	**–es**	–e	–en
Gen.	–es	–en	–er	–en	–es	–en	–er	–en
Dat.	–em	–en	–er	–en	–em	–en	–en	–en
Acc.	–en	–en	–e	–e	—	**–es**	–e	–en

— the adjective differing from the weak declension only in the forms printed with heavy type. (See § 134.)

(*b*) It is this form of the adjective, partly strong and partly weak, that gives rise to the term *mixed declension*. But it must be observed that there are only two possible forms of the adjective — one, *strong*, when not preceded by a determining ending, one, *weak*, when so preceded. In the former it is the adjective itself, in the latter the determining word, that must be looked to, for gender, number, case. (See § 166).

NOTE. — Observe that the endings –e of fem. nom. and accus. sing., and –en of masc. sing. and dat. plur. remain *always* the same. Also, that in adjectives as well as in nouns, fem. and neut. accusatives are always like the nominatives (§ 73). So, too, in pronouns (as hereafter).

MASCULINE.

Ein hoher Berg, *a high mountain.*

	Singular.	*No Plural**
N.	ein hoher Berg,	
G.	eines hohen Berges,	
D.	einem hohen Berge,	
A.	einen hohen Berg.	

FEMININE.

Meine liebe Schweſter, *my dear sister.*

	Singular.	*Plural* (*weak*).
N.	meine liebe Schweſter,	meine lieben Schweſtern,
G.	meiner lieben Schweſter,	meiner lieben Schweſtern,
D.	meiner lieben Schweſter,	meinen lieben Schweſtern,
A.	meine liebe Schweſter.	meine lieben Schweſtern.

---

* The indef. art. has no plural. But: Keine hohen Berge, *no high mountains*, etc. as below.

NEUTER.

Sein volles Glas, *his full glass.*

	Singular.	*Plural* (*weak*).
N.	ſein volles Glas,	ſeine vollen Gläſer,
G.	ſeines vollen Glaſes,	ſeiner vollen Gläſer,
D.	ſeinem vollen Glaſe,	ſeinen vollen Gläſern,
A.	ſein volles Glas.	ſeine vollen Gläſer.

REMARKS ON ADJECTIVE DECLENSION.

139. Adjectives ending in the unaccented syllables el, en, er, usually reject the e either of the termination or of the declensional ending: edel, *noble*, is usually declined edler, edle, edles; ſelten, *rare*, ſeltner, ſeltne, ſeltnes; heiter, *cheerful*, heitrer, heitre, heitres; but sometimes (before n or m) edeln, heiterm (§85, note.)

140. Adjectives used as nouns retain the declension of adjectives. Thus: deutſch, *German;* ein Deutſcher, *a German;* eines Deutſchen, *of a German;* eine Deutſche, *a German woman;* die Deutſchen, *the Germans;* die Alte, *the old woman;* der Reiche, *the rich man;* die Reichen, *the rich* (persons); das Gute, *the good* (abstract).

141. Participles, when used attributively, are declined as adjectives; as, liebend, *loving;* geliebt, *loved;* ein liebender Bruder, *a loving brother;* der geliebte Freund, *the loved friend.* Also when used as nouns: ein Liebender, *a lover;* die Geliebte, *the beloved* (*one*); die Geliebten, *the beloved* (*ones*).

142. Adjectives, generally, may be used, without inflection, as adverbs: er ſchreibt ſchnell, *he writes rapidly.*

143. Adjectives in er, derived from names of places, are indeclinable: das Heidelberger Faß, *the Heidelberg tun;* der Kölner Dom, *the Cathedral of Cologne.* (See § 395, 3).

144. Ganz, *whole*, and halb, *half*, are indeclinable when used alone before the names of countries and places, but are elsewhere declined. Thus: ganz England, *all England;* but das ganze England; halb London, die halbe Schweiz, ein halber Taler.

145. The neuter termination es of the nominative and accusative sing. is frequently dropped in familiar conversation and in poetry. Thus: Lieb Kindlein, *dear child;* alt Eiſen, *old iron;* kalt Waſſer, *cold water;* ein ſchwer Verbrechen, *a heavy crime.*

146. The declension of the adjective remains the same if its noun is understood. In this case the English *one*, *ones*, are not expressed in German; as, ein reifer Apfel und ein unreifer; *a ripe apple and an unripe one.*

147. Two or more adjectives under the same circumstances will take the same declension; as, mein lieber, alter Freund, *my dear old friend;* der liebe, alte Mann, *the dear old man.*

NOTE. — Sometimes, especially in poetry, occurs a euphonic form in -e, as helle for hell, etc.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF **haben.**

148. The perfect and pluperfect of the verb haben are formed, as in English, by adding the perfect participle gehabt, *had*, to the present and past tenses of the same verb.

PERFECT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich habe gehabt, *I have had.*	wir haben gehabt, *we have had.*
du haſt gehabt, *thou hast had.*	ihr habt gehabt, *you have had.*
er hat gehabt, *he has had.*	ſie haben gehabt, *they have had.**

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
ich hatte gehabt, *I had had.*	wir hatten gehabt, *we had had.*
du hatteſt gehabt, *thou hadst had.*	ihr hattet gehabt, *you had had.*
er hatte gehabt, *he had had.*	ſie hatten gehabt, *they had had.*

---

* The plural form Sie, *you*, for one or more persons, is hereafter to be understood in all verb inflections.

VOCABULARY.

die Bibliothek' *the library.*
das Landgut, *the estate.*
das Kleid, *the dress, garment.*
die Weſte, *the vest, waistcoat.*
die Zeit, *the time.*
die Zeitung, *the newspaper.*
der Franzo'ſe, *the Frenchman.*
der Rhein, *the Rhine.*
das Glück, *fortune, luck.*
die Sprache, *the speech, language.*

glücklich, *happy.*
an'genehm, *agreeable, pleasant.*
ſeiden, *silken, silk.*
ſüß, *sweet.*
ſauer, *sour.*
reif, *ripe.*
unreif, *unripe.*
königlich, *royal.*
nicht, *not.*
immer, *always.*

EXERCISE X.

1. Der alte Soldat hatte einen roten Rock gehabt. 2. Ein ſchwarzer Hut, eine blaue Weſte und ein weißes Hemd. 3. Meine Schweſter hat ein ſeidnes Kleid. 4. In der königlichen Bibliothek ſind engliſche, franzöſiſche und deutſche Bücher. 5. Ich habe ein deutſches Wörterbuch. 6. Meine Schweſter hat ein franzöſiſches Wörterbuch gehabt. 7. Hat ſie eine engliſche Grammatik gehabt? 8. Ein reifer Apfel iſt ſüß, aber ein unreifer iſt ſauer. 9. Dieſes große Landgut iſt das Eigentum einer alten Dame. 10. Schön(es) Wetter iſt Alten und Jungen (*dat.*) angenehm. 11. Das Studium der Sprachen iſt ſehr nützlich. 12. Die Reichen ſind nicht immer glücklich. 13. Meine Brüder hatten großes Glück gehabt. 14. Haſt du die Kölner Zeitung, mein guter Knabe? 15. Wir haben keine Zeit gehabt. 16. Ein Guter liebt (loves) das Gute, ein Edler das Edle.

1. We have no German and no French books. 2. My English dictionary is a good book. 3. My brother has had no time. 4. Has your sister no black dress? 5. Masson's Grammar of the French language is a very useful book. 6. In the royal library are French grammars and English dictionaries. 7. The gentleman with the white hat is an old general. 8. In this long street is a large old house; it is the boys'-school. 9. Ripe apples are sweet, but unripe [ones] are sour. 10. The

Rhine is a large river. 11. The language of the Germans is the German language. 12. The language of the French is the French language. 13. The old and the young were happy. 14. The Rhine was not always a German river. 15. Have you had the Cologne newspaper? 16. Had the scholars had new books? 17. Every good child had had a beautiful flower. 18. All Germany was under the noble old German emperor (*dat.*).

LESSON XI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

149. The comparative and superlative of adjectives are formed by adding er for the comparative and (e)ſt for the superlative.

150. The e of the superlative ending is regularly dropped, except after d, t, and the sibilants s, z, ß, ſch. Adjectives ending in el, en, er, e, drop e before the comparative er (§ 139).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
laut, *loud*,	lauter,	lauteſt.
ſüß, *sweet*,	ſüßer,	ſüßeſt.
ſchön, *beautiful*,	ſchöner,	ſchönſt.
reich, *rich*,	reicher,	reichſt.
edel, *noble*,	edler,	edelſt.
träge, *lazy*,	träger,	träg(e)ſt.

151. Most monosyllabic adjectives whose vowel is a, o, or u (not au) modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative.

alt, *old*,	älter,	älteſt.
rot, *red*,	röter,	röteſt.
kurz, *short*,	kürzer.	kürzeſt.

152. Some of the adjectives which do not modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative are:—

brav, *good, worthy.*
bunt, *variegated, gay.*
falſch, *false.*
froh, *joyful, happy.*
lahm, *lame.*
raſch, *quick.*
ſtolz, *proud.*
toll, *mad.*
voll, *full.*
zahm, *tame.*

(*a*) A few adjectives use both forms; as, fromm, *pious*, frommer or frömmer, frommſt or frömmſt.

153. A comparison of equality is expressed by placing ſo or eben ſo (*even so*) before the adjective, and after it wie or, after a negative, also als, *as*. Herr Schmidt iſt eben ſo reich wie Herr Schulze, *Mr. Schmidt is as rich as Mr. Schulze.* Herr Heinrich iſt ein eben ſo braver Mann wie Herr Müller, *Mr. Henry is as worthy a man as Mr. Müller.* Er iſt nicht ſo edel als klug, *he is not as noble as prudent* (§450, 2).

154. The English *than* is expressed by als. Thus: Die Tage ſind länger im Sommer als im Winter, *the days are longer in summer than in winter.*

155. Comparatives and superlatives are subject to the same rules of declension as the positive. Thus: ein reicherer Mann, *a richer man;* der reichſte Mann, *the richest man;* reichere Männer, *richer men;* mein älteſter Bruder iſt reicher als ich, *my eldest brother is richer than I*, etc.

NOTE.—The er of the comparative must not be confounded with the er of the adjective inflection; as, reicher may be either positive or comparative, in different positions. Note also that all adjectives are compared alike, without regard to their length.

156. The following are irregular:—

gut, *good,*	beſſer,	beſt, der beſte.
viel, *much,*	mehr,	meiſt, der meiſte.
wenig, *little,*	minder,	mindeſt, der mindeſte.
but also regular:	weniger,	wenigſt, der wenigſte.

Hoch, *high*, changes ch to h (§135, *a*) in the comparative, höher, höchſt, der höchſte. The h of nah, *near*, näher, becomes ch in the superlative: nächſt, der nächſte. Groß, *great*, *tall*, größer, is contracted in the superlative: der größte, instead of der größeſte.

157. From erſt, letzt (der erſte, *the first*, der letzte, *the last*), which are really superlatives, are formed the new comparatives: der erſtere, *the former*, der letztere, *the latter*. Similarly, mehrere, *several*, from mehr, *more*. (Compare the English *lesser*.)

158. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs or prepositions, are comparatives in form, but have the meaning of simple adjectives. They form their superlative by adding the superlative suffix of the comparative: —

ober, *upper*; (der obere)	der oberſte, *the uppermost.*
unter, *under*;	der unterſte, *the undermost.*
inner, *inner*;	der innerſte, *the inmost.*
äußer, *outer*;	der äußerſte, *the outmost.*
vorder, *fore*;	der vorderſte, *the foremost.*
hinter, *hinder*;	der hinterſte, *the hindmost.*
mittler, *middle*;	der mittelſte, *the middlemost.*

THE FUTURE OF **haben.**

159. The future of the verb haben is formed by adding the infinitive haben to the present tense of the auxiliary verb werden — the infinitive at end of the clause (as § 114).

ich werde haben, *I shall have.*	wir werden haben, *we shall have.*
du wirſt haben, *thou wilt have.*	ihr werdet haben, *you will have.*
er wird haben, *he will have.*	ſie werden haben, *they will have.*

And interrogatively: werde ich haben? etc. Also, as heretofore, and generally: Sie werden haben, werden Sie haben?

VOCABULARY.

das Eiſen, *iron.*
der Fehler, *the mistake, fault.*
im (contraction of in dem), *in the.*
der Winter, *winter.*
der Sommer, *summer.*
die Not, *the distress.*
der Stock, *the story, floor.*
wenig, *little;* pl. *few.*

EXERCISE XI.

1. Die reichſten Leute ſind nicht immer die glücklichſten. 2. Er iſt der reichſte Mann in der ganzen Stadt. 3. Die Tage ſind kürzer im Winter als im Sommer. 4. Die beſten Äpfel ſind nicht immer auf den höchſten Bäumen. 5. Wir hatten die heiterſten Gedanken. 6. Wir werden morgen das ſchönſte Wetter haben. 7. Die Armen ſind oft froher als die Reicheren. 8. Das Eiſen iſt das nützlichſte Metall'. 9. Mein Bruder hat einen längeren Brief als ich. 10. Die Gebirge der Schweiz ſind höher als die Gebirge Deutſchlands. 11. Die höchſten Gebirge ſind in Aſien. 12. In meinem Exercitium ſind die wenigſten Fehler. 13. Ich werde morgen wenige Fehler in meinem Exercitium haben. 14. Die bunteſten Vögel ſind nicht immer die ſchönſten. 15. Das Heiligſte war im Innerſten des Tempels. 16. Reife Früchte ſind beſſer als die unreifen.

1. When shall we have the longest day and the shortest night? 2. Frederick was the greatest and most famous king of Prussia. 3. She has two younger sisters. 4. He is with his elder brother in Berlin. 5. He is taller than his brother. 6. His younger brother has been [a] soldier. 7. This little book is better than that big [one]. 8. We shall soon have the most beautiful weather. 9. Ney was the bravest of the French. 10. The poorest peasants are in Russia. 11. Henry will have a longer letter than his younger brother. 12. The houses of (the) towns are larger than the houses of (the) villages. 13. The house of my father is on the longest street of the town. 14. We shall next month (*acc.*) have the shortest days and the longest nights. 15. The best cows are in Switzerland. 16. They

were in the utmost distress. 17. My room is in the uppermost story. 18. Henry is the first and Charles is the last in the whole school. 19. We were the foremost. 20. The largest rooms are not always in the largest houses.

LESSON XII.

The Predicate Superlative.

160. The uninflected form of the superlative cannot, like the other degrees (§127), be used alone in the predicate. Instead of this, there is a special form made up of an dem, contracted into am, *at the*, and the dative of the superlative, which is used predicatively. Thus: Im Winter ſind die Tage am kürzeſten und im Sommer am längſten, *in winter the days are shortest and in summer longest;* i. e., *at the shortest*, etc.

161. This form, however, must be used only when the adjective is the true predicate. If the noun is understood, or the superlative is definitely limited, the regular inflected form will be used; as, die Tage im Winter ſind die kürzeſten (Tage) des Jahres, *the days in winter are the shortest* (*days*) *of the year.* For further distinction, see §450,3.

162. (*a*) Many adjectives are derived from nouns: —

mütterlich, *motherly.*
väterlich, *fatherly.*
freundlich, *friendly*, *pleasant.*
herrlich, *splendid*, *lordly.*

(*b*) Others are derived from other adjectives: —

bläulich, *bluish.*
rötlich, *reddish.*
weißlich, *whitish.*
grünlich, *greenish.*

(*c*) Many are formed by composition (see Less. XLIV.): —

eiskalt, *ice-cold.*
ſchneeweiß, *snow-white.*
feuerrot, *red as fire.*
kohlſchwarz, *coal-black*, etc.

The Future Perfect of **haben.**

163. The future perfect of haben is formed by adding the perfect participle and infinitive of haben, to the present tense of the auxiliary verb werden. The participle and infinitive stand at the end of the clause, as § 123, *a*.

ich werde gehabt haben,	*I shall have had*	or, *I have probably had*, etc.
du wirſt gehabt haben,	*thou wilt have had*	
er wird gehabt haben,	*he will have had*	
wir werden gehabt haben,	*we shall have had*	or, *we have probably had*, etc.
ihr werdet gehabt haben,	*you will have had*	
ſie werden gehabt haben,	*they will have had*	

Prepositions governing the Dative.

164. The following prepositions always govern the dative: —

aus,	*out of*, *from.*	nach,	*to*, *after*, *according to.*
außer,	*without*, *except*, *besides.*	ſeit,	*since.*
bei,	*by*, *near*, *with*, *at the house* [*of.*	von,	*of*, *from*, *by.*
mit,	*with.*	zu,	*to*, *at*, *in*, *for*, *to the house of.*

VOCABULARY.

Der Onkel,	*the uncle.*	heiß,	*hot.*
die Tante,	*the aunt.*	kühl,	*cool.*
der Frühling,	*spring.*	bedeckt,	*covered.*
der Herbſt,	*autumn.*	gehen,	*to go.*
die Jahreszeit,	*the season.*	kommen,	*to come.*
das Wetter,	*the weather.*	wann,	*when?*
die Wolke,	*the cloud.*	niemand,	*no one*, *nobody.*
das Haar,	*the hair.*	von Hauſe,	*from home.*
die Gefahr',	*the danger.*	zu Hauſe,	*at home.*
vier,	*four.*	zu (adverb),	*too.*

165. When a sentence is introduced by any word or words modifying the verb, an *inversion* takes place; that is, the verb, instead of following, precedes the subject. Geſtern war ich zu Hauſe, instead of: ich war geſtern zu Hauſe; but never: geſtern ich war zu Hauſe.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Im Frühling und im Herbſt iſt das Wetter am ſchönſten. 2. Es iſt nicht zu heiß und nicht zu kalt. 3. Die Knaben kommen aus der Schule. 4. Mein Bruder iſt nicht zu Hauſe. 5. Meine jüngere Schweſter iſt von Hauſe; ſie iſt bei einer alten Tante. 6. Außer meinem Onkel war niemand zu Hauſe. 7. Bei dieſem heißen Wetter war der Himmel mit rötlichen und weißlichen Wolken bedeckt. 8. Nach dem eiskalten Wetter hatten wir den herrlichſten Frühling. 9. Ich habe kein Geld bei mir. 10. Wir kommen von Paris und gehen nach London. 11. Die vier Jahreszeiten ſind: der Frühling, der Sommer, der Herbſt und der Winter. 12. Der Lehrer iſt mit ſeinen Schülern in der Schulſtube. 13. Dein Bruder iſt außer Gefahr. 14. Die neuen Straßen von Paris ſind die ſchönſten in ganz Europa. 15. Nach dem Sommer ſind die Tage nicht ſo lang wie im Sommer. 16. Meine jüngſte Tochter iſt bei ihrer Tante (at her aunt's). 17. Der Frühling iſt die beſte Jahreszeit des ganzen Jahres. 18. Im Frühling iſt das Wetter am angenehmſten.

1. She had a snow-white dress. 2. No one is here except my teacher. 3. The new spring is loveliest after a very cold winter. 4. When will your brother be at home? 5. He has been from home the whole day (*acc.*). 6. He has been at (bei) my aunt's. 7. The children are in (the) school with their books. 8. A cool night is agreeable after a hot day. 9. The boy with the blue eyes and the very dark (kohlſchwarz) hair is a son of our English teacher. 10. The sky is red-as-fire. 11. Have you no money about you (bei dir)? 12. When is the weather most beautiful? 13. It is most beautiful in (the) sum-

mer. 14. In winter *it is* coldest. 15. They *have probably had* no money. 16. The children will have had a pleasant evening. 17. A good son is the greatest joy of his father and of his mother. 18. The highest mountains in all Europe are in Switzerland. 19. In (the) summer the days are longest and the nights shortest. 20. In (the) winter the days are the shortest of the whole year.

166. Synopsis of Declension of Adjectives.

	STRONG.				WEAK.				MIXED.			
	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*pl.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*	*pl.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*	*pl.*
N.	er	e	es	e	e	e	e	en	**er**	e	**es**	en
G.	es(en)	er	es(en)	er	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en
A.	en	e	es	e	en	e	e	en	en	e	**es**	en

REMARK. — The inclusion — as here, in accordance with usage — of the *mixed declension* of adjectives is of doubtful advantage. All inflected adjective forms are always either *strong* or *weak;* and *always* the principle is the same.

LESSON XIII.*

The Auxiliary Verbs.

167. The conjugation of verbs in German, as in English, is made up of simple and compound forms.

(*a*) The simple forms are those which are expressed by a single word; as, (ich) habe (*I*) *have;* (ich) war (*I*) *was*, etc.

(*b*) The compound forms consist of two or more words, and are formed by the help of auxiliaries; as, (ich) habe gehabt (*I*) *have had;* (ich) werde haben (*I*) *shall have;* (ich) werde gehabt haben, (*I*) *shall have had*, etc.

---

* With brief explanation, this Lesson, and the detailed verb-paradigms following, might be omitted, with pupils of some maturity.

168. The verbs used as auxiliaries in conjugation are haben, *to have;* ſein, *to be;* werden, *to become.* These are employed, as in English, with the perfect (past) participle or infinitive of a verb to form its compound parts. Hence it is necessary that the uses of these verbs as auxiliaries, and their conjugation, should be given in advance.

NOTE. — The simple parts of haben, ſein, werden, have been in part given already, with some of their auxiliary uses. But for convenient reference, or for review, they are repeated in the paradigms § 175, § 181, § 190.

169. REMARK. — 1. Remember that haben, ſein, werden are themselves verbs, which are often used independently, as well as in their auxiliary function. The two uses should always be distinguished.

2. Remember, also, that the auxiliary is itself the *verb*, or *asserting* part, of every compound verb form. As in English, for example, *I shall go: shall* is the (auxiliary) verb, *go* the infinitive object; *I am loved: am* is the (auxiliary) verb, *loved* the participle complement.

NOTE. — This remark is important, to correct the false habit of considering such forms as made up of *an auxiliary and a verb.* Such is never the case.

3. Hence, whatever rules are given for *the verb* will apply, in the compound forms, to the auxiliary, or finite, part thereof.

170. As has been seen, in compound (auxiliary) verb forms, the participle or infinitive stands at the end of the clause. If a participle and an infinitive are combined, the infinitive will stand last. (§ 163.)

But special circumstances may require the auxiliary verb itself to stand at the end, as will be seen hereafter. (§ 177.)

THE AUXILIARY haben.

171. Haben is used, as auxiliary, with the perfect participle of all transitive and some intransitive verbs to form the whole system of perfect tenses. Its use is the same as that of *have* in English, except that it is not so generally extended to intransitives. Each form of the perfect is made by employing the corresponding part of the auxiliary. Thus:

1. The present perfect — or perfect tense — by the present tense of haben; as, ich habe gehabt, *I have had;* ich habe geliebt, *I have loved*, etc.
2. The past perfect — or pluperfect tense — by the past tense of haben, as, ich hatte gehabt, *I had had;* ich hatte geliebt, *I had loved*, etc.
3. The infinitive perfect, by the infinitive of haben; as, gehabt haben, *to have had;* geliebt haben, *to have loved*, etc.
4. As will be seen § 173, *a*, the perfect infinitive is used in forming the perfect of the future and conditional; as in English: *I shall—have loved; I should—have loved*, etc.

And similarly for the subjunctive forms.

NOTE. — It thus appears that haben as auxiliary is used in the conjugation of haben as an active verb.

THE AUXILIARY ſein.

172. Sein is used as auxiliary with the perfect participle to form the perfect tenses of some intransitive verbs. This use was formerly much more extended in English than at present; for example, *I am come*, for *I have come*.

NOTE. — Sein is not used with the present participle as in English: *I am reading*, etc. These forms are expressed by simple tenses of the verb.

As in the case of haben, each perfect form is made by employing the corresponding part of the auxiliary; thus:

1. The present perfect—or perfect tense; ich bin gekommen, *I have* (*am*) *come;* ich bin geworden, *I have* (*am*) *become*, etc.
3. The past perfect — or pluperfect; ich war gekommen, *I had* (*was*) *come;* ich war geworden, *I had* (*was*) *become*, etc.
3. The infinitive perfect — gekommen ſein, *to have* (*be*) *come;* geworden ſein, *to have* (*be*) *become*, etc. And this form is used, as above, in forming the perfect future and conditional.

NOTE. — The verb ſein forms its perfect tenses by the use of ſein as auxiliary; as, ich bin geweſen, *I have been:* literally, *I am been*, etc. So, also, does werden. For other verbs taking ſein, see §§ 297, 298.

THE AUXILIARY **werden.**

173. Werden is used as auxiliary with the infinitive of all verbs to form the future and conditional tenses.

1. The future, by the present tense of werden and the infinitive present; as, ich werde haben, *I shall have;* ſie werden ſein, *they will be*, etc.

   (*a*) The future perfect, by the same form with the infinitive perfect; as, ich werde gehabt haben, *I shall have had;* ſie werden geweſen ſein, *they will have been.*
2. The conditional, by the past subjunctive of werden, with the infinitive present; as, ich würde haben, *I should have;* ſie würden ſein, *they would be*, etc.

   (*a*) The conditional perfect by the same form with the infinitive perfect; as, ich würde gehabt haben, *I should have had;* ſie würden geweſen ſein, *they would have been*, etc.

The conditional is thus, by its form, a past (or imperfect) subjunctive of the future.

NOTE. — It thus appears that werden in its auxiliary uses with the infinitive corresponds to the English auxiliaries *shall, will; should, would,* respectively, according to persons. But this is true only when these words are used as mere future or conditional auxiliaries, in certain persons. When used outside of these persons, in their original proper meaning —

as, *you shall go*, *I will arise*, *he should not act thus*, etc. — these words are not represented by werden, but by ſollen, *shall*, and wollen, *will* (Less. XXVI).

174. Werden is also combined, in all its parts, with the perfect participle of transitive verbs to form the complete passive conjugation. (Lesson XXVII.)

REMARK. — Hence, for the conjugation of any verb, it is only necessary to know the *simple parts*, and whether haben or ſein is the auxiliary of the perfect tenses. All the compound parts can then be formed by general rules, as above. But in the following paradigms, for convenience of study or reference, the full conjugation is exhibited, as usual.

LESSON XIV.

THE (AUXILIARY) VERB **haben**, *to have.*

175. REMARK. — 1. The forms of translation given in the paradigm are sometimes only representative. In English, for example, there are auxiliary forms of tense which do not exist in German; as, *I do have*, *am having*, etc. The infinitive is translated sometimes *to have*, sometimes *have*, or *having*. In these cases the most usual forms only are given.

2. In the subjunctive especially there is no form in English that suffices to represent, or even to suggest, its various uses in German — the subjunctive itself being rarely used in English, except in the verb *to be*. The forms here given are therefore only some of the many forms of translation.

NOTE. — The infinitives and participles are given first, because they are to some extent used in the following conjugation. The perfect infinitive also shows whether haben or ſein is used as the perfect auxiliary. The pres. part. always adds -d; the perf. part. and the past tense, which are sometimes variable, are counted, with the infinitive, as the *principal parts* of the verb.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
haben, *to have.*	habend, *having.*
PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.
gehabt, *had.*	gehabt haben, *to have had.*

Indicative Mood.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
PRESENT TENSE.	
ich habe, *I have.*	ich habe, *I (may) have.*
du haſt, *thou hast.*	du habeſt, *thou (mayst) have.*
er hat, *he has.*	er habe, *he (may) have.*
wir haben, *we have.*	wir haben, *we (may) have.*
ihr habt, *you have.*	ihr habet, *you (may) have.*
ſie haben, *they have.**	ſie haben, *they (may) have.*
PAST TENSE.	
ich hatte, *I had.*	ich hätte, *I had*, or, *might have.*
du hatteſt, *thou hadst.*	du hätteſt, *thou*, etc.
er hatte, *he had.*	er hätte, *he*, etc.
wir hatten, *we had.*	wir hätten, *we*, etc.
ihr hattet, *you had.*	ihr hättet, *you*, etc.
ſie hatten, *they had.*	ſie hätten, *they*, etc.
PERFECT TENSE.	
ich habe gehabt, *I have had.*	ich habe gehabt, *I (may) have had.*
du haſt gehabt, *thou hast had.*	du habeſt gehabt, *thou*, etc.
er hat gehabt, *he has had.*	er habe gehabt, *he*, etc.
wir haben gehabt, *we have had.*	wir haben gehabt, *we*, etc.
ihr habt gehabt, *you have had.*	ihr habet gehabt, *you*, etc.
ſie haben gehabt, *they have had.*	ſie haben gehabt, *they*, etc.
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
ich hatte gehabt, *I had had.*	ich hätte gehabt, (*if*) *I had had.*
du hatteſt gehabt, *thou hadst had.*	du hätteſt gehabt, *thou*, etc.
er hatte gehabt, *he had had.*	er hätte gehabt, *he*, etc.
wir hatten gehabt, *we had had.*	wir hätten gehabt, *we*, etc.
ihr hattet gehabt, *you had had.*	ihr hättet gehabt, *you*, etc.
ſie hatten gehabt, *they had had.*	ſie hätten gehabt, *they*, etc.

---

* As heretofore, the form Sie haben, *you have*, is to be understood.

FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative Mood.		*Subjunctive Mood.*	
ich werde haben,	*I shall have.*	ich werde haben,	*I shall have.*
du wirſt haben,	*thou wilt have.*	du werdeſt haben,	*thou wilt have.*
er wird haben,	*he will have.*	er werde haben,	*he will have.*
wir werden haben,	*we shall have.*	wir werden haben,	*we shall have.*
ihr werdet haben,	*you will have.*	ihr werdet haben,	*you will have.*
ſie werden haben,	*they will have.*	ſie werden haben,	*they will have.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde	gehabt haben,	*I shall have had.*	ich werde	gehabt haben,	*I shall have had.*
du wirſt		*thou wilt*, etc.	du werdeſt		*thou wilt*, etc.
er wird		*he will*, etc.	er werde		*he will*, etc.
wir werden		*we shall*, etc.	wir werden		*we shall*, etc.
ihr werdet		*you will*, etc.	ihr werdet		*you will*, etc.
ſie werden		*they will*, etc.	ſie werden		*they will*, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde haben, *I should have.*
du würdeſt haben, *thou wouldst have.*
er würde haben, *he would have.*

wir würden haben, *we should have.*
ihr würdet haben, *you would have.*
ſie würden haben, *they would have.*

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gehabt haben, *I should have had.*
du würdeſt gehabt haben, *thou wouldst have had.*
er würde gehabt haben, *he would have had.*

wir würden gehabt haben, *we should have had.*
ihr würdet gehabt haben, *you would have had.*
ſie würden gehabt haben, *they would have had.*

Imperative Mood.

	haben wir, *let us have.*
habe (du), *have* (*thou*).	habt (ihr), *have* (*ye*).
habe er, *let him have.*	haben ſie, *let them have.**

176. REMARK.—1. Of these forms, only those of the second person are properly imperative. The others are subjunctive, but are, for convenience, added to the paradigm. In the imperative proper the subject is usually omitted.

2. An infinitive may be directly preceded by the preposition zu, *to:* zu haben; gehabt zu haben. This form, sometimes called *the supine*, answers very nearly to the corresponding English form. So, after verbs, except modals and a few others.

177. **First Rules of Position.**

1. In the *normal* order of words the verb stands next after the subject, as in the paradigm.
2. In a question, in the imperative, and usually when the subjunctive is used as imperative, the verb stands before the subject; as, habe ich, *have I?* habe (du) Geduld, *have* (*thou*) *patience;* habe er Geduld, *let him have patience*, etc.
3. The same order occurs when an *inversion* takes place (see § 165); as, morgen werde ich einen Feiertag haben, *to-morrow I shall have a holiday*, etc.
4. But in a dependent clause, the verb is *transposed* to the end of the clause. Such are clauses beginning with daß, *that;* wenn, *if*, and other subordinate connectives generally: der Lehrer ſagt, daß ich morgen einen Feiertag haben werde, *the teacher says that I shall have a holiday to-morrow;* ich würde morgen einen Feiertag haben, wenn ich heute meine Aufgaben gemacht hätte, *I should have a holiday to-morrow if I had done my lessons to-day.* (See § 338).

---

* See * p. 30. In the polite form of the imperative Sie, though used for the second person, is always expressed; as, haben Sie die Güte, *have the kindness*, etc.

REMARK.—The position of the verb in *inverted*, as also in *transposed order*, is of so much importance, and so unlike the English, that the student should be frequently required to recite the paradigms in these forms; as for example:

then I should have, etc.

dann würde ich haben.	dann würden wir haben.
dann würdeſt du haben.	dann würdet ihr haben.
dann würde er haben.	dann würden ſie haben.

if I had had, etc.

wenn ich gehabt hätte.	wenn wir gehabt hätten.
wenn du gehabt hätteſt.	wenn ihr gehabt hättet.
wenn er gehabt hätte.	wenn ſie gehabt hätten.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

178. The following prepositions always govern the accusative case:—

durch, *through*, *by*.	ohne, *without*.
für, *for*.	um, *around*, *about*.
gegen, *towards*, *against*.	wider, *against*.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN SOMETIMES THE DATIVE, AND SOMETIMES THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

179. The following prepositions govern sometimes the dative, and sometimes the accusative case. They govern the dative in expressions of position, or motion *in a place*; the accusative whenever direction, extent, action upon an object, change of position or motion *to a place* is expressed or implied. — Examples: Ich ſitze auf einem weichen Stuhle, *I sit upon a soft chair*. Ich ſetze mich auf einen weichen Stuhl, *I seat myself on a soft chair*. Das Bild hängt an der Wand, *the picture is hanging on the wall*. Ich hänge das Bild an die Wand, *I hang the picture up on the wall.* Er geht vor das Tor, *he goes (out) in front of the gate.* Er geht vor dem Tore auf und ab, *he walks up and down before the gate.*

an, *at, on.*
auf, *on, upon, at.*
hinter, *behind.*
in, *in, into.*
neben, *beside.*
über, *over, above, beyond, about.*
unter, *under, below, among.*
vor, *before, ago.*
zwiſchen, *between.*

VOCABULARY.

PRESENT TENSE OF **legen**, *to lay.*

Singular. — ich leg**e**, du leg**ſt**, er leg**t**.
Plural. — wir leg**en**, ihr leg**t**, ſie leg**en**.

liegen, *to lie.*
ſetzen, *to set, seat.*
ſitzen, *to sit.*
ſtehen, *to stand.*
ſtellen, *to place.*
reiten, *to ride.*
er reitet, *he rides.*
warum, *why.*
ſich, *himself, themselves.*
viel, *much.*
mehr, *more* (indecl.).

gelegt, *laid.*
geſetzt, *set, seated.*
gekauft, *bought.*
gemacht, *made, done.*
geſtellt, *placed.*
gefunden, *found.*
gegeben, *given.*
geſchrieben, *written.*
geſehen, *seen.*
gegangen, *gone.*
gekommen, *come.*

180. Some Uses of the Subjunctive.

1. Observe that the past or pluperfect subjunctive is used in expressing a condition, when stated as *unreal*, in *present* or *past* time respectively. Ex. 9, 10, below.

2. Observe that the subjunctive is also used in *indirect speech* — that is, in a statement made on the authority of another—the tense remaining that of the speaker. Ex. 11, 12, below.

EXERCISE XIV.

1. Das Kind ſitzt auf einem kleinen Stuhle. 2. Er ſetzt das Kind auf einen hohen Stuhl. 3. Meine Brüder ſtehen vor der Türe. 4. Unſere Freunde ſtellen ſich (*themselves*) vor die Türe. 5. Die Bücher liegen auf dem Tiſche. 6. Ich lege die Bücher auf den Tiſch. 7. Der Knabe ſitzt auf der Bank neben ſeiner Schweſter. 8. Ich ſetze das Kind auf die Bank neben deine Schweſter. 9. Wir würden heute mehr Vergnügen haben, wenn wir ſchöneres Wetter hätten (*had*). 10. Sie würden mehr Zeit gehabt haben, wenn ſie nicht zu lange auf der Bibliothek geſchrieben hätten. 11. Er ſagt, daß ſein Bruder viel Vergnügen gehabt habe. 12. Der Schüler ſagte, daß er dieſes Buch in der Schulſtube gefunden habe (*had*). 13. Der Vater hat eine neue Uhr für ſeinen jüngſten Sohn gekauft. 14. Die Engländer haben viele Kriege gegen die Franzoſen gehabt. 15. Die Schüler haben ſich um den Lehrer geſetzt. 16. Der Knabe hat das große Buch auf die hohe Bank gelegt. 17. Wir werden morgen viel Vergnügen haben. 18. Wir würden geſtern viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, wenn wir mehr Zeit gehabt hätten. 19. Heute werden wir einen Feiertag haben. 20. Warum ſtellt der Knabe das Gemälde hinter die Tür? 21. Habe Geduld, mein liebes Kind. 22. Wir werden Zeit haben, wenn wir Geduld haben. 23. Ohne meine Freunde würde ich kein Vergnügen haben. 24. Die Soldaten reiten durch die ganze Stadt.

1. The boy sits upon a high chair. 2. The scholars seat themselves on the benches of the school-room. 3. He rides behind his father. 4. The soldiers ride into the town. 5. We lay the books upon the table. 6. The child is sitting under the table. 7. A little garden is before the house. 8. He sits beside his sister. 9. He has placed the chair against (an) the wall. 10. Potsdam lies between the towns [of] Berlin and Brandenburg. 11. This boy says that he has (*subj.*) a gold watch. 12. He would have had more pleasure if he had had more patience. 13. We should have much pleasure if we had

no school. 14. The boy climbs upon the high bench behind his father. 15. The little child sits upon the bench beside its mother. 16. I should be glad if I had a gold watch. 17. You would have a better opinion of (von) this general if you had seen him (ihn) with his soldiers in the last war. 18. The last war of the Prussians was against the French. 19. Shall we have a ^{2}holiday to-^{1}morrow if we have good weather? 20. The teacher says that we shall have a holiday if we have done our lessons. 21. Have patience, my dear little brother; you (du) have time. 22. Yesterday we should have had more pleasure if we had had more time. 23. The soldiers ride with the general through the longest streets of the town. 24. The best scholar has written this exercise without a mistake.

REMARK.— The teacher will use discretion as to dividing the exercises or lessons, according to the grade of pupils or the necessity for review, etc.

The special vocabularies, which have thus far given, for practice, a part of the words used in the exercises, will hereafter be omitted. It is desirable that the student should learn, as soon as possible, to use a general vocabulary.

LESSON XV.

181. THE (AUXILIARY) VERB **ſein,** *to be.*

PRES. PART. — ſeiend, *being.* PERF. PART. — geweſen, *been.*

PERFECT INFINITIVE—geweſen ſein, *to have been.*

PRESENT.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
ich bin, *I am.*	ich ſei, *I be.* (§175.)
du biſt, *thou art.*	du ſeieſt, *thou be.*
er iſt, *he is.*	er ſei, *he be.*
wir ſind, *we are.*	wir ſeien, *we be.*
ihr ſeid, *you are.*	ihr ſeiet, *you be.*
ſie ſind, *they are.*	ſie ſeien, *they be.*

---

* Sein is contracted for ſeien (§ 75).

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
PAST.	
ich war, *I was.*	ich wäre, (*if*) *I were.*
du warſt, *thou wast.*	du wäreſt, *thou wert.*
er war, *he was.*	er wäre, *he were.*
wir waren, *we were.*	wir wären, *we were.*
ihr war(e)t, *you were.*	ihr wäret, *you were.*
ſie waren, *they were.*	ſie wären, *they were.*
PERFECT.	
ich bin geweſen, *I have been.*	ich ſei geweſen, *I* (*may*) *have been.*
du biſt geweſen, *thou hast been.*	du ſeieſt geweſen, *thou have been.*
er iſt geweſen, *he has been.*	er ſei geweſen, *he have been.*
wir ſind geweſen, *we have been.*	wir ſeien geweſen, *we have been.*
ihr ſeid geweſen, *you have been.*	ihr ſeiet geweſen, *you have been.*
ſie ſind geweſen, *they have been.*	ſie ſeien geweſen, *they have been.*
PLUPERFECT.	
ich war geweſen, *I had been.*	ich wäre geweſen, *I had been.*
du warſt geweſen, *thou hadst been.*	du wäreſt geweſen, *thou hadst been.*
er war geweſen, *he had been.*	er wäre geweſen, *he had been.*
wir waren geweſen, *we had been.*	wir wären geweſen, *we had been.*
ihr war(e)t geweſen, *you had been.*	ihr wäret geweſen, *you had been.*
ſie waren geweſen, *they had been.*	ſie wären geweſen, *they had been.*
FUTURE.	
ich werde ſein, *I shall be.*	ich werde ſein, *I shall be.*
du wirſt ſein, *thou wilt be.*	du werdeſt ſein, *thou wilt be.*
er wird ſein, *he will be.*	er werde ſein, *he will be.*
wir werden ſein, *we shall be.*	wir werden ſein, *we shall be.*
ihr werdet ſein, *you will be.*	ihr werdet ſein, *you will be.*
ſie werden ſein, *they will be.*	ſie werden ſein, *they will be.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indicative.			*Subjunctive.*		
ich werde	geweſen ſein,	*I shall have been.*	ich werde	geweſen ſein,	*I shall have been.*
du wirſt		*thou wilt*, etc.	du werdeſt		*thou wilt*, etc.
er wird		*he will*, etc.	er werde		*he will*, etc.
wir werden		*we shall*, etc.	wir werden		*he shall*, etc.
ihr werdet		*you will*, etc.	ihr werdet		*you will*, etc.
ſie werden		*they will*, etc.	ſie werden		*they will*, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde ſein, *I should be.*	wir würden ſein, *we should be.*
du würdeſt ſein, *thou wouldst be.*	ihr würdet ſein, *you would be.*
er würde ſein, *he would be.*	ſie würden ſein, *they would be.*

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde geweſen ſein, *I should have been.*
du würdeſt geweſen ſein, *thou wouldst have been.*
er würde geweſen ſein, *he would have been.*

wir würden geweſen ſein, *we should have been.*
ihr würdet geweſen ſein, *you would have been.*
ſie würden geweſen ſein, *they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
	ſeien wir, *let us be.*
ſei (du), *be (thou).*	ſeid (ihr), *be (ye).*
ſei er, *let him be.*	ſeien ſie, *let them be.* (See § 176.)

ſeien Sie, *be.*

Inflect as in the *inverted* and *transposed* order:

da werde ich ſein, *there I shall be.*	da bin ich geweſen, *there I have been.*
da wirſt du ſein, *there thou wilt be.*	da biſt du geweſen, *there thou hast been.*
da wird er ſein, *there he will be.*	da iſt er geweſen, *there he has been.*
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

daß ich (da) ſein werde, *that I shall be (there.)*	wenn ich (da) geweſen wäre, *if I had been (there)*.
daß du (da) ſein wirſt, *that thou wilt be (there)*, etc.	wenn du (da) geweſen wäreſt, *if thou hadst been (there)*, etc.

182. Declension of the Personal Pronouns.

Singular.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.
N.	ich, *I.*	du, *thou.*
G.	meiner, *of me.*	deiner, *of thee.*
D.	mir, (*to*) *me.*	dir, (*to*) *thee.*
A.	mich, *me.*	dich, *thee.*

THIRD PERSON.

	masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*
N.	er, *he.*	ſie, *she.*	es, *it.*
G.	ſeiner, *of him.*	ihrer, *of her.*	[ſeiner, *of it.*]
D.	ihm, (*to*) *him.*	ihr, (*to*) *her.*	[ihm, (*to*) *it.*]
A.	ihn, *him.*	ſie, *her.*	es, *it.*

Plural.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
N.	wir, *we.*	ihr, *you, ye.*	ſie, *they.*
G.	unſer, *of us.*	euer, *of you.*	ihrer, *of them.*
D.	uns, (*to*) *us.*	euch, (*to*) *you.*	ihnen, (*to*) *them.*
A.	uns, *us.*	euch, *you.*	ſie, *them.*

Also, for singular or plural persons:

N. Sie, *you.*	D. Ihnen, (*to*) *you.*
G. Ihrer, *of you.*	A. Sie, *you.*

(*a*) In the singular genitive the shorter forms — mein, dein, ſein — are sometimes used in poetry and in familiar phrase; and in the plural genitive sometimes the longer forms — unſrer and eurer (contracted for unſerer and euerer). But the pronoun genitives are, in general, only rarely used.

NOTE.—1. Bear in mind that a noun will be referred to by er, ſie, es, according to its gender. For exception, see § 452, *a.*

2. For special uses of es, as impersonal, introductory, or *expletive* subject, corresponding to *it*, *they*, *there*, etc., see § 453.

183. The genitive and dative forms of the third person are rarely used of *things*, their meaning being usually supplied by a demonstrative pronoun (§ 208, note).

184. Instead of a dative or accusative of the third person, referring to *things*, with a preposition, the adverb da, *there* (before a vowel, and sometimes before n, dar), is usually compounded with the preposition; as: damit′, *therewith, with it or them;* dafür′, *therefor, for it or them;* dage′gen; davon′; darin′; darauf′; danach′ or darnach′, etc. Also, before r, colloquially: dran, draus, drüber, etc.

For des (genitive) in like compounds, see § 456, 2.

185. The Reflexive Pronoun.

THIRD PERSON.

Singular and Plural — all genders.

D. ſich, (*to*) *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves.*
A. ſich, " " " ".

Elsewhere the regular forms of the personal pronouns are used reflexively; as, ich ſetze mich, *I seat myself;* ich ſchmeichle mir, *I flatter myself*, etc.

Use of the Pronouns in Address.

186. The German usage herein differs widely from our own. In English the usual form is *you*, etc., for singular or plural persons; *thou*, etc., is restricted to the language of poetry or of devotion (except among the Friends), though it was formerly more widely used. In German, besides these uses, du, etc., is used also in familiar address; as, to members of the family, to most intimate friends, to children, to animals, etc.; sometimes also to express contempt (as formerly in English). In such cases du is not properly translated by *thou*.

187. In all cases where du is properly used in the singular, the second person plural ihr, etc., is to be used in addressing more than one person; but only in such cases.

188. But the usual mode of addressing one or more persons (except in the cases above noted) is by the third person plural, which is then written, except in the reflexive form, with a capital initial letter (§ 182). Thus: Wo ſind ſie geweſen, *where have they been?* Wo ſind Sie geweſen, *where have you been?* Observe that the verb is always plural.

In the same way are used also the corresponding forms of the possessive and reflexive; as, Ihr, *your*, etc. Wie befinden Sie ſich, *how are you?* (See § 63).

189. Other forms sometimes occur. The third person singular — Er and Sie — and the second person plural — Ihr — were likewise at one time in use for addressing a single individual. The last occurs especially in the formal drama; and often as sign of respect, in addressing superiors. See § 63 note.

NOTE. — 1. Remember, that the limits of du and ihr, etc., are very closely drawn in German society. No worse mistake could occur than to use them out of place. Hence, hereafter, the form Sie, etc., should be carefully used in all exercises, unless other forms are clearly required.

2. It would, however, be an error to teach these third plural forms as alternative forms of the second person. The usage is purely idiomatic — or conventional — as in English *you* for *thou*.

3. Care must be taken to avoid ambiguity in the pronoun forms. The use of a capital letter is distinctive only to the eye, and not even this, when the pronoun begins the sentence. — Note, too, that the third person plural forms belong, in part, also to the feminine singular.

4. *Be careful always, in the same context, to use the same or corresponding forms of the pronoun for the same persons.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. Seid ſtiller, meine Kleinen. 2. Habt Geduld, ihr Kinder. 3. Lieber Vetter, ſei ſo gut und ſetze dich auf dieſe Bank. 4. Seien Sie ſo gut, Herr Graf, und ſetzen Sie ſich auf dieſen Stuhl. 5. Der Feldherr reitet in die Stadt; ein Soldat reitet mit ihm. 6. Unſere Freunde ſtehen um uns. 7. Ich habe nichts dagegen. 8. Seid fleißig, und ihr werdet die Freude eurer Eltern ſein. 9. Mein Onkel iſt ein wohlhabender Mann. 10. Mein Vater hat mir einen neuen Hut gekauft. 11. Ich werde Ihnen ein ſchärferes Meſſer geben. 12. Morgen werde ich mit Ihnen nach der Stadt reiten, [meine] Herren. 13. Die Knaben würden nicht in der Schule ſein, wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre. 14. Dieſe Äpfel würden ſchon reif ſein, wenn das Wetter nicht ſo kalt geweſen wäre. 15. Der Lehrer ſagt, daß er mit ſeinem Schüler zufrieden ſei. 16. Er würde mit dieſem Schüler noch zufriedener ſein, wenn er fleißiger wäre. 17. Wir würden geſtern hier geweſen ſein, wenn unſere Mutter nicht krank geweſen wäre. 18. Die Frau ſagt, daß ihr alter Onkel ſehr reich ſei. 19. Meine Tante hat eine goldene Uhr für meine Schweſter gekauft. 20. Die Soldaten ſind durch die Stadt gekommen. 21. Die Kinder ſind um die ganze Stadt gegangen. 22. Würden die Kinder um die ganze Stadt gegangen ſein, wenn ſie krank geweſen wären? 23. Was hat er gegen ſeinen Onkel? 24. Er hat nichts gegen ihn.

1. Be patient, my children. 2. Be quiet, my little [ones]. 3. My father has given me* a new knife. 4. Have you anything against it? 5. What have you against it? 6. Have patience with him, dear brother. 7. Have patience with us, most gracious count. 8. Honour be to the king. 9. The soldiers ride with me into the town. 10. The general says that he will be here to-morrow. 11. Here is my old knife;

---

*Note again the indirect object, with or without the preposition in English — in German the simple dative — preceding the adjective in (13).

dear brother, be so good *and give* (gib) me a new [one] for it. 12. My aunt would have been present if her children had not been so impatient. 13. Be merciful to (*dat.*) us, O Lord. 14. My brother would have been in (the) school if the weather had been fine. 15. The old lady says, that her uncle is (*subj.*) much richer than the young count. 16. The air would be warmer, if the sky were not covered with clouds. 17. What have you against the count? 18. I have nothing against the man. 19. This gentleman says, that he has bought a gold watch for his little son. 20. The pupils have (*are*) gone with their teacher around the town. 21. The professors have gone with the students through the wood. 22. The fields would be already green if (the) spring were not so late. 23. I should have been at home earlier if I had not been so tired. 24. The apples would be ripe if the weather had been warmer.

LESSON XVI.

190. THE (AUXILIARY) VERB **werden,** *to become.*

In the singular of the past indicative werden has two forms: — ward being the older form — wurde, now in more general use.

Observe also that werden, in the future and conditional, is its own auxiliary, and has ſein in its perfect tenses.

NOTE. — For werden as the equivalent of *shall*, *will*, etc., see § 173, note.

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PERF. PART.
werden, *to become.*	werdend, *becoming.*	geworden, *become.*

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

geworden ſein, *to have become.*

PRESENT.

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
I become, etc.		*I (may) become*,* etc.	
ich werde.	wir werden.	ich werde.	wir werden.
du wirſt.	ihr werdet.	du werdeſt.	ihr werdet.
er wird.	ſie werden.	er werde.	ſie werden.

PAST.

I became, etc.	*I (might) become*, etc.
ich wurde, or ich ward.	ich würde.
du wurdeſt, or du wardſt.	du würdeſt.
er wurde, or er ward.	er würde.
wir wurden.	wir würden.
ihr wurdet.	ihr würdet.
ſie wurden.	ſie würden.

PERFECT.

I have become, etc.	*I (may) have become*, etc.
ich bin geworden.	ich ſei geworden.
du biſt geworden.	du ſeieſt geworden.
er iſt geworden.	er ſei geworden.
wir ſind geworden.	wir ſeien geworden.
ihr ſeid geworden.	ihr ſeiet geworden.
ſie ſind geworden.	ſie ſeien geworden.

PLUPERFECT.

I had become, etc.	*I (might) have become*, etc.
ich war geworden.	ich wäre geworden.
du warſt geworden.	du wäreſt geworden.
er war geworden.	er wäre geworden.
wir waren geworden.	wir wären geworden.
ihr waret geworden.	ihr wäret geworden.
ſie waren geworden.	ſie wären geworden.

---

* See remark, § 175, 2, on translation of the subjunctive forms.

FUTURE.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
I shall become, etc.	*I shall become*, etc.
ich werde werden.	ich werde werden.
du wirſt werden.	du werdeſt werden.
er wird werden.	er werde werden.
wir werden werden.	wir werden werden.
ihr werdet werden.	ihr werdet werden.
ſie werden werden.	ſie werden werden.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have become, etc.	*I shall have become*, etc.
ich werde geworden ſein.	ich werde geworden ſein.
du wirſt geworden ſein.	du werdeſt geworden ſein.
er wird geworden ſein.	er werde geworden ſein.
etc.	etc.

CONDITIONAL.	CONDITIONAL PERFECT.
I should become, etc.	*I should have become*, etc.
ich würde werden.	ich würde geworden ſein.
du würdeſt werden.	du würdeſt geworden ſein.
er würde werden.	er würde geworden ſein.
etc.	etc.

IMPERATIVE.

become (*thou*), etc.	werden wir.
werde.	werdet.
werde er.	werden ſie (§ 176).

Inflect, as before, for question:

bin ich geworden?	werde ich werden?
have I become?	*shall I become?*

For inversion:

geſtern war ich geworden,	morgen werde ich werden,
yesterday I had become.	*to-morrow I shall become.*

For transposition:

daß ich krank geworden war,	wenn ich krank geworden wäre,
that I had become sick.	*if I had become sick.*
etc.	etc.

Contraction of Prepositions with the Article.

191. The definite article is often contracted with prepositions. The most usual forms are:—

DATIVE SINGULAR.

Masc. or *Neut.*	am	for	an dem,	*at the.*
	beim	"	bei dem,	*by the, near the.*
	im	"	in dem,	*in the.*
	vom	"	von dem,	*from the.*
	zum	"	zu dem,	*to the.*
Fem.	zur	"	zu der,	*to the.*

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Neut.	ans	for	an das,	*to the.*
	aufs	"	auf das,	*upon the.*
	durchs	"	durch das,	*through the.*
	fürs	"	für das,	*for the.*
	ins	"	in das,	*into the.*
	ums	"	um das,	*around the, about the.*

NOTE.—The accusative forms are no longer written with apostrophe. The dative forms sometimes seem to imply the indefinite article—in cases where no article is used in the plural. See § 443, *d.*

Possessive Adjectives.

192. The Possessive Adjectives are:—

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
SINGULAR.	mein,	meine,	mein, *my* (§ 88).
	dein,	deine,	dein, *thy.*
	ſein,	ſeine,	ſein, *his* (*its*).
	ihr,	ihre,	ihr, *her* (*its*).

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
PLURAL.	unſer,	unſ(e)re,	unſer, *our.*
	euer,	eu(e)re,	euer, *your.*
	ihr,	ihre,	ihr, *their.*
	(Ihr)	(Ihre)	(Ihr) *your* (§ 188).

These are declined in the singular like the indefinite article, and in the plural like dieſer. As: mein Vater, meine Mutter, mein Kind, meine Freunde; but see § 127.

Possessive Pronouns.

193. When the possessives are used as pronouns (as in English, *mine*, *ours*, etc.), they take the full endings of dieſer, like the strong declension of adjectives, if used alone; or of the weak declension of adjectives, if preceded by the definite article. The forms will then be such as:

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*	
	N.	meiner,	meine,	meines,	*mine,*
	G.	meines,	meiner,	meines,	*of mine,* etc.
or,	N.	der meine,	die meine,	das meine,	
	G.	des meinen,	der meinen,	des meinen, etc.	
Similarly,		deiner,	deine,	deines,	*thine.*
		unſ(e)rer,	unſ(e)re,	unſ(e)res,	*ours.*
		eu(e)rer,	eu(e)re,	eu(e)res,	*yours,* etc.
or,		der ihre,	die ihre,	das ihre,	*theirs.*
		der Ihre,	die Ihre,	das Ihre,	*yours,* etc.

Examples: Dieſes iſt mein (adj.) Buch; Ihres, or das Ihre (pron.) iſt dort. *This is my book; yours is there.* Wem gehört dieſes Buch? *To whom does this book belong?* Es iſt mein, or das meine, *it is mine.*

NOTE. — Das Buch iſt mein, or das meine (rarely meines) — the former is simply predicative; the latter, distinctive (from *yours*, etc.) or emphatic.

2. The possessive pronouns have the same form as the genitive of the personal pronouns; the possessive adjectives, as the shorter forms of the same. (§ 182.)

194. A possessive pronoun, of recent origin, is formed from the possessive adjective by adding the suffix ig. These forms can be used only with the definite article, and are generally employed when the definite article is used. The inflection is that of the weak adjective.

der, die, das meinige, *mine.*	der, die, das unſrige, *ours.*
der, die, das deinige, *thine.*	der, die, das eurige, *yours.*
der, die, das ſeinige, *his* (*its*).	der, die, das ihrige, *theirs.*
der, die, das ihrige, *hers* (*its*).	(der, die, das Ihrige, *yours.*)

EXERCISE XVI.

1. Der Baum wird grün. 2. Ich bin jung geweſen und bin alt geworden. 3. Werdet nicht ungeduldig. 4. Was iſt aus ihm geworden? 5. Was wird aus mir werden? 6. Die Frau ſagt, daß ſie arm geworden ſei. 7. Dieſe Äpfel würden reif werden, wenn das Wetter nicht ſo kalt wäre. 8. Ich würde ſein Freund geworden ſein, wenn ich mit ihm bekannt geworden wäre. 9. Der Knabe war ſehr groß geworden. 10. Das Wetter wurde ſchön. 11. Die Kinder werden ſchläfrig. 12. Es wird Nacht. 13. Der Knabe wird ein Mann werden. 14. Der beſte Gaſthof in unſerer Stadt iſt am Tore. 15. Die größten Häuſer der Stadt ſind am Markte. 16. Der Kranke liegt im Bette. 17. Kind, es iſt Zeit zur Schule zu gehen. 18. Der Graf ſteht am Fenſter. 19. Iſt dieſer Hund dein? Er iſt der meinige. 20. Wo iſt das Haus Ihres Onkels? 21. Es iſt neben dem meinigen. 22. Unſere Stühle ſind weicher als die Ihrigen. 23. Iſt dein deutſcher Lehrer in der Schulſtube? 24. Er iſt in unſerem Garten.

1. The trees become green. 2. The man became rich. 3. The air *has* become cold. 4. We *shall* grow sleepy. 5. What

would have become of (aus) me if you *had* not been my friend? 6. Your sons have grown very tall. 7. In (the) spring the days grow longer, but in autumn they grow (*invert*) shorter. 8. What has become of my boots? 9. The oldest and best hotel is on the market-place. 10. Do not grow impatient, my dear boy. 11. The leaves of the trees become yellow in (the) autumn. 12. The industrious poor [man] will become rich. 13. He says, that his brother has fallen (*become*) ill. 14. The youngest child will some day become an old man. 15. The sick (§ 140) lie in (the) bed. 16. Frederick was great in peace and in war (§ 73, *b*, 3). 17. The richest man would become poor in our most expensive hotels. 18. Children become quiet in (the) sleep. 19. This little dog is ours. 20. My brother is taller than yours. 21. Your father is older than mine. 22. Our orchard is larger than yours. 23. Your brothers are more industrious than ours. 24. It is-getting (*becoming*) colder (§ 172, note).

NOTE. — The materials of the exercises will now suffice for conversational exercises of considerable extent and interest. Each teacher will, of course, judge of the importance of such exercises for his own pupils. An easy German Reader might also, with some help from the teacher, be now begun.

LESSON XVII.

The Conjugation of Verbs.

195. There are two distinct conjugations of verbs, the *strong* and the *weak*. The former is sometimes called the *old* and the latter the *new* conjugation.

196. Verbs of the strong conjugation form their past tense, and usually their perfect participle, by changing the vowel of the root; they undergo an *internal* change. For example: ſingen, *to sing;* ich ſang, *I sang;* ich habe geſungen, *I have sung.*

197. Verbs of the weak conjugation are conjugated by adding suffixes to the stem; they undergo an *external* change only. For example: loben, *to praise;* ich lob–te, *I praised;* ich habe gelob–t, *I have praised.*

198. Weak verbs form their perfect participle in et or t; strong verbs, in en. In both, the perfect participle usually takes the prefix ge–.

199. Strong verbs are, almost all, original German roots. Weak verbs include also derivative and foreign verbs, and represent the modern process in conjugation. Weak verbs are greatly the more numerous. Hence, though not properly, weak verbs are often called *regular*, and strong verbs *irregular.*

NOTE. — 1. The term *strong* here suggests the power of internal change, or of inflection without the aid of suffix; *weak*, the absence of that power. The strong is a primitive method, and belongs only to the oldest root-verbs — except the two Latin derivatives, ſchreiben, *to write*, preiſen, *to praise.*

2. It is plain that these conjugations correspond closely to those in English; as, strong: *give, gave, given; sing, sang, sung,* etc.: weak: *praise, praised, praised; plant, planted, planted,* etc. In English, the perfect participle is always without the prefix *ge–*; and often, also, without the suffix *–en* or *–ed* (or *–d*).

200. A small group of verbs (properly weak, § 253) which undergo vowel change, are sometimes called *mixed* verbs. And a few others may be properly treated as *irregular verbs.*

201. The weak conjugation, because the simplest and of most frequent occurrence, will be given first.

The following are the regular endings of the weak verb:

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PERF. PART.
—en.	—end.	ge—(e)t.

	Ind.	*Subj.*	*Ind.*	*Subj.*
	PRESENT.		PAST.	
Sing.	— e.	—e.	—(e)te.	—(e)te.
	—(e)ſt.	—eſt.	—(e)teſt.	—(e)teſt.
	—(e)t.	—e.	—(e)te.	—(e)te.
Pl.	— en.	—en.	—(e)ten.	—(e)ten.
	—(e)t.	—et.	—(e)tet.	—(e)tet.
	— en.	—en.	—(e)ten.	—(e)ten.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. —e, pl. —(e)t.

(*a*) The use of (e) where so marked, depends mainly on euphony. (See next Lesson.) Generally, the e is more usually retained in the subjunctive — and was also elsewhere more frequent formerly than now.*

(*b*) Observe that the third person singular is like the first person, except in the present indicative; and that in the plural, the first and third persons are always alike.

EXAMPLE OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

INFIN: **Loben,** *to praise.*†

PRES. PART. lobend. PERF. PART. gelobt.

PERF. INFIN. — gelobt haben.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
PRESENT.	
ich lobe, *I praise*, etc.	ich lobe. (See § 175, 2.)
du lobſt. (See § 175, 1.)	du lobeſt.
er lobt.	er lobe.
wir loben.	wir loben.
ihr lobt.	ihr lobet.
ſie loben.	ſie loben.

---

* Only the more usual forms are given in the paradigm. The older forms with e still sometimes occur, especially in poetry or in solemn style.

† As heretofore, the complete paradigm is given for convenient reference, though many of the forms have occurred already.

PAST.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
ich lobte, *I praised*, etc.	ich lob(e)te.
du lobteſt.	du lob(e)teſt.
er lobte.	er lob(e)te.
wir lobten.	wir lob(e)ten.
ihr lobtet.	ihr lob(e)tet.
ſie lobten.	ſie lob(e)ten.

PERFECT.

ich habe gelobt, *I have praised.*	ich habe gelobt.
du haſt gelobt.	du habeſt gelobt.
er hat gelobt.	er habe gelobt.
wir haben gelobt.	wir haben gelobt.
ihr habt gelobt.	ihr habet gelobt.
ſie haben gelobt.	ſie haben gelobt.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gelobt, *I had praised.*	ich hätte gelobt.
du hatteſt gelobt.	du hätteſt gelobt.
er hatte gelobt.	er hätte gelobt.
wir hatten gelobt.	wir hätten gelobt.
ihr hattet gelobt.	ihr hättet gelobt.
ſie hatten gelobt.	ſie hätten gelobt.

FUTURE.

ich werde loben, *I shall praise.*	ich werde loben, *I shall praise.*
du wirſt loben, *thou wilt praise.*	du werdeſt loben, *thou wilt praise.*
er wird loben.	er werde loben.
wir werden loben.	wir werden loben.
ihr werdet loben.	ihr werdet loben.
ſie werden loben.	ſie werden loben.

Future Perfect.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
ich werde gelobt haben, *I shall have praised*, etc.	ich werde gelobt haben, *I shall have praised*, etc.
du wirſt gelobt haben.	du werdeſt gelobt haben.
er wird gelobt haben, etc.	er werde gelobt haben, etc.

Conditional.

ich würde loben, *I should praise.*	wir würden loben.
du würdeſt loben, *thou wouldst*, etc.	ihr würdet loben.
er würde loben.	ſie würden loben.

Conditional Perfect.

ich würde gelobt haben, *I should have praised*, etc.
du würdeſt gelobt haben.
er würde gelobt haben, etc.

Imperative.

	loben wir, *let us praise.*
lobe, *praise* (*thou*). (§176)	lob(e)t, *praise* (*you*).
lobe er, *let him praise.*	loben ſie, *let them praise.*

loben Sie, *praise.*

Inflect for inversion and transposition:

yesterday I praised.	*to-morrow I shall praise.*
geſtern lobte ich, etc.	morgen werde ich loben, etc.
that I praised yesterday.	*if I should praise to-morrow.*
daß ich geſtern lobte, etc.	wenn ich morgen loben würde, etc.

Conjugate like loben:

lieben, *to love.*
leben, *to live.*
lehren, *to teach.*
lernen, *to learn.*
lachen, *to laugh.*
weinen, *to weep, cry.*

ſpielen, *to play.*
ſchicken, *to send.*
kaufen, *to buy.*
ſagen, *to say.*
wünſchen, *to wish.*
hören, *to hear.*

fragen, *to ask, question.*
wohnen, *to dwell, live.*
reiſen, *to travel.*
machen, *to make, to do.*
brauchen, *to need, want.*
zeigen, *to show.*

202. Rules of Position.

1. A pronoun object precedes a noun object.
2. An indirect object usually precedes a direct object.
3. But es precedes any other object, except (often) ſich.
4. An object without a preposition precedes an object with a preposition.
5. An adverb of time precedes an object, except pronouns; other adverbs usually follow an object.
6. An infinitive or participle stands after its modifiers.

203. Remember that the indirect object — in English with or without preposition, according to its position — is expressed in German by the simple dative; as, er gab mir ein Buch, *he gave me a book* (*a book to me*).

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns.

204. These are: —

der, die, das, *that.*
dieſer, dieſe, dieſes, *this* (*here*), *the latter.*
jener, jene, jenes, *that* (*there*), *the former.*
ſolcher, ſolche, ſolches, *such.*
derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, *that.*
derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe, *the same.*

205. Der, dieſer and jener are originally demonstrative adjectives; but they are used both as pronominal adjectives with a noun, and as pronouns standing instead of a noun: *that* or *this one*, *he*, etc.

206. Der, die, das, as adjective, is declined like the article, but is pronounced with a greater stress of voice. As a pronoun, it has the following enlarged forms:

Sing. Gen. deſſen, deren, deſſen, *of him*, *of her*, *of it.*
Plur. Gen. deren or derer, *of those*, *of them.*
Dat. denen, *to those*, *to them.* (§456, 2.)

207. Solcher may be preceded by the indefinite article: ein ſolcher Mann, eine ſolche Frau, ein ſolches Kind, *such a man*, etc. It is indeclinable when it precedes the article, as in English: ſolch ein Menſch, ſolch eine Frau, ſolch ein Kind; or an adjective: ſolch ſchöner Himmel, *such a beautiful sky*.

208. Derjenige and derſelbe decline each component:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*M. F. N.*
N.	derſelbe.	dieſelbe.	dasſelbe.	dieſelben.
G.	desſelben.	derſelben.	desſelben.	derſelben.
D.	demſelben.	derſelben.	demſelben.	denſelben.
A.	denſelben.	dieſelbe.	dasſelbe.	dieſelben.
N.	derjenige.	diejenige.	dasjenige.	diejenigen.
G.	desjenigen.	derjenigen.	desjenigen.	derjenigen.
D.	demjenigen.	derjenigen.	demjenigen.	denjenigen.
A.	denjenigen.	diejenige.	dasjenige.	diejenigen.

NOTE.—1. Der, derſelbe, are frequently used as substitutes for personal pronouns. (See § 457).

2. Derjenige is most regularly used as antecedent to a relative; as derjenige, welcher, *he who*, etc.

209. A compound of da (dar) with prepositions is usual instead of a dative or accusative of the pronoun der, die, das, referring to *things*. (See § 184).

NOTE.—Yet the pronoun may so stand when emphatic—especially when antecedent to was (§ 236, *b*).

210. *This*, *that*, *these*, *those*, immediately preceded or followed by the verb *to be*, are rendered in German by the neuter singular pronoun dieſes (usually dies) and das, the verb agreeing with the following predicate noun. As: Dies iſt eine Roſe und das iſt eine Lilie. Sind dies Kirſchen, *are these cherries?* Das ſind Kartoffeln, *those are potatoes.*

REMARK. — Observe following uses of the subjunctive (as § 180). Also, that the subjunctive is used in *contingent* statements (as in sentence 7).

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Der Lehrer lobt den fleiszigen Schüler. 2. Wir lernen Deutsch. 3. Mein Vater hat ein Haus gekauft. 4. Kinder lieben ihre Eltern. 5. Was sagen Sie dazu? 6. Er sagt, dasz er Französisch und Deutsch gelernt habe. 7. Ich wünsche, dasz mein Sohn Deutsch lerne. 8. Ich bin durch ganz Deutschland gereist. 9. Er lachte. 10. Ihr weintet. 11. Ich werde Ihnen etwas Neues sagen. 12. Ich würde es gesagt haben, wenn Sie es gewünscht hätten. 13. Fragen Sie mich nicht. 14. Wo ist meine deutsche Grammatik? Ich brauche sie. 15. Ich werde es meinem Vater sagen. 16. Spiele nicht mit des Nachbars Kindern. 17. Der König hörte, dasz der berühmte Feldherr krank sei. 18. Diogenes lebte zur Zeit Alexanders. 19. Mein Freund hat mir gesagt, dasz er ein Landgut kaufen werde. 20. Ich würde auch eins (eines, *one*) kaufen, wenn ich Geld dazu hätte. 21. Ist dies Ihr Buch? 22. Es ist das meines Bruders. 23. Sind dies dieselben Schüler, welche (*who*) mit uns in der Schule waren? 24. Es (*they*) sind nicht dieselben.

1. I have asked him. 2. Where does he live (*dwell*)? 3. He lives in the new house near the city-wall. 4. What have you bought? 5. I shall buy a watch. 6. The children cried; we heard them. 7. He does not hear you. 8. Would you buy an estate if you had money? 9. What do you want (*wish*)? 10. I want (*need*) a new hat. 11. We have bought two beautiful pictures. 12. What did he say to that? 13. Do

---

* For practice a few of the Exercises will be provided in Roman type, which is now frequently used in Germany. See § 41, note.

not laugh. 14. If I were a wealthy man, I should (*invert*) send my children to Berlin. 15. There they would learn German. 16. He will send us a fat goose. 17. Show me the house of the doctor. 18. Diligent scholars love their teacher. 19. My mother has said it. 20. What would she have said if she had heard it? 21. Do not ask me. 22. This dictionary is mine. 23. We played with the same children. 24. We use the same grammar as (wie) your teacher.

LESSON XVIII.

Weak Verbs (Continued).

211. Generally speaking, the retention or rejection of the short vowel e in the terminations (e)ſt, (e)t, (e)te, (e)tet, (e)ten, depends on euphony — the e being usually omitted where euphony will permit. (§ 201, *a*.) But there are some instances in which the e must be retained.

NOTE. — Like cases occur in English for like reasons of euphony; as *mended*, *planted*, *mixes*, etc.

212. Verbs whose stem ends in d or t, or in m or n preceded by a mute consonant, always retain the e. Thus:

Reden, *to speak, talk.*

PRESENT.		PAST.	
I speak.		*I spoke, talked.*	
ich rede.	wir reden.	ich redete.	wir redeten.
du redeſt.	ihr redet.	du redeteſt.	ihr redetet.
er redet.	ſie reden.	er redete.	ſie redeten.

PAST PARTICIPLE — geredet, *talked, spoken.*

NOTE. — Contracted forms like red'ſt, red't, etc. are frequent.

213. Verbs whose stem ends in a sibilant (ſ, ß, z, ſch) retain the e always in the second person singular of the present:

ich tanze, *I dance.*	ich reiſe, *I travel.*
du tanzeſt, *thou dancest.*	du reiſeſt, *thou travellest.*
er tanzt, *he dances.*	er reiſt, *he travels.*

214. Verbs whose stem ends in el, er, drop e of the stem before the ending e; elsewhere they drop the e of the inflection, as also in the infinitive (§ 85, note).

Handeln, *to act.*	Rudern, *to row.*
ich handle.	ich rudre.
du handelſt.	du ruderſt.
er handelt.	er rudert.
wir handeln.	wir rudern.
ihr handelt.	ihr rudert.
ſie handeln.	ſie rudern.
handle (du).	rudre (du).
ich habe gehandelt.	ich habe gerudert.

Conjugate like reden:

baden, *to bathe.*
achten, *to esteem, respect.*
warten, *to wait.*
retten, *to save.*
leiten, *to lead.*
atmen, *to breathe.*
tröſten, *to comfort.*
rechnen, *to reckon.*
zeichnen, *to draw.*
öffnen, *to open.*

Like tanzen:

wünſchen, *to wish.*
fiſchen, *to fish.*
ſetzen, *to put, place.*
haſſen, *to hate.*

Like handeln and rudern:

tadeln, *to blame.*
ſchütteln, *to shake.*
lächeln, *to smile.*
ändern, *to alter.*
plaudern, *to chat, talk.*
klettern, *to climb.*

The Perfect Participle.

215. The perfect participle regularly takes the prefix ge– in verbs of all conjugations. This prefix is called the *augment.*

(*a*) But verbs of foreign origin ending in ier'en (old spelling also ir'en), do not take the augment ge–. Thus: ſtudie'ren, *to study;* ſtudie'rt, *studied;* marſchie'ren, *to march;* marſchie'rt, *marched.*

Conjugate like ſtudieren:

regieren, *to rule, govern.*
probieren, *to try.*
bombardieren, *to bombard.*
fallieren, *to fail.*

(*b*) Buchſtabie'ren, *to spell,* is formed from a German word by a foreign suffix, and forms its past participle buchſtabiert'. But in zieren, *to adorn,* ier is not a part of the termination, but of the root of the verb; therefore geziert, *adorned.*

216. Verbs formed with the unaccented inseparable prefixes do not take the augment ge–. These prefixes are be–, emp–, ent–, er–, ge–, ver–, zer–, and some others. (Lesson XXVIII.) Examples: erkau'fen, p. p. erkauft'; verlo'ben, p. p. verlobt', bezeich'nen, p. p. bezeich'net. For accent see § 54.

Note. — In general, the augment is not prefixed except immediately before the syllable having the principal accent.

Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives.

217. These are: —

wer, *who?*
was, *what?*
welcher, welche, welches, *which? what* (adj.)?
was für ein, *what kind of a?*

218. The declension of wer and was is as follows:—

N.	wer, *who?*	was, *what?*
G.	weſſen, *whose?*	weſſen, *to what?*
D.	wem, *to whom?*	(dative is wanting.)
A.	wen, *whom?*	was, *what?*

219. Wer is used in speaking of persons, for both genders and numbers; and was in speaking of inanimate objects. Examples: Wer iſt größer, Karl oder Heinrich? Wer ſind dieſe Frauen? Was haben Sie da? Wer and was are used only as pronouns.

220. Welcher is used both as an adjective and as a pronoun. As an adjective: Welches Haus haben Sie gekauft? As a pronoun: Welches von dieſen Häuſern etc.?

NOTE.—Welch, uninflected, is often used in exclamations before the indefinite article or an adjective, like ſolch (§ 207); as, welch ein Mann! welch reicher Himmel, *what a rich sky!*

221. The phrase was für ein, *what for a, what (kind of)*, is used as an interrogative adjective, in which ein is inflected; as, was für ein Baum iſt das? *what kind of a tree is that?* was für einen Stock haben Sie? *what kind of a cane have you?* Or without ein: was für Wein — Unſinn — Blumen? *what (kind of) wine — nonsense — flowers?*

NOTE.—Was and für (ein) are often separated, as, Was iſt das für ein Stock? Was iſt das für Unſinn?

Was für einer, *what kind of one*, occurs as pronoun.

222. (*a*) Instead of a dative or accusative of was with a preposition, wo, *where*, before a vowel wor, is used in composition: as, wovon, *of what?* wodurch, *through what?* womit, *with what?* worin, *in what?* worauf, *upon what?* (§ 184).

NOTE.—With um, warum, *for what, why?* is used for worum.

Yet a preposition may stand before was für (ein).

(*b*) Likewise the genitive weſſen is rarely used, except of persons. A shorter form, weß, is sometimes met with; in compounds, wes; as, weshalb, *on what account?* (See also Lesson LV.)

IDIOMS.

auf einen warten, *to wait for some one.*
auf etwas rechnen, *to count upon something.*
gern, *with pleasure, willingly.*
ich plaudre gern, *I like to chat.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Ich habe sie* getröstet. 2. Er hat den ganzen Tag gewartet. 3. Dieser Mann redet zu viel. 4. Die Schüler achten ihren Lehrer. 5. Mein Bruder wartet auf seinen Freund. 6. Er rechnet darauf. 7. Er rettete das Kind. 8. Ich schüttle den Baum. 9. Du plauderst zu viel, mein Kind. 10. Der Knabe kletterte auf den Baum. 11. Er tadelte diesen Fehler. 12. Sie zeichnet schlecht. 13. Mein Bruder hat zu (*at*) Heidelberg studiert. 14. Mein armer Nachbar hat falliert. 15. Er lächelte über den Narren. 16. Sie tadelten uns. 17. In wessen Garten sind Sie gewesen? 18. Wir waren in dem (or demjenigen) unseres Nachbars. 19. Was haben Sie getadelt? 20. Wen tadelte der Lehrer? 21. Wessen Haus ist das? 22. Wem hat unser Lehrer dieses Buch geschickt? 23. Wem sagen Sie das? 24. Was für eine Blume haben Sie da?

1. The boys have bathed in the deep river. 2 She has denied it. 3. My daughter comforted the poor woman. 4. Dost thou wait for thy brother? 5. The boys shook the trees. 6. The brave soldier saved the old general. 7. We have waited the whole day. 8. I chat with my children. 9. I smile at (über, *acc.*) the fool. 10. The general has bombarded the town. 11. We have tasted (*tried*) this wine. 12. We opened the door.

---

* *Her*, or *them*. See note 3, § 189. In connected discourse, however, such ambiguities will generally be avoided.

13. The mother led her child by (an, *dat.*) the hand. 14. The teacher blamed the pupil. 15. The prince chatted with the old soldier. 16. The boys were rowing against the stream. 17. The maid-servant has adorned the nursery with beautiful flowers. 18. Spell these words. 19. I have spelled them. 20. We like to chat with our friends. 21. Whom have you sent into (the) town? 22. Whose house have you bought? 23. To whom did you show the castle of the count? 24. What have you there?—What kind of a stick is that?

LESSON XIX.

The Strong Conjugation.

223. Strong verbs, as already stated, are distinguished by a change of the root-vowel—that is, by internal change—in conjugation. This change of vowel is called Ablaut.

NOTE.—Ablaut must not be confounded with Umlaut (§ 10.) From the force of um, *around* and Laut, *sound*, Umlaut means a *shifting* of sound on the same base, as of a, o, u, to ä, ö, ü. From ab, *off*, *away*, Ablaut means a *departure* of sound, that is, the substitution of a different sound. The former is called vowel *modification*; the latter, vowel *change*. They are, historically, of different origin. The term vowel *alteration* is used when necessary to include both of these processes.

General Rules of Conjugation for Strong Verbs.

224. The past tense is formed by a change of root-vowel (Ablaut) and without any ending, as, ſprechen, ſprach; ſingen, ſang; lügen, log; fallen, fiel, etc. The past subjunctive modifies, when possible, the root-vowel of the past indicative, and adds -e, as, ſpräche, ſänge, löge, fiele, etc.

NOTE.—An earlier e is still sometimes found in the past indicative of some verbs; as ſahe for ſah, etc.

225. The perfect participle ends in en. The root-vowel of the participle is sometimes the same as that of the infinitive; sometimes the same as that of the past; sometimes different from both. As in the sequences:

I. 1. 2. 1. as, ſehen, ſah, geſehen, etc.
II. 1. 2. 2. as, frieren, fror, gefroren, etc.
III. 1. 2. 3. as, ſingen, ſang, geſungen, etc.

NOTE. — 1. This *sequence of vowels* will be found to be a convenient aid to the memory. The groups as thus defined are sometimes called Conjugations I., II., III. See § 259.

2. The infinitive, past tense, and perfect participle, which exhibit the vowel sequences, are known as the *principal parts* of the verb — as also in English; and, likewise, in the weak verbs.

Special Rules of Conjugation.

226. Certain strong verbs undergo modification or change of the root-vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and in the imperative singular.

(*a*) Most verbs which have e for their root-vowel change e to i or ie in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and second person singular of the imperative: short e always becoming i; long e, usually, becoming ie — and omit the final e of the imperative. As: ich brĕche, *I break;* du brichſt, er bricht; imperative brich, ich lēſe, *I read*, du lieſeſt, er lieſt: imperative, lies. But some verbs with long e are excepted.

(*b*) Most verbs which have a for their root-vowel modify a into ä in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, but not in the imperative: ich falle, *I fall*, du fällſt, er fällt; imperative: falle.

(*c*) The following modify the vowel only in the present indicative: laufen, *to run*, du läufſt, er läuft; ſaufen, *to drink*, du ſäufſt, er ſäuft; ſtoßen, *to push*, du ſtößeſt, er ſtößt. Erlöſchen, *to become extinguished, go out*, becomes erliſcheſt, erliſcht, and changes its vowel also in the second singular of the imperative: erliſch. Also verlöſchen (§ 242, *a*).

(*d*) Verbs whose stem ends in t contract –tet to –t in the third singular present if they alter the vowel, but not otherwise; as, gelten, gilt; raten, rät; but bieten, bietet. (§ 212).

227. With the above exceptions (§§ 224, 226) the rules for the personal endings are the same as in the weak conjugation. (§ 201.)

Further details and exceptions will be given under the several classes, and in the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc.

Example of a Strong Verb.

Sprechen, *to speak.*

Principal Parts.

ſprechen. ſprach. geſprochen.

Pres. Part.—ſprechend. Perf. Infin.—geſprochen haben.

Indicative.	Present.	*Subjunctive.*
ich ſpreche.		ich ſpreche.
du ſprichſt.		du ſprecheſt.
er ſpricht.		er ſpreche.
wir ſprechen.		wir ſprechen.
ihr ſprecht.		ihr ſprechet.
ſie ſprechen.		ſie ſprechen.
	Past.	
ich ſprach.		ich ſpräche.
du ſprachſt.		du ſpracheſt.
er ſprach.		er ſpräche.
wir ſprachen.		wir ſprächen.
ihr ſpracht.		ihr ſprächet.
ſie ſprachen.		ſie ſprächen.
	Perfect.	
ich habe geſprochen.		ich habe geſprochen.
du haſt geſprochen, etc.		du habeſt geſprochen, etc.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
PLUPERFECT.	
ich hatte geſprochen.	ich hätte geſprochen.
du hatteſt geſprochen, etc.	du hätteſt geſprochen, etc.
FUTURE.	
ich werde ſprechen.	ich werde ſprechen.
du wirſt ſprechen, etc.	du werdeſt ſprechen, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
ich werde geſprochen haben, etc.	ich werde geſprochen haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde ſprechen, *I should speak.*
du würdeſt ſprechen, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde geſprochen haben, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

	ſprechen wir.
ſprich.	ſprecht.
ſpreche er.	ſprechen ſie.

Classes of Strong Verbs.

228. Strong verbs may be divided, for the convenience of the learner, into three classes, according to the root-vowels (see Remark § 259):

1. The first class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel i (ie) or e, with a few others.

This class contains by far the largest number of strong verbs, and is subdivided into four groups according to the vowels (Ablaut) of the past tense and perfect participle.

Examples: —

a) ſingen, *to sing.*	ſang, *sang.*	geſungen, *sung.*
b) ſprechen, *to speak.*	ſprach, *spake.*	geſprochen, *spoken.*
c) frieren, *to freeze.*	fror, *froze.*	gefroren, *frozen.*
d) ſehen, *to see.*	ſah, *saw.*	geſehen, *seen.*

229. 2. The second class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel ei, with one exception. (§ 247, n.)

This class is subdivided into two groups, the first having in the past tense and perfect participle a short i, and the second group having ie.

Examples: —

a) beißen, *to bite.*	biß, *bit.*	gebiſſen, *bitten.*
b) treiben, *to drive.*	trieb, *drove.*	getrieben, *driven.*

230. 3. The third class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel a, with a few others.

It is subdivided into two groups according to the vowel of the past tense.

Examples: —

a) fallen, *to fall.*	fiel, *fell.*	gefallen, *fallen.*
b) ſchlagen, *to strike,* (*slay*).	ſchlug, *slew.*	geſchlagen, *slain.*

NOTE. — Only the usual forms will be here given. Other special forms will be found in the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc.

231. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

First Subdivision.

VOWELS — i; a, u. SEQUENCE — 1. 2. 3 (§ 225).

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
binden, *to bind.*	band.	gebunden.
dringen, *to press.*	drang.	gedrungen.
finden, *to find.*	fand.	gefunden.
gelingen, *to succeed* (impersonal).	gelang.	gelungen.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
klingen, *to sound.*	klang.	geklungen.
ringen, *to wring, wrestle.*	rang.	gerungen.
ſchlingen, *to sling, twine.*	ſchlang.	geſchlungen.
ſchwinden, *to vanish.*	ſchwand.	geſchwunden.
ſchwingen, *to swing.*	ſchwang.	geſchwungen.
ſingen, *to sing.*	ſang.	geſungen.
ſinken, *to sink.*	ſank.	geſunken.
ſpringen, *to spring, leap.*	ſprang.	geſprungen.
ſtinken, *to stink.*	ſtank.	geſtunken.
trinken, *to drink.*	trank.	getrunken.
winden, *to wind.*	wand.	gewunden.
zwingen, *to force.*	zwang.	gezwungen.

(*a*) To these may be added:

dingen, *to bargain.*	dung *or* dang.	gedungen.
ſchinden, *to flay.*	ſchund.	geſchunden.

which have usually u instead of a in the past tense.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Dieser Mann hat das Geld gefunden. 2. Meine Schwester wird ein deutsches Lied singen. 3. Trinken Sie gern Milch? 4. Er bindet das Buch. 5. Der Vogel hat gesungen. 6. Es klang sehr schön. 7. Der Efeu schlingt sich um den Baum. 8. Er sagt, dasz er das Buch gebunden habe. 9. Es ist mir nicht gelungen (*I have not succeeded in*, etc.), das Wort in dem Wörterbuche zu finden. 10. Zwingen Sie mich nicht. 11. Die Kinder würden weinen, wenn der Lehrer sie zwänge, dieses Lied zu lernen. 12. Es wird Ihnen nicht gelingen, Deutsch zu lernen, wenn Sie nicht fleisziger studieren. 13. Ich habe ein Messer gefunden. 14. Die Kinder dieser Frau haben sehr schön gesungen. 15. Die Frauen wanden einen Kranz. 16. Worauf sitzen die Schüler? 17. Wovon sprechen die Lehrer? 18. Woraus hat das Kind getrunken? 19. Wir fanden die

Bücher auf der Bank in der Schulstube. 20. Das Mädchen schlang den Kranz um den Arm des Knaben. 21. Der Matrose sprang auf den Felsen. 22. Der Buchbinder hat unsere alten Bücher sehr schön gebunden. 23. So sank das Schiff. 24. In der Nacht schwanden die Wolken.

1. I have found these books on the table. 2. This good young lady wound a wreath around the boy's hat. 3. What would these children say if the teacher forced them to leave (the) school? 4. The gentleman sang a German song. 5. Do you *like to* drink milk? 6. She liked to drink wine. 7. I have drunk a cup [of] tea. 8. The boy leaped over the garden-wall. 9. The boy has found this knife in the school-room. 10. I should drink a glass [of] water if I were thirsty. 11. Would you be glad if we sang (*subj.*) a song? 12. He hoped that you had found me here. 13. I have succeeded (*it is to me succeeded*). 14. She will succeed. 15. You will find me at home to-morrow. 16. The soldiers forced the general to speak. 17. You would succeed if you studied more. 18. Do not drink this bad beer. 19. The boy swung himself over the wall. 20. The birds were-singing in the woods. 21. The farmer has flayed the ox. 22. What song had you been singing (*sung*)? 23. What kind of a song has the young lady sung? 24. What kind of tea do you like to drink?

LESSON XX.

232. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

Second Subdivison.

Vowels — e (i) ; a, o. Sequence — 1. 2. 3.

Infinitive.	Past.	Perf. Part.
befehlen, *to command;* befiehlſt, befiehlt.	befahl.	befohlen.
beginnen, *to begin.*	begann.	begonnen.

Infinitive.	Past.	Perf. Part.
bergen, *to hide;* birgſt, birgt.	barg.	geborgen.
berſten, *to burst;* birſteſt, birſt.[1]	barſt.	geborſten.
brechen, *to break;* brichſt, bricht.	brach.	gebrochen.
empfehlen, *to recommend;* empfiehlſt, empfiehlt.	empfahl.	empfohlen.
erſchrecken, *to be frightened;* erſchrickſt, erſchrickt.	erſchrak.	erſchrocken.
gebären, *to bring forth;* gebierſt, gebiert.	gebar.	geboren.
gelten, *to be worth;* giltſt, gilt.[1]	galt.	gegolten.
gewinnen, *to win.*	gewann.	gewonnen.
helfen, *to help;* hilfſt, hilft.	half.	geholfen.
kommen, *to come.* (See below.)	kam.	gekommen.
nehmen, *to take;* ni**mm**ſt, ni**mm**t.	nahm.	geno**mm**en.
rinnen, *to flow.*	rann.	geronnen.
ſchelten, *to scold;* ſchiltſt, ſchilt.[1]	ſchalt.	geſcholten.
ſchwimmen, *to swim.*	ſchwamm.	geſchwommen
ſinnen, *to meditate.*	ſann.	geſonnen.
ſpinnen, *to spin.*	ſpann.	geſponnen.
ſprechen, *to speak;* ſprichſt, ſpricht.	ſprach.	geſprochen.
ſtechen, *to stick;* ſtichſt, ſticht.	ſtach.	geſtochen.
ſtehlen, *to steal;* ſtiehlſt, ſtiehlt.	ſtahl.	geſtohlen.
ſterben, *to die;* ſtirbſt, ſtirbt.	ſtarb.	geſtorben.
treffen, *to hit, to meet;* triffſt, trifft.	traf.	getroffen.
verderben, *to spoil;* verdirbſt, verdirbt.	verdarb.	verdorben.
werben, *to sue;* wirbſt, wirbt.	warb.	geworben.
werfen, *to throw;* wirfſt, wirft.	warf.	geworfen.

(*a*) All these verbs modify the vowel e to i, or ie, in the second and third person singular of the present and in the second person singular of the imperative (ſprich, triff, ꝛc.).

In learning these and similar verbs it is best perhaps for beginners to confine the attention first to the principal parts only — bearing in mind the rules § 226, and noting exceptions as they occur.

---

[1] See § 226, *d*.

(*b*) Gebären, kommen are irregular in this group, having ä, o instead of (earlier) e in the infinitive. The modified forms kömmſt, kömmt, are rare.

(*c*) The verb werden belongs to this class with its old past ward. With its modern past, wurde, it is irregular (§ 256).

(*d*) Note change of *quantity* in kommen, nehmen, treffen.

Remark. — Observe that the verbs beginning with the inseparable prefixes be–, emp–, er–, etc. (§ 216), do not take the augment ge–. Such verbs are given in the lists only where the primitive verb is no longer in use; as, gebären, etc.

Relative Pronouns.

233. The German language, like the English, has no special words to express the relative connection, but supplies the deficiency by using the demonstrative der, die, das, and the interrogatives welcher, e, es, and wer, was; their use as relatives being shown by the construction (§ 238).

234. Der, when used as a relative, is declined like the demonstrative der (§ 206), except that in the genitive plural it has only deren (never derer). Welcher, as a relative is declined like dieſer, except that it lacks the genitive case, both singular and plural.

235. In the genitive singular only the forms deſſen, deren, deſſen, and in the genitive plural the form deren are used. Examples: Der Mann, deſſen Haus ich gekauft habe, iſt geſtorben; *the man whose house I have bought has died.* Die Frau, deren Kinder Sie neulich bei uns trafen, wird uns morgen beſuchen; *the lady whose children you met lately at our house will pay us a visit to-morrow.*

236. (*a*) Wer, was, are used as indefinite relatives, including the antecedent, like the English (*he*), *who*, *who-*

ever, *what* (*that which*). As: Wer andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt ſelbſt hinein; *he who digs for others a pit falls into it himself.* Was er hat, iſt nicht viel; *what he has is not much.*

(*b*) Was is also of regular occurrence after a neuter pronoun, personal, demonstrative or indefinite (es, das, alles, etwas, nichts) etc., and after neuter adjectives used as nouns. As: Alles, was ich habe; *all* (*that*) *I have.* Das erſte, was ſie hörten, *the first* (*thing*) *they heard.* Nach dem, was ich gehört habe, *after* [*that*] *what I have heard.* Also, when the antecedent is an entire sentence or clause; English *which;* as: er kam nicht, was mich ärgerte, *he did not come, which angered me.*

237. Instead of the relative was — or, usually, the dative or accusative of relatives referring to *things* — with prepositions, the compounds of wo, wor (§ 222) are employed.

238. Since every relative clause is dependent, or subordinate, the relative pronoun throws the verb to the end of the clause — in compound tenses, the auxiliary (§ 169,2).

Note. — A relative clause in German is *always* punctuated with a comma.

239. The relative pronoun is frequently omitted in English, but must always be expressed in German. Thus: *The news we heard yesterday*, die Neuigkeit, welche wir geſtern hörten.

240. In English, in the interrogative, and in some forms of the relative construction, the preposition is often thrown to the end of the clause. This cannot be imitated in German. As, *what are you speaking of?* Wovon ſprechen Sie (*of what*)? *The man we spoke of;* der Mann, von welchem (dem) wir ſprachen (*of whom*) etc. (See also Less. LVI.)

EXERCISE XX.

1. Mein Bruder empfiehlt Ihnen diesen Wein. 2. Es ist derselbe Wein, den ich Ihnen empfohlen habe. 3. Hilf mir, Heinrich! 4. Ich habe ihn gestern auf der Strasze getroffen. 5. Wir trafen uns (*each other*) oft. 6. Er hat das Geld genommen. 7. Er birgt auch alles, was er stiehlt. 8. Er spricht Deutsch und Französisch. 9. Er nimmt kein Geld. 10. Schiller starb zu (*at*) Weimar. 11. Worüber sannen Sie? 12. Die Fische schwimmen in dem Wasser. 13. Kommen Sie nicht zu spät. 14. Ich habe den ersten Preis gewonnen. 15. Sie hat sich mit einer Nadel gestochen. 16. Sie haben es getroffen. 17. Das Eis bricht. 18. Dieser Knabe hat Steine in den Garten unseres Nachbars geworfen. 19. Sein Vater schilt ihn. 20. Es ist derselbe Knabe, der die schönsten Blumen in unserem Garten gebrochen hat. 21. Was für ein unartiger Knabe! 22. Mein Vater empfiehlt sich Ihnen.

1. Who commands here? 2. The teacher commands here. 3. He told me that he would help us. 4. I met him yesterday in (the) town. 5. We came too soon. 6. She helps the poor (*dat.*). 7. Does your brother speak German? 8. The soldiers would be frightened if the enemy (*pl.*) came (*past subj.*). 9. These soldiers say, that they would not be frightened. 10. He has won this money, he has not stolen it. 11. The women are spinning. 12. I have spoken with him. 13. At what time does the concert begin? 14. The music has begun. 15. Take my pen, dear brother, it is better than *yours*. 16. Do not be frightened, it is only a pin with which I have pricked myself. 17. My father sends his compliments to your mother. 18. Here is the book which the teacher has recommended [to] you. 19. You have hit it. 20. With what can I help you? 21. What are you meditating about (über)? 22. This is the woman I was speaking of (von) to you. 23. Here is the man whose sons swam over the river. 24. All the poor man [had] is spoiled or taken from him. (*Use comma before all relatives.*)

LESSON XXI.

FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

Third Subdivision. — A.

VOWELS—ie; o, o. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 2.

241. The third subdivision of the first class contains a larger number of verbs than any other class. The first list contains only those which have for the radical vowel of the infinitive ie.

In all the verbs of this group the root of which ends in ß or ch, the long ie of the infinitive is changed into a short o in the past tense and perfect participle (§ 41). Sieden changes its d to tt; and in ziehen h is changed to g. Triefen doubles its f. See also p. 307, Rem. 2, 3.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
biegen, *to bend.*	bog.	gebogen.
bieten, *to bid, offer.*	bot.	geboten.
fliegen, *to fly.*	flog.	geflogen.
fliehen *to flee.*	floh.	geflohen.
fließen, *to flow.*	floß.	gefloſſen.
frieren, *to freeze.*	fror.	gefroren.
genießen, *to enjoy.*	genoß.	genoſſen.
gießen, *to pour.*	goß.	gegoſſen.
kriechen, *to creep.*	kroch.	gekrochen.
riechen, *to smell.*	roch.	gerochen.
ſchieben, *to shove, push.*	ſchob.	geſchoben.
ſchießen, *to shoot.*	ſchoß.	geſchoſſen.
ſchließen, *to shut, lock.*	ſchloß.	geſchloſſen.
ſieden, *to boil.*	ſott.	geſotten.
ſprießen, *to sprout.*	ſproß.	geſproſſen.
ſtieben, *to be scattered.*	ſtob.	geſtoben.
triefen, *to drip.*	troff.	getroffen.
verdrießen, *to vex.*	verdroß.	verdroſſen.

Infinitive.	Past.	Perf. Part.
verlieren, *to lose.*	verlor.	verloren.
wiegen, *to weigh* (intransitive).	wog.	gewogen.
ziehen, *to draw* (intr.) *to move.*	zog.	gezogen.

B.

Vowels—e, i; o, o. Sequence—1. 2. 2.

242. This list, besides verbs with root-vowel e or i, contains also, by analogy of conjugation, a few with root-vowel ä, au, ö, ü, and one with a (ſchallen). All have o in the past tense and perfect participle.

Infinitive.	Past.	Perf. Part.
bewegen, *to induce.*	bewog.	bewogen.
dreſchen, *to thrash;* driſcheſt,[1] driſcht.	droſch.	gedroſchen.
fechten, *to fight;* ficht(e)ſt, ficht.	focht.	gefochten.
flechten, *to braid;* flicht(e)ſt, flicht.	flocht.	geflochten.
gären, *to ferment.*	gor.	gegoren.
glimmen, *to glimmer.*	glomm.	geglommen.
heben, *to lift.*	hob.	gehoben.
klimmen, *to climb.*	klomm.	geklommen.
küren, *to choose.*	kor.	gekoren.
löſchen, *to go out* (of a light); liſcheſt,[1] liſcht.	loſch.	geloſchen.
lügen, *to tell a lie.*	log.	gelogen.
melken, *to milk;* milkſt, milkt.	molk.	gemolken.
pflegen,[2] *to practise, foster.*	pflog.	gepflogen.
quellen, *to gush;* quillſt, quillt.	quoll.	gequollen.
ſaufen (of animals), *to drink;* ſäufſt, ſäuft.	ſoff.	geſoffen.
ſaugen, *to suck.*	ſog.	geſogen.
ſchallen,[2] *to sound.*	ſcholl.	geſchollen.
ſcheren, *to shear;* ſchierſt, ſchiert.	ſchor.	geſchoren.
ſchmelzen, *to melt;* ſchmilzeſt,[1] ſchmilzt.	ſchmolz.	geſchmolzen.
ſchnauben, *to snort.*	ſchnob.	geſchnoben.

---

[1] For contracted 2nd person singular, see p. 307, Rem. 2.

[2] Also weak. See Alphabetical list.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
ſchrauben, *to screw.*	ſchrob.	geſchroben.
ſchwären, *to suppurate.*	ſchwor.	geſchworen.
ſchwellen, *to swell;* ſchwillſt, ſchwillt.	ſchwoll.	geſchwollen.
ſchwören, *to swear.*	ſchwor.	geſchworen.
trügen, *to deceive.*	trog.	getrogen.
wägen, *to weigh* (transitive).[1]	wog.	gewogen.
weben, *to weave.*	wob.	gewoben.

242. (*a*) The verbs küren, löſchen, ſchallen, trügen occur chiefly with the inseparable prefixes: erküren, erlöſchen, verlöſchen, erſchallen, verſchallen, betrügen.

(*b*) Note absence of vowel change (§ 226) in the present of bewegen, heben, pflegen, weben, ſchallen — and in other e verbs hereafter.

EXERCISE XXI. — A.

1. Die Tore der Stadt ſind geſchloſſen. 2. Der Vogel flog auf einen Baum. 3. Wir ſind (*have*) aus der Stadt auf das Land gezogen. 4. Die Feinde flohen. 5. Der Bruder meines Vetters hat ſein Geld verloren. 6. Es hat gefroren. 7. Friert es? 8. Der Kaufmann bot mir hundert Taler für mein Pferd. 9. Die wilden Gänſe ziehen im Herbſt nach Süden. 10. Wie viel hat das Brot gewogen? 11. Seine Kleider troffen vom Regen. 12. Die Feinde ſtoben nach allen Seiten. 13. Der Jäger hat drei Haſen geſchoſſen. 14. Wer jung iſt, genieße ſein Leben. 15. Karl, gieße Waſſer auf die Blumen! 16. Es verdrießt mich, mein Geld verloren zu haben.

1. He has poured water into the glass. 2. Have you lost your money? 3. The cat crept under the table. 4. He pushed the table against (an) the wall. 5. The enemy (*pl.*) has (*are*) fled. 6. I have shot a hare. 7. How much has the merchant offered you for your horse? 8. He has offered me

---

[1] Also weak; see Alphabetical list.

[a] hundred dollars. 9. My uncle has (*is*) moved into the village. 10. The leaves of the trees sprout in (the) spring. 11. The boy says that he has (*subj.*) lost his knife. 12. The sportsman sent me three birds which he had shot. 13. The gate is locked. 14. The trees are dripping with (vom) rain. 15. The rain was dripping from her dress. 16. (The) birds fly in the air, fishes swim in the water, and worms creep upon the earth.

B.

1. Diese drei Regimenter haben tapfer gefochten. 2. Ein Tier säuft, ein Mensch trinkt; ein Mensch säuft (swills), wenn er wie ein Tier trinkt. 3. Er hob das Kind auf den Stuhl. 4. Der Regen troff aus den Wolken. 5. Was hat Sie bewogen, auf das Land zu ziehen? 6. Das Feuer ist erloschen. 7. Die Schäfer haben die Schafe geschoren. 8. Der Schnee ist auf den Bergen geschmolzen. 9. Die Mägde melken die Kühe. 10. Der Knabe hat gelogen. 11. Wer gelogen hat, lüge nicht mehr; und wer gestohlen hat, stehle nicht mehr. 12. Das Eis schmilzt. 13. Dieser Kaufmann hat mich betrogen. 14. Das Wasser quillt aus der Erde. 15. Er hob den Stein auf. 16. Er galoppierte so schnell, dasz das Pferd schnob und die Funken stoben.

1. The rivers are swollen by the rain. 2. The peasant is threshing. 3. Our soldiers have fought bravely. 4. The snow is melting. 5. How many sheep have the shepherds shorn to-day? 6. The fire had (war) gone out; not-a (kein) spark was glimmering. 7. The merchant would have deceived me. 8. He who (wer) steals will lie. 9. He lifted the stone out of the water. 10. A good soldier fights for his king. 11. All is lost. 12. Tell shot the apple from the head of his little son. 13. The rain was pouring from the clouds. 14. The stranger offered me (*dat.*) his hand. 15. The girl who had milked the cows weighed a pound [of] butter. 16. This old thief has stolen a young sheep.

LESSON XXII.

243. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

Fourth Subdivision.

VOWELS — e, i, ie ; a, e. SEQUENCE — 1. 2. 2 (3).

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bitten, *to beg, ask.*	bat.	gebeten.
eſſen, *to eat;* iſſeſt, ißt.[1]	aß.	gegeſſen.
freſſen, *to eat;* friſſeſt, frißt[1] (of animals).	fraß.	gefreſſen.
geben, *to give;* gibſt, gibt.[2]	gab.	gegeben.
geneſen, *to recover* (from illness).[3]	genas.	geneſen.
geſchehen, *to happen;* es geſchieht.	geſchah.	geſchehen.
leſen, *to read;* lieſeſt, lieſt.[1]	las.	geleſen.
liegen, *to lie, be situated.*	lag.	gelegen.
meſſen, *to measure;* miſſeſt, mißt.[1]	maß.	gemeſſen.
ſehen, *to see;* ſiehſt, ſieht.	ſah.	geſehen.
ſitzen, *to sit.*	ſaß.	geſeſſen.
treten, *to step;* trittſt, tritt.	trat.	getreten.
vergeſſen, *to forget;* vergiſſeſt, vergißt.[1]	vergaß.	vergeſſen.

(*a*) In eſſen there is a double augment — geeſſen, contracted to geſſen — then ge–geſſen. In ſitzen, tz is changed to ß. Treten changes long e to short i, followed by tt.

(*b*) In this group the a of the past is long. Hence in the subjunctive, äße, fräße, etc. (§ 41).

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.

244. The indefinite pronouns are:

jemand, *somebody, anybody.*
niemand, *nobody.*
jedermann, *everybody.*
man, *one, they,* etc.
einer, *one.*
keiner, *no one;* pl. *none.*
etwas (was), *something, anything.*
nichts, *nothing.*

---

[1] For contracted 2nd singular, see p. 307, Rem. 2.

[2] Formerly giebſt, giebt, as still sometimes written.

[3] Note absence of vowel change in present.

(*a*) Jemand, niemand have genitive –(e)s; dative –em, or –en; accusative –en; but are often without ending in dative and accusative. Jedermann takes only –(e)s in the genitive.

NOTE. — These words are all compounds of Mann, *man*.

(*b*) Einer, keiner are the pronoun forms of ein, kein. They are declined like dieſer. Compare the possessives (§ 193).

(*c*) The indefinite man (from Mann, *man*) is the general personal subject, variously translated: *one*, *people*, *they*, *we*, etc.; also often by the passive; as, man ſagt, *it is said*. It is used only as nominative singular. (See § 460, 1).

(*d*) Etwas, nichts are indeclinable. They often occur with a neuter adjective as noun: etwas Gutes; nichts Gutes.

NOTE. — The English *not any* — *one* or *thing* will be usually expressed simply by kein(er), niemand, nichts.

245. The indefinite adjectives are: —

kein, keine, kein,	*no*, *not any*.	mancher, e, es,	*many* (*a*).
jeder, jede, jedes,	*each every*, *no plural.*	einige,	*some* (pl.), *a few*.
jeglicher, e, es,		etliche,	
jedweder, e, es,		viel,	*much*; pl. viele, *many*.
aller, e, es,	*all*.	wenig,	*little*; pl. wenige, *few*.

NOTE. — To these may be added the indeclinable ein wenig, *a little*: and phrases like ein paar, *a few*, ein bißchen, *a bit* (*of*) used indeclinably; also the forms in –lei, allerlei, *of all kinds*, etc. (§ 306); and welcher (§ 458, 2). The indefinite article also properly belongs here.

(*a*) Jeder is used also with the indefinite article, usually without a noun: ein jeder, *every one*; sometimes also, ein jeglicher.

(*b*) Manch is also used, in the singular, without declension, followed by the indefinite article; as, mancher Mann, or manch ein Mann, *many a man*. Also — chiefly in poetry — before an adjective; as, manch bunte Blumen (for manche bunten Blumen).

(*c*) Viel and wenig are generally not declined in the singular, but should be declined in the plural. For instance: Viel Geld, viel Wein; *much money*, *much wine*. But: Er hat viele Freunde, *he has many friends*. Vieles, weniges, occur as neuter pronouns.

NOTE. — For other special uses of indefinites, see § 460.

IDIOMS.

bitte, *pray;* for ich bitte.
um etwas bitten, *to beg for anything.*
wie viel, *how much;* pl. *how many.*
ich will damit ſagen, *I mean by that.*

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Bitte, lieber Vater, gib mir eine neue Uhr. 2. Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung. 3. Der Arme bittet um Brot. 4. Sieh, hier ſind deine Bücher. 5. Der Blinde ſieht nichts. 6. Es geſchieht oft, daß man etwas in der Eile vergißt. 7. Als der Kranke geneſen war, aß er einen Apfel mit dem größten Appetit′. 8. Ich vergaß Ihnen zu ſagen, daß ich Ihren Freund geſehen habe. 9. Der Knabe ißt Kirſchen. 10. Der Vogel ſaß auf einem hohen Baume. 11. Jedermanns Sache iſt niemandes Sache. 12. Ich habe die Sache ganz vergeſſen. 13. Tiere freſſen, Menſchen eſſen; Tiere ſaufen, Menſchen trinken. 14. Wenn man von einem Menſchen ſagt, daß er freſſe, ſo will man damit ſagen, daß er wie ein Tier eſſe. 15. Der König ſaß auf dem Trone, und ſeine Miniſter traten vor ihn. 16. Tritt näher, mein Sohn, ſprich lauter, und lies deutlich. 17. Siehſt du niemand(en) auf der Bank? 18. Ich ſehe niemand(en). 19. Alles iſt verloren. 20. Viele waren erwartet, aber wenige ſind gekommen. 21. Welche Gegenden der Schweiz haben Sie bereiſt? 22. Ich habe nur einige Städte der Schweiz geſehen. 23. Lag viel Schnee auf den Bergen? 24. Die Berge waren ganz frei von Schnee.

1. My friend gave me a dollar for the poor. 2. This scholar reads more distinctly than that [one]. 3. My sister reads Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. 4. I should read more, if I had more time. 5. The books lay upon the table. 6. I have seen your good old aunt. 7. It happened yesterday. 8. Have you seen that famous general? 9. I have not seen him. 10. I beg (for) pardon. 11. I should have asked you, if I had seen you. 12. The boys have eaten ripe cherries. 13. The blind [man] sees no one. 14. You have forgotten the matter. 15. I was

in [a] hurry and have quite forgotten it. 16. We shall eat with a good appetite. 17. The minister stepped before the throne. 18. Do many [people] travel in winter? 19. Few travel in winter, but many travel in summer. 20. I have little money. 21. He has many books, but I have none. 22. He lives at (in) peace with all men. 23. We read the whole night (*acc.*). 24. One often forgets what one has read.

Rule of Position.

In the normal order, an adverb will follow the verb. — Hence translate, *one forgets often.*

LESSON XXIII.

SECOND CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

First Subdivision.

246. The second class of strong verbs contains verbs which have for their root-vowel in the infinitive ei. The first subdivision contains those verbs which have in their past tense and perfect participle a short i.

In order to show the shortening of the vowel the following consonant is doubled, except where it is double already. In leiden and ſchneiden, d becomes **tt**. See also p. 307, Rem. 2.

Vowels — **ei**; **i**, **i**. Sequence — 1. 2. 2.

Infinitive.	Past.	Perf. Part.
(ſich) befleißen, *to apply one's self.*	befliß.	befliſſen.
beißen, *to bite.*	biß.	gebiſſen.
erbleichen, *to turn pale.*	erblich.	erblichen.
gleichen, *to resemble, to be like.*	glich.	geglichen.
gleiten, *to glide.*	glitt.	geglitten.
greifen, *to seize.*	griff.	gegriffen.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
keifen, *to chide.*	kiff.	gekiffen.
kneifen, *to pinch.*	kniff.	gekniffen.
leiden, *to suffer.*	litt.	gelitten.
pfeifen, *to whistle.*	pfiff.	gepfiffen.
reißen, *to tear.*	riß.	geriſſen.
reiten, *to ride.*	ritt.	geritten.
ſchleichen, *to sneak.*	ſchlich.	geſchlichen.
ſchleifen, *to whet.*	ſchliff.	geſchliffen.
ſchleißen, *to slit.*	ſchliß.	geſchliſſen.
ſchmeißen, *to fling.*	ſchmiß.	geſchmiſſen.
ſchneiden, *to cut.*	ſchnitt.	geſchnitten.
ſchreiten, *to stride.*	ſchritt.	geſchritten.
ſpleißen, *to split.*	ſpliß.	geſpliſſen.
ſtreichen, *to stroke.*	ſtrich.	geſtrichen.
ſtreiten, *to contend.*	ſtritt.	geſtritten.
weichen, *to yield.*	wich.	gewichen.

Second Subdivision.

247. The second subdivision contains those verbs which have in their past tense and perfect participle long i (ie).

VOWELS — **ei**; **ie, ie**. SEQUENCE — 1. 2. 2.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bleiben, *to remain.*	blieb.	geblieben.
gedeihen, *to prosper.*	gedieh.	gediehen.
leihen, *to lend.*	lieh.	geliehen.
meiden, *to avoid.*	mied.	gemieden.
preiſen, *to praise.*	pries.	geprieſen.
reiben, *to rub.*	rieb.	gerieben.
ſcheiden, *to part.*	ſchied.	geſchieden.
ſcheinen, *to shine.*	ſchien.	geſchienen.
ſchreiben, *to write.*	ſchrieb.	geſchrieben.
ſchreien, *to scream.*	ſchrie.	geſchrieen.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
ſchweigen, *to be silent.*	ſchwieg.	geſchwiegen.
ſpeien, *to spit.*	ſpie.	geſpieen.
ſteigen, *to mount, rise.*	ſtieg.	geſtiegen.
treiben, *to drive.*	trieb.	getrieben.
weiſen, *to show.*	wies.	gewieſen.
zeihen, *to accuse.*	zieh.	geziehen.

NOTE.—The verb heißen, *to call, be called*, belongs to the third class (next lesson).

IDIOMS.

gleichen, *to resemble* (governs dative).
auf ſchnellen Pferden, *on swift horses*, i. e. at full speed.
an (dat.) etwas leiden, *to suffer from anything.*

EXERCISE XXIII.—A.

1. Der Knabe schliff sein Messer und schnitt Brot damit. 2. Ein Hund hat mich gebissen. 3. Kinder gleichen ihren Eltern. 4. Unsere Soldaten ritten auf schnellen Pferden gegen den Feind; sie stritten wie tapfre Helden. 5. Der Feind wich. 6. Ich habe mich in den Finger geschnitten. 7. Ich habe mein Exercitium mit deinem verglichen und finde, dasz ich zwei Fehler mehr gemacht habe als du. 8. Der Sturm hatte das Dach vom Hause gerissen. 9. Der Wind pfiff in den Bäumen. 10. Die Diebe schlichen in das Haus und stahlen alles, was sie fanden. 11. Der Jäger schritt über das Feld. 12. Ich würde mit Ihnen nach der Stadt reiten, wenn ich nicht an Zahnweh litte.

1. My mother suffers from (an) toothache. 2. My sister suffered from headache. 3. She turned pale. 4. This dog had bitten that little boy. 5. Charles compared his exercise with mine and found that he had two mistakes more than I. 6. The tailor cuts the cloth. 7. Who has been whistling? 8. The thief sneaked into our house and stole all (that) he found.

9. My uncle has (*is*) ridden into the town. 10. The wind tore the leaves from the trees. 11. The son resembles the father. 12. The sledge glided over the snow and (the) ice. 13. These knives are sharp; I have ground them. 14. Nobody yielded. 15. The huntsman whistled to his dogs. 16. He tore a leaf out of the book.

B.

1. Bitte, leihen Sie mir zwei Taler. 2. Verzeihen Sie, dasz ich Sie darum bitte. 3. Der alte König war gestorben, und sein Sohn, der junge Prinz Heinrich, stieg auf den Thron. 4. Die Engländer sind oft auf die höchsten Berge der Schweiz gestiegen. 5. Die Sonne scheint bei Tage und der Mond bei Nacht. 6. Der Hirt trieb die Ochsen und die Kühe seines Herrn auf das Feld. 7. Würden Sie antworten, wenn ich Ihnen schriebe? 8. Mein Vater wünscht, dasz ich ihm öfter schreibe [*subj*]. 9. Ich würde schreiben, wenn ich Papier und Tinte hätte. 10. Er hat mir seine deutsche Grammatik geliehen. 11. Er schickte mir das Buch zurück, welches ich ihm geliehen hatte. 12. Das Kind schrie; es hatte sich in den Finger geschnitten.

1. Do you remain at home? 2. My sister remained at home. 3. The moon and the stars shone brightly. 4. The boy was silent; his teacher scolded him; he had not written his exercise. 5. A lady got out of (ſtieg aus) the carriage. 6. We shall get into this carriage. 7 Who has lent you this book? 8. Pray, lend me your German dictionary. 9. The king has pardoned the prince (*dat.*) 10. Write to me more frequently. 11. I should have written to you more frequently, if I had had time for it (dazu).. 12. I should answer you, if you should write to me. 13. The count has shown us his pictures. 14. The old general mounted (on) his horse. 15. Not everything that is written is true. 16. They parted as friends.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

248. The third class of strong verbs contains verbs which have for their root-vowel a, and in a few instances au, o, u or ei. It is subdivided into two groups.

The first subdivision contains verbs which change the root-vowel in the past into ie, or i, but retain the vowel or diphthong of the infinitive in the perfect participle.

NOTE.—Gehen (earlier also gangan) belongs irregularly to this class. Hauen has irregularly b in the past tense (from earlier w).

First Subdivision. VOWELS — **a**; **ie** (i), **a**. SEQUENCE — 1. 2. 1.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
blaſen, *to blow;* bläſeſt, bläſt.[1]	blies.	geblaſen.
braten, *to roast;* brätſt, brät.[2]	briet.	gebraten.
fallen, *to fall;* fällſt, fällt.	fiel.	gefallen.
fangen, *to catch;* fängſt, fängt.	fing.	gefangen.
gehen, *to go.*	**ging.**	ge**gangen**.
halten, *to hold;* hältſt, hält.[2]	hielt.	gehalten.
hangen, *to hang;* hängſt, hängt.	hing.	gehangen.
hauen, *to hew.*	hie**b**.	gehauen.
heißen, *to bid, be called, be.*[1]	hieß.	geheißen.
laſſen, *to let;* läſſeſt, läßt.[1]	ließ.	gelaſſen.
laufen, *to run;* läufſt, läuft.	lief.	gelaufen.
raten, *to advise;* rätſt, rät.[2]	riet.	geraten.
rufen, *to call.*	rief.	gerufen.
ſchlafen, *to sleep;* ſchläfſt, ſchläft.	ſchlief.	geſchlafen.
ſtoßen, *to push;* ſtößeſt, ſtößt.[1]	ſtieß.	geſtoßen.

Second Subdivision.

249. The verbs of this subdivision have in the infinitive and perfect participle a, and in the past u.

---

[1] For contracted 2nd singular, see p. 307, Rem. 2.

[2] See § 226, *d*.

NOTE.—Stehen (formerly also ſtantan) belongs irregularly to this class. Its old past was ſtund. See alphabetical list.

VOWELS—**a; u, a.** SEQUENCE—1. 2. 1.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
backen, *to bake;* bäckſt, bäckt.	buk.	gebacken.
fahren, *to drive;* fährſt, fährt.	fuhr.	gefahren.
graben, *to dig;* gräbſt, gräbt.	grub.	gegraben.
laden, *to load.* (See p. 313).	lud.	geladen.
ſchaffen, *to create.*	ſchuf.	geſchaffen.
ſchlagen, *to strike;* ſchlägſt, ſchlägt.	ſchlug.	geſchlagen.
ſtehen, *to stand.*	ſtan**d**.	geſtan**d**en.
tragen, *to carry;* trägſt, trägt.	trug.	getragen.
wachſen, *to grow;* wächſeſt, wächſt.[1]	wuchs.	gewachſen.
waſchen, *to wash;* wäſcheſt, wäſcht.[1]	wuſch.	gewaſchen.

Note absence of vowel change in the present of gehen, ſtehen, ſchaffen. See also p. 307, Rem. 2.

Reflexive Verbs.

250. A reflexive verb is one whose object is the pronoun corresponding to its subject—the action is *reflected.* In the third person there is a special reflexive object, ſich, dative and accusative. Elsewhere the regular pronoun objects are used reflexively. (See § 185.)

Hence, generally, ſich before the infinitive is used to mark a reflexive verb.

251. The conjugation offers no peculiarities. The reflexive object has the usual place, before an infinitive or participle, but elsewhere immediately after the verb-form, (169. 2)—subject, however, to inversion or transposition.

The perfect auxiliary of a reflexive verb is always haben.

NOTE.—The reflexive object may be accusative or dative—sometimes genitive—but is usually accusative, as in the paradigm. Those with other than accusative objects are sometimes called *false* or *indirect reflexives.*

Conjugation of **ſich waſchen,** *to wash* (*one's self*).

Infin.	Pres. Part.	Perf. Part.
ſich waſchen.	ſich waſchend.	ſich gewaſchen.*

Perfect Infinitive.

ſich gewaſchen haben.

Present.

ich waſche mich, *I wash myself.*	wir waſchen uns.
du wäſcheſt dich.	ihr waſcht euch.
er wäſcht ſich.	ſie waſchen ſich.

Past.

ich wuſch mich, *I washed myself.* du wuſcheſt dich, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe mich gewaſchen, *I have washed myself.*

Pluperfect.

ich hatte mich gewaſchen, *I had washed myself.*

Future.

ich werde mich waſchen, *I shall wash myself.*

Future Perfect.

ich werde mich gewaſchen haben, *I shall have washed myself.*

Imperative.

waſche dich, *wash thyself.*
waſche er ſich, *let him wash himself.*
waſchen wir uns, *let us wash ourselves.*
waſcht euch, *wash yourselves.*
waſchen ſie ſich, *let them wash themselves.*
waſchen Sie ſich, *wash yourself* or *yourselves.*

---

* The perfect participle can here occur only in auxiliary forms. The ſich which stands before the infinitive and participles will, of course, be replaced by the proper pronoun, corresponding to the subject.

In like manner, with dative object:

ich ſchmeichle mir, *I flatter myself.*	wir ſchmeicheln uns.
du ſchmeichelſt dir.	ihr ſchmeichelt euch.
er ſchmeichelt ſich.	ſie ſchmeicheln ſich.

Or with genitive object:

ich ſchone meiner, *I spare myself.*	wir ſchonen unſ(r)er.
du ſchonſt deiner.	ihr ſchont eu(r)er.
er ſchont ſeiner.	ſie ſchonen ihrer.

252. A reflexive plural is often used in a reciprocal sense; as, wir ſehen uns ſelten, *we seldom see each other.* In case of possible ambiguity, the indeclinable compound einander, *one-another*, is used instead of the reflexive; as, ſie lieben einander, *they love one another* (*each other*).

REMARK.—The reflexive form is used much more largely in German than in English, and is variously translated. Some verbs are used exclusively, or with special meaning, as reflexives. The reflexive meaning must always be looked for in the dictionary.

2. Especially where in English the same form is transitive or intransitive, the latter is in German usually expressed by the reflexive; as, *I move, he turns;* ich bewege mich; er wendet ſich, etc.

3. The emphatic ſelbſt, ſelber, *self* (§ 454) must not be confounded with the reflexive—the forms being the same in English.

IDIOMS.

ſpazieren, *to walk, exercise.*
ſpazieren gehen, *to take a walk.*
ſpazieren reiten, *to take a ride.*
ſpazieren fahren, *to take a drive.*
ſich freuen, *to rejoice.*
ſich irren, *to be mistaken.*
ſich befinden, *to be* (*do*).
vor einem Jahre, *a year ago.*

EXERCISE XXIV.—A.

1 Der Koch hat das Fleisch nicht gut gebraten. 2. Die Köchin würde es besser gebraten haben. 3. Der Tote lag da, als ob er schliefe. 4. Schläfst du, mein Kind? 5. Ich habe die ganze Nacht geschlafen. 6. Man liesz den Narren gehen.

7. Wofür halten Sie mich? 8. Ich habe Sie immer für einen reichen Mann gehalten. 9. Der Lehrer hielt ein Buch in der Hand. 10. Ich stand auf einem Berge und sah in das tiefe Tal. 11. Lassen Sie mich gehen. 12. Wir gingen nach Hause. 13. Die Freundin meiner Schwester ist ins Konzert gegangen. 14. Wo ist die Herrin des Hauses? 15. Sie schläft noch. 16. Der Blinde fiel über einen Stein. 17. Die Königinnen Elisabeth und Marie waren einander feindlich. 18. Wie heiszen Sie? 19. Ich heisze Heinrich.

1. The [man] cook is roasting the meat. 2. The [woman] cook has roasted a goose. 3. We ate a roast goose. 4. The queen and her [women] servants went to (the) church. 5. The wind blew from the North. 6. I wished that a milder wind would blow. 7. A sleeping dog does not bite. 8. What is the name of this street (say: *how is this street called*)? 9. This street is called (the) New Street. 10. In the kitchen the [man] cooks are the greatest heroes. 11. A coat hangs on (an) the wall. 12. I shall call my man-servant. 13. We ran through the garden. 14. A prince keeps his word. 15. She has left her books at home. 16. I advised her to go home. 17. Henry pushed Charles against (an) the wall. 18. I have knocked my foot against a stone.

B.

1. Sie trägt noch dasselbe Kleid, welches sie vor zwei Jahren getragen hat. 2. Der Bäcker bäckt Brot. 3. Die Magd würde ihre Kleider gewaschen haben, wenn sie Seife gehabt hätte. 4. Man gräbt mit einem Spaten. 5. Gott schuf die Welt aus nichts. 6. Wenn dieser Baum Früchte trüge, so würden wir Ihnen gern einige davon schicken. 7. Ich stand am Fenster und sah, wie der Knabe den Hund schlug. 8. Dieser Baum trägt keine Frucht. 9. Wir fuhren gestern spazieren. 10. Meine Schwestern werden spazieren reiten. 11. Die Schüler sind mit ihrem Lehrer spazieren gegangen. 12. Ich freue

mich, Sie zu sehen, Herr Doktor; wie befinden Sie sich? 13. Danke, ich befinde mich sehr wohl, seit ich auf dem Lande wohne und die frische Luft geniesze. 14. Wie befindet sich Ihr [Herr] Vater? 15. Ich danke Ihnen, [mein] Herr, er befindet sich recht wohl. 16. Wir freuen uns, Sie so wohl zu sehen. 17. Ich habe mich geirrt. 18. Er sagte mir, dasz er sich geirrt habe.

1. The baker has baked bread. 2. The coachman drives too fast. 3. Who stands there? 4. We stood and waited. 5. This plant has (iſt) grown very quickly. 6. He carried the letters to (auf) the post-office. 7. The children are delighted (rejoice); they will take-a-drive. 8. The heart beats. 9. How are you, dear uncle? 10. I am very well, my dear child. 11. My aunt has taken a drive with her sister. 12. I should wash (myself), if I had soap and water. 13. The rifle is loaded; the soldier loaded it. 14. We should take a ride, if the weather were fine. 15. What do you take (*hold*) me for, sir? 16. You are mistaken. 17. I beg [for] pardon, sir; I have been mistaken. 18. Our friends will rejoice that their children love one another so warmly.

LESSON XXV.

Mixed and Irregular Verbs.

253. A small number of verbs change their root-vowel in the past indicative and perfect participle, and also add the endings of the weak conjugation. These are sometimes called *mixed verbs*.

NOTE. — This change of vowel is not historically the same as the *Ablaut* of the strong verbs. These are really weak verbs, which have undergone a root-vowel change. The term *mixed* is used only for convenience.

254. In the past subjunctive most of these verbs follow the weak conjugation, without vowel-change; but bringen, denken, wiſſen follow the strong. Bringen and denken change ng, nk to ch in the past and perfect participle. Wiſſen is also irregular in the present singular.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
brennen, *to burn.*	brannte.	gebrannt.	brennte.
kennen, *to know.*	kannte.	gekannt.	kennte.
nennen, *to name, call.*	nannte.	genannt.	nennte.
rennen, *to run.*	rannte.	gerannt.	rennte.
ſenden, *to send.*	ſandte.	geſandt.	ſendete.
wenden, *to turn.*	wandte.	gewandt.	wendete.
bringen, *to bring.*	brachte.	gebracht.	brächte.
denken, *to think.*	dachte.	gedacht.	dächte.
wiſſen, *to know.*	wußte.	gewußt.	wüßte.

PRESENT. — ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wiſſen, etc.

NOTE. — 1. Senden and wenden are also conjugated regularly as weak verbs. (See § 212.) Sometimes also rennen.

2. With wiſſen compare the modal auxiliaries (next Lesson).

255. Tun, *to do*, is quite irregular.

It forms its past tense by reduplication and vowel change (like *di-d*); its perfect participle and past subjunctive as in strong verbs; but it drops e before consonants in the infinitive, perfect participle, and present indicative and imperative. Thus: —

INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
tun.	tat.	getan.	täte.

PRESENT. *Sing.:* tue, tuſt, tut; *plur.:* tun, tut, tun.
IMPERATIVE. *Sing.:* tue; *plur.:* tut.

256. The auxiliaries haben, ſein, werden, are also irregular.

(*a*) Haben (weak) has in the present indicative haſt, hat, for habſt, habt; in the past, hatte for habte; but forms its past subjunctive strong: hätte.

(*b*) Sein is wholly irregular, being made up like English *am*, *was*, *been*, of different roots; and has also, in part, exceptional personal inflections. The infin. ſein is for ſeien (§ 75, *b*).

(*c*) Werden has in the present wirſt for wirdſt; and wird as § 226, *d;* but imperative werde. The past ward (§ 232, *c*) was formerly more common than now, in the sense of an *aorist.*

257. The following may be conveniently grouped together for special notice:

eſſen (§ 243), gehen, hauen, heißen (§ 248), leiden, ſchneiden (§ 246), nehmen (§ 232), ſieden (§ 241), ſitzen (§ 243), ſtehen (§ 249), tun (§ 255), ziehen (§ 241)

Also, those which double the root-consonant after a shortened vowel (as § 246); and those which drop one consonant after a lengthened vowel (as § 248–9); and the vowel changes (§ 226), with exceptions (§242–3–8–9).

258. Some verbs have special forms, outside of their usual conjugation.

Such forms are sometimes archaic or poetic — sometimes alternative forms, strong or weak. See Alphabetical List (p. 308, etc.).

259. The following table will present to the eye the several forms of the strong verbs as classed above; also the *conjugation* (§ 225) to which they may be referred according to the sequence of the vowels, and the § where they may be found.

Remark. — The importance of these verbs — strong, mixed, and irregular — is far beyond their numerical proportion. They are the most fruitful roots of the language, and give rise to a great number of derivatives and compounds of various classes. Hence they should be carefully learned.

The classification here given is for convenience only. A more scientific arrangement — based on historical development — might be given, but without advantage to the learner. This belongs properly to later study. The conjugation by vowel sequences (§ 225) will be found useful in impressing the forms on the memory. *But, after all, the verbs must be learned mainly by observation and by memory. Hence constant reference must be made to the Alphabetical List, in case of doubt.*

Synopsis of Strong Verbs.

CLASS.	INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	CONJ.	§
I. 1.	i.	a.	u.	III.	231.
2.	e, i.	a.	o.	III.*	232.
3.	ie.	o.	o.	II.	241.
	e, etc.	o.	o.	II.	242.
4.	e, etc.	a.	e.	I.†	243.
II. 1.	ei.	i.	i.	II.	246.
2.	ei.	ie.	ie.	II.	247.
III. 1.	a, etc.	ie.	a, etc.	I.	248.
2.	a.	u.	a.	I.	249.

IDIOMS.

Unrecht tun, *to do wrong.*
ſein Beſtes tun, *to do one's best.*
an jemanden denken, *to think of one.*
von (*dat.*) denken, *to have an opinion of.*
die erſte Klaſſe, *the first class.*
die zweite Klaſſe, *the second class.*
ein Geſandter, *an ambassador* } (§ 141).
der Geſandte, *the ambassador* }
jemanden kennen lernen, *to become acquainted with some one.*

NOTE. — Kennen, *to know*, is used of objects — persons or things — known or recognized by the senses; wiſſen, *to know*, expresses knowledge by the understanding — hence, of facts, statements, etc. Wiſſen also means *to know how* (*to*).

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ich tue mein Beſtes, die deutſche Sprache zu lernen. 2. Ich weiß, Sie tun es. 3. Das Holz brennt nicht. 4. Die ganze Straße brannte. 5. Der Schwefel brennt mit einer bläulichen Flamme. 6. Geben Sie mir ein Schwefelholz. 7. Jemand hat mich gerufen, aber ich weiß nicht, wer es iſt. 8. Mit welcher Klaſſe werden Sie fahren? 9. Wir wiſſen noch nicht, mit welcher

---

* Except kommen (§ 222, *b*).

† Except bitten, liegen, ſitzen.

Klaſſe wir fahren werden. 10. Wiſſen Sie auch, daß mein Bruder Sie kennt? 11. Er hat Sie auf (*at*) der Akademie kennen gelernt. 12. Was hat uns der Bauer gebracht? 13. Er hat uns eine fette Gans gebracht. 14. Jedermann weiß, was ich von der Sache dachte. 15. Wiſſen Sie, wo Herr Schmidt wohnt? 16. Ich weiß [es] nicht; ich würde es ſagen, wenn ich es wüßte. 17. Er nannte mich ſeinen Freund. 18. Er hat Unrecht getan. 19. Woran denken Sie? 20. Ich dachte an meine Eltern. 21. Wir werden tun, was Sie wünſchen. 22. Was hat man dir, du armes Kind, getan? 23. Ich wußte nicht, was unſere Freunde taten.

1. He has done his best. 2. Who has brought these books? 3. The coachman of the count has brought them. 4. The whole town was–burning. 5. Do you know Mr. Miller? 6. I do not know him, but I know where he lives. 7. They called him by his name. 8. You have done wrong. 9. She thinks more than she speaks. 10. You are mistaken, if you think that I know him. 11. What would she say, if she knew it? 12. Of whom (an, *acc.*) did you think? 13. We thought of you. 14. The boy ran and fell over a stone. 15. Do you not know me? 16. I know you very well. 17. The king sent an ambassador to (nach) Paris. 18. I thought you would keep your word, but I have been mistaken. 19. The whole village stood in flames. 20. The coaches of the first class are better than the coaches of the second class. 21. I thought of you, but I did not know where you were then. 22. You would do wrong if you thought so of me. 23. What were you doing when (als) the servant brought you the ambassador's letter? 24. I did not know what you would think of (von) it. (§ 184).

The use of a Reader — outside of the Grammar — should hardly be deferred beyond this point. Indeed, in most cases, it might be begun much earlier.

LESSON XXVI.

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

260. Besides the auxiliary verbs of tense (haben, ſein and werden) there are in German six auxiliary verbs of mood. These are used with the infinitive, as in English:

dürfen, *to be allowed* (*dare*).	müſſen, *to be compelled* (*must*).
können, *to be able* (*can*).	ſollen, *to have to*, *ought* (*shall*).
mögen, *to like* (*may*).	wollen, *to be willing* (*will*).

While the corresponding English verbs are defective, these verbs have in German a complete conjugation, except in the imperative, which occurs in wollen only.

261. Those which have the umlaut in the infinitive, drop it in the past indicative and perfect participle, but resume it in the past subjunctive. Mögen also changes g to ch in the past and perfect participle. In the present indicative singular, they are inflected like the past tense of the strong verbs. Other inflections are regular. Thus:—

INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
dürfen.	durfte.	gedurft.	dürfte.
können.	konnte.	gekonnt.	könnte.
mögen.	mochte.	gemocht.	möchte.
müſſen.	mußte.	gemußt.	müßte.
ſollen.	ſollte.	geſollt.	ſollte.
wollen.	wollte.	gewollt.	wollte.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich darf.	ich kann.	ich mag.	ich muß.	ich ſoll.	ich will.
du darfſt.	du kannſt.	du magſt.	du mußt.	du ſollſt.	du willſt.
er darf.	er kann.	er mag.	er muß.	er ſoll.	er will.
wir dürfen.	wir können.	wir mögen.	wir müſſen.	wir ſollen.	wir wollen.
ihr dürft.	ihr könnt.	ihr mögt.	ihr müßt.	ihr ſollt.	ihr wollt.
ſie dürfen.	ſie können.	ſie mögen.	ſie müſſen.	ſie ſollen.	ſie wollen.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich dürfe.	ich könne.	ich möge.	ich müſſe.	ich ſolle.	ich wolle.

IMPERATIVE.

——	——	——	——	——	wolle.

The compound parts are formed regularly; as:

PERFECT.	ich habe gedurft, gekonnt, gemocht, etc.
PLUPERFECT.	ich hatte „ „ „ etc.
FUTURE.	ich werde dürfen, können, mögen, etc.
CONDITIONAL.	ich würde „ „ „ etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.	ich werde gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, etc.
CONDITIONAL PERFECT.	ich würde „ „ „ „ etc.

Use of the Auxiliaries of Mood.

262. While these verbs correspond, generally, to the English modal auxiliaries, *can*, *may*, etc., they present many differences of use which will require special attention. These are due in part to their fuller conjugation.

263. As these verbs are defective in English, the German verb will frequently have to be expressed by a phrase, for instance: ich hatte nicht gekonnt, *I had not been able.* Wir werden müſſen, *we shall be obliged.* Er hat gedurft, *he has been permitted.* Er mußte lachen, *he had to laugh.*

NOTE. — Special care must be taken to guard against ambiguity from the defect of the English forms. For example: *I could not go* may mean either: *I was not able* (konnte) — or, *I should not be able* (könnte) *to go; he could not have done it,* either *he has not been able*, or, *he would not have been able — to do it.* Such forms will be clearly distinguished in German.

264. When a modal auxiliary, in the perfect or pluperfect, is construed with an infinitive, it changes its own perfect participle to the form of an infinitive. — As: ich habe es gekonnt, but ich habe es tun können (not gekonnt), *I have been able to do it.* Er hat gewollt, *he has been willing, he has wished;* but er hat ſchreiben wollen (not gewollt), *he has been willing to write.*

265. A few other verbs have the same construction. These are: heißen, helfen, hören, laſſen, ſehen, sometimes fühlen, lehren, lernen, machen. — As: ich habe ſie tanzen ſehen, *I have seen her dance.* Ich habe ihn ſagen hören, *I have heard him say.* Er hat mich nicht gehen laſſen, *he did not let me go.*

266. As the modals have no perfect tenses in English and no distinct forms of mood, our perfect infinitive (with *have*) often expresses the German past indicative of the auxiliary. As: er konnte das nicht ſagen, *he could not have said that;* but: er könnte das nicht ſagen, *he could not* (possibly) *say that;* er mochte zehn Jahre alt ſein, *he may have been* (was probably) *ten years old.*

NOTE. — On the other hand *have* often expresses a genuine perfect infinitive; as: ich möchte dort geweſen ſein, *I should like to have been there;* ſie muß ſehr jung geweſen ſein, *she must have been very young.* Care should be taken to avoid ambiguity.

267. When such English phrases as *could have*, *should have*, etc., express a past contingency, or unreal condition, the modal verb will be in the pluperfect subjunctive and the infinitive in the present. As: er hätte gehen können, *he could have gone* (if he had wished); er hätte es tun ſollen, *he should have done it* (§ 263).

268. The modal verbs are used, much more freely than in English, as independent verbs, or with omission of the infinitive; as: Er kann kein Engliſch, *he knows no English;* man muß nicht müſſen, *one must not be compelled.* Especially where a verb of motion is implied; as: er konnte nicht hinein, *he could not* (*go*) *in.*

NOTE. — As before remarked (§ 173), *shall*, *will*, *should*, *would* in their proper sense as *verbs* — or *modal* auxiliaries — are represented by ſollen and wollen respectively — by werden only in mere future or conditional sense. In German, therefore, ſollen, wollen, werden are always *distinctive;* and it is only in English that, for want of a specific auxiliary of tense, any doubt can arise as to the use or meaning of *shall*, *will; should*, *would.*

269. Laſſen (§ 248) is used with an infinitive, nearly like the modal verbs, as a *causative* auxiliary, in the sense of *to make do*, or *to have* (*cause to be*) *done* — and in many idiomatic phrases. As, er ließ das Pferd ſpringen, *he made the horse jump;* er ließ einen Brief ſchreiben, *he had a letter written* (the agent being here omitted).

NOTE. — These verbs have many idiomatic uses, which cannot here be enumerated. Some of their leading meanings are (see § 472): —

dürfen — *dare*, *may* (permission, liberty, probability).
können — *can*, *may* (possibility, ability).
mögen — *like to*, *may* (preference, concession, contingency).
müſſen — *must*, *have to* (compulsion, necessity).
ſollen — *shall*, *is to*, *is said to* (duty, command, hearsay).
wollen — *will*, *is about to*, *claims to* (intention, wish, assertion).

IDIOMS.

ich mag gern, *I like to.*
ich möchte gern, *I should like to.*
er ſoll kommen, *he is to come.*
jemanden kommen laſſen, *to send for some one.*
er will es getan haben, *he claims to have done it.*

ich mag lieber, *I prefer to.*
ich möchte lieber, *I had rather.*
er ſoll reich ſein, *he is said to be rich.*
jemandem ſagen laſſen, *to send word to some one.*
ich habe ſagen hören, *I have heard say* (or *said*).

EXERCISE XXVI. — A.

(dürfen, können, mögen.)

1. Er darf den Brief leſen. 2. Darf ich den Brief leſen? 3. Der Knabe darf in der Schule nicht ſpielen. 4. Mein Vater hätte geſtern ſein Pferd verkaufen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 5. Warum haben die Knaben nicht ſpielen dürfen? 6. Ich darf keinen Wein trinken. 7. Ich möchte es gern tun, aber ich darf nicht. 8. Er kann es vergeſſen haben. 9. Ich mochte ihn nicht darum bitten. 10. Wir haben nicht ſpazieren gehen dürfen. 11. Der junge Graf mag nicht ſpazieren reiten. 12. Möchten Sie gern ſpazieren fahren? 13. Ich möchte [es] gern, aber

ich kann es nicht; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 14. Es möchte ihm ſchwerlich gelingen. 15. Sie können [es] mir glauben. 16. Der Träge mag nicht arbeiten. 17. Ich hätte mit ihm ſprechen mögen. 18. Ich möchte gern mit Ihnen ſprechen.

1. May I water the flowers? 2. You may (it), my son. 3. Can your daughter read? 4. All my children can read. 5. The sick man would like to (möchte gern) speak with the physician. 6. The good old physician cannot know everything. 7. I did not like to ask him. 8. We shall not be able to remain. 9. He may be mistaken. 10. May he read these German newspapers? 11. He may read them, if he can read German. 12. You might be right. 13. The fish can swim. 14. The poor servant-girl would have written to you, if she could write. 15. The children have not been allowed to go into the garden. 16. The baker has not been able to bake to-day. 17. You can believe me, I should (würde) come if I were able. 18. I have not been able to come.

B.

(müſſen, ſollen, wollen, laſſen.)

1. Ich habe den Schneider kommen laſſen, er ſoll mir einen neuen Rock machen. 2. Mein Bruder wird morgen zu Hauſe bleiben müſſen. 3. Können Sie heute mit uns gehen? 4. Ich kann heute gehen, aber morgen werde ich weder können noch wollen. 5. Er ſoll hier ſein; man will ihn geſehen haben. 6. Wolle nur, was du kannſt, und du wirſt alles können, was du willſt. 7. Wir müſſen unſern Feinden *(dat.)* verzeihen. 8. Die Kinder müſſen in die Schule gehen. 9. Der Bote ſollte einen Brief auf die Poſt tragen. 10. Er wollte [es] uns nicht glauben. 11. Habt ihr dieſen Abend nicht ſingen ſollen? 12. Wir haben geſollt, aber wir haben nicht gemocht. 13. Man muß mit Luſt arbeiten, wenn das Werk gelingen ſoll. 14. Wollen Sie ſo gut ſein und mir einen Taler leihen? 15. Ich möchte es ſehr gern tun, aber ich habe kein Geld bei mir. 16. Sie haben Recht, ich

hätte es tun ſollen. 17. Wir haben ihn ſagen hören, daß der berühmte Arzt morgen kommen werde. 18. Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen.

1. He has not been willing to do it. 2. He was wrong, he ought to have done it. 3. I have been compelled to read the book. 4. All men must die. 5. The boys are to learn German. 6. We have seen the children dance. 7. They have been obliged to work the whole day. 8. I am to stay at home. 9. She did not like to work. 10. Do you know why Henry was not allowed to visit us? 11. I shall send for the tailor; he is to make me a new coat. 12. I have been willing, but I have not been able. 13. Thou shalt not steal. 14. I have heard him speak. 15. We have been obliged to pay two dollars. 16. You should carry the letter to (auf) the post-office. 17. Why could you not come? 18. I was unwell and was obliged to stay at home.

LESSON XXVII.

The Passive Voice.

270. The passive voice is formed by the auxiliary verb werden in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb. In the compound tenses, the participle geworden loses the augment ge–, as: ich bin gelobt worden, *I have been praised.*

(*a*) Each part of the passive is formed by the corresponding part of werden combined with the perfect participle, under the usual rules of position; viz.: that the participle will follow the simple forms, but precede the infinitive or participle of the auxiliary, as may be seen in the paradigm.

(*b*) But for the convenience of the learner, the passive may be regarded as a *compound intransitive* verb (*to be – loved*). Its compound parts may then be formed with the usual auxiliaries from the following *principal parts*, as in any other intransitive verb:

INFINITIVE — gelobt werden;

— whence future and conditional with auxiliary werden.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE — gelobt worden;

— whence perfect and pluperfect with auxiliary ſein.

PERFECT INFINITIVE — gelobt worden ſein;

— whence perfect future and conditional with auxiliary werden.

271. **Conjugation of the Passive Verb.**

gelobt werden, *to be praised.*

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
PRESENT.	
I am praised, etc.	*I (may) be praised*, etc.
ich werde gelobt.	ich werde gelobt.
du wirſt gelobt.	du werdeſt gelobt.
er wird gelobt.	er werde gelobt.
wir werden gelobt.	wir werden gelobt.
ihr werdet gelobt.	ihr werdet gelobt.
ſie werden gelobt.	ſie werden gelobt.
PAST.	
ich wurde (ward) gelobt.	ich würde gelobt.
du wurdeſt (wardſt) gelobt.	du würdeſt gelobt.
er wurde (ward) gelobt.	er würde gelobt.
wir wurden gelobt, etc. (§ 190).	etc.
PERFECT.	
ich bin gelobt worden.	ich ſei gelobt worden.
du biſt gelobt worden.	du ſeieſt gelobt worden.
er iſt gelobt worden.	er ſei gelobt worden.
etc.	etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
ich war gelobt worden.	ich wäre gelobt worden.
du warſt gelobt worden.	du wäreſt gelobt worden.
er war gelobt worden.	er wäre gelobt worden.
etc.	etc.

FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt werden.	ich werde gelobt werden.
du wirſt gelobt werden.	du werdeſt gelobt werden.
er wird gelobt werden.	er werde gelobt werden.
etc.	etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gelobt worden ſein.	ich werde gelobt worden ſein.
du wirſt gelobt worden ſein.	du werdeſt gelobt worden ſein.
etc.	etc.

CONDITIONAL.	CONDITIONAL PERFECT.
ich würde gelobt werden.	ich würde gelobt worden ſein.
du würdeſt gelobt werden.	du würdeſt gelobt worden ſein.
er würde gelobt werden.	er würde gelobt worden ſein.
etc.	etc.

IMPERATIVE.

werde gelobt. werdet gelobt.

werden Sie gelobt.

Inflect, as heretofore, for *inversion* and *transposition* :

heute bin ich gelobt worden.	morgen werde ich gelobt werden.
etc.	etc.
daß ich gelobt werden würde.	wenn ich gelobt worden wäre.
etc.	etc.

And note the infinitive forms : gelobt zu werden ; gelobt worden zu ſein. (§ 176, 2.)

Use of the Passive.

272. German has no special forms for the English *the house is building — is being built*, etc. These are translated by the simple, das Haus wird gebaut (or as § 274, 1).

273. It must be remembered that werden is combined with the perfect participle only to express the true passive —that is the passive *action.* In English the perfect participle with *be* often expresses only a state or result of the action. In this case the German uses ſein not werden. Thus: die Türe wurde um acht Uhr geſchloſſen, *the door was closed at 8 o'clock* (the closing took place at that hour); die Türe war um acht Uhr geſchloſſen — *it was* (*found*) *closed* — (had been closed earlier). This distinction requires careful attention.

NOTE 1. — Practically the test may be made by turning the verb into the active form: *if the tense remains the same, use* werden.

NOTE 2. — It will be seen that here again, for want of a specific passive auxiliary, there is a possible ambiguity in English which cannot occur in German. (See § 268, note.) Sometimes, however, apparent ambiguity may occur by the idiomatic omission of worden, as: als er zu Grabe getragen (worden) war, *had been carried*, etc.

274. The passive is less used in German than in English. Unless the agent (von with the dative) is definitely expressed, other idioms are frequently employed:

1. Most frequently man (§ 244) with the active verb, as: man ſtellte den Stuhl ans Ufer, *the chair was placed*, etc.; er bat, man möchte ihn gehen laſſen, *he begged that he might be allowed to go.*

2. The reflexive verb, as: Der Schlüſſel hat ſich gefunden, *has been found.* Especially, the reflexive use of laſſen with active infinitive (§ 269). As: Das läßt ſich erklären, *that can be explained.*

3. An impersonal idiom, as: es bedarf keiner Hülfe, *no help is needed.*

275. In German only a direct (accusative) object can become the subject of a passive verb. Other verbs are, however, sometimes made passive with an impersonal subject (es or was), retaining their indirect object (if any); as, es iſt mir geraten worden, *I have been advised* (= man hat mir geraten); es wurde darüber beratſchlagt, *consultation was held about it.* Or, without es, unless introductory: darüber wurde beratſchlagt; as § 453, note.

276. Sometimes, to preserve the emphasis of position, the German active will be rendered by the English passive; as, den König ergötzte dieſes Schauſpiel, *the king was delighted with this spectacle.*

REMARK.—It thus appears that the passive in English is widely extended, beyond its use in German. Careful attention should be given to the various equivalents in translating.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Der Schüler iſt von dem Lehrer gelobt worden. 2. Das Kind wird von ſeinen Eltern geliebt. 3. Die Knaben, welche fleißig ſind, werden gelobt werden. 4. Ein guter Arbeiter wird immer gut bezahlt. 5. Würde jener alte Feldherr nicht von dem König gelobt worden ſein? 6. Was würden Sie ſagen, wenn Sie gefragt würden? 7. Man ſagt, daß die Stadt von dem Feinde geplündert worden ſei. 8. Wird das Werk dieſen Sommer gedruckt werden? 9. Es würde ſchon gedruckt worden ſein, wenn der Verfaſſer nicht krank geweſen wäre. 10. Die verlorene Börſe iſt von einem Schulknaben gefunden worden. 11. Das Mädchen wurde von ſeiner Mutter getadelt. 12. Das arme Häschen wurde von dem Jäger geſchoſſen. 13. Ein junges Bäumlein läßt ſich leicht biegen, ein alter Baum wird nicht ſo leicht gebogen. 14. Dieſe Frage beantwortet ſich leicht. 15. Es wird auf Sie gewartet. 16. Man wartet auf Sie. 17. Was iſt Ihnen verſprochen worden? 18. Was hat man Ihnen verſprochen? 19. Das Haus iſt mit friſchen Blumen geziert. 20. Die Stadt-

mauer war ſchon zerſtört. 21. Ein Brief wurde geſchrieben. 22. Das Buch wird gedruckt. 23. Es iſt mir ein ſchönes Federmeſſer gegeben worden. 24. Den Kaiſer rührte dieſes Schauſpiel ſo, daß er vor (*for*) Freude weinte.

1. The author of this book will be rewarded by (von) the king. 2. I should not be able to answer if I were asked. 3. The town was ransacked by the enemy. 4. The knives have been ground. 5. A messenger has been sent to the queen. 6. The house will be bought by my uncle. 7. I have not been asked. 8. The rooms of the prince are not shown to strangers. 9. The sheep are being shorn by the shepherds. 10. The girl has been bitten by a dog. 11. He was feared and respected by all. 12. The gates of the town will be opened. 13. The apples fall when the tree is shaken. 14. This book has been printed for the author. 15. A hare is roasting (being roasted). 16. He would not have been named. 17. It cannot (läßt) be believed. 18. The books which were lost have been found. 19. The whole town was adorned with green boughs. 20. A physician must be sent for (man). 21. That is easily understood (*reflex.*). 22. I have been advised (say: to me [it] has been advised — and: one has, etc.) to go to Carlsbad. 23. The door was opened. 24. We allowed (laſſen) ourselves *to be* persuaded.

LESSON XXVIII.

Compound Verbs. — Inseparable.

277. In verbs compounded with the unaccented inseparable prefixes be–, emp–, ent–, er–, ge–, ver–, zer–, (§ 216), the prefix is always written in one word with the verb. The preposition zu stands as a separate word before the infinitive. — Examples: betrügen, betrog, betrogen; erſchrecken, erſchrak, erſchrocken; empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen; entſpringen,

entſprang, entſprungen; gefallen, gefiel, gefallen; infin. with zu: zu betrügen, zu erſchrecken, etc.

278. Except for the omission of ge– in the perfect participle, these compounds are conjugated like their primitive verbs. Sometimes the compound is used when the primitive is obsolete — as in English *be–gin*, etc. (§ 232.)

NOTE. — Observe that unless there is vowel change, the perfect participle of these verbs, if strong, will be just like the infinitive; as, gefallen, erhalten, vergeben, etc. Also, that verbs in ge–, as gebieten, gefallen, etc., will have the same p. p. as their primitives, bieten, fallen, viz.: geboten, gefallen. Hence such forms may have two, or even three, senses, which must be carefully distinguished.

279. The inseparable prefixes form a large number of compound verbs — as well as other derivatives — as will be more fully shown in Part II. *They never take the accent.*

Spurious Prepositions.

280. Lists of the most important prepositions and of the cases they govern have been given §§ 164, 178, 179. A number of other words, originally adverbs, nouns, adjectives or participles — sometimes compounds or phrases — are used as prepositions.

These are sometimes called *spurious* prepositions. A list of the most important of these is here given :—

(*a*) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

anſtatt or ſtatt, *instead of*.
außerhalb, *without, outside of*.
innerhalb, *within, inside of*.
oberhalb, *above*,
unterhalb, *below;* compounds of:
halben or halber, *on account of* (always follows case).
diesſeit or diesſeits, *on this side of*.
jenſeit or jenſeits, *on the other side of*.
kraft, *by virtue of*.
längs, *along* (sometimes governs a dative).
laut, *conformably to* (also dat.).
ob (rarely), *on account of* (see *b*).
trotz, *in spite of* (sometimes governs a dative).
um — willen, *for the sake of* (the case being inserted between).
ungeachtet, *notwithstanding* (or with a preceding dative).

unweit, unfern, *not far from.*
vermittelſt (mittels, mittelſt), *by means of.*
vermöge, *by dint of.*
während, *during* (very rarely governs a dative).
wegen, *on account of* (precedes or follows the case).
zufolge, *according to* (sometimes follows the noun and takes a dative).

NOTE. — For the special forms meinethalben, meinetwegen, um meinetwillen, etc., see § 452, *b.*

(*b*) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

außer, *outside of, besides.*
binnen, *within* (used only with regard to time) — rarely genitive.
entgegen, *against, towards* (usually follows the case).
gegenüber, *opposite to* (stands usually after the case).
gemäß, *according to* (usually follows the case).
gleich, *like.*
nächſt, *next to.*
nebſt, *along with.*
ob, *over* (local) — see *a.*
ſamt, *together with.*
ſeit, *since.*
zufolge, *according to* (after the case).
zuwider, *contrary to* (after the case).

(*c*) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

bis, *till, as far as.*
entlang, *along* (usually follows the case).
ſonder, *without.*

NOTE. — Bis is frequently used in combination with another preposition. Examples: Bis an das Tor, *as far as the gate.* Bis zum Ende, *down to, as far as the end.* Bis auf dieſen Tag, *up to this day.*

um — **zu** WITH INFINITIVE.

281. The use of zu with the infinitive has been already mentioned (§ 176).

To express purpose, *in order to*, the combination um zu — um at the head of the clause, zu in its usual position with the infinitive — is generally used; as, ich tue mein Beſtes, um die deutſche Sprache zu lernen, *I do my best to learn the German language.*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Es iſt verboten, in dieſem Fluſſe zu baden. 2. Ich hoffe, die Rechnung binnen ſechs Monaten bezahlen zu können. 3. Ein Haus, der neuen Kirche gegenüber gelegen, iſt zu verkaufen.

4. Es iſt nebſt dem Garten ſchon verkauft worden. 5. Ich habe einige Freunde in Bonn beſucht. 6. Der Regen hat die Blumen erfriſcht. 7. Haben Sie meinen Brief erhalten? 8. Er hat uns ſeit langer Zeit nicht benachrichtigt. 9. Die Stadt war belagert. 10. Man muß nicht dem Verbote zuwider handeln. 11. Wer hat das Pulver erfunden? 12. Gehen Sie den Fluß entlang, und binnen einer Stunde werde ich nebſt meinem Bruder Sie auf dem Platze, der Kirche gegenüber, treffen und bis an das Tor begleiten. 13. Würden Sie uns benachrichtigt haben? 14. Wir wollen es um des Friedens willen tun. 15. Er wohnt in einem neuen Hauſe jenſeits des Fluſſes, oberhalb der Brücke. 16. Die Schule ſteht unweit der Kirche. 17. Wir werden des Regens ungeachtet ſpazieren gehen. 18. Längs der Straße hat man Bäume gepflanzt. 19. Man ehrt ihn ſeines Alters wegen. 20. Er iſt des kranken Kindes halber zu Hauſe geblieben. 21. Wir erreichten das Ufer vermittelſt eines Bootes. 22. Es iſt nicht leicht zu ſagen, was das Beſte iſt. 23. Ich habe jenes Haus verkauft, um ein beſſeres zu kaufen. 24. Ich tat es, nur um Ihnen zu gefallen.

1. The boy has watered the flowers. 2. He has promised to visit us in Berlin. 3. We have received his letter. 4. A German monk (has) invented (the) gun-powder. 5. The snow has covered the mountains and the valleys. 6. The gardener has forgotten to water the flowers. 7. He has sold his house along with the garden. 8. You will receive it within an hour. 9. Will you accompany me as far as the old bridge? 10. He is despised by (von) everybody. 11. I have forgotten my watch; what am I to (ſoll) do? 12. The shepherd seated himself beside (*acc.*) the shepherdess. 13. Between him and my brother [there] is no friendship. 14. The child has (*is*) come without its mother. 15. He has not understood what you say. 16. After we had reached the shore by means of a boat, we went to an inn in order to dry our clothes. 17. He has forgotten to inform you. 18. We shall do nothing contrary to this prohibition. 19. I shall come instead of my brother.

20. The ladies have gone for a walk on the other side of the river; you will find them below the bridge. 21. One part of the town lies on this side, the other on the other side of the river. 22. The garden lies outside the gate. 23. In spite of my prohibition you (du) have gone upon the ice. 24. For your mother's sake you should not have done that (§ 267).

LESSON XXIX.

Compound Verbs. — Separable.

282. Prepositions and adverbs, when forming the first part of a compound verb, are separable.

283. The words most usually occurring in this connection are: ab, *off;* an, *on;* auf, *up;* aus, *out;* bei, *by;* da or dar, *there;* ein (instead of in) *in;* empor, *up;* fort, *away;* entgegen, *against;* her, *hither;* hin, *thither;* mit, *with;* nach, *after;* nieder, *down;* ob, *over;* vor, *before;* weg, *away;* wieder, *again*, *back;* zu, *to;* zurück, *back;* zuſammen, *together*.

284. (*a*) In principal clauses, in the simple tenses of the verb, the prefix is separated from the verb and stands at the end of the clause. (See Rem. p. 195.)

(*b*) But the prefix is written in one word before the infinitive and participles — hence, also, in all the compound tenses.

(*c*) The augment ge– of the perfect participle, and zu when used with the infinitive, are written in one word between the prefix and the verb.

Thus: aufſtehen, *to rise;* ich ſtehe auf, *I rise;* ich ſtand auf, *I rose;* ich bin aufgeſtanden, *I have risen;* ich wünſche aufzuſtehen, *I wish to rise.* Or, with intervening words: ich ſtand heute morgen ſehr früh auf, *I rose very early this morning.* Stehen Sie nicht zu ſpät auf, *do not rise too late.*

285. But whenever the verb is removed to the end of the sentence, that is, in dependent clauses (§ 177, 4), the prefix is written in one word before the verb. For instance: Als ich heute morgen aufſtand, *when I rose this morning.* Wenn er zu ſpät aufſtände, *if he were to rise too late.*

NOTE.—A separable prefix always has the principal accent. (§ 54.) This stress is retained also when the prefix stands apart from the verb.

286. CONJUGATION OF A SEPARABLE VERB.

Anfangen, *to begin.*

Principal Parts.

anfangen. fing an. angefangen.

PRES. PART.	PERF. INFIN.
anfangend.	angefangen haben.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	PAST.
ich fange an, *I begin.*	ich fing an, *I began.*
du fängſt an, *thou beginnest.*	du fingſt an, *thou begannest.*
er fängt an, *he begins.*	er fing an, *he began.*
wir fangen an, *we begin*, etc.	wir fingen an, *we began*, etc.

PERFECT.	ich habe angefangen.
PLUPERFECT.	ich hatte angefangen.
FUTURE.	ich werde anfangen.
FUTURE PERFECT.	ich werde angefangen haben.
CONDITIONAL.	ich würde anfangen.
CONDITIONAL PERF.	ich würde angefangen haben.
IMPERATIVE.	fange an.
INFIN. with zu.	anzufangen, angefangen zu haben.

NOTE.—Observe that the simple infinitive and the present participle (with the transposed verb, § 285) are the only parts in which the prefix is not *actually separated*—either by position or by insertion of ge or zu.

Inflect for *inversion:*

heute fange ich an.	morgen werde ich anfangen.
etc.	etc.

For *transposition :*

daß ich heute anfange.	wenn ich ſchon angefangen habe.
etc.	etc.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Die Sonne geht im Oſten auf und geht im Weſten unter. 2. Als die Sonne aufging, reiſten wir ab. 3. Wir haben eine große Geldſumme ausgegeben. 4. Er ſieht aus, als ob er krank wäre. 5. Die Kinder ſahen nach dieſem langen Spaziergange müde aus. 6. Um welche Zeit fängt die Schule an? 7. Sie wird um zwei Uhr anfangen. 8. Ziehe deinen Rock aus, Karlchen. 9. Heinrich hat ſeinen neuen Rock angezogen. 10. Ziehen Sie ſich ſchnell an. 11. Iſt Ihr Freund angekommen? 12. Er wird morgen früh ankommen. 13. Um welche Zeit kommt der Zug von Boſton an? 14. Er kommt um ſechs Uhr an. 15. Mit welchem Zuge iſt Ihr Bruder abgereiſt? 16. Um welche Zeit fährt der Schnellzug ab? 17. Er wird um zwei Uhr abfahren. 18. Der arme Reiſende verirrte ſich und kam im Schnee um. 19. Ich ſtand heute morgen ſehr früh auf, um mit dem Schnellzuge abzufahren. 20. Kommen Sie nicht zu ſpät an; wir haben viele Briefe abzuſchreiben.

1. At what time does the sun rise? 2. The sun rises at six o'clock. 3. The sun was setting. 4. It grows dark when the sun sets. 5. I should have put on my new coat, if the weather had been fine. 6. The express leaves at three o'clock. 7. The scholars have copied their exercises. 8. This flower looks (ausſehen) very beautiful. 9. The king has accepted the work which the celebrated writer had offered him. 10. We dressed ourselves very quickly; we wished to start by (mit) the express. 11. I copy all my letters. 12. Put on your shoes. 13. Take off your coat. 14. The boys lost their way in the wood; they began to cry. 15. When (wann) will you begin to copy your letters? 16. I began yesterday and copied several. 17. The

sun will soon rise; let us rise and dress. 18. She *has* gone out in order to begin her work. 19. You have forgotten what you had promised me (*dat*). 20. The prince spent (ausgeben) a large sum [of] money.

LESSON XXX.

Variable Prefixes — Separable or Inseparable.

287. The prepositions durch, hinter, über, unter, um are separable or inseparable, but with a difference of meaning. When separable the compound has a primitive or literal sense; when inseparable, a derived or figurative sense. The usual rules of accent and of conjugation are observed in either case. As: —

SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
durch'ziehen, *to pull through.*	durchzie'hen, *to roam through.*
hin'tergehen, *to go behind.*	hinterge'hen, *to deceive.*
ü'berſtehen, *to project.*	überſte'hen, *to overcome.*
ü'berſetzen, *to put over, ferry over.*	überſetz'en, *to translate.*
um'ſchreiben, *to write over again.*	umſchrei'ben, *to express by circumlocution.*
um'gehen, *to go round.*	umge'hen, *to evade.*
un'terhalten, *to hold under.*	unterhal'ten, *to entertain.*

NOTE. — Frequently the separable sense will be expressed by a simple preposition with its object. As: der Mann ſetzte mich über den Fluß, *the man set me over the river;* wir gingen hinter das Haus, *we went behind the house.*

288. (*a*) The prefix wieder or wider is sometimes added to this list. But properly, by the present orthography, wieder is separable, in sense of *again*, *back;* wider, inseparable, in sense of *against.* As: wie'derkehren, *to return*, widerſte'hen, *to withstand.*

NOTE. — Except wiederho′len, *to repeat*, and sometimes wiederhal′len, *to resound*.

(*b*) The prefix miß is properly inseparable, but sometimes takes the augment ge– in the past participle. The practice as to the position of the augment varies. In some verbs it is placed before the prefix, in others between the prefix and the verb; as, gemiß'braucht, *abused;* gemiß'billigt, *disapproved;* gemiß'handelt, *ill-used;* miß'geachtet, *despised;* miß'geartet, *degenerated;* mißlung'en, *miscarried.* Details must be found in the dictionary.

(*c*) Voll (*full*) forms a few inseparable verbs; as, vollbring'en, *to accomplish*, p. p. vollbracht'; and some occasional separables; as, voll'ſtopfen, *to stuff full*, p. p. voll'geſtopft.

Verbs with Compound Prefixes.

289. Many verbs have a compound prefix. Such are: —

1. Those whose prefix is a compound adverb, especially such as are formed with da (dar), *there;* her, *hither;* hin, *hence.* All these are separable; as: —

bevor'ſtehen, *to impend.*	p. p. bevorgeſtanden.
voran'gehen, *to precede.*	" vorangegangen.
voraus'ſetzen, *to suppose.*	" vorausgeſetzt.
davon'laufen, *to run off.*	" davongelaufen.
herbei'rufen, *to summon.*	" herbeigerufen.
hinaus'tragen, *to carry out.*	" hinausgetragen.
umher'gehen, *to go about.*	" umhergegangen.

NOTE. — For accents of prefixes see § 53. Note also distinction between forms like hinzu′=ſetzen, *to add*, and hin′=zu=ſetzen (hinſetzen, infin. with zu).

Such prefixes are often written separately; as, davon laufen, etc.

2. In a few verbs the prefix consists of two parts, the first separable, the second inseparable. These are not uniform. Some separate the first element, admitting zu but yet excluding ge–. Others never use the separated forms. As, anerkennen, *to acknowledge;* ich erkenne an; anzuerkennen; p. p. anerkannt;

vorbehalten, *to reserve;* ich behalte vor; vorzubehalten; but p. p. vorbehalten. But auferſtehen, *to arise;* p. p. auferſtanden; auserwählen, *to select,* p. p auserwählt — the separated forms never being used. (See also Less. XXXIX).

REMARK. — Practically it is important to remember only the inseparable and variable prefixes (§§ 277, 287). Then only those cases will need special attention in which the latter are not determined by form or position; viz., in the present participle, the infinitive without zu, or the *transposed verb.* § 286, note.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wer hat dieſes Buch aus dem Deutſchen ins Engliſche überſetzt? 2. Er überſetzte Schillers Wilhelm Tell. 3. Setzen Sie uns ſchnell über, guter Mann. 4. Überſetzen Sie dieſe Seite. 5. Er hielt das Glas unter. 6. Sie unterhielt die Geſellſchaft. 7. Sie gingen zum Feinde über. 8. Wir übergingen die Sache. 9. Er umging das Geſetz. 10. Man hat mich hintergangen. 11. Die Feinde durchzogen das ganze Land. 12. Der Verfaſſer hat das Buch vom Anfang bis zum Ende umgeſchrieben. 13. Was ſich mit einem (*one*) Worte nicht ſagen läßt, muß man umſchreiben. 14. Wir traten während des Regens unter ein überſtehendes Dach. 15. Gott (*dat.*) ſei Dank, wir haben dieſe Verſuchung überſtanden. 16. Der Plan iſt mißlungen. 17. Der Herr iſt auferſtanden. 18. Ich erkenne meine Schuld an.

1. A man set us across in a little boat. 2. I have translated a whole page. 3. The roof projects. 4. He has overcome this temptation. 5. If you will have [some] water, hold your glass under. 6. He was wrong to evade the law. 7. This young man is the degenerate son of a good father. 8. We shall not abuse your kindness. 9. Consider the matter. 10. The physician entertained the patient with old stories. 11. We went a mile around. 12. The prince has abused his power. 13. The plan has been disapproved. 14. He has deceived you. 15. The servant has (*is*) run off. 16. The maid-servant carried the dishes out. 17. The ambassador has accomplished his work. 18. It is the duty of everyone to acknowledge the laws.

LESSON XXXI.

Impersonal Verbs.

290. (*a*) Verbs which express phenomena of nature have always the impersonal subject es, *it*. As:

es regnet, *it rains.*
es ſchneit, *it snows.*
es hagelt, *it hails.*
es friert, *it freezes.*
es blitzt, *it lightens.*
es donnert, *it thunders*, etc.

(*b*) Some other verbs are construed impersonally, to express action without definite agent. As:

es klopft, *there is a knock.*
es läutet, *there is a ring.*
es gibt (*it gives*), *there is.*
wie geht es, *how goes it?*

And in the passive, § 275; or reflexive, § 274, 3.

291. (*a*) Some verbs expressing states of body or mind are used as impersonal, with the person as object. As:

es hungert mich, *I am hungry.*
es durſtet, or } *I am thirsty.*
es dürſtet mich, }
es friert mich, *I am cold.*
es ſchwindelt mir, *I am giddy.*
es bangt mir, *I feel afraid*, etc.

NOTE.—When the personal object precedes the verb, the impersonal subject—which would then follow the verb (§ 177, 3)—is usually omitted; as, mich hungert; mir träumt, *I dream*, etc.

(*b*) Often the impersonal form is used when the logical subject follows. As: es freut mich, Sie zu ſehen, or daß Sie kommen, *I am glad*, etc; es ſcheint — es dünkt mich (or mir) —, daß er nicht kommen wird, *it seems — methinks — that* etc. (or mich, mir dünkt, etc.).

292. The impersonal form is much more usual in German than in English. Some impersonal idioms are:—

es tut mir leid, *I am sorry.*
es iſt mir leid, *I am sorry.*
es verſteht ſich, *that is of course.*
es fragt ſich, *it is a question.*
es iſt mir wohl, *I feel well.*
es geht mir gut, *I am doing well.*
es fehlt mir etwas, *something ails me.*
es gelingt mir, *I succeed*, etc.

293. Weather and time are expressed with the impersonal ſein: es iſt kalt, *it is cold;* es iſt zehn Uhr, *it is ten o'clock.*

294. The English phrases *there is*, *there are*, are expressed by the impersonal es with ſein or with geben, *to give*. With ſein the verb agrees, as in English, with the following predicate noun. With geben, this noun is object, and the verb remains always singular. As: es war ein Mann; es waren Männer. But, es gab einen Mann; es gab Männer — *there was a man; there were men* — more usually with plural nouns only.

In sense ſein is more definite; geben more vague and indefinite; as, es war einmal ein König, *there was once a king*. In der Mythologie der Griechen gibt es viele Götter, *there are many gods in the mythology of the Greeks.*

NOTE. — With ſein, inverted, es is omitted, as § 291; but never with geben. See § 453.

295. Almost all impersonal verbs form their perfect tenses with the auxiliary haben. But see § 297,4.

Use of the Auxiliaries **haben** and **ſein.**

296. Haben is used with all transitive verbs — with all reflexive verbs — with the modal verbs — with most impersonals — and with most intransitives which express simple action, with or without indirect object.

NOTE. — By transitive verbs are meant strictly those which take an accusative object — not always the same in German as, apparently, in English.

297. Sein is used with the following intransitives: —

1. Verbs which express a change of condition; as, ſterben, *to die;* wachſen, *to grow;* erkranken, *to fall ill;* geneſen, *to recover;* ſchmelzen, *to melt*, etc.

2. Verbs which denote motion to or from a place, of which the most usual are (see also § 298): —

fahren, *to go in a carriage.*
fallen, *to fall.*
fliegen, *to fly.*
fliehen, *to flee.*
fließen, *to flow.*
gehen, *to go.*
kommen, *to come.*
landen, *to land.*

laufen, *to run.*
reiſen, *to travel.*
reiten, *to ride.*
ſegeln, *to sail.*
ſinken, *to sink.*
ſpringen, *to spring.*
ſteigen, *to mount.*
ziehen, *to move.*

3. A few other verbs, some of which may have a dative object: —

bleiben, *to remain.*
begegnen, *to meet* (dat.).
folgen, *to follow* (dat.).
weichen, *to yield* (dat.).
ſein, *to be.*
werden, *to become.*

4. The following impersonal verbs: —

geſchehen, *to happen.*
gelingen, glücken, geraten, *to succeed.*
mißlingen, mißglücken, mißraten, *to succeed ill.*

Note. — Compound verbs do not always take the same auxiliary as their primitives. As, ſtehen, *to stand* (haben), entſtehen, *to arise* (ſein); kommen, *to come* (ſein), bekommen, *to obtain* (haben). The sense must be considered in every case.

298. Some intransitive verbs of motion are conjugated with ſein when the starting-point, direction, or extent of motion is mentioned. But when only the action or motion is stated, without reference to place, these same verbs are conjugated with haben. — Examples: Mein Bruder iſt nach Leipzig gereiſt, *my brother is gone to Leipzig.* Er hat viel gereiſt, *he has been a great traveller.* Sie ſind nach dem nächſten Dorfe geritten, *they are gone on horseback to the nearest village.* Sie haben den ganzen Tag geritten, *they have been riding the whole day.*

Note. — Some of these verbs are, besides the most of those in § 297, 2: eilen, klettern, kriechen, quellen, rinnen, ſchiffen, ſchwimmen, wandern, etc.

299. A few verbs are used with either auxiliary, but in a different sense; and a few are doubtful. The use of ſein as auxiliary is generally indicated in the dictionary.

Note. — It has already been remarked that the use of *be* in English was formerly more common than at present — approaching more nearly to the German use of ſein. In modern English the auxiliary ſein is usually translated *have.*

For the frequent omission of haben or ſein at the end of a transposed clause, see § 350, 4.

EXERCISE XXXI.—A.

1. Es freut mich, Sie wieder zu sehen. 2. Wie geht es Ihnen, alter Freund? 3. Regnet es? Nein, es schneit. 4. Hat es gestern gedonnert? 5. Nein, aber es hat gehagelt und geregnet. 6. Es versteht sich, dasz wir nicht ausgehen, sondern zu Hause bleiben, wenn es regnet. 7. Was fehlt Ihnen? 8. Es fehlt mir nichts, ich befinde mich ganz wohl. 9. Was ärgert Sie? 10. Es ärgert mich, von diesem Menschen betrogen worden zu sein. 11. Es gab bessere Zeiten. 12. Es gibt kein Brot im Hause. 13. Es gibt Brot für alle. 14. Es ist ein Mann an der Türe, der mit Ihnen zu sprechen wünscht. 15. Es jammerte den Feldherrn, in die geplünderte Stadt einzuziehen. 16. Es träumte mir, dasz ich auf einem hohen Berge stände; es schwindelte mir, und mir bangte herunterzufallen.

1. Is it cold? No, it is hot. 2. Has it been freezing this morning? 3. Yes, it has been freezing. 4. It was snowing; the children rejoiced to see the snow. 5. Will he succeed? Yes, he will succeed. 6. We were thirsty and hungry when we arrived at the end of our journey. 7. What is the matter with you? I feel giddy. 8. We were delighted to find you at home. 9. It has been raining the whole day. 10. Is (gibt) there anything new to-day? 11. No, there is no news (nothing new). 12. There were giants in ancient times. 13. We are sorry that you have not succeeded. 14. Has it been warm to-day? 15. No, it has been hot. 16. He denied that he had felt afraid.

B.

1. Der Soldat ist an seinen Wunden gestorben. 2. Die Mädchen sind in den Garten gegangen. 3. Der Schiffer ist in den Fluss gefallen. 4. Wir waren alle erschrocken. 5. Der Feind ist geflohen. 6. Diese Äpfel sind von dem Baume gefallen. 7. Das Schiff ist gesunken. 8. Was geschehen ist, ist geschehen. 9. Der alte Feldherr ist gestern angekommen. 10. Mein Vetter ist

während des Sommers auf das Land gezogen. 11. Die Fremden sind auf den Berg gestiegen. 12. Der Diener ist seinem Herrn gefolgt. 13. Wir sind zu Hause geblieben. 14. Meine Schwestern sind spazieren gefahren. 15. Die Schiffer sind mit den Reisenden nach Danzig gesegelt. 16. Der Knabe ist von der Bank gefallen.

1. The master has ridden with his servant to (the) town. 2. They are gone to (the) church. 3. The boatmen have landed in the harbour. 4. The ladies have taken a drive. 5. They have fled to Dresden. 6. My friend has moved to (in) the next street. 7. The bird has flown upon a tree. 8. I *have* met your friend yesterday. 9. The old physician would *have* remained at home, if the patient had not sent for (nach) him. 10. We should have come, if we had been invited. 11. The leaves have fallen from the trees. 12. The teacher has taken a walk with his pupil. 13. I was frightened. 14. This gentleman has been a great traveller (*has travelled much*). 15. The boy is tired, he has been running and jumping the whole day. 16. He has recovered from a severe illness.

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.

300. Cardinal Numerals.

1	eins (ein, eine, ein), *one.*	10	zehn, *ten.*
2	zwei, *two.*	11	elf, *eleven.*
3	drei, *three.*	12	zwölf, *twelve.*
4	vier, *four.*	13	dreizehn, *thirteen.*
5	fünf, *five.*	14	vierzehn, *fourteen.*
6	ſechs, *six.*	15	fünfzehn, *fifteen.*
7	ſieben, *seven.*	16	ſechzehn, *sixteen.*
8	acht, *eight.*	17	ſiebzehn, *seventeen.*
9	neun, *nine.*	18	achtzehn, *eighteen.*

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

19	neunzehn, *nineteen.*	90	neunzig, *ninety.*
20	zwanzig, *twenty.*	100	hundert, *a hundred.*
21	ein und zwanzig, *twenty-one.*	101	hundert (und) eins.
22	zwei und zwanzig, *twenty-two.*	102	hundert (und) zwei.
23	drei und zwanzig, *twenty-three*, etc.	120	hundert (und) zwanzig.
30	dreißig, *thirty.*	125	hundert fünf und zwanzig.
31	ein und dreißig, *thirty-one.*	200	zwei hundert.
32	zwei und dreißig, *thirty-two.*	300	drei hundert.
40	vierzig, *forty.*	1000	tauſend.
50	fünfzig, *fifty.*	2000	zwei tauſend.
60	ſechzig, *sixty.*	100,000	hundert tauſend.
70	ſiebzig, *seventy.*	1,000,000	eine Million'.
80	achtzig, *eighty.*	2,000,000	zwei Millionen.

NOTE.—The old form eilf for elf is still occasionally met with. Often, the forms funfzehn, funfzig; ſechszehn, ſechszig; ſiebenzehn, ſiebenzig. Rarely—poetic—the old forms zween, zwo, *two.*

301. Ein is regularly inflected—ein, eine, ein—when before a noun; when without a noun, einer, eine, eines; or with the article, der Eine, die Eine, das Eine, etc. The neuter form eins (for eines) is used abstractly in counting. In compound numbers, like ein und zwanzig, ein is not inflected; nor, frequently, in the phrase ein und derſelbe. (In other phrases (§ 245, note) ein is the indef. art.).

NOTE.—Ein, *one*, is pronounced with more stress than ein, *an*, *a*; and, for distinction, is often printed with spaced letters; as, ein Wort, *a word;* ein Wort, one *word;* or sometimes with capital initial.

302. Zwei, drei have a genitive zweier, dreier, and a dative zweien, dreien, which may be used when the case is not otherwise indicated; as, das Urteil zweier Freunde, *the judgment of two friends;* ich habe es nur zweien geſagt, *I have told it only to two.*

NOTE.—By ellipsis, the names of the numerals are construed as feminines, and of the weak declension; as, dieſe (Zahl) Acht, dieſe Einſen; *this (figure)* 8, these 1*'s.*

303. Other simple numerals sometimes take –en in the dative plural, when used without a noun — more rarely a plural form –e ; as, der König fährt mit ſechſen, *the king drives with six* (*horses*); alle Viere, *all fours.* But they usually remain unaltered.

304. Hundert, tauſend, take a plural –e when used alone as plurals ; as, hunderte, ja tauſen**de** waren zugegen, *hundreds, yes thousands, were present.* Ein is used before hundert and tauſend only in the numeral sense ; as, hundert, **a** *hundred;* but ein tauſend acht hundert, **one** *thousand eight hundred*, etc.

Expressions of Time.

305. (*a*) For the hours of the day the cardinal numeral is used with Uhr (die Uhr, *the clock*) as indeclinable ; and the fractions are usually counted (with auf) on the next hour. As: Wie viel Uhr iſt es ; *what o'clock is it?* Es iſt vier Uhr, *it is four o'clock ;* es iſt halb fünf, *it is half past four* (half-five) ; es iſt ein Viertel — drei Viertel — auf fünf, *it is a quarter past four — a quarter to five*, etc. But also : ein Viertel nach vier ; ein Viertel vor fünf ; as in English. *At* is expressed by um ; as: Um wie viel Uhr, *at what o'clock?* Um fünf (Uhr), etc.

(*b*) The minutes before the hour are expressed by vor (or in); after the hour, by nach (or über). As: Es iſt zehn Minuten vor elf — or in zehn Minuten elf, *it is ten minutes before* (*to*) *eleven ;* es iſt neun Minuten nach (or über) vier, *it is nine minutes after* (*past*) *four.*

NOTE. — The "time-table" style: "4^{20}, 4^{30}" vier (Uhr) zwanzig, vier (Uhr) dreißig, etc. is also used, though hardly in writing.

306. Various compounds are formed with cardinals :

1. With the suffix lei, appended to the ending er, indeclinable numeral adjectives are formed, sometimes called *variatives ;* as, einerlei, zweierlei, dreierlei, etc., *of one kind, two kinds, three kinds;* es iſt mir einerlei, *it is all one* (*the same*) *to me;* vielerlei, *of many kinds*, or *many kinds of;* wie vielerlei, *of how many kinds*, or *how many kinds of?*

2. With mal, *time*, *times*, adverbs sometimes called *iteratives;* as, einmal, *once;* zweimal, *twice;* hundertmal, *a hundred times;* vielmal, *many times*, etc.

Note.—Einmal is distinguished in meaning by accent: ein′mal, *once* (definite) *one time;* einmal′, *once* (indefinite), *once on a time.*

3. *Multiplicative* adjectives are formed with fach, or fältig; as, einfach, einfältig, *simple;* zweifach, zweifältig, *double twofold*, etc.

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate. 2. Wie viele Tage ſind in einem Jahre? 3. Ein Jahr hat 365 Tage. 4. Ein Tag hat 24 Stunden. 5. Zweimal neun iſt achtzehn. 6. 17 und 19 macht 36. 7. Wie ſpät iſt es? 8. Es hat ſoeben eins geſchlagen. 9. Multiplizieren Sie 24 mit 5; wieviel iſt (macht) das? 10. Es macht 120. 11. Dividiere 363 mit 11; was kommt heraus? 12. Addiere (zähle zuſammen) 5, 8, 7 und 10; wieviel macht das? 30. 13. Das Reſultat iſt 30. 14. Es iſt zehn Uhr. 15. Es wird bald halb elf ſein. 16. Der nächſte Zug nach Boſton geht um drei Viertel auf zwölf ab. 17. Um welche Zeit wird der Zug von Baltimore ankommen? 18. Um ein Viertel auf ſieben. 19. Wie viele Minuten ſind in einer Stunde? 20. 60 Minuten. 21. Die Schlacht bei Leipzig wurde im Jahre 1813 geſchlagen. 22. Wie weit iſt es von hier nach Richmond? 23. Es iſt noch 67 Meilen. 24. Es iſt uns einerlei.

1. The book has 253 pages. 2. How many miles is it from here to Springfield? 3. It is 56 miles. 4. At what time will the express leave for Hartford? 5. The express will leave at a quarter past five. 6. At what time will the train from New York arrive? 7. It will arrive at a quarter to eleven. 8. 14 multiplied by 3 is 42. 9. How many kinds of wine have you in your cellar? 10. We have three kinds of wine in our cellar. 11. How many kinds of apples grow in your orchard? 12. Five kinds of apples. 13. That is tenfold profit. 14. We

have been twice in London. 15. Three times three is nine. 16. Seven times seven is forty-nine. 17. Schiller was born in the year 1759, and died in the year 1805. 18. How old was he, at the (zur) time of his death? 19. He was 46 years old. 20. How old is your youngest sister? 21. She is seven years old. 22. Thousands were present. 23. That is all the same to me. 24. We rise (aufſtehen) every morning at half past six.

(*Continue oral practice, until the numerals are familiar.*)

LESSON XXXIII.

ORDINAL NUMERALS.

307. The ordinal numerals from 2 to 19 are derived from the cardinal numerals by adding the suffix t, and from 20 upwards, ſt. They are declined like adjectives and are usually preceded by the definite article. Erſt, *first*, is the superlative of ehe, *before*, eher, *sooner;* dritt, *third*, shortens the radical vowel; acht, *eighth*, drops one t. In compound numbers only the last takes the ordinal ending.

1st	der,	die,	das	erſte, *the first.*
2nd	„	„	„	zweite, *the second.*
3rd	„	„	„	dritte, *the third.*
4th	„	„	„	vierte, *the fourth.*
5th	„	„	„	fünfte, *the fifth.*
6th	„	„	„	ſechſte (ſechste), *the sixth.*
7th	„	„	„	ſiebente, *the seventh.*
8th	„	„	„	achte, *the eighth.*
19th	„	„	„	neunzehnte, *the nineteenth.*
20th	„	„	„	zwanzigſte, *the twentieth.*
21st	„	„	„	ein und zwanzigſte, *the twenty-first.*
22nd	„	„	„	zwei und zwanzigſte, *the twenty-second.*
30th	„	„	„	dreißigſte, *the thirtieth.*

31*st*	der, die, das	ein und dreißigſte, *the thirty-first.*
50*th*	„ „ „	fünfzigſte (funfzigſte), *the fiftieth.*
100*th*	„ „ „	hundertſte, *the hundredth.*
101*st*	„ „ „	hundert und erſte, *the hundred-and-first.*
200*th*	„ „ „	zweihundertſte, *the two-hundredth.*
1000*th*	„ „ „	tauſendſte, *the thousandth.*
	„ „ „	letzte, *the last.*

NOTE. — Der, die, das andere, *the other*, is sometimes used for *the second.*

308. From wie viel, *how many*, is formed an interrogative ordinal, der, die, das wievielſte, or wievielte; as, der wievielſte iſt das, *how many is that?* den wievielten (Tag) haben wir heute, *what day of the month is it to-day?*

Expressions of Date.

309. (*a*) In giving the day of the month, the ordinal is used elliptically, without preposition [Tag von being implied]; as, es iſt der fünfte Auguſt', *it is the fifth* (*day*) *of August.*

(*b*) In naming a date, the dative ordinal with am (an dem contracted) is used, or — especially in dating a letter — the simple accusative; as, er ſtarb am zehnten Mai, — or den zehnten Mai — *he died* (*on*) *the tenth of May;* Boſton, den zehnten Mai.

NOTE. — When figures are used, the endings -(ſ)te, -(ſ)ten are sometimes written, but often omitted; as der 10te or der 10. Mai; am 20ſten or am 20. Mai — the period marking the abbreviated ordinal.

310. The date of the year is given by the cardinal number, usually preceded by im Jahr(e), *in the year;* as, Napoleon ſtarb (im Jahre) achtzehn hundert ein und zwanzig; *Napoleon died in* (*the year*) 1821 (but not in achtzehn hundert, etc.)

311. From the ordinal numerals are formed:

1. *The fractional* nouns, by the ending -tel — originally the noun Teil, *part* — except *the half*, die Hälfte; as, ein Drittel, *a third;* ein Viertel, *a fourth*, etc. (For halb, see § 144.)

2. *The dimidiative* adjectives, by adding halb, *half*, to the ordinal, denoting half a unit less than the corresponding number; as, anderthalb, *one and a half;* dritt(e)halb, *two and a half* (i. e. *the third a half*)— etc. These are indeclinable.

3. Ordinal adverbs, ending in –ens (see § 399); as, erſtens, *firstly;* zweitens, *secondly*, etc.

Expressions of Weight and Measure.

312. Nouns of quantity, weight, or measure, except feminines in e, are used in the singular after a numeral. The English 'of' is not expressed. Thus: drei Pfund Tee, *three pounds of tea;* zehn Fuß lang, *ten feet long.* But drei Taſſen Tee, *three cups of tea;* zwei Ellen lang, *two yards long*, etc.

313. The names of the days and months are (usually with the article) the masculines:

Sonn'tag, *Sunday.*	Januar', *January.*	Ju'li, *July.*
Mon'tag, *Monday.*	Februar', *February.*	Auguſt', *August.*
Diens'tag, *Tuesday.*	März, *March.*	Septem'ber, *September.*
Mitt'woch, *Wednesday.*	April', *April.*	Okto'ber, *October.*
Don'nerstag, *Thursday.*	Mai, *May.*	Novem'ber, *November.*
Frei'tag, *Friday.*	Ju'ni, *June.*	Dezem'ber, *December.*
Sonn'abend, or Sams'tag, *Saturday.*		

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Die großen Soldaten Friedrichs des Erſten, Königs von Preußen, dienten in den Kriegen ſeines Enkels Friedrich des Zweiten. 2. Ludwig Uhland wurde am 26. April 1787 in Tübingen geboren und ſtarb daſelbſt am 13. November 1862. 3. Das Haus, in welchem ich wohne, iſt drei Stock hoch; ich wohne im dritten Stocke. 4. Heinrich der Achte, König von England, war ſechsmal verheiratet. 5. Drei Achtel iſt eine Hälfte von drei Viertel. 6. Jeder Soldat erhielt zwei Paar Stiefel. 7. Er wohnt im vierten Hauſe um die Ecke. 8. Der neunte Monat des Jahres heißt September. 9. Wie

heißt der letzte Tag der Woche? 10. Man nennt ihn Sonnabend oder Samstag. 11. Der Zug wird in anderthalb Stunden ankommen. 12. Das Landhaus des Grafen iſt drittehalb Meilen von hier. 13. Das Dampfboot wird am 21ſten nächſten Monats abfahren. 14. Nächſten Freitag werden wir den 25ſten dieſes Monats haben. 15. Den wievielſten haben wir heute? 16. Wir haben heute den 25. Auguſt achtzehn (or tauſend acht) hundert ſechs und achtzig.

1. Sunday is the first day of the week, Monday the second, and Tuesday the third. 2. The last days of (the) January were very cold. 3. He has bought a dozen bottles of wine. 4. She drank two cups of tea. 5. Give me eight quires of paper. 6. Three is a fifth of fifteen. 7. The king will arrive on the 22d of May, at half past three. 8. He has bought five pairs of boots. 9. Send me ten pounds of tea. 10. A third and a sixth are three sixths. 11. The train will arrive in three hours and a half. 12. Last Saturday we had (*were*) gone to Dresden. 13. I have read the first twenty pages. 14. The bridge is 153 feet long, and 30 feet broad. 15. What day [of the month] *is it* to-day? 16. It is Thursday, the 15th of February, 1885.

LESSON XXXIV.

Adverbs.

314. Most adjectives are used in their predicate form as adverbs, not only in the positive, but also in the comparative and superlative degrees. Karl ſchreibt ſchön, Heinrich ſchreibt ſchöner, aber Luiſe ſchreibt am ſchönſten. Wer kann am ſchnellſten laufen? (§ 160), *who can run the fastest?*

NOTE.—Thus the adverb is often distinguished from the adjective only by the context. (See § 449, 2, *d.*)

315. In the superlative the form with am is used when actual comparison is expressed. But in the *absolute* superlative, which expresses simply a very high degree without comparison, the accusative neuter with auf (auf das contracted to aufs) is used. As, er grüßte mich aufs höflichſte, *he greeted me most politely* — in this case usually without the article in English.

316. A few superlatives use as adverbs the uninflected form in –ſt. And of these, the superlatives höchſt, äußerſt, möglichſt, are frequently used to form an absolute superlative of adjectives or other adverbs. — As, tun Sie es gefälligſt, *do it, please;* höchſt angenehm, *most agreeable;* äußerſt ſchön, *extremely beautiful;* möglichſt ſchnell, *as quick* (or *quickly*) *as possible.*

317. The following adverbs form their comparative and superlative from other stems: —

wohl or gut, *well.*	beſſer, *better;* am beſten, *best.*
bald, *soon.*	eher, *sooner;* am eheſten, *soonest.*
gern, *willingly, gladly.* See also § 156.	lieber, *more willingly, rather;* am liebſten, *most willingly.*

318. Adverbs are often formed from adjectives by means of suffixes; as, bitterlich, *bitterly* (from bitter); blindlings, *blindly*, (from blind). Such forms will be more fully given in Less. XLIII.

Note. — Enlarged forms in –e occur; as, lange, gerne, vorne, for lang, gern, vorn, etc., formerly more common than now.

319. (*a*) Some adverbs derived from nouns or adjectives take the sign of the genitive s (§ 399): —.

abends, *in the evening.*	links, *to the left.*
morgens, *in the morning.*	ſchönſtens, *in the best manner.*
anfangs, *in the beginning.*	ſpäteſtens, *at the latest.*
teils, *partly.*	allerdings, *certainly.*
rechts, *to the right.*	anders, *otherwise.*

(*b*) Such forms are sometimes phrases, written as compounds; as, größtenteils, *for the most part;* unterwegs, *on the way;* keineswegs, *by no means*, etc.

320. (*a*) Many adverbial phrases are formed by combination with a preposition; as, von oben, *from above;* von unten, *from below;* gerade aus, *straight on.* Many adverbs are pure compounds, as, vorbei, *past;* überall, *everywhere;* vielleicht, *perhaps*, etc. For accent, see § 53. For compounds of da, wo, see §§ 209, 237.

(*b*) The compounds with her, *hither;* hin, *thither*, are often separable; as, woher kommen Sie? or, wo kommen Sie her? *where do you come from?* etc. Her and hin are used in many idiomatic phrases. (§ 484).

321. There are also many simple adverbs, or adverbs proper; such as, hier, *here;* dort, *there;* her, *hither;* hin, *thither;* dann, *then;* wann, *when;* ſo, *so;* nur, *only*, etc.

NOTE.—Adverbs are classed, according to their meaning, as in English, into adverbs *of place*, *of time*, *of manner*, *of degree*, *of predication* (or *mood*), etc. But such classification does not need to be explained here.

322. Position of Adverbs.

1. The adverb stands immediately before the adjective or adverb it modifies. Except genug, *enough;* as, ſtark genug, *strong enough.*

2. The adverb cannot stand, as it so often does in English, between the subject and verb. For instance: *We generally dine at six o'clock*, wir ſpeiſen gewöhnlich um ſechs Uhr. *He always speaks the truth*, er ſagt immer die Wahrheit. Except in the *transposed* order (§ 177, 4.) See also § 354, 5.

3. The English "only" may either precede or follow the noun; the German nur must always precede it: *My sister only*, or *only my sister was present*, nur meine Schweſter war zugegen.

4. When several adverbs or adverbial expressions occur in the same sentence, the adverb of time is usually first, the adverb of place second, and the adverb of manner last. Examples: Es hat heute hier ſtark geregnet, *it has been raining hard here to-day.* Er arbeitet immer fleißig, *he always works diligently.* (See also § 202.)

Note. — The same rule applies to the corresponding adverbial phrases; as, Es hat heute morgen in dieſer Gegend ſehr ſtark geregnet, *it has been raining very hard in this neighborhood this morning.*

5. The adverb nicht, *not*, when it negatives the verb, stands after all objects or other adverbs. But when it negatives some adjunct of the verb, it is placed before that adjunct. Examples: Ich ſehe ihn nicht, *I do not see him.* Ich habe ihn heute nicht geſehen, *I have not seen him to-day.* Wir haben ihn nicht heute, ſondern geſtern geſehen, *we have not seen him to-day, but yesterday.*

323. When an adverb, or adverbial phrase, begins the sentence, an *inversion* occurs (see § 177, 3); as, heute hat es hier ſtark geregnet; or, hier hat es heute ſtark geregnet; or ſtark hat es heute hier geregnet. For fuller statements, see § 344.

Note. — Only one such adverb or adverbial phrase can precede the verb. The others will occupy their usual places, as in the examples.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wo iſt der Bahnhof? 2. Links um die Ecke. 3. Wo iſt der Gaſthof zu (*of*) den drei Königen? 4. In der dritten Straße rechts, das vierte Haus auf der linken Seite. 5. Bitte, zeigen Sie mir den Weg nach dem Dom. 6. Gehen Sie gerade aus, bis Sie an das Rathaus kommen; dort biegen Sie links um die Ecke und nehmen darauf die erſte Straße rechts, welche Sie direkt' auf den Münſterplatz führt. 7. Wo wollen Sie hin? 8. Ich laufe auf den Bahnhof; ich werde bald wieder zurück kommen. 9. Die Schlafzimmer ſind oben, der Speiſeſaal und die Wohnzimmer ſind unten. 10. Sind Sie je in Genf geweſen, und kennen Sie die dortigen Gaſt-

höfe? 11. Zwar bin ich da geweſen, aber es iſt ſchon lange her (*ago*). 12. Wir ſind vorgeſtern hier angekommen, und werden übermorgen wieder abreiſen. 13. Wir haben bereits die ganze Stadt geſehen. 14. Dann ſind Sie wahrſcheinlich auch ſchon im Dom geweſen? 15. Freilich ſind wir da geweſen, und haben ihn von vorne und von hinten, von oben und von unten beſehen. 16. Das iſt ja recht ſchön; Sie ſcheinen überall geweſen zu ſein. 17. Woher kommen Sie heute? Wohin wollen Sie morgen? 18. Ich komme heute von Baſel und will morgen nach Bern.

1. He entirely forgot the names. 2. Which of the sisters works most diligently? 3. The air is cool in-the-morning and in-the-evening. 4. We have waited [a] long [time]. 5. She cried bitterly. 6. Which of these boys sings most beautifully? 7. I expect him every hour (hourly). 8. He fell backwards over the stairs. 9. He can hardly have heard it. 10. The book is written partly in the English and partly in the German language. 11. It rained yesterday and [the] day-before-yesterday. 12. When did it happen? 13. It happened lately. 14. It is very probable that it will rain to-morrow. 15. I had almost forgotten it. 16. He is by no means so industrious as you think. 17. Is your brother at present (jetzt) in Basle? 18. No sir, at present he is in Strassburg.

LESSON XXXV.

Conjunctions.

324. Conjunctions which connect sentences of like kind are called co-ordinating conjunctions. Conjunctions which introduce dependent clauses are called subordinating conjunctions. Conjunctions are important chiefly from their influence on the order of words. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

325. Co-ordinating conjunctions are either pure conjunctions (the simple connectives) or adverbial conjunctions.

Pure Conjunctions.

326. The *pure conjunctions* cause neither *inversion* nor *transposition* of the verb. These are *and*, *but*, *or*, *for:*

und, *and.*	ſondern, *but.*
aber, *but*, *however.*	oder, *or.*
allein, *but*, *yet.*	denn, *for.*

NOTE. — More rarely, also, doch, indeſſen, meaning *yet.*

(*a*) Sondern is used only after a negative, and introduces an opposite statement. Aber is used both after affirmative and negative clauses, and merely qualifies, but does not contradict, the preceding statement. As: Er iſt nicht reich, ſondern arm. Er hat das Haus gekauft, aber nicht bezahlt. Ich komme nicht von der Stelle, aber es iſt auch ſchwer; *I do not make any progress, but then it is difficult.*

(*b*) Sondern, allein, stand at the head of the clause; aber, in the sense of *however*, frequently after the introductory words As: Er iſt wohl ſehr reich; er iſt aber ſehr geizig; *he is indeed very rich; he is however very avaricious.*

(*c*) Allein (literally *alone*, *only*) admits, but excepts from, a preceding statement, either affirmative or negative; and is of less frequent use than aber. As: Er war ein großer Feldherr, allein er beſaß nicht die Gabe umfaſſender Berechnung, —*but* (*yet*) *he did not possess the gift of comprehensive calculation*, etc.

Adverbial Conjunctions.

327. The *adverbial conjunctions*, or co-ordinating conjunctions which partake of the nature of adverbs, when they stand at the head of the sentence, influence the order of words like adverbs — that is, they cause *inversion* of the verb (§ 323). Examples: Ich bin krank; deshalb kann ich

nicht ausgehen; *I am ill; on that account I cannot go out.* Er kam geſtern Abend ſehr ſpät an, und dennoch iſt er ſehr früh auf; *he arrived very late last night, and, nevertheless, he is up very early.* But these same words stand as adverbs within the sentence: Ich bin krank, ich kann deshalb nicht ausgehen.

328. The principal adverbial conjunctions are:

alſo,	*accordingly.*	doch,	*yet, still, nevertheless.*
außerdem,	*besides.*	dennoch,	
da,	*there, then.*	jedoch,	
dann,	*then.*	folglich,	*consequently.*
daher,	*therefore.*	indeſſen,	*meanwhile, however.*
darum,		noch,	*still, yet* (time).
deshalb,	*on that account.*	ſo,	*so, then.*
deswegen,		ſonſt,	*else, otherwise.*

NOTE.—So is frequently used to introduce a principal clause, preceded by a dependent clause, when no connective is expressed in English,—especially after adverbial clauses of *cause* or *condition*. See § 486.

329. In the correlative or double connectives, entweder—oder, *either—or;* weder—noch, *neither—nor*, inversion occurs after weder and noch—and usually, but not always, after entweder; as: Entweder kommt er (or er kommt), oder er wird bald ſchreiben, *either he will come or he will soon write.* Weder wird er kommen, noch wird er ſchreiben, *neither will he come nor will he write.* But: er wird weder kommen noch ſchreiben, *he will neither come nor write.*

NOTE.—The phrases ſowohl—als auch, *both—and;* nicht nur—ſondern auch, *not only—but also*, are also used as correlative connectives.

Subordinating Conjunctions.

330. Subordinating conjunctions *transpose* the verb to the end of the clause which they introduce. Examples: Nachdem ich meinen Brief geſchrieben hatte, trug ich ihn auf die

Poſt; *after I had written my letter, I carried it to the post-office.* Die Sonne ging ſoeben auf, als wir auf dem Gipfel des Berges ankamen; *the sun was just rising as we reached the summit of the mountain.*

331. When a dependent clause — adverbial or objective — precedes the principal clause, the latter is inverted. The dependent clause here has the effect of an adverbial modifier preceding the principal verb (§ 323). As: Nachdem er ſeine Rechnung bezahlt hatte, reiſte er ab; *after he had paid his bill, he left.* Daß er das getan hat, kann ich nicht glauben, *that he has done that, I cannot believe.*

332. The most important subordinating conjunctions are: —

als,	*when, as.*
als ob, als wenn,	*as if.*
bevor,	*before.*
bis,	*until.*
da,	*as, since* (cause).
daß,	*that.*
damit,	*in order that.*
ehe,	*before.*
indem, indeſſen,	*while, as.*
nachdem,	*after.*
ob,	*whether, if.*
obgleich, obwohl,	*although.*
ſeit, ſeitdem,	*since* (time).
ſobald,	*as soon as.*
während,	*while.*
wann,	*when.*
wenn,	*when, if.*
weshalb,	*wherefore.*
wie,	*how, as.*
weil,	*because.*

NOTE. — Some of these words have other uses: as, da, *there, then*; als, *than*; bis, *up to*, etc. But the use as subordinating conjunction will always be shown by the position of the verb at the end of the clause.

333. For the distinction between als, *when* (definite past), wenn, *when* (future or contingent), and wann, *when* (interrogative); also for the separable compounds wenn — auch, ob — gleich, *although*, etc., see Lesson LXI.

334. The correlative comparison, *the (more)—the (less)* is expressed by je—deſto (or je—je), the leading, or dependent, clause being transposed, the second inverted; as, je reicher der Mann wird, deſto ſtolzer wird er, *the richer the man becomes, the prouder he grows.* Je eher, je lieber, *the sooner, the better.*

Interjections.

335. The simple or natural interjections do not admit of grammatical treatment. They are more or less the same in all languages.

336. Sometimes words or phrases are used elliptically, in an exclamatory way, as interjections:

1. Such are: weh! o weh! *woe is me!* leider! *alas!* gut Heil! *hail!* Gottlob! *God be praised!* wohlauf! *cheer up!* bewahre! *God forbid!* weg! fort! *away!* herein! *come in!* weiter! *go on!*

2. Here may be mentioned the frequent use of the infinitive and perfect participle in German, instead of the English imperative: Einſteigen! eingeſtiegen! (on starting a train, etc.) *get in! all aboard!* ausſteigen! ausgeſtiegen! *get out! all out!* And the exclamatory or *absolute* infinitive: Ich dich verlaſſen! unmöglich! *I forsake you! impossible!*

3. Occasionally an interjection is brought into a kind of connection with the structure of the sentence. For instance: O des Toren! *oh the fool!* Pfui über den Feigen! *fie on the coward!* Ach, daß du da liegſt! *Alas! that thou liest there!*

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Frau (*Mrs.*) Braun hat uns zu einer Geſellſchaft eingeladen, aber wir haben ihre Einladung nicht annehmen können. 2. Dieſe Soldaten haben in der Infanterie, und nicht in der Kavallerie gedient. 3. Ich will gerne kommen, aber mein Bruder kann nicht kommen. 4. Gehen Sie jetzt nicht aus, denn es regnet. 5. Mein Arzt hat mir geraten, mich ruhig zu verhalten; deshalb kann ich

heute nicht ausgehen. 6. Er iſt teils in Deutſchland, teils in Frankreich erzogen worden; deshalb ſpricht er ſowohl Deutſch wie Franzöſiſch mit großer Fertigkeit. 7. Es regnet; deshalb bleibe ich zu Hauſe. 8. Als mein Diener in das Zimmer trat, ſchlief ich noch. 9. Je länger die Tage ſind, deſto kürzer ſind die Nächte. 10. Die wilden Gänſe ſind ſchwer zu ſchießen, weil ſie ſchnell und ſehr hoch fliegen. 11. Je fleißiger man arbeitet, deſto leichter wird die Arbeit. 12. Sowohl meine Eltern als auch viele meiner beſten Freunde waren auf dem Bahnhof, als ich von meiner Reiſe zurückkam. 13. Entweder werden Sie bald einen Brief von mir erhalten, oder ich werde jemanden zu Ihnen ſchicken. 14. Wahrhaftig, ſchnell gefahren! 15. Geſtern Abend fuhr ich von London ab, und heute Nachmittag um vier Uhr bin ich ſchon in dem kleinen Selters, das durch ſein Mineral'waſſer ſo berühmt iſt. 16. Was habe ich nicht in dieſer kurzen Zeit geſehen! 17. Gottlob! endlich ſind wir da und wollen uns ein wenig ausruhen. 18. Je früher, deſto beſſer.

1. When I arrived yesterday, it was quite dark. 2. Wait a minute, until I have written my exercise. 3. It is raining, therefore I shall stay quietly at home. 4. After I had taken my ticket, I went into the waiting-room. 5. I sent the porter for a cab, because I have so much baggage that I cannot carry it myself. 6. He speaks as he thinks. 7. After it has lightened it thunders. 8. He slept whilst I was reading. 9. It struck twelve, when we arrived at Brandenburg. 10. The sun had set before we arrived at our journey's end. 11. You will find the gentleman either in the dining-room or in the sitting-room. 12. He can neither read nor write. 13. We could neither hear nor see. 14. All aboard! the train starts in a moment. 15. Not only my books, but also my clothes, were burned. 16. Alas! all that (was) I had is lost. 17. As he could not come, (ſo) he wrote me a long letter. 18. The more diligently I study the German language, the more clearly I see that it is very much (ſehr) like the English [language].

LESSON XXXVI.

Order of Words.—Summary.

Some of the rules on the order of words have already been incidentally given (§ § 177, 202). It is now necessary to give a more complete summary of this subject.

337. The principal point in the construction of the German sentence is:

I. The Position of the Verb.

338. There are three forms of verb-position:—

I. Normal order—the verb follows the subject.
II. Inverted order—the verb precedes the subject.
III. Transposed order—the verb stands at the end.

The first two of these belong, usually, to independent or principal sentences; the last only to dependent or subordinate sentences (clauses).

Note 1.—If we denote the subject by S.; the verb by V.; the adjuncts of the verb by A., the forms will be as follows:—

I. Normal—N. = S. V. A.
II. Inverted—I. = V. S. A.
III. Transposed—T. = S. A. V.

Observe *that it is the verb that changes its position.* Thus *the position of the verb indicates the character of the construction.*

2. By the *verb* is meant always the affirming, or finite (*personal*) verb. This in all compound forms (§ 169) is the auxiliary, or inflected word. By the *subject* is meant not only the nominative noun or pronoun, but the *entire subject*, with all its modifiers. By *adjunct* is meant all the rest of the predicate, except the adjunct which precedes the verb in II. (§ 323).

1. The Normal Order.

339. The *normal* (S. V. A.) is the natural and usual order of the independent declarative sentence.

340. None of the adjuncts of the predicate can stand between the subject and the verb (as often in English). Thus: *he always wears a black coat,* er trägt immer einen ſchwarzen Rock. (See also § 343).

Note.—Only seeming exceptions are such words as aber, *however;* doch, jedoch, *yet;* nämlich, *namely;* zwar, *indeed,* which are really parenthetical.

341. The infinitive and participle of compound tenses stand at the end, preceded by whatever qualifies them. When both occur, the infinitive stands last (§ 163)—as in many examples already.

342. The prefix of a separable verb stands at the end in simple tenses. In compound, it is written in one word before the participle or infinitive (§ 284)—as in many examples already.

NOTE. — But sometimes, as in poetry, the prefix will stand nearer the verb in a simple tense; as: gürt' mir um den Degen, *gird round me the sword.*

343. (*a*) The subject itself may be complex — consisting of several words, or including an adjective clause or clauses (§ 348). In all cases the rule stands that the principal verb *immediately* follows the subject. Thus: Friedrich der Zweite, König von Preußen (subject), war der größte Feldherr ſeiner Zeit. Ein Herr, der einem Manne, dem er nicht recht traute, eine Guinee geliehen hatte (subject), war (verb) erſtaunt zu finden, etc.

NOTE. — Observe that in the latter case the final verb of the dependent adjective clause is brought *immediately before the principal verb.* This position will often, in a complex sentence, usefully show where the dependent construction ends, and the principal sentence is resumed.

(*b*) But if the clause modify the predicate, it should not (§ 340) stand between the subject and the verb, as often in English. Thus: *The Romans, after they had conquered the world, fell into luxury;* Die Römer verfielen, nachdem ſie die Welt erobert hatten, in Üppigkeit (*not* die Römer, nachdem, etc.).

NOTE. — This rule is sometimes violated, but not in strict correctness. Rather, to avoid crowding, let the dependent clause precede; as, Nachdem die Römer, etc. . . . verfielen ſie, etc. (§ 344).

For special case of normal order in dependent clause, see § 350, 1.

2. The Inverted Order.

344. The *inverted* order (V. S. A.) is assumed in independent declarative sentences when introduced by any adjunct of the verb: —

(*a*) Only one such adjunct may precede the verb; but this may consist of several words, forming, however, logically only one element of the sentence. As: Damals half uns ein Freund aus unſrer Not. Uns half damals ein guter Freund aus der Not. Aus unſerer Not half er uns damals.

(*b*) A dependent clause — adverbial or objective — preceding the principal, has the value of an introductory adjunct, and causes inversion of the principal verb. As: Als wir ankamen, war es ſchon Tag. Daß er ſolche Worte geſprochen hat, glaube ich nicht. But sometimes, colloquially, or for emphasis, the inversion is omitted. As: Wäre ſie nicht gekommen, ich ſtände noch da — for (ſo) ſtände ich, etc. See § 471, *e*.

(*c*) For the same reason, expressions like *I think*, *said he*, etc., when preceded by any of the words referred to, will be inverted, those phrases being logically the principal sentence, of which the words quoted form the object. As: Das, denke ich, iſt meine Pflicht (but ich denke, das iſt, etc.).

For dependent *subject* clauses, see § 343.

(*d*) Rarely the participle or infinitive of a compound tense, or even the verb itself, may stand first, in case of special emphasis. As: Geflohen war alles; Schweigen will ich nicht; Ermorden laſſen kann er mich, nicht richten; Kommt doch das Ärgernis von oben; Hatten wir es ja alle gehört.

345. (*a*) The "pure conjunctions" (*and*, *but*, *or*, *for*, § 326) do not cause inversion. They will, therefore, usually restore the *normal order* after a preceding inversion, unless the *cause of inversion* is repeated. Thus: Da kam er zu mir, und ich fragte ihn ſogleich; but und ſogleich fragte ich ihn.

(*b*) Conjunctive words belonging to the subject alone will not cause inversion; as, Auch mein Bruder war zugegen. And sometimes an adverb may be allowed to stand, parenthetically, in the same way; as, Freilich (*indeed*), ich kann es nicht ſagen.

346. The *inverted* is the regular order, without introductory adjunct:

(*a*) In direct questions, unless the interrogative word is *subject;* as, Iſt der Herr zu Hauſe? Wann wird er zu Hauſe ſein? But, Wer iſt der Herr? Wer bringt die Nachricht (*normal*)?

(*b*) In imperative and optative (wish) sentences; except, sometimes, in the third person; as, ſetzen wir uns; ſchweige (du); wäre es doch Tag, *would it were day;* gebe Gott or Gott gebe, *God grant*, etc.

(*c*) Often also in exclamation (§ 344, *d*); as, iſt doch das Leben ſchwer!

NOTE. — Yet sometimes, colloquially, inversion occurs without introductory word; as, kam ein Knabe, for es kam (*there*) *came;* or, rarely, after und; as, es war ganz ruhig und rührte ſich nichts.

For special case of inversion in dependent clause, see § 350, 2.

3. The Transposed Order.

347. The *transposed* order (S. A. V.) is used only in subordinate or dependent sentences (clauses).

NOTE. — The transposed order can therefore occur only in *complex sentences.* Yet sometimes, a dependent clause may stand alone, the principal clause being implied: as, wenn er nur bald käme, *if he would only come soon!* (I should be glad).

348. A dependent clause stands to its principal clause in the relation of a noun, or of an adjective, or of an adverb. Hence dependent clauses are called noun clauses, adjective clauses, or adverbial clauses.

(*a*) A dependent *noun* clause is usually introduced by the conjunction daß, *that;* as: Er ſchrieb uns, daß er es tun würde; — or, in a dependent question, by ob, *whether*, *if;* or was, *what*, or its equivalent (§ 222). As: Wir fragten den Bedienten, ob ſein Herr zu Hauſe wäre; ich wußte nicht, was er mir ſagen wollte. (For exception, see § 350, 1).

(*b*) A dependent *adjective* (relative) clause is introduced by a relative pronoun or its equivalent (§ 237). Example: Das Haus, welches vorige Nacht abgebrannt iſt, gehörte einem Schuhmacher; alles, worüber ich mich gefreut hatte, iſt verloren.

(*c*) Dependent *adverbial* clauses are usually introduced by subordinating conjunctions (§ 332), expressing a relation of time, place, cause, manner, purpose, condition or concession. Example: Es war noch Tag, als wir in dem Gaſthofe ankamen. Abel war ein Schäfer, während Kain ein Ackersmann war. (For exception see § 350, 2.).

NOTE. — The same sentence may include several dependent clauses. For the effect of a dependent clause preceding the principal, see § 344, *b*. But if the introductory clause is *subject*, no effect is produced on the order of the principal sentence.

349. The pure conjunctions, und, etc. (§ 345) produce no effect on the dependent construction. Thus a series of connected clauses, dependent on the same subordinating word, will continue the transposed order to the end of the series, each dependent verb standing at the end of its own clause. As: Ein alter Mann, der in ſeiner Jugend nach Amerika reiſte, ſich dort verheiratete und eine große Familie erzog, iſt neulich hier geſtorben.

On the other hand, see § 345, *a*.

II. Special Cases in Verb-Position.

350. The following special cases occur in dependent clauses:

1. An *objective noun* clause, with daß, *that*, omitted (as often in English) is construed as a principal sentence; that is (*a*), *normal;* as, ich glaube, er wird bald kommen (for daß er bald kommen wird); der Bediente ſagte, ſein Herr ſei nicht zu Hauſe; *the servant said* (*that*) *his master was not at home*. Or, (*b*) *inverted;* (as § 344): er ſagte, jetzt ſei ſein Herr nicht zu Hauſe.

2. In a conditional (*adverb*) clause, if the conjunction wenn, *if*, is omitted, the order will be *inverted*. As: Iſt der Herr zu Hauſe, ſo werde ich ihn bald ſehen (for wenn er zu Hauſe iſt, etc.). Wären Sie geſtern gekommen, ſo hätten Sie uns zu Hauſe getroffen, *had you come* (for, *if you had come*), etc. (§ 470.)

This form is especially usual after als, for als wenn, *as if*. As: Er tat, als wäre er verrückt, *he acted as if he were crazy* (for: als wenn er verrückt wäre).

NOTE. — But in the *adjective* clause, the connective (*relative*) is never omitted (§ 239).

3. The transposed verb will stand before other verb-forms: —

(*a*) When two infinitives stand together, the auxiliary verb will stand immediately before them, the governing infinitive last (see also § 264). As: Ich weiß, daß ich es nicht werde tun können. Wenn er es hätte tun können, ſo hätte er es gern getan, *if he could have done it, he would have done it gladly.* Wenn du wirſt betteln gehen müſſen, *shall have to go a-begging.*

(*b*) The concurrence of werden in two different auxiliary uses will likewise be avoided. As: Ich verſpreche, daß deine Schulden werden bezahlt werden (for bezahlt werden werden).

(*c*) Sometimes also a transposed auxiliary will be inserted before two participles or a participle and infinitive. As: Ich weiß, daß nicht alle ſind beſtraft worden (for beſtraft worden ſind). Sobald ich ihn werde geſehen haben.

4. *Often* the transposed clause ends in the participle of a compound tense, the auxiliary being omitted, when the meaning is already clear. As: Nachdem er die Bitte angehört (hatte), ſagte der König. Sobald er in das Zimmer eingetreten (war), fing er an zu ſprechen. Als das Urteil geſprochen worden (war).

351. The following cases may also be noticed: —

1. When the sentence consists of only subject and verb, the normal order (S. V. A.) and the transposed (S. A. V.), will be identical (S. V.). In this case the construction is distinguished only by the connective, or by the context. As: ich kann jetzt nicht ſpielen, denn (*for*) ich arbeite (*normal*); or, weil (*because*) ich arbeite (*transposed*).

2. Certain words are used both in demonstrative (independent) and relative (dependent) meaning; such as, der, *he* or *who;* da, *there*, *then;* or *when*, *as;* indeſſen, *meanwhile*, or *while*, etc. In such cases the position of the verb will show the meaning. As: ein Mann hatte drei Söhne, die (*they*) liebten ihn gleich — or, die (*them*) liebte er gleich; but, die (*who*) ihn gleich liebten — or, die (*whom*) er gleich liebte.

3. The use of es as introductory subject causes inversion of the true or logical subject; as, es iſt nichts beſchloſſen; es zogen drei Burſchen über den Rhein.

But without es, unless introductory; as, beſchloſſen iſt nichts. See § 453. See Synopsis at end of this Lesson.

III. Order of Words not Verbs.

NOTE. — The arrangement of other words is not, generally, so rigidly fixed as the position of the verb, and is more largely influenced by emphasis, etc. The leading rules will here be given. These may be reserved for later study, or for reference.

Adjuncts of the Noun.

352. The adjective will usually precede the noun, but may follow for emphasis, or in special phrases. Pronominal precede qualifying adjectives; as, der gute Freund; der Freund, der gute; Friedrich der Große; der Held, edel und treu (see Lesson VIII.).

2. Adjective phrases with prepositions follow the noun; as, Frankfurt am Main; das Haus auf der Höhe.

3. (*a*) A limiting genitive usually follows the noun; as, der Anfang des Krieges; das Glück des Menſchen.

(*b*) But a personal (*subjective*) genitive will often precede, taking the place of the article: des Vaters Haus; Schillers Werke; des Jünglings Stimme.

(*c*) This usage is widely extended in poetry, or elevated prose, to genitives not personal; as, Frankreichs Erde; in der Abendwolken Glut; des Meeres Wallen; ohne der Kronen Licht. (§430).

Adjuncts of the Adjective (or Participle).

353. An adjective, or a participle, will be preceded by its **adjuncts**: —

1. An adverb: ein ſehr guter Mann; an object: ſei mir gnädig. But an object with preposition may follow; as, ſei nicht böſe auf mich, *be not angry with me.*

2. Other dependent words, which, in English, will often require to follow, or to be expressed by an adjective (*relative*) clause; as, Friedrich der Große, von ſeinem Volke der „Alte Fritz" genannt; in einem von meinem Vater neulich erhaltenen Briefe, *in a letter* (*which has been*) *lately received by my father;* auf eine der Ehre eines Fürſten würdige Weiſe; ein über 20 Fuß hoher Baum. This construction — often extended to great length — requires particular attention; but is not to be commended for imitation. (See §483.)

Adjuncts of the Verb.

NOTE. — The infinitives and participles of compound tenses, and the separable prefixes. are, strictly speaking, adjuncts of the verb; but these have been treated elsewhere. (§ 341–2).

1. Objects.

354. 1. Pronoun objects precede noun objects; as, er erzählte es ſeinem Freunde; er hat mir ein Buch gegeben.

2. The cases stand: 1. dative; 2. accusative; 3. genitive. But if the accusative is personal, or a pronoun, it will usually precede the dative; as, ich habe dem Knaben ein Buch geliehen; der Vater hat den Sohn einer ſchweren Sünde beſchuldigt. But: wir müſſen den Mann ſeinem Schickſale überlaſſen; er hat es mir geſagt. Yet, frequently, the contracted mir's, dir's, etc.

3. Objects with prepositions follow simple objects; as, er ſchickte ſeinen Freund zu mir; er ſchrieb mir einen Brief über ſeine Reiſe.

4. The reflexive ſich usually precedes all other pronouns, and personals precede demonstratives; as, er empfiehlt ſich Ihnen; er hat ſich es gefallen laſſen, *he has put up with it*; ſagen Sie mir das nicht. But also es ſich (§ 202,3).

5. *Especially*, in inverted or transposed order, an unemphatic pronoun object will often precede the subject, unless the latter is a personal pronoun; as, da reichte ihm der Fremde die Hand; als ihn der Vater ſah, weinte er vor Freude. Rarely, also, a noun; as, übrigens gehört Gott meine Seele; more often, an adverb; as, da ſprach endlich der Vater.

2. Adverbs.

355 1. Adverbs will stand: 1. time; 2. place; 3. manner.

2. Adverbs of time usually precede objects, except pronouns; as, er hat mir geſtern einen Brief geſchrieben.

3. Adverbs of place follow simple objects, but precede objects with prepositions; as, wir konnten das Buch nirgends im Hauſe finden.

4. Adverbs of manner usually precede, but may follow, objects with prepositions. — The rules for adverbs apply generally to the corresponding adverb phrases; but, in all cases, the position may be largely influenced by emphasis. Frequently also an adverb phrase stands at the end of the sentence, outside of the regular construction; that is, especially, after the dependent verb — contrary to § 177,4.

5. Of two adverbs of like kind, the more general usually precedes the more specific; as, heute früh; morgen um 10 Uhr.

6. (For adverbs modifying adjectives, see § 353.) Generally, an adverb will stand just before any word (not the verb) which it modifies; as, nur mein Bruder war zugegen; kaum eine Stunde war vergangen. (See § 345 *b*).

Prepositions usually precede objects (Exceptions § 280, and Appendix).

3. Predicates.

356. A noun or adjective standing as predicate (complement) will usually follow all other adjuncts; as, Morgen wird wahrſcheinlich wegen der Hochzeit ein Feiertag ſein; viel Zeit war nach zehn Uhr nicht mehr übrig.

357. Words, or phrases, which, by idiomatic usage, have come to be regarded as part of a verb-phrase (§ 379) — including also predicate or factitive objects — will take the same position as a predicate complement. Such are: Rede ſtehen, *to answer;* feſt halten, *to hold fast;* ſtehen bleiben, *to stop;* zu Mittag eſſen, *to dine*, etc., etc.; as, wir aßen geſtern bei einem Freunde zu Mittag; da er den Verbrecher nicht feſthalten konnte, ſo ſchlug er ihn tot.

4. The Infinitive.

358. 1. For the infinitive in compound tenses, see § 341.

2. An infinitive without zu, dependent on the verb, stands last among the verb-adjuncts, without comma; as, ich will mich gerne hier bis übermorgen verhalten; ich ſage Ihnen, daß ich mich hier bis übermorgen verhalten will.

3. The same position may be held by an infinitive with zu, dependent on a verb in a simple tense; as, ich wünſche mich hier bis übermorgen zu verhalten; ich ſage Ihnen, daß ich mich hier bis übermorgen zu verhalten wünſche; er fing zu ſingen an.

4. But generally, to avoid too great complexity of construction, an infinitive with zu, especially if accompanied by adjuncts of its own, will be treated as a distinct clause; that is, it will stand outside of the limits of the principal construction, with the infinitive at the end:

(*a*) After the non-personal part of a verb, or after a transposed verb: Er fing an, zu ſingen; ſogleich fing er an, von ſeinem Unglücke zu reden; ich habe lange gewünſcht, meinem alten Freunde einen Beſuch zu machen; ich ſage Ihnen, daß ich lange gewünſcht habe, Ihnen einen Beſuch zu machen; er behauptete, daß er eine Methode lehre, Gold zu machen

(*b*) Or before the main sentence, which it will then invert (§344, *b*); as, um ſeinen Vater zu ſehen, iſt der Sohn zehn Meilen gegangen.

5. In a series of infinitives, the governing one regularly stands last, reversing the English order. As: Ihr habt mich ermorden laſſen wollen, *you have sought to have me murdered*; er wird es nicht tun können, etc. Yet not always if more than two infinitives: Man wird mich wollen laufen laſſen.

IV. Position of Dependent Clauses.

359. (*a*) For the same reason — to avoid too great complexity of construction — a dependent clause will often be thrown outside of the usual limits; as, ich gebe freiwillig die Anſprüche auf, welche ich auf das Buch habe; ich habe den Preis angenommen, welchen der Herr mir anbot.

(*b*) Especially, in subordinate sentences, to avoid collision of dependent verbs; as, er warf ihm einen Beutel zu, indem er ſich wegen der geringen Summe entſchuldigte, die er enthielt.

(*c*) Also in comparison — elliptical: Er hat mehr Fehler gemacht, als ich (gemacht habe).

360. Generally, it may be remarked, that dependent clauses will occupy their natural position, logically; but that ambiguity, or excessive involution of structure, must always be avoided. This, however, is in large degree prevented by the free use of the comma (§ 67), as well as by the distinctive position of the verb. Thus German can often sustain periods which would be intolerable in English — a power which, however, may be abused.

It may also be noted that modern German is marked by an increasing freedom of word-order and, in general, by a tendency to simpler forms of construction.

REMARK. — The foregoing rules of position are naturally subject to exceptions, depending on emphasis, euphony, or individual style, and especially in poetry, with the freedom of poetic license. Still, the fundamental rules should be thoroughly mastered and strictly observed by the student, who should be required, whenever possible, to account for exceptions, real or apparent. Once mastered, they become the key to almost all difficulties of construction.

NOTE. — No special Exercises are here added, because every German sentence is an exercise in the order of words.

Synopsis of Verb-Position.

The following condensed view may be helpful in remembering the chief rules of verb-position:

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

When introduced by subject — *Normal.*
" not " " " — *Inverted.*

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

When introduced by subordinating word — *Transposed.*

Special Cases.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

Interrogative, Imperative, Optative sentences — *Inverted.*

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Noun clause — daß (*that*) omitted — *Normal.*
Conditional " — wenn (*if*) " — *Inverted.*

The verb precedes two infinitives.

NOTE. — The "pure conjunctions" (*and, but, or, for*) are not included.

See also Note at end of the Appendix. p. 378.

It is presumed that at this point — or even earlier — the pupil has begun the reading of an easy German text, outside of the grammar. In the following Lessons, therefore, the German-English Exercises will be omitted.

PART II.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY REMARK. — The German vocabulary is much more homogeneous than the English. The introduction of foreign elements — mainly French and Latin — from an early date, into the English language has not only added a large admixture of words not native in origin, but, by supplying foreign terms ready made, it arrested the development of the native speech. Hence the processes of derivation and composition, from native roots, have been much more largely extended in German than in English. These processes are, therefore, in German of much greater practical importance for the acquisition of a vocabulary, and for the exposition of the relation and meaning of words. A brief sketch of the most important classes of derivatives and compounds will be given in the following Lessons.

NOTE. — Foreign words of course exist largely in German also; but there they are distinctly marked, while in English they are fully assimilated. In this respect, on the other hand, the English vocabulary is more homogeneous than the German.

LESSON XXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs.

361. Most verbs of the strong conjugation, and many weak verbs of monosyllabic roots, are primitive verbs. There are many others, obviously derivative, in which the origin and the process of derivation are unknown.

Almost all derivative verbs are weak. (See § 199.)

362. (*a*) An important class of verbs are derived from other verbs by modification or change of root-vowel. The primitive is usually strong and intransitive;* the derivative is weak and

---

* See List of Irregular Verbs.

transitive. These are known as *causative* verbs; as also in English, *to fell* from *to fall; to set* from *to sit*, etc. As: —

Strong.	Weak.
fahren, *to go, drive.*	führen, *to guide, drive.*
fallen, *to fall.*	fällen, *to fell.*
liegen, *to lie.*	legen, *to lay.*
ſitzen, *to sit.*	ſetzen, *to seat, set.*
ſpringen, *to spring.*	ſprengen, *to burst, blow up.*
trinken, *to drink.*	tränken, *to drench, make drink.*

(*b*) In some cases there is no change of root-vowel, but only a change from strong to weak inflection; as: —

Strong.	Weak.
ſchwellen, *to swell.*	ſchwellen, *to puff up.*
erlöſchen, *to go out.*	auslöſchen, *to put out* (lights).
erſchrecken, *to be frightened.*	erſchrecken, *to frighten.*

(*c*) Sometimes other variations of meaning are marked by the change from strong to weak inflection; as: —

Strong.	Weak.
bewegen, *to move* (figuratively), *induce.*	bewegen, *to move* (literally).
ſchaffen, *to create.*	ſchaffen, *to do.*

363. Some verbs are derived from other verbs by hardening or strengthening the final consonant of the root, usually with intensive meaning: —

biegen, (strong), *to bend.*	(ſich) bücken, *to bow, stoop down.*
hören, *to hear.*	horchen, *to listen, hearken.*
ſchnarren, *to creak, snarl.*	ſchnarchen, *to snore.*
ſchwingen (str.), *to swing.*	ſchwenken, *to wave.*

364. The verbal suffixes –eln and –ern frequently convey the sense of diminution or contempt — sometimes of repetition: —

klappen, *to flap.*	klappern, *to rattle.*
klingen (str.), *to sound, ring.*	klingeln, *to ring the bell.*
lachen, *to laugh.*	lächeln, *to smile.*
ſchlafen (str.), *to sleep.*	ſchläfern, *to feel drowsy.*

Note. — In both the preceding cases, there is also, usually, vowel modification or change.

365. Verbs in –ieren (–iren) are properly derivatives of French verbs in *–er* and *–ir*. They retain their foreign accent, and omit ge– in the perfect participle. (See § 215, *a*.) As:—

fallieren, *to fail.*
marſchieren, *to march.*
regieren, *to reign.*
ſtudieren, *to study.*

and, by analogy with these, from German stems, buchſtabieren, *to spell;* ſtolzieren, hantieren, etc.

366. Many verbs are derived from nouns, with or without root-vowel modification:—

das Alter, *the age.*	altern, *to grow old, age.*
die Farbe, *the color.*	färben, *to dye.*
der Pflug, *the plough.*	pflügen, *to plough.*
der Sattel, *the saddle.*	ſatteln, *to saddle.*
das Siegel, *the seal.*	ſiegeln, verſiegeln, *to seal.*
der Troſt, *the comfort.*	tröſten, *to comfort.*

367. Other verbs are derived from adjectives, usually with root-vowel modification:—

rot, *red.*	röten, *to redden.*
ſtark, *strong.*	ſtärken, *to strengthen.*
tot, *dead.*	töten, *to kill.*
würdig, *worthy.*	würdigen, *to hold worthy.*
rein(ig), *clean.*	reinigen, *to clean.*
fromm, *pious.*	frömmeln, *to affect piety* (§ 364).

(*a*) Or, with loss of e, from adjectives in –en; as:—

offen, *open.*	öffnen, *to open.*
trocken, *dry.*	trocknen, *to dry.*

(*b*) And from comparatives; as:—

minder, *less.*	mindern, *to lessen.*
näher, *nearer.*	nähern, *to bring nearer.*

368. A few verbs are derived from adverbs; as:—

außer, *outside.*	äußern, *to utter.*
empor, *up.*	empören, *to arouse.*

All these classes of derivative verbs are weak.

Remark. — As is seen from the foregoing examples, the modification of the root-vowel (Umlaut), though by no means constant, is a common process in derivation. As a rule, it may be stated that the modified vowels do not occur in primitive roots, but arise by the processes of derivation or of inflection. Hence, in dealing with derivatives that present a modified vowel, the Umlaut must be eliminated to find the root. See examples in foregoing lists and hereafter.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Who has put–out the light? 2. No one has put–out the light; it *has* gone–out. 3. The woodman has felled this tree. 4. A child has (*is*) fallen into the river. 5. My dictionary lies on the table. 6. The boy jumped over the ditch. 7. The old tower was blown up. 8. She has sealed the letter. 9. He rang–the–bell several times. 10. We will seat ourselves upon this bench. 11. The old man sat on this chair. 12. The sinking sun reddened the clouds. 13. The king held–him–worthy of the highest honors. 14. The peasant ploughed the field. 15. The autumn dyes the leaves yellow. 16. He has aged very much. 17. A strong man can easily walk himself tired in a ploughed field. 18. He stooped–down and picked–up the key. 19. The tailor had cleaned and dried the clothes. 20. (The) Queen Victoria had already reigned fifty years. 21. The smiling girl rang the bell, and opened the door. 22. His strong faith in (zu) God comforted and strengthened his last hours. 23. The children listened and smiled, while the father snored aloud. 24. The noble sentiment which the king then uttered has not lessened the devotion of his faithful people.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Composition of Verbs. — Inseparable.

Compound verbs have been already considered, so far as was necessary to explain peculiarities of conjugation. (Less. XXVIII., etc.). Their number is almost unlimited.

369. Very important is the large number of verbs compounded with the inseparable prefixes be–, ent– (emp–), er–, ge–, ver–, zer–. These prefixes, though once probably independent words, now occur only in composition. They modify variously the meaning of the primitive.

Note. — Strictly speaking, these prefixes, being always unaccented and having now no independent existence, form rather derivatives than compounds. But, in accordance with usage, the verbs formed with them from verbs are given as compounds; those formed from other than verb-roots as derivatives. As will be seen hereafter, they are largely used also in forming other derivatives besides verbs.

370. (*a*) Be– (related to bei and to the English *be–*, as: *to take, to betake; to wail, to bewail*) changes an intransitive into a transitive verb. Prefixed to a transitive verb, it gives to it a direction towards another object. Sometimes it is only intensive. Examples: —

bauen, *to build.*	bebauen, *to build upon, to cultivate.*
graben, *to dig.*	begraben, *to bury.*
greifen, *to seize.*	begreifen, *to comprehend.*
halten, *to hold.*	behalten, *to keep.*
ſchreiben, *to write.*	beſchreiben, *to describe.*
ſitzen, *to sit.*	beſitzen, *to possess.*

(*b*) Be– is also used for deriving verbs from nouns and adjectives, generally with active sense: —

der Freund, *the friend.*	befreunden, *to befriend.*
der Geiſt, *the spirit.*	begeiſtern, *to inspire.*

frei, *free.*	befreien, *to liberate.*
ſanft, *gentle.*	beſänftigen, *to appease.*
taub, *deaf.*	betäuben, *to deafen.*

371. (*a*) Ent– (related to ant– in Antwort) chiefly denotes privation or separation: —

laſſen, *to let.*	entlaſſen, *to dismiss.*
laufen, *to run.*	entlaufen, *to escape.*
ziehen, *to draw.*	entziehen, *to withdraw.*

(*b*) And sometimes origin or beginning, as: —

brennen, *to burn.*	entbrennen, *to take fire.*
ſtehen, *to stand.*	entſtehen, *to originate.*

(*c*) Ent– is also used in forming derivative verbs, as: —

die Kraft, *the strength.*	entkräften, *to weaken.*
die Schuld, *the guilt.*	entſchuldigen, *to excuse.*
das Volk, *the people.*	entvölkern, *to depopulate.*

NOTE. — The primitive sense of ent- (ant–) is clearly seen in a few verbs, as entgelten, *to pay back*, entſprechen, *to correspond.* In some adverbs, ent is from in; as, entgegen, *against*, entzwei, *in two.*

(*d*) Before f, –nt is assimilated to –mp in the three verbs: empfehlen, *to recommend;* empfangen, *to receive;* empfinden, *to feel.*

372. (*a*) Er– (related to the prefix ur– [§ 387, 4] and probably to the preposition aus) generally expresses accomplishment or acquisition by means of the action expressed by the simple verb; or growing, passing into a condition: —

halten, *to hold.*	erhalten, *to obtain, receive.*
jagen, *to hunt.*	erjagen, *to obtain by hunting.*
kaufen, *to buy.*	erkaufen, *to obtain by purchase.*
wachſen, *to grow.*	erwachſen, *to grow up.*

(*b*) And in derivative verbs, as: —

friſch, *fresh.*	erfriſchen, *to refresh.*
klar, *clear.*	erklären, *to explain.*
rot, *red.*	erröten, *to blush.*
weiter, *wider.*	erweitern, *to extend.*

373. (*a*) Ver–, originally the same as vor– (English *for–* in *forgive*, *for*(*e*)*go*, etc.), denotes removal, turning away; often with the idea of perversion or loss; sometimes only the accomplishment of an action or result:—

bieten, *to bid.*	verbieten, *to forbid.*
blühen, *to bloom.*	verblühen, *to fade.*
brennen, *to burn.*	verbrennen, *to burn up.*
führen, *to guide.*	verführen, *to lead astray, seduce.*
kennen, *to know.*	verkennen, *to mistake.*
ſpielen, *to play.*	verſpielen, *to lose by playing.*

(*b*) And in derivatives, as:—

das Gold, *the gold.*	vergolden, *to gild.*
der Stein, *the stone.*	verſteinern, *to petrify.*
alt, *old.*	veralten, *to become antiquated.*
jung, *young.*	verjüngen, *to make young.*
größer, *greater.*	vergrößern, *to enlarge.*
ſchöner, *more beautiful.*	verſchönern, *to embellish.*

374. (*a*) Zer– expresses destruction, dissolution:—

brechen, *to break.*	zerbrechen, *to break to pieces.*
fallen, *to fall.*	zerfallen, *to crumble to pieces.*
reißen, *to tear.*	zerreißen, *to tear to pieces.*
treten, *to tread.*	zertreten, *to crush, to trample.*

(*b*) And in a few derivatives; as:—

das Fleiſch, *flesh.*	zerfleiſchen, *to lacerate.*
die Glieder, *the limbs.*	zergliedern, *to dismember.*

375. (*a*) Ge– (probably the same prefix as the augment used with the past participle, but of doubtful origin), has in some cases no perceptible influence on the meaning of a verb; as, brauchen or gebrauchen, *to use.* But in other cases various meanings, mostly intensive; as:—

denken, *to think.*	gedenken, *to remember.*
fallen, *to fall.*	gefallen, *to please.*
hören, *to hear.*	gehören, *to belong.*
horchen, *to listen.*	gehorchen, *to obey.*

loben, *to praise.*	geloben, *to promise.*
ſtehen, *to stand.*	geſtehen, *to confess.* See § 278, note.

(*b*) Many participial adjectives are derived by means of the prefix ge- from nouns without corresponding verb (as Eng. *gifted*, etc.):

die Blume, *the flower.*	geblümt, *flowery.*
die Feder, *the feather.*	gefiedert, *feathered.*
der Flügel, *the wing.*	geflügelt, *winged.*
der Stern, *the star.*	geſtirnt, *starry.*

376. Miß- (§ 288, *b.*) has the same force as the English prefix *mis;* glücken, *to succeed;* mißglücken, *to succeed ill;* brauchen, *to use;* mißbrauchen, *to abuse, misuse.*

REMARK. — 1. In some cases the compounds are in use, where the primitives do not occur; as: —

–bären.	gebären, *to bear* (*a child*).
–fehlen.	empfehlen, *to recommend.*
–ginnen.	beginnen, *to begin.*
–geſſen.	vergeſſen, *to forget.*
–küren, *rare.*	erküren, *to choose.*
–lieren.	verlieren, *to lose.*
–lingen.	gelingen, *to succeed.*
	mißlingen, *to fail.*

— and some others. See alphabetical list.

2. These prefixes are widely used with all kinds of verbs, but especially with the primitive roots of the strong conjugation. A great variety of compounds are thus often formed from a single verb, with widely various meanings; as: —

Gehen, *to go;* begehen, *to celebrate;* entgehen, *to escape;* ergehen, *to happen;* ſich ergehen, *to move about for pleasure;* vergehen, *to pass away;* zergehen, *to pass away entirely, to melt.*

Schlagen, *to strike;* beſchlagen, *to fasten on by striking, to stud, to shoe a horse;* ſich einer Sache entſchlagen, *to cast off a matter;* erſchlagen, *to slay;* verſchlagen, *to drive out of one's course;* zerſchlagen, *to knock to pieces.*

Stehen, *to stand;* beſtehen, *to persist, insist;* entſtehen, *to arise, to come into existence;* erſtehen, *to arise, to buy at an auction;* verſtehen, *to understand;* geſtehen, *to confess.*

Other examples are: —

beſehen, *to inspect.*
betragen, *to amount to.*
ſich betragen, *to behave.*
ſich benehmen, *to conduct one's self.*
beſprechen, *to talk of.*
entſcheiden, *to decide.*
entſprechen, *to answer* (dat.).
entnehmen, *to infer.*
ſich ergeben, *to surrender.*
erlaſſen, *to remit.*
vergeben, *to forgive* (dat.).
ſich verlaufen, *to lose one's way.*
ſich vertragen, *to agree.*

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. I have lost my way. 2. We have inspected the new church. 3. They have ascended the highest mountains of Switzerland. 4. The town surrendered to the enemy. 5. All good children, who agree with each–other, and conduct themselves well, shall have (bekommen) a reward. 6. The bill amounts–to twenty francs. 7. The thief has (*is*) escaped. 8. They behaved themselves quietly. 9. We shall decide the matter before we part. 10. He has lost his money in playing. 11. The wicked boy has torn his book to pieces. 12. The teacher has pardoned the naughty boy, and remitted the punishment. 13. The drunken porter did not agree with the other servants, and he was dismissed from (aus dem) service. 14. I shall keep these flowers until they fade. 15. The old castle has (*is*) crumbled to pieces. 16. We were as if (wie) petrified. 17. A glass of water suffices to refresh me. 18. He spoke winged words. 19. This promising writer has not answered our expectations. 20. He has talked–of things that no one can understand. 21. I infer from (aus) your letter that your ship was driven upon a deserted island. 22. We can seize with the hand many things which we cannot comprehend. 23. The old soldier showed his torn clothes and his lacerated limbs. 24. That (Das) is the curse of (the) kings, that they, divided, tear the world to pieces.

LESSON XXXIX.

Composition of Verbs.—Continued.

Separable Compounds.

377. The separable prefixes (Lesson XXIX) form loose compounds, which have no exact analogy in English. They are, also, practically unlimited in number.

(*a*) In the separable compounds the meaning of the prefix is often clearly seen in the compound; as, aufſtehen, *to stand up, rise;* einlaſſen, *to let in, admit;* abwenden, *to turn away, avert;* mitgehen, *to go with,* or *along,* etc.

(*b*) In many cases, however, the meaning is not so obvious, the compound having often acquired a distinct secondary or figurative use; as, auffallen, *to strike* (*the attention*); einfallen, *to occur* (*to the mind*); mitteilen, *to communicate;* vorgehen, *to happen;* zubringen, *to pass* (*time*); ausziehen, *to pull off* (*clothing*); ſich ausziehen, *to undress,* etc.

(*c*) In many such cases, the literal meaning will be expressed by the prefixes compounded with her, *hither;* hin, *thither;* as, herausziehen, *to draw out;* hineinfallen, *to fall into;* hervorgehen, *to go forth,* etc. (§ 289.)

378. For the different sense of certain prefixes as separable and as inseparable, see §§ 287—8.

Remark.—The so-called separable prefixes are usually adverbs (§447, *a*) which, by habit of use, have come to be written in one word with those verb-forms that usually stand last — the infinitive, the participles, and the transposed verb; and which elsewhere occupy the emphatic position of a verb-modifier at the end. As the verb is named from its infinitive, they are habitually called prefixes; and hence the terms separable prefixes, separable compounds, etc. The intimate relation to the verb is shown by the accent — which is, moreover, always retained by the prefix, even when separated.

Special Forms.

1. Separable.

379. (*a*) After the analogy of the separable compounds are formed many verbs compounded with nouns or adjectives; as: haushalten, *to keep house;* teilnehmen, *to participate*, *to sympathize;* ſtattfinden, *to take place;* freiſprechen, *to acquit;* gleichkommen, *to equal.*

(*b*) These follow in all respects the accent, conjugation, and construction of the separable compounds; as, participle: ſtattgefunden, freigeſprochen; infin.: ſtattzufinden, freizuſprechen; or with prefix at end, as: der Richter ſprach ihn von aller Schuld frei; die Verlobung findet morgen ſtatt, etc.

Note. — These were formerly written as separate words: Statt finden, Teil nehmen (and still sometimes so, though without capitals). Other similar verb-phrases are still written separately, and with capitals; as, Rede ſtehen, *to answer*, zu Mittag eſſen, *to dine*, etc. See § 357.

(*c*) Many participial adjectives, without corresponding verbs, are formed on this principle. Thus: friedebringend, *bringing peace;* halsbrechend, *neckbreaking;* allwiſſend, *all-knowing;* hochgeehrt, *highly honored;* blutbefleckt, *stained with blood.* These are called *incomplete compounds.*

2. Inseparable.

380. (*a*) With these compounds must not be confounded the small number of verbs derived from compound nouns, such as: frühſtücken, *to breakfast;* ratſchlagen, *to deliberate;* argwöhnen, *to suspect;* handhaben, *to handle;* wetteifern, *to emulate;* which are derived from das Frühſtück, *the breakfast;* der Ratſchlag, *the advice;* der Argwohn, *the suspicion;* die Handhabe, *the handle;* der Wetteifer, *emulation;* etc. These are conjugated and construed like simple verbs; as, p. p. gefrühſtückt; infin., zu frühſtücken.

(*b*) Like these are a few verb-compounds, which are also treated as simple verbs; as: weisſagen, *to prophesy;* luſtwandeln, *to walk for pleasure;* rechtfertigen, *to justify;* willfahren, *to comply;* liebkoſen, *to caress;* as, p. p. geliebkoſt; infin., zu liebkoſen, etc.

NOTE.—These however, like the preceding class, are more properly derivatives than compounds. They are all weak, even when formed from strong verbs; handhabte, ratſchlagte, willfahrte, etc. And in both classes the principal accent is usually on the first component.

3. MIXED COMPOUNDS.

381. (*a*) A few inseparable compounds take also a separable prefix; as, anerkennen, *to acknowledge;* ich erkenne an; anzuerkennen; but anerkannt, without ge–, in participle. (See § 289,2.)

(*b*) A few verbs which seem to take an inseparable before a separable prefix are derivatives, as in § 380 above; as, verabſcheuen, from the noun Abſcheu, etc.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. The accused was acquitted and immediately liberated. 2. He was accused of having (*to have*) stolen a watch. 3. Waiter, bring [some] tea, bread and butter, and two eggs; I wish to breakfast. 4. We shall go into the garden; will you go with [us]? 5. Where is the book which I brought with [me] yesterday from the library? 6. Your brother took it with [him]. 7. Your trousers are torn; the tailor must mend them. 8. I shall tell the tailor to measure me for (mir anzumeſſen) a new pair. 9. What o'clock is it? 10. My watch is not wound up; I have forgotten to wind it up. 11. The thief has run away. 12. Had I not foretold it? 13. We have spent a large sum; I acknowledge our improvidence. 14. He has invited us to dinner. 15. The messenger brought the letter back. 16. At what time does the concert begin? 17. It begins at eight o'clock. 18. Porter, carry my portmanteau up. 19. He shall carry it up immediately. 20. As (da) it did not occur to

him how near to the edge of the stream he was, (ſo) he suddenly fell in. 21. The parade will take place at 10 o'clock; we thought it had (*subj.*) already taken place. 22. Please (Bitte) shut the door and open the windows. 23. This writer has translated the greatest part of Schiller's works. 24. He undressed himself hastily, sprang into the water, and drew the sinking boy out (heraus).

LESSON XL.

Derivation of nouns.

NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS. — 1. WITHOUT SUFFIX.

382. Some nouns are simply the stems of verbs — usually of strong verbs — sometimes an earlier form of such stems. Such nouns are nearly all masculine: —

der Fall (fallen), *the fall.*
der Gang (gehen), *the walk, gait.*
das Grab (graben), *the grave.*
der Lauf (laufen), *the course, run.*
der Rat (raten), *the advice.*
der Ruf (rufen), *the call, reputation.*
der Schein (ſcheinen), *the semblance.*
der Schlag (ſchlagen), *the blow.*
der Sitz (ſitzen), *the seat.*
der Stand (ſtehen), *the position.*
der Streit (ſtreiten), *the contest.*
das Opfer (opfern), *the sacrifice.*

383. Many nouns are related to strong verbs by a change of root-vowel (Ablaut) — sometimes also by modification of the final consonant of the root. In some cases more than one such noun is formed from the same root. Such nouns are also usually masculine: —

der Band (binden), *the volume.*
das Band (binden), *the ribbon.*
der Bund (binden), *the union.*
der Klang (klingen), *the sound.*
der Schuß (ſchießen), *the shot.*
der Spruch (ſprechen), *the saying.*
der Staub (ſtieben), *the dust.*
der Trank, der Trunk (trinken), *the drink.*
der Tritt (treten), *the step.*
der Tropf (triefen), *the drop.*
der Wuchs (wachſen), *the growth.*
der Zug (ziehen), *the draft, train, feature.*

NOTE. — In the foregoing cases the nouns are, doubtless, equally primitive with the verbs, or rather, both are derived from a common root. It is usual, however, to speak of such roots as *verbal roots*, and hence to count the nouns as derivative. Such nouns are known as *strong derivatives* (§ 199, note).

2. DERIVATIVES WITH SUFFIX.

384. Many nouns are derived from verbs — mostly strong verbs — by change of the root-vowel (Ablaut) — sometimes also with modification of the final consonant — and the addition of suffixes, which variously modify the meaning of the word.

1. The suffixes –d, –de, –t, –ſt, and frequently –e, form nouns, mostly abstract in meaning, and usually feminine: —

der Brand (brennen), *the burning.*
die Kunde (kennen), *the news.*
die Bucht (biegen), *the bay.*
die Schrift (ſchreiben), *the writing.*
die Kunſt (können), *the art.*
die Gabe (geben), *the gift.*
die Grube (graben), *the pit.*
die Sprache (ſprechen), *the speech.*

2. The suffix –er (English *–er*) is used to form nouns denoting an agent or instrument. They are all masculine: —

der Bäcker (backen), *the baker.*
der Bohrer (bohren), *the gimlet.*
der Reiter (reiten), *the rider.*
der Sänger (ſingen), *the singer.*
der Schneider (ſchneiden), *the tailor.*
der Schnitter (ſchneiden), *the reaper.*
der Tänzer (tanzen), *the dancer.*
der Zeiger (zeigen), *the hand of a clock.*

Note the irregular n in Redner (reden), *the speaker.*

3. The suffix –el (English *–el*, *–le*) is used to form nouns denoting an instrument. Nouns in –el are masculine with rare exception. A few are neuter diminutives: —

der Deckel (decken), *the cover.*
der Flügel (fliegen), *the wing.*
der Schlüſſel (ſchließen), *the key.*
der Würfel (werfen), *the die* (pl. *dice*).
der Zügel (ziehen), *the bridle.*
das Bündel (binden), *the bundle.*

4. –nis (related to the English *–ness*) is used to form abstract nouns from verbs. Nouns in –nis are, to a great extent, neuter, but some are feminine: —

die Bedrängnis (dringen), *the tribulation.*
die Erlaubnis (erlauben), *the permission.*
die Kenntnis (kennen), *the knowledge.*
das Geſtändnis (geſtehen), *the confession.*
das Verhältnis (verhalten), *the relation.*
das Zeugnis (zeugen), *the testimonial.*

5. –ung (related to the English verbal-noun ending *–ing*) is used for forming a large number of nouns from verbs, most of which are abstracts. All of these are feminine: —

die Ausſtellung (ausſtellen), *the exhibition.*
die Bemerkung (bemerken), *the observation.*
die Bewegung (bewegen), *the motion.*
die Erfindung (erfinden), *the invention.*
die Erziehung (erziehen), *the education.*
die Stellung (ſtellen), *the position.*
die Verbindung (verbinden), *the connection.*
die Zeichnung (zeichnen), *the drawing.*

6. (*a*) The suffix –en forms a number of masculine derivatives, some of which are also written without –n (see § 99): —

der Biſſen (beißen), *the bit.*
der Graben (graben), *the ditch.*
der Gedanke[n] (denken), *the thought.*
der Glaube[n] (glauben), *the faith.*

(*b*)–en is also the ending of infinitives (except § 214, ſein, tun). Infinitives may be used as nouns, and are then neuter; as, das Reiſen, *travelling;* das Singen, *singing*, etc. Most nouns in –en, not infinitives, are masculine; a few are neuter. (§ 75.)

7. A small number of nouns are derived from verbs by the suffix –ſal or –ſel. They are neuter, with the exceptions given in the following examples: —

das Labſal (laben), *the comfort.*
das Schickſal (ſchicken), *the fate.*
das Rätſel (raten), *the riddle.*
das Überbleibſel (bleiben), *the remnant.*
die Drangſal (dringen), *the oppression.* (But also, das Drangſal).
die Mühſal (mühen), *the trouble.*
die Trübſal (trüben), *the tribulation.*

8. The suffixes –ling and –ei' are rarely used for forming derivatives from verbs. They are mostly used for deriving nouns from adjectives and other nouns. (Less. XLI.)

(*a*) –ling (English *–ling*) forms a few masculines: —

der Lehrling (lehren), *the apprentice.*
der Findling (finden), *the foundling.*

(*b*) –ei (French *–ie;* for accent, see § 51) forms a few feminine abstracts (§ 386, 3.):—

die Plauderei′ (plaudern), *the chit-chat.*

die Schmeichelei′ (ſchmeicheln), *the flattery.*

EXERCISE XL.

1. He killed two flies with one blow. 2. He awoke from his (aus dem) sleep with a scream. 3. What can I do? I must bear this blow of fate. 4. Horses and riders kept step (Schritt) with the music. 5. He fell into the pit which he had dug for others. 6. We saw a drawing of the new invention at the exhibition. 7. The deeds of this general will live in the memory of the people. 8. A short sleep will refresh you more than food or drink. 9. The education of this boy has been neglected. 10. The testimonials of this clerk are very good. 11. This professor teaches not only the German language, but he teaches also (the) singing and (the) dancing (*infin.*). 12. It is a riddle to me, how he has learned all these arts. 13. The course of this river is from north to south. 14. What you tell me is (a) flattery. 15. Your clerk wrote [to] me that my letters had (*were*) not yet arrived. 16. The matter had entirely vanished from my memory. 17. With the permission of the judge I visited the prisoner in his prison. 18. Talking and laughing (*infin.*) are forbidden in (the) school. 19. The apprentice has received (the) permission to send his work to the exhibition. 20. The drawing of the features in this picture is very good; but the expression of the face is not so easy to hit (treffen). 21. The knowledge of the fine arts is an important part of (the) education. 22. The art of (the) swimming is easy to learn and of (von) highest value. 23. Two volumes of Schiller's Works are in this bundle. 24. Speech is older than writing.

LESSON XLI.

Derivation of Nouns.—Continued.

NOUNS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES OR NOUNS.

385. (*a*) It has been seen (§ 140) that adjectives may be used as nouns, retaining their declension as adjectives.

(*b*) More rarely the root of the adjective is used without addition, as a neuter noun; as, das Grün der Felder, *the verdure of the fields;* etwas Rot auf den Backen, *some red on the cheeks:* but etwas Rotes, *something red.*

386. Many nouns are derived from adjectives, or from other nouns, by means of suffixes:—

1. –e forms feminine abstracts from adjectives, modifying the root-vowel:—

die Breite (breit), *the breadth.*
die Größe (groß), *the greatness.*
die Güte (gut), *the goodness.*
die Höhe (hoch), *the height.*
die Länge (lang), *the length.*
die Stärke (ſtark), *the strength.*

2. –er (§ 384, 2) forms, from nouns, masculine names of agents, and other appellatives, usually modifying the root-vowel:—

der Gärtner (Garten), *the gardener.*
der Mörder (Mord), *the murderer.*
der Schäfer (Schaf), *the shepherd.*
der Pariſer (Paris), *the Parisian.*
der Schweizer (Schweiz), *the Swiss.*
der Witwer (Witwe), *the widower.*

A few have irregular n, as Glöckner (Glocke), etc. (See § 384, 2.)

3. –ei′, (§ 384, 8) forms feminine abstracts or collectives, from nouns—chiefly nouns in –er. Thus arises, also, a secondary suffix –erei′, of like meaning:—

die Abtei′ (Abt), *the abbacy, abbey.*
die Druckerei (Drucker), *the printing-office.*
die Fiſcherei (Fiſcher), *the fishery.*
die Reiterei (Reiter), *the cavalry.*
die Quälerei (Qual), *the torment.*
die Sklaverei (Sklave), *the slavery.*

4. (*a*) –heit (related to English *–head*, *–hood*) forms feminine abstracts from nouns — more rarely from adjectives: —

die Gottheit (Gott), *the Godhead.*
die Kindheit (Kind), *childhood.*
die Freiheit (frei), *freedom.*
die Schönheit (ſchön), *beauty.*

Note. — Stems in –h drop one h; as, Hoheit, Roheit, etc.

(*b*) –keit (related to –heit) forms like feminine abstracts from adjectives — often with the ending –ig: —

die Bitterkeit (bitter), *bitterness.*
die Eitelkeit (eitel), *vanity.*
die Kleinigkeit (klein), *the trifle.*
die Süßigkeit (ſüß), *sweetness.*

Note. — –keit is formed from old –ic (ig § 395) and –heit. It is thus used with adjectives only — mostly those ending in –el, –er, –bar, –ig, –lich, –ſam.

5. –in forms feminines from masculine nouns, usually modifying the root-vowel (see § 95): —

die Gräfin (Graf), *the countess.*
die Hirtin (Hirt), *the shepherdess.*
die Köchin (Koch), *the woman-cook.*
die Löwin (Löwe), *the lioness.*

6. –lein (akin to English *–ling*), and –chen (akin to English *–kin*), form neuter diminutives from nouns, usually modifying the root-vowel — often with sense of affection or of contempt: —

das Bäumchen (Baum), *the little tree.*
das Fräulein (Frau), *the Miss.*
das Mädchen (Magd), *the girl.*
das Männchen (Mann), *the mannikin.*

Note. — Final –e, en are omitted; as, Kirchlein (Kirche), *little church;* Gärtlein (Garten). Before –lein, l is dropped; as, Beutelein (Beutel); and before –chen, el is sometimes inserted, especially after ch, g; as, Büchelchen, Jüngelchen, etc.

7. –ling (akin to –lein, *–ling*) forms a few personal masculines from adjectives, or nouns — as from verbs (§ 384, 8): —

der Flüchtling (Flucht), *the fugitive.*
der Günſtling (Gunſt), *the favorite.*
der Jährling (Jahr), *the yearling.*
der Jüngling (jung), *the youth.*

8. –nis (384, 4) — used chiefly with verbs — forms a few abstracts from adjectives: —

das Geheimnis (geheim), *the secret.*
das Gleichnis (gleich), *the parable.*
die Finſternis (finſter), *the darkness.*
die Wildnis (wild), *the wilderness.*

9. –ſchaft (English *–scape*, *–ship*) forms feminine abstracts or collectives: —

(*a*) From a few adjectives or participles —

die Gefangenſchaft (p. p. gefangen), *the imprisonment.*
die Gemeinſchaft (gemein), *the community.*

(*b*) Usually from nouns: —

die Dienerſchaft, *the body of servants.*
die Dorfſchaft (Dorf), *the village-community.*
die Feindſchaft (Feind), *enmity.*
die Freundſchaft (Freund), *friendship.*
die Landſchaft (Land), *the landscape.*

10. –tum (old spelling –thum, English *–dom*) forms from nouns, and from a few adjectives, collectives or abstracts — all neuters, except der Irrtum, *the error*, der Reichtum, *riches*: —

das Chriſtentum, *Christianity.*
das Eigentum (eigen), *the property.*
das Fürſtentum, *the principality.*
das Königtum, *the kingship.*

A few other noun-suffixes are of isolated occurrence; as, der Kran–ich, *the crane;* der Ente–rich, *the drake;* die Heim–at, *the home*, etc. For –tel, see § 311.

NOUNS FORMED BY PREFIXES.

387. Some nouns are derived by means of prefixes: —

1. Ge– (the same as the unaccented verb-prefix, § 375) forms chiefly collectives — sometimes intensives — most of which are neuter: —

(*a*) Usually from nouns: —

das Gebirge (Berg), *the mountain-range.*
das Gebüſch (Buſch), *the bushes.*
das Gewölk (Wolke), *the clouds, welkin.*
das Geflügel (Flügel), *the poultry.*
die Gebrüder (pl.), *the brothers.*
die Geſchwiſter (pl.), *brothers and sisters.*

(*b*) Some from verbs: —

das Gebet (beten), *the prayer.*
das Geläut (läuten), *the ringing of bells.*
das Geſpräch (ſprechen), *the conversation.*
der Gefährte (fahren), *the companion.*
der Gehülfe (helfen), *the assistant.*
die Geduld (dulden), *the patience.*

NOTE. — These derivatives — besides great variety of meaning — present also various vowel-changes, besides umlaut. Some have also a suffix, usually –e. Before l, n, Ge– is sometimes contracted, as: Glaube, Glied, Glück, Gnade.

2. Miß– (here always accented) is the same as the verb-prefix miß– (§ 376):—

der Mißgriff, *the mistake.*
die Mißgunſt, *the disfavor.*
die Miſſetat, *the misdeed.*

Note.—Many other nouns, apparently derived by means of verb-prefixes—separable or inseparable—are really formed (as § 382–3) from the compound verbs; as, der Anſchlag, from anſchlagen; der Verrat, from verraten; das Gebiet, from gebieten; der Mißbrauch, from mißbrauchen, etc. (See note, § 383).

3. Un– (see § 51) has the same force as the English prefix *un–* (Latin *in–*):—

der Undank, *the unthankfulness.*
das Unrecht, *the wrong* (*unright*).
der Unſinn, *the nonsense.*
die Unſterblichkeit, *the immortality.*

4. The prefix ur– (see § 51), akin to the unaccented er– (§ 372), expresses origin:—

das Urbild, *the prototype.*
der Urquell, *the fountain-head.*
die Urſache *the cause.*
die Urwelt, *the primitive world.*

5. Erz– (see § 51) is the same as the English *arch–*:—

der Erzherzog, *the archduke.*
der Erzengel, *the archangel.*

Note.—Nouns formed with miß–, un–, ur–, erz–, have the same gender as the primitive nouns.

6. Ant-, akin to the unaccented ent–, forms die Antwort, *the answer* (see § 122), das Antlitz, *the face.*

EXERCISE XLI.

1. Will you measure the height of this tower? 2. We have measured the length and breadth of this field. 3. The author has sent his book to the printing-office. 4. This mountain-range is covered with bushes. 5. He read us the parable of (von) the good shepherd. 6. Who converted Germany from (the) heathenism to Christianity? 7. It was the Englishman Boniface. 8. The Swiss died for their liberty. 9. The king and the princes were received with [a] ringing of bells. 10. The brothers Grimm wrote a very learned German dictionary. 11. He lost his way in the wilderness of the mountains. 12.

The enmity of the count was the cause of his misfortune. 13. It is a folly to plough the fields in winter. 14. The conversation of the stranger was tiresome. 15. You should not talk such nonsense. 16. On the summit (Höhe) of the mountain stands an image of the archangel Michael. 17. The poorest village-communities are found along the Rhine (*find themselves*). 18. The years of our childhood are the happiest years of our life. 19. It is nonsense to think of-it. 20. You are wrong, sir, to give me such an (*a such*) answer. 21. The countess considered it (*held it for*) a folly to travel with so large [a] body of servants. 22. The length or [the] shortness of the days and of the nights depends (abhangen) on (von) the nearness or the distance of the sun. 23. The conversation of my companion concerned (betreffen) the vanity of (the) human wishes and the immortality of the soul. 24. The archduke and the archbishop entered (eintreten) together into the little church.

LESSON XLII.

Composition of Nouns.

388. Compound nouns always consist of two components. The last is regularly a noun; the first may be noun, verb, adjective, adverb or preposition.

NOTE. — As will appear § 390, the compound may include more than two *words* — but not more than two *components*.

(*a*) The first component takes the principal accent; the last has a distinct secondary accent. (See § 49.)

(*b*) The gender and declension of the compound follow the last component. For exceptions, see § 122. To these add: —

das Gegenteil (der Teil), *the opposite* (but also, das Teil).
der Mittwoch (die Woche), *Wednesday* (pl. Mittwoche;) as, § 125.
die Ohnmacht (pl. Ohnmachten), *the swoon.*
die Vollmacht (pl. Vollmachten), *the authority,*

— and perhaps a few others. The feminine compounds attributed to der Mut (§ 122) represent an earlier feminine form of the same word.

NOTE. — The last part of some compound nouns has been gradually shortened into a mere suffix; as, das Drittel, *the third part;* das Viertel, *the fourth part;* where -tel was originally -teil. (See § 311.) It is also probable that the common suffixes of noun derivation (Less. XLI.) were originally distinct words. See also Remark, p. 218.

389. The relation between the components may be various. Generally the first in some way limits, or *determines*, the second, and is syntactically dependent upon it. Hence this is called the *determining component.* The grammatical relation is sometimes indicated by the form[*]; but is usually only implied by simple juxtaposition: —

1. (*a*) Simple juxtaposition of two nouns: —

die Baumwolle,	*the cotton.*	die Schulſtube,	*the school-room.*
der Briefträger,	*the letter-carrier.*	das Weinglas,	*the wine-glass.*
der Ölbaum,	*the olive tree.*	der Wetterhahn,	*the weather-cock.*

(*b*) Rarely, with a connecting vowel: —

das Tagewerk,	*the day's work.*	die Badekur,	*the water-cure.*

2. (*a*) Frequently the first component takes the termination of the genitive case: —

das Glücksrad,	*the wheel of fortune.*	die Willensfreiheit,	*the freedom of will.*
das Tageslicht,	*the light of day.*	das Wirtshaus,	*the inn.*

(*b*) Sometimes a false, or apparent, genitive is exhibited, or an earlier inflection is retained, even with feminine nouns: —

der Geburtstag (die Geburt),	*the birthday.*	der Sonnenſchein (die Sonne),	*the sunshine.*

3. The first component is sometimes in the plural: —

das Bilderbuch,	*the picture-book.*	das Kindermärchen,	*the fairy-tale for children.*
der Blumenkorb,	*the flower-basket.*		
das Wörterbuch,	*the dictionary.*		

4. When a compound is formed of a verb and a noun, the root of the verb is simply prefixed. Occasionally the vowel e is inserted: —

---

[*] These may be distinguished as *grammatical*, or *improper, compounds.*

der Fahrplan, *the time-table.*
der Laufburſche, *the errand-boy.*
das Leſebuch, *the reading-book.*
das Reitpferd, *the saddle-horse.*
die Schreibfeder, *the writing-pen.*
der Zeigefinger, *the forefinger.*

5. (*a*) A compound of an adjective and a noun is formed by prefixing the adjective-root: —

der Edelſtein, *the gem.*
der Gleichmut, *the equanimity.*
der Großvater, *the grandfather.*
die Kurzweile, *the pastime.*
der Vollmond, *the full moon.*
der Weißdorn, *the hawthorn.*

(*b*) Rarely with inflection of the adjective: —

der Hoheprieſter, *the high-priest.*
die Langeweile, *the tedium.*

6. A few words are compounds of nouns and adverbs or prepositions, among them some grammatical terms: —

die Außenſeite, *the outside.*
das Ausland, *the exterior, foreign parts.*
das Inland, *the interior, home-country.*
der Mitmenſch, *the fellow-creature.*
das Vorrecht, *the privilege.*
der Anlaut, *the first sound of a word.*
der Inlaut, *the sound in the middle of a word.*
der Auslaut, *the last sound of a word.*
der Ablaut, *the change of sound.*
der Umlaut, *the modification of sound.*

7. A few compounds are really complete phrases: —

das Stelldichein, *the rendezvous;* das Vergißmeinnicht, *the forget-me-not.*

390. Frequently the components of a compound noun — one or both — will themselves be compound. In such cases the relation of the component elements must be borne in mind. The principal accent falls on the accented syllable of the first component; the secondary accent on the accented syllable of the second: —

die Feu′erverſicherungsgeſeˋllſchaft, *the fire-insurance company.*
der General′lieuˋtenant, *the lieutenant-general.*
der Hand′ſchuhmaˋcher, *the glove-maker.*
die Rech′nungsabˋlage, *the rendering of accounts.*
die Ei′ſenbahnfaˋhrkarte, *the railroad ticket.*

Note. — In some cases, a different relation, and hence a difference of meaning, will be indicated by a change of accent. As: —

der O′ber-ſchu`llehrer, *the principal teacher.*
der O′berſchul-leh`rer, *the highschoolteacher*, etc.

391. (*a*) There are also many occasional compounds — chiefly nouns — made only for the nonce — such as will not be found in any dictionary. In such cases, the meaning will be known from the components. For use of hyphen, see § 69.

(*b*) Compound nouns are sometimes extended to absurd length; as, Oberpolizei′gerichtspräſid`ent; Staat′sſchuldentilgungskommiſſio`nsbureau. But such forms are chiefly official or technical, and are not to be approved or imitated.* (See § 69.)

392. When the same component is common to two or more compounds in succession, it will be written once only, its relation to the others being indicated by the hyphen. This will occur not only in nouns, but also in verbs and adjectives; as, Feſt- und Sonntage, *holidays and Sundays;* Nord- und Süddeutſchland, *North and South Germany;* Nachmittags ſieht man die Menſchen auf- und abſtrömen, *streaming up and down;* Vokallänge und -kürze, etc.

EXERCISE XLII.

1. Have you read the fairy-tales–for–children of the brothers Grimm? 2. Hang up your coat in the wardrobe. 3. He has sent the errand-boy to (um — zu) fetch a time-table of the Rhenish Railway. 4. The full-moon shone on (*acc.*) the castle-on-the-mountain. 5. Put the wine-glasses upon the table. 6.

---

* But BRANDT, from whom we take these examples — and to whose German Grammar we owe many obligations — adds in a note (§ 521): "The capacity of German for forming such compounds is generally exaggerated, and that of English generally underrated. We might just as well write them so in English = *Fireinsurancecompany'soffice;* and we should have the same compound." This remark is particularly suggestive, as showing how much, in our view of language, depends upon the eye. English, with its syntax of word-position, is full of such actual, but unwritten, compounds.

He has lived long in foreign-parts. 7. We ought not to sell the bear's skin before we have killed the bear. 8. The grandfather has given the children a beautiful picture-book. 9. Where shall I find the dictionary? 10. You will find it in the school-room. 11. The weather-cock on the church-tower shows whence (woher) the wind blows. 12. Apple-trees and cherry-trees grow in Germany; olive-trees in southern countries. 13. The hawthorn blossoms in (the) spring. 14. He brought these gems with [him] from foreign parts. 15. The little girl carried a flower-basket. 16. When a misfortune befalls our fellowmen, we should assist them. 17. The letter-carrier will bring the letters at five o'clock. 18. I have neither gold nor precious stones. 19. The student should distinguish (the) vowel-modification from (the) vowel-change, in the study of (the) German grammar. 20. (The) Wednesday has its German name because this day is in the middle of the week. 21. The evening-sun-shine shone on the gilded weathercock. 22. The freedom of will is the greatest privilege of humanity. 23. The forget-me-not is one of the loveliest flowers. 24. The life and fire-insurance companies of London are the richest in the world.

LESSON XLIII.

Derivation of Adjectives.

393. Some adjectives whose derivation cannot be traced may be regarded as primitives. Such are: gut, grün, lang, alt, jung, etc.

394. Some adjectives are derived, like nouns (§ 382), from verb-roots by vowel-change (Ablaut) without suffix. Such are: blank (from blinken, *to glitter*), *bright;* treu (from trauen, *to trust*), *faithful;* glatt, (from gleiten), *smooth, slippery*, etc. (See § 383, note.)

395. But by far the greater number of adjectives are derived by means of suffixes:

1. –bar (akin to the old bären, *to bear* — as in fruchtbar, *fruitful*) usually forms adjectives from verbs, with passive sense of English *–able*, *–ible*: —

denkbar, *imaginable.*
eßbar, *eatable.*
ſichtbar, *visible.*
trinkbar, *drinkable.*

2. –en, –ern form adjectives denoting material, the latter with vowel-modification: —

golden, *golden.*
ſilbern, *silver(n).*
irden (Erde), *earthen.*
hölzern (Holz), *wooden.*
ſtählern (Stahl), *of steel.*
ſteinern, *of stone.*

3. –er, added to names of places (§ 143) is properly a noun-suffix (probably genitive plural), and forms indeclinable adjectives; as, Erlanger Bier, Berliner Wurſt, etc.

4. –haft (perhaps akin to haben, *have*) forms a few adjectives: —

boshaft, *malicious.*
krankhaft, *sickly.*
ſchülerhaft, *like a school-boy.*
tugendhaft, *virtuous.*

Note. — To –haft is sometimes added –ig; as, leibhaftig, *bodily.*

5. –ig, the most usual adjective suffix (English *–y*), forms derivatives — usually with vowel-modification: —

(*a*) From nouns: —

günſtig (Gunſt), *favorable.*
mächtig (Macht), *mighty.*
waldig (Wald), *woody.*
zornig (Zorn), *angry.*

Note. — Unaccented e may be dropped in –l or –r stems; as, buck(e)lig, wäſſ(e)rig (§ 139).

(*b*) From compound stems (§ 400, 9): —

breitſchultrig, *broad-shouldered.*
dreieckig, *triangular.*
kahlköpfig, *bald-headed.*
vierfüßig, *four-footed.*

(*c*) From adjectives, and adjective pronouns: —

gütig (gut), *kind.*
völlig (voll), *complete.*
einige (ein), pl. *some.*
meinig, *mine.*
deinig, *thine*, etc. (§ 194).
jenig (jen-er), *that* (§ 208).

(*d*) From verbs, rarely: —

ergiebig, *productive.*
gefällig, *obliging.*

(*e*) From adverbs and prepositions: —

bishe′rig, *previous.*
da′malig, *of that time.*
dortig, *of* or *from there.*
eh′emalig, *former.*
heutig, *of to-day.*
hieſig (hier), *of* or *from here.*
jetzig, *present.*
vorig, *former.*
übrig (über), *remaining.*

6. –icht is an occasional form, instead of –ig: —

ſteinicht, *stony.*
töricht, *foolish.*

8. The enlarged suffix –ſelig arose from the suffix –ig in connection with the noun-suffix –ſal (see § 384, 7): —

mühſelig (Mühſal), *toilsome.*
trübſelig (Trübſal), *woeful.*
feindſelig (Feind), *hostile.*
glückſelig (Glück), *happy*, *blessed.*

8. (*a*) The suffix –iſch (English *–ish*) denotes *relating to*, *similar to*, *belonging to:* —

berliniſch, *of Berlin.*
engliſch, *English.*
ſpaniſch, *Spanish.*
himmliſch, *heavenly.*
irdiſch (Erde), *earthly.*
politiſch, *political.*

(*b*) Sometimes, as in English, with a depreciatory sense: —

kindiſch, *childish.*
weibiſch, *womanish.*

9. –lei (§ 306), added to numerals, probably represents a feminine noun in the genitive singular: —

einerlei, *of one kind.*
mancherlei, *of many kinds.*

10. –lich (English *–like*, *–ly*), usually with umlaut — next to –ig the most frequent suffix — denotes *resemblance*, *character* — sometimes also with diminutive sense:

(*a*) From nouns or adjectives: —

ältlich, *oldish.*
fürſtlich, *princely.*
männlich, *manly.*
rötlich, *reddish.*
ſüßlich, *sweetish.*
weiblich, *feminine*, *womanly.*

(*b*) Also sometimes from verbs; as, ſchädlich, *harmful;* nützlich, *useful;* but more usually with passive sense of *possibility;* —

begreiflich, *conceivable.*	möglich, *possible.*
unbegreiflich, *inconceivable.*	unmöglich, *impossible.*

11. –ſam (English *–some*) forms derivatives of both active and passive sense: —

arbeitſam, *industrious.*	lenkſam, *manageable.*
furchtſam, *timid.*	ſparſam, *saving.*

396. The prefixes be–, ge–, miß–, un–, ur– and erz– are used for forming derivative adjectives, their force being the same as in derivative verbs and nouns. — Examples: bereit, *ready;* gewiß, *certain;* mißvergnügt, *displeased;* etc. And frequently the usual separable prefixes; as, abhängig, angenehm, vornehm, zufällig, etc. (from abhangen, annehmen, etc.)

Derivation of Adverbs.

397. As already stated (§ 314) almost any qualifying adjective may be used as an adverb without change of form; as, er ſchreibt gut und ſchnell, *he writes well and rapidly.* Hence there is no general adverb suffix like English *–ly.* (For the distinction, see § 449, 2.)

398. A few adverbs are, however, formed by suffixes:

(*a*) The adjective suffix –lich forms a number of derivatives which are used only — or chiefly — as adverbs: —

bitterlich, *bitterly.*	neulich, *recently.*
freilich, *indeed.*	ſchwerlich, *hardly.*
gänzlich, *entirely.*	wahrlich, *truly.*

(*b*) Some of these insert an irregular t: —

eigentlich, *properly.*	hoffentlich, *as is hoped.*
namentlich, *by name.*	wiſſentlich, *wilfully.*

399. Other adverb-endings are originally oblique cases of nouns or adjectives. (See § 319). Such are:

1. (*a*) Genitives: –lings: —

blindlings, *blindly.*	rücklings, *backwards.*

(*b*) –wärts (*–wards*): —

aufwärts, *upwards.*	ſüdwärts, *southward.*

(*c*) –weiſe (*–wise*); with genitive adjective prefix (properly compounds): —

zufälligerweiſe, *accidentally.*	möglicherweiſe, *possibly.*

— and sometimes with uninflected prefix: —

ſtückweiſe, *piecemeal.*	ruckweiſe, *by starts.*

(*d*) Often the genitive-ending –s, from nouns: —

abends, *in the evening.*	anfangs, *in the beginning.*
morgens, *in the morning.*	teils, *partly.*

(*e*) Also from adjectives or participles: —

links, *left* (hand).	eilends, *in haste.*
rechts, *right* "	vergebens, *in vain.*

(*f*) Sometimes –ens, as a kind of double adjective-genitive: —

erſtens, *firstly.*	höchſtens, *at most.*
zweitens, *secondly.*	ſpäteſtens, *at latest.*

2. (*a*) Other adverbs are old datives: —

mitten, *in the midst.*	unten, *below.*

(*b*) Or a dative with prepositions: —

anſtatt, *instead* (*of*).	zufolge, *in consequence* (*of*).

3. Others are old accusatives: —

heim, *home.*	(ein)mal, (*one*) *time*, *once.*

4. Other adverbs are from pronominal roots:

(*a*) Demonstrative: —

da, *then*, *there.*	dann, *then.*

(*b*) Interrogative and relative: —

wo, *where.*	wann, *when.*

EXERCISE XLIII.

1. (The) to-day's political news is not favorable. 2. We await his speedy return. 3. The elderly gentleman bought several English and Spanish books. 4. The water of the Rhine is of a greenish color. 5. The princes of that time lived in houses which were not better than the cottages of the laborers of the present day. 6. A virtuous man does not fear the mightiest king. 7. Horses, sheep, cats, and dogs are four-footed animals. 8. The old general wore a three-cornered hat. 9. Expect me at-latest before midnight. 10. We returned at 10 o'clock in the evening. 11. The letter was accidentally burned-up. 12. Berlin sausage is very famous. 13. Turn (*reflex.*) first to the right, and then southwards around the corner. 14. We could *not* find *anything* eatable or drinkable in this inn. 15. A broad-shouldered hotel-porter carried my portmanteau upstairs. 16. We thanked the prince in the most humble manner. 17. Will you change your foolish and childish conduct, and become virtuous, industrious and saving? 18. He is an unmanageable, malicious boy. 19. I am glad to hear that the news *from-there* is favorable. 20. The timid girl feared her angry mother. 21. After I have read the former chapter once more, I will read the remaining chapters also. 22. Instead of the old wooden bridge, a new stone [one] will be built over (*acc.*) this river. 23. He has made the assertion on–oath and in–writing. 24. The news has (*is*) recently arrived that the city is entirely destroyed.

LESSON XLIV.

Composition of Adjectives.

400. In compound adjectives, the last component will be an adjective (or participle).* The first, which will always take the chief accent, may be:

1. An adjective: —

dunkelgrün, *dark-green.*
hellblau, *light-blue.*
taubſtumm, *deaf and dumb.*
todkrank, *dangerously ill.*

2. An adverb or preposition: —

eingeboren, *native.*
erſtgeboren, *first-born.*
wohlgeboren, *well-born.*

3. A noun — sometimes with inflection: —

grasgrün, *green as grass.*
himmelblau, *sky-blue.*
ſeekrank, *seasick.*
volkreich, *populous.*
gedankenreich, *thoughtful.*
liebeskrank, *lovesick.*

4. Especially frequent are the compounds with los and voll, which have become almost mere suffixes (See §402, Rem. 1);

freudenlos, *joyless.*
kopflos, *headless.*
ausdrucksvoll, *expressive.*
hoffnungsvoll, *hopeful.*

5. Of the same sort are derivatives with the suffixes –artig (from Art, *kind*); fach (§ 306,3), or fältig (from Falt, *fold*); reich (*rich*); mäßig (from Maaß, *measure*), and others: —

großartig, *grand.*
dreifach, *threefold.*
einfältig, *simple.*
volkreich, *populous.*
geſetzmäßig, *lawful* (see Remark p. 218).

6. Composition of adjectives with roots of verbs is rare: —

merkwürdig, *remarkable.*
glaubwürdig, *credible.*

---

* A special exception is zufrie′den, lit. *at peace* — a phrase compound.

7. More frequent is the composition of an adjective with the infinitive of verbs used substantively in the genitive: —

lebensfroh, *enjoying life, happy.*
liebenswürdig, *amiable.*
ſterbenskrank, *dangerously ill.*
tadelnswert, *blamable.*

8. Many compound adjectives are made up of a participle and a dependent word, especially in poetry: —

heilbringend, *salutary.*
unheilſpinnend, *mischievous.*
gottergeben, *resigned to God's will.*
weichgewöhnt, *tenderly reared.*

9. Some adjectives, apparently compounds, are derivatives of compound nouns; as, viereckig, *square*, etc. (see § 395, 5). Others are formed by analogy to these, where the compound noun does not exist: —

einäugig, *one-eyed.*
hochherzig, *magnanimous.*

10. Compound adjectives, like compound nouns, may include more than two words, but not more than two components (see § 390); as:

hochachtungsvoll, *most respectfully.*
hochwohlgeboren, *high-well-born.*

Composition of Adverbs.

401. Compound adverbs are usually only adjectives used as adverbs (§ 314). Such retain the adjective accent (§ 53).

1. In other cases they are grammatical phrases, with more or less complete inflection.

(*a*) In such cases, where the first component is limiting, or "determining," or an inflected word, it takes the accent: —

dem′nach, *accordingly.*
eh′emals, *formerly.*
mein′erſeits, *for my part.*
meiſt′enteils, *for the most part.*

(*b*) The second member takes the accent when it is dependent on the first, or when a preposition: —

überhaupt′, *especially.*
vorhand′en, *at hand.*
zuletzt′, *at last.*
zuweil′en, *at times.*
bergab′, *down hill.*
bergan′, *up hill.*

2. Many compound adverbs are made up of prepositions and other indeclinable particles, especially da (dar), *there;* hier, *here;* wo (wor), *where;* her, *hither;* hin, *thither:* —

dabei′	*therewith.*	hinzu′	*besides.*
daher′	*therefore.*	voraus′	*before* (*place*).
darin′	*therein.*	vorüb′er	*past, over.*
hiermit′	*herewith.*	wobei′	*wherewith.*
hervor′	*forth;* vorher′, *before, ago* (time).	worin′	*wherein.*

(*a*) The accent is usually on the last component; but sometimes varies with meaning or emphasis: —

dar′um or darum′; war′um or warum′.

(*b*) So in a few other words; as, ein′mal, *once, one time;* einmal′, *once upon a time, some time*, etc.

3. Some compound adverbs are also used as adverbial conjunctions (§ 328); and some, as separable verb-prefixes (§ 289).

402. (*a*) Compound conjunctions are such as: alſo (all′=ſo) den(n)noch,′ jedoch′, ſobald′, ſowohl′, obgleich′, obwohl′, etc. (§ 53).

(*b*) Compound prepositions such as: bin′nen, gegenü′ber zuwi′der, etc. (See § 280.)

REMARK. — 1. It is not always easy to draw the line between composition and derivation, or between derivation and inflection. These terms are at best relative, and indicate only different stages of the same process. Habitual juxtaposition leads to composition. So, habitual composition, with loss of accent and, generally, abbreviation of form, changes a component to an affix; and, finally, when the distinct form or meaning is lost with habitual use, the most constant of these are called inflections. Thus: *Go′d-li′ke*, *Go′d-like*, *godly; ho′pe-fu′ll*, *ho′peful; pla′nt-di′d*, *pla′nted*, etc.

It is probable that all the affixes of derivation, as well as of inflection, were once independent words — whose original form and meaning have, however, in many cases been lost. Much depends — as has been seen (§391, foot-note) — on the habit of writing words; still more, however, on the *accent*, which marks the relation of parts, and thus the essential unity of the word. In German, compounds are freely written together; in English, many words written apart are, in fact, true compounds; as, *at all*, *in vain*, etc. Compare *also*, *already*, with *all right*, etc.

2. Let it be remembered that the view here given of Derivation and Composition does not pretend to be a full treatment of these subjects, but only such as may usefully guide the earliest attention of the student. Their more complete study belongs to a later stage of progress; meantime, the student may be directed to such help as may be found in the best dictionaries, or in the more elaborate grammars, such as Whitney's or Brandt's — both of which have given useful help in the revision of these Lessons. Also to Hempl: German Orthography and Phonology.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. She wore a sky-blue dress. 2. Deaf people often become deaf–and–dumb. 3. He is just gone by. 4. After I have walked five hours up–hill, I am tired–to–death. 5. The physician is very hopeful; the patient can by no means be dangerously ill. 6. The bishop preached with an expressive voice. 7. I have ordered our dinner beforehand. 8. Yesterday was one of the most remarkable days of my life. 9. I am sea-sick even during the shortest passage. 10. I am sorry to hear that. 11. It is an illness which is soon over. 12. Yes, but it is most disagreeable. 13. The weather has unfortunately been very unfavorable. 14. He has missed the mark. 15. Have you seen him pass by? (§265). 16. He went by an hour ago. 17. The war is unhappily not yet over; but at last we can foresee the end of it. 18. Only once have I received a letter from him; he was then quite hopeless. 19. That magnanimous action of the amiable young queen delighted her faithful people. 20. Allow us one prayer, said the geese, that (damit) we die not in our sins; afterwards we will stand in a row, that you may pick out the fattest. 21. Go straight ahead (aus); you will soon see a four-cornered square (Platz); then turn to the right. 22. It is easier to go down–hill than up–hill. 23. For my part, I have nothing against it. 24. There (es) was once a king, whose first-born son lay dangerously ill.

LESSON XLV.

Relation of German and English.—Summary.

In every department of the grammar thus far—even without suggestion from the text or the teacher—the student must have observed the close resemblance between German and English. A brief summary of this subject will now be made.

403. This resemblance is, of course, not accidental, but rests upon historical kinship. The Angles and the Saxons, who conquered Britain before A. D. 500—whence the united name *Anglo-Saxon*, applied to the people and the language—and, from the Angles, the names *England* (Angle-land) and *English*—were German peoples. These brought with them, of course, their own German tongues, which, with some other admixture, formed the Anglo-Saxon—sometimes called Old English—the basis of the English language.

404. But, though of the same Germanic stock, these peoples were of a different branch from those whose language has given rise to the modern literary German. The Angles and Saxons were Low-Germans—dwellers on the low, or coast, lands, as distinguished from those who dwelt in the high, or central, lands of the continent, whose language, known as High-German, is the basis of the modern German. The nearest kinship of English is thus with the Low-German tongues, as the modern Dutch, and the dialects of common speech in North Germany, called Platt-Deutſch—but all are included in the general term Germanic, or Teutonic.

405. There were thus already considerable diversities of speech between the High-German and the earliest English, as will be more fully shown below (§ 407, etc.). These diversities have been still further increased by historical causes subsequently (§ 414, etc.), so that the kinship of English to German is not always so obvious as its relation to other languages (as French or Latin). Still, this kinship is of fundamental importance—the more so, as it shows itself especially in the most essential and important elements of our own language—implying *cognate* origin, not mere *derivation.*

NOTE.—This subject, which is of capital importance for the study of English, will be treated here only so far as may be helpful to the English student in learning German.

406. Of Germanic origin in English are:*—

---

*Condensed from Morris's Historical English Grammar, p. 27–31

1. All grammatical inflections, and all auxiliary words used as substitutes for inflection.

2. The most important grammatical words: almost all numerals; all pronouns and pronominals; most simple adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions; all nouns, adjectives, verbs, inflected or derived by vowel-change, and almost all other irregular verbs: in a word, the most important primitive elements of form, construction and idiom.

3. The most familiar affixes of derivation, both prefixes and suffixes, as seen in foregoing Lessons (XL., XLI., etc.).

4. And, generally, the great majority of simple monosyllables, expressing the objects, ideas and feelings of common life and universal experience.

These comprehend, as was said above, the most essential and important elements of our language — its entire grammatical machinery and the most indispensable part of its vocabulary; so that, in spite of all changes and additions, English is still properly ranked as a Germanic language.

A great number of such forms and words are the same, or nearly the same, in both languages, so as to be readily recognized. Many others present differences which require attention and explanation.

407. One most important set of changes follows a general law, based on the relation of sounds, which, from its first great expounder, JACOB GRIMM, is known as "Grimm's Law." This law comprehends other languages — including Greek and Latin — of the same family with German and English; but it will be here stated only with reference to these, and in the simplest terms.

GRIMM'S LAW.

408. The mute consonants, as is well known, are classed: —

(*a*) By the *organs* of their utterance into 1. *labials* (lip sounds), 2. *linguals* or *dentals* (tongue or tooth sounds), and 3. *gutturals* or *palatals* (throat or palate sounds); and these respectively: —

(*b*) According to the *mode* or *degree* of utterance into 1. *hard*, or *surds*; 2. *soft*, or *sonants*; 3. *aspirate*; — as shown in the following table (to which are added the *sibilants*, *s*, *z*): —

	Hard.	*Soft.*	*Aspirate.*
LABIAL.	**p**	**b**	**f** (𝔭𝔣), **v.**
LINGUAL.	**t** (𝔱𝔷)	**d**	**th, s, z.**
GUTTURAL.	**k**	**g**	𝔠𝔥.

Now it is found that consonant changes regularly occur: —

(*a*) Within the same organ; as labial to labial, etc.

(*b*) In the same direction, between any two languages; that is, between German and English, thus:—

GERMAN — *hard* — *aspirate* — *soft* — correspond to
ENGLISH — *soft* — *hard* — *aspirate* respectively,—

as if by a circular permutation.

NOTE.—Letting H represent **Hard**; S, **Soft**; A, **Aspirate**; and—as a guide to the first letters—letting H stand for **High-German**, and S for **Saxon-English**; these changes may be easily remembered by the following mnemonic words—the corresponding symbols, up or down, marking the regular changes.

High-German = **H. A. S.**
Saxon-English = **S. H. A.**

409. There are many exceptions which cannot be here discussed. Especially in the guttural series, and in other letters when initial, the change often does not occur. Frequently also a guttural has degenerated into a semi-vowel or vowel, or is lost entirely; as g becomes *y* (*i*), *w*; g or ch becomes silent *gh*, or is lost—English showing aversion to all aspirate gutturals. Such examples are, of course, outside of Grimm's law. Also the lingual sibilants ſ, z, usually represent English *t*, the German th being hard—German having no lingual aspirate proper.

The following examples will exhibit the most usual interchanges—including exceptions, as above noted. Examples where change has not taken place need not be specially given, though some of them are included—and some of the examples illustrate more than one change* (see Remark, p. 228).

NOTE.—1. In some of the examples, the change has occurred in English itself; but this need not affect the present discussion, which has reference only to the relation of German to modern English.

2. The student must bear in mind always purely orthographical differences; such as k = (often) *c*; ſch = *sh*; j = *y*, etc. Such cases need not be included.

1. LABIALS.

Germ.	*Engl.*					
p	b . . .	doppel, *double.*	Rippe, *rib.*	Krippe, *crib.*	Polſter, *bolster.*	Stoppel, *stubble.*
b	f, v . .	halb, *half.*	ab, *off.*	Weib, *wife.*	ſieben, *seven.*	ſterben, *starve.*
f (pf)	p . . .	helfen, *help.*	auf, *up.*	reif, *ripe.*	Apfel, *apple.*	Pflanze, *plant.*

---

* Change is often prevented by the presence of another mute or a liquid; as, Stein, oft, fechten, Gold, Hand, treten (tread), etc.

2. LINGUALS.

Germ	*Engl.*					
t	**d** . . .	tief, *deep.*	Traum, *dream.*	Wort, *word.*	tun, *do.*	Tat, *deed.*
d	**th** . . .	dick, *thick.*	drei, *three.*	denken, *think.*	Bad, *bath.*	Erde, *earth.*
s, ſſ, ß	**t** . . .	das, *that.*	aus, *out.*	es, *it.*	beſſer, *better.*	Haß, *hate.*
z, tz	**t** . . .	zwei, *two.*	Zoll, *toll.*	zu, *to.*	Katze, *cat.*	ſitzen, *sit.*

3. GUTTURALS.

Germ.	*Engl.*					
k, ck	**g ch** . .	Ecke, *e(d)ge.*	Brücke, *bri(d)ge.*	Bank, *bench.*	kauen, *chew.*	ſtrecken, *stre(t)ch.*
g	**w (gh)** .	folgen, *follow.*	Talg, *tallow.*	Vogel, *fowl.*	Pflug, *plow* or *plough.*	
g	**y (i)** . .	Gart(en), *yard.*	Auge, *eye.*	legen, *lay.*	froſtig, *frosty.*	Magd, *maid.*
ch	**k** . . .	Buch, *book.*	Joch, *yoke.*	Milch, *milk.*	machen, *make.*	göttlich, *godlike.*
ch	**gh (y)** .	doch, *though.*	hoch, *high.*	Licht, *light.*	Tochter, *daughter.*	göttlich, *godly.*

410. The following examples will illustrate other frequent forms, more or less irregular. But it will be observed that the changes are usually within the same organ: —

	Germ.	*Engl.*			
1.	**b**	**w** . . .	gelb, *yellow.*	ſchrauben, *screw.*	Schwalbe, *swallow.*
	v (old **f**)	**f** . . .	Vater, *father.*	voll, *full.*	Volk, *folk.*
	f	**v** . . .	Ofen, *oven.*	elf, *eleven.*	Füchſin, *vixen.*
	w	**wh** . .	was, *what.*	wenn, *when.*	Weile, *while.*

	Germ.	*Engl.*			
2.	t	**th** . . .	fort, *forth.*	Wetter, *weather.*	tauſend, *thousand.*
	ſch	**sk** . . .	Schule, *school.*	Schiff, *skiff.*	Schaum, *scum.*
	ſch	**s** . . .	Schlaf, *sleep.*	Schleim, *slime.*	ſchwellen, *swell.*
3.	g, ch	**gh** (= **f**) .	genug, *enough.*	Trog, *trough.*	lachen, *laugh.*
	ch	**ch (tch)** .	Buche, *beech.*	Pech, *pitch.*	wachen, *watch.*
	ch	*lost* . .	ich, *I* (old *ik*).	mich, *me* (old *mec*).	dich, *thee* (old *thec*).
	g	*lost* . .	Ziegel, *tile.*	liegen, *lie.*	lügen, *lie.*

411. The liquids l, m, n, r, in consequence of their semi-vowel character, readily undergo change; as:—

a) INTERCHANGE .	Buſen, *bosom.*	Hanf, *hemp.*	Feſſel, *fetter.*	Degen, *dagger.*	
r with **s**, **z** . . .	war, *was.*	Haſe, *hare.*	verlieren, *lose.*	frieren, *freeze.*	
b) OMISSION . . .	als, *as.*	ſolch, *such.*	Gans, *goose.*	uns, *us.*	Mund, *mouth.*
c) INSERTION . . .	Schaffot, *scaffo*l*d.*	Nachtigall, *nighti*n*gale.*	Bräutigam, *brideg*r*oom.*		
d) TRANSPOSITION .	brennen, *burn.*	durch, *through.*	hundert, *hundred.*	dreißig, *thirty.*	

412. Letters — usually initial or final — are sometimes also:—

(*a*) OMITTED . . .	gleich, *like.*	genug, *enough.*	kneifen, *nip.*	Axt, *ax.*
(*b*) ADDED OR RETAINED . .	Lamm, *lam*b.	Donner, *thun*d*er.*	Erle, *al*d*er.*	Ecke, *e*d*ge.*

Sometimes with double forms, as:—

Schatten, *shade, shadow.*	ſchmelzen, (*s*)*melt.*	ſpinnen, *spinner, spi*(*n*)*der.*

(*c*) Silent	Gneiß, *gneiss.*	Knie, *knee.*	halb, *half.*	wollte, *would.*

Note. — It must be borne in mind that the use of h and of the double consonant in German is often purely orthographical; as, Sohn, *son*, Bett, *bed*.

413. For the vowels — the most changeable elements of speech — no rules can be laid down. To a great extent they are the same in German and English — or only orthographically different. The following are some of the most frequent correspondences (not identical):

Germ.	*Engl.*				
ei	**i**	reiten, *ride.*	weit, *wide.*	ſcheinen, *shine.*	etc.
ei	**o**	Bein, *bone.*	ein, *one.*	meiſt, *most.*	etc.
ei	**oa** . . .	breit, *broad.*	Eid, *oath.*	heiſer, *hoarse.*	etc.
o	**ea** . . .	Brot, *bread.*	Ohr, *ear.*	Tod, *death.*	etc.
au	**ea** . . .	Baum, *beam.*	Traum, *dream.*	laufen, *leap.*	etc.
au	**ou** . . .	Maus, *mouse.*	Haus, *house.*	laut. *loud.*	etc.

Unaccented final e is usually lost; as, Wespe, *wasp*: or silent; as, Käſe, *cheese* (this e in English being often purely orthographical).

Note. — The grammatical inflections — so largely lost in English — are purposely not here considered. These would require a different treatment.

414. The relation of German to English is still further obscured by historical influences operating — especially in English — since the separation of the two languages. Only the most important of these will be indicated: —

1. The introduction of many foreign words into English — mainly Latin or French which have either: —

(*a*) Wholly displaced the original Germanic words; or,

(*b*) Usurped their meaning, causing them to be transferred to a different sense. As, in the latter case: —

bieten, *to offer* (bid).	Deutſch, *German* (Dutch).
Bund, *union* (bond).	Geiſt, *spirit* (ghost.)

Dampf, *vapor* (damp).	Stuhl, *chair* (stool).
Decke, *cover* (dock).	Tier, *animal* (deer).

— and many others. Thus the English equivalent is not readily associated in the mind with its corresponding German form.

2. Especially is this true with English *derivatives* or *compounds*. Often, in the simple word, we retain the native, or Germanic, primitive; while in the derivatives or compounds, we use foreign words whose simple root-forms do not occur in English; as: —

PRIMITIVE.	DERIVATIVE.
eye (Auge).	*ocular*, etc.
hand (Hand).	*manual*, etc.
foot (Fuß).	*pedal*, etc.
book (Buch).	*library*, etc.
house (Haus).	*domestic*, etc.
light (Licht).	*illumination*, etc.
deed (Tat).	*benefit*, etc.
go (gehen).	*pro-ceed*, *re-cede*, } etc.
lead (leiten).	*ad-duce*, *pro-duce*, } etc.
send (enden).	*re-mit*, *pre-mise*, } etc.
overset (überſetzen).	*translate*, etc.

3. Also, in English synonyms, the foreign word will often take the place of the Germanic equivalent; as: —

GERMANIC.	FOREIGN.
fright.	*terror.*
help.	*assist.*
last.	*final.*
likeness.	*resemblance.*
opening.	*aperture.*
small.	*minute*, etc. etc.

Especially in the language of books, to which the student's attention is first directed, the foreign element in English will occur most frequently. In the language of common life and conversation the Germanic element is more prominent.

415. All the causes above enumerated — with others not here mentioned — tend to obscure the intimate kinship between German and English. On the other hand, English words from Latin or Greek, and to a great extent

from French, are but little changed, and are readily recognized. Consequently, the relation of these languages to English is apt to be proportionately exaggerated, while that of German is depreciated or ignored. Yet it must not be forgotten that the latter is far closer and of more fundamental importance, though less obvious to the beginner; especially that the *grammatical elements* of English, and almost all of its simplest and most necessary words, are of Germanic origin.

NOTE. — In consequence of the differences above indicated, which, added to the strangeness of a new type, give to German at first the appearance of a wholly foreign language, it has not been deemed expedient to introduce this subject, except incidentally, at an earlier stage. Now, however, it may in many ways usefully serve for instruction, not only as a help in acquiring and remembering words, singly or in groups, but also by adding interest to the study of German, as well as of English, in various points of view.

REMARK. — The difficulty has been fully recognized of presenting this subject in a manner which should be wholly elementary and helpful for the pupil, yet in a measure satisfactory for the teacher or scholar. The object has been to give only what might be useful to a beginner in German.

EXERCISE XLV.

The following examples are intended partly as illustrations, partly as an excercise for the student.

I.

German: to find English cognate form.

Affe, Haufen, Pfanne, Pflaume, Seife, gaffen, ſtreifen, Volk, Herbſt, Sieb, Schaufel, ſchieben, Zinn, Zehe, Zunge, Keſſel, Nuß, Teufel, Spaten, gleiten, Schmied, Zweig, Zeichen, Leder, Pfad, Schuß, treten, bleichen, Eiche, Tau, Pfeife, Magd, ſchlau, Schale, Flaſche, ſtrecken, Storch, Sache, Wache, mit, mittel, zähe, zahm, Garn, geſter(n), morg(en), ſelten, Buſen, Wald, welch.

II.

English: to find German cognate form.

Apple, pool, stamp, sheep, full, even, over, haven, ten, twenty, net, salt, heath, both, south, *to* bite, white, drink, *to* drench, deaf, wide, side, old, blade, leaf, *to* snuff, scum, skiff, birch, *to* seek, sickle, cook, crouch, might, *to* fight, *to* yawn, year, penny, hail, rain, *to* say, said, sorrow, *to* borrow, iron, fodder, ear, him, her, comb.

III.

Words transferred: to find the cognate form.

Baum, *tree;* Bein, *leg;* Tier, *animal;* Burg, *castle;* Bürger, *citizen;* Stuhl, *chair;* Zimmer, *room;* Zimmermann, *carpenter;* horchen, *to listen;* glänzen, *to shine;* Schürze, *apron;* Boden, *ground;* Hund, *dog;* bieten, *to offer;* fahren, *to ride;* tö(d)ten, *to kill;* heben, *to lift;* graben, *to dig;* ſorgen, *to care;* riechen, *to smell;* tragen, *to bear;* Degen, *sword;* dumm, *stupid;* Vogel, *bird;* Mut, *courage;* Acker, *field;* Feder, *pen;* Mehl, *flour;* Fürſt, *prince;* Graf, *count;* Bund, *union;* Glocke, *bell;* Bauer, *farmer;* Heiland, *saviour;* Höhle, *cave;* Blume, *flower;* ſondern, *to separate* (*but*); Teil, *part;* Beleuchtung, *illumination;* Wohltat, *benefit;* Überſetzung, *translation;* überbringen, *to deliver;* Aufeinanderfolge, *succession;* Handſchuh, *glove;* Jahrbuch, *annual;* Zahl, *number;* zählen, *to count;* Zeit, *time;* ziehen, *to draw;* Zug, *draught.*

REMARK. — The examples in this Lesson, as already remarked, do not imply *derivation* but only common (*cognate*) origin, or divergence from a common type. The German is given first, simply because that is the form the student has to deal with, and needs to recognize. In fact, the English form is, in general, of a more primitive type than the German. But the more scientific arrangement would have been less useful for elementary purposes.

Many of the examples used in this lesson have been taken, by permission, from the excellent "Letters for Self-Instruction in German," by Dr. Solomon Deutsch. They are purposely limited to such as will be most obvious. The teacher may gradually introduce more difficult ones.

PART III.

SYNTAX.

In the following lessons the uses of the parts of speech will be illustrated, and, at the same time, some irregular matter, which properly belongs to the accidence, will be introduced.

The remaining portion of the grammar may either be studied consecutively, or used by reference only, in connection with the general work of the student; and, as exercises, either the sentences under the several Lessons or the continuous passages at the end of the book, and others similar, may be used, as teachers may prefer. For younger pupils the former, for more advanced the latter, may perhaps be recommended.

LESSON XLVI.

Use of the Articles.

The use of the article is, in the main, the same as in English. Only the more important differences will be noted.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

416. The definite article is used more largely than in English: —

1. The definite article is used before nouns taken in their most comprehensive sense, meaning the whole idea, material, or class; before abstract and collective nouns, and infinitives used as nouns. Examples: Das Leben des Menſchen iſt kurz, *the life of man is short.* Die Tugend iſt das höchſte Gut,

virtue is the highest good. Das Gold iſt koſtbarer als das Eiſen, *gold is more precious than iron.* Das Rauchen iſt hier verboten, *smoking is forbidden here.* Nach dem Eſſen, *after dinner* (*eating*), etc.

2. The definite article is used also before names of seasons, months and days; before the names of streets and mountains; and other than neuter names of countries. Examples: Im Sommer iſt es warm. Der Dezember iſt kalt. Ich werde am Freitag ankommen. Er wohnt in der Friedrichsſtraße. Sie haben den Montblanc beſtiegen. Iſt er in der Türkei geweſen?

3. Proper names preceded by an adjective take the article. Der arme Hans, der tapfere Blücher, das ſchöne Paris. Sometimes proper names take the article with the force of a demonstrative pronoun: Da iſt der Tell, *there is* (*that well-known*) *Tell;* sometimes also in depreciatory sense; as, Sage dem Wilhelm, er ſoll kommen; — but often without either implication.

4. Sometimes we are compelled to use the article before a proper name in order to indicate the case; as: Ich ziehe Göthe dem Schiller vor. Therſites hat den Achilles überlebt. And, generally, the article may be used before personal proper names in lieu of declension; as, Die Bücher der Marie; die Kriege des Alexander; ich habe es dem Max geſagt (for: Mariens, Alexanders, Maxen). (See § 110–112.)

NOTE. — Before a common noun also the article is sometimes used merely to show the case; as: Er zieht Bier der Milch vor, *he prefers beer to milk;* ich kann der Vorſicht nicht zu viel gebrauchen, *I cannot use too much* (*of*) *foresight.*

5. Frequently the English possessive is rendered in German by the article, with or without an objective pronoun (§ 439), when the possessor is sufficiently pointed out by the context. This is the case especially when speaking of the parts of the body or of the clothing. Er ſchüttelte den Kopf und ſteckte die Hand in die Taſche, *he shook his head and stuck his hand into his pocket.* Er hat ſich in den Finger geſchnitten, *he has cut his finger.* Tränen rollten ihr über die Wangen (*over her cheeks*).

6. The definite article is used in German, where English uses the indefinite article, with a distributive sense. For instance: Drei Taler die Elle, *three dollars a yard.* Viermal die Woche, *four times a week.*

7. In some phrases the definite article is used where it is not used in English; as: In die Schule, in die Kirche; *to school, to church.* In der Schule, in der Kirche; *at school, at church.* In der Stadt, *in town.* Vor dem Frühſtück, *before breakfast.* Die letzte Woche, *last week.* Im letzten Jahre, *last year*, etc.

For the article with the possessive pronouns, see § 193.

417. On the other hand, the definite article is in a few cases omitted in German where used in English:—

1. In a few pronominal or adjective phrases; as, erſterer, letzterer; *the former*, *the latter;* beſagter, genannter; *the aforesaid*; folgender, *the following*, etc.; and in a few technical phrases; as, Beklagter, *the defendant;* Kläger, *the plaintiff;* Schreiber, *the writer;* Überbringer, *the bearer*, etc.—yet not always.

2. In phrases expressing direction to or from the points of the compass; as, von Norden, gegen Weſten, gegen Abend, *towards the west*, etc.; and a few others; as, vor Augen, *before the eyes;* alle Welt, *all the world*, etc. (§ 460, 4).

NOTE.—Generally—as also in English—the article is not used in phrases where a common noun is joined with a preposition. Bei Tiſche, *at table;* bei Hofe, *at court;* zu Waſſer, *by sea;* zu Lande, *on land;* zu Fuß, *on foot;* zu Pferde, *on horseback;* zu Hauſe, *at home;* nach Hauſe, *home;* bei Tage, *by day;* bei Nacht, *by night;* mit Vergnügen, *with pleasure;* and in such idiomatic phrases as, Durſt haben, *to be thirsty;* zu Grunde gehen, *to be ruined*, *to perish;* zu Stande kommen, *to succeed;* zu Stande bringen, *to accomplish;* zu Bett gehen, *to go to bed;* Abſchied nehmen, *to take leave.* (See § 379.)

418. The following cases, though the same in German as in English, may be remarked:—

1. A dependent genitive preceding its noun excludes the article; as, Des Königs Befehl; meines Vaters Haus.

2. No article is used with nouns taken in a partitive or limited sense; as: Er trinkt lieber Wein als Bier; Silber und Gold habe ich nicht; nor with nouns used merely as predicate; as, der neunte Monat heißt September.

3. The article is omitted in proverbial and abridged expressions; as: Weib und Kind; Jung und Alt; für König und Vaterland; Armut iſt keine Schande; Geduld überwindet Alles; Ehre iſt der Tugend Lohn, etc.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

419. The indefinite article differs sometimes from English use:—

1. The indefinite article is omitted before a simple predicate noun expressing occupation or condition, or before a descriptive noun after als; as: Mein Sohn war Kaufmann, aber er iſt jetzt Soldat geworden. Als Ehrenmann kann ich das nicht zugeben, *as a man of honor*, etc.

2. For omission of the indefinite article before hundert, tauſend, see § 304. For the phrases, *a few*, *many a*, § 245; *what a*, § 220; *twice a day*, etc., § 416, 6.

3. No article is used in German in adverbial phrases like: in Eile, *in a hurry;* mit ſchwacher Stimme, *with a feeble voice;* in Wut, *in a passion;* and in such idioms as: ich habe Kopfweh, Zahnweh, *I have a headache, a toothache;* ich habe Luſt, *I have a mind;* and some others.

4. For ein ſolcher, *such a*, see § 207; for ein jeder, *every one*, § 245 (*a*).

Position of the Articles.

420. 1. The definite article precedes all other qualifying words, except alle, *all.* Examples: die beiden Knaben, *both the boys;* der doppelte Preis, *double the price;* but all(e) die Knaben, or die Knaben alle.

2. The indefinite article precedes all other qualifying words except ſolch (§ 207), welch (§ 220), was für (§ 221), and manch (§ 245), even where in English it will sometimes follow a qualifying word; as: Welch ein Mann! Was für ein Buch iſt das? Manch ein Mann, ſolch ein Mann (or ein ſolcher Mann); also, ein ſo ſchönes Mädchen, *so pretty a girl;* ein zu kaltes Bad, *too cold a bath;* eine halbe Stunde, *half an hour*, etc.

Repetition of the Articles.

421. With two or more nouns of the same gender and number, if taken together, the definite article need not generally be repeated; but when the article would not have like forms with both nouns, it must be repeated before each of them. The indefinite article, from its individual nature, must be repeated before each noun. As: Die Gnade, Weisheit und Liebe Gottes, *the mercy, wisdom, and love of God.* Die Kraft und der Mut des Löwen, *the strength and* (*the*) *courage of the lion.* Er kaufte eine Taube, eine Gans und einen Haſen, *he bought a pigeon, a goose, and a hare.*

2. But the definite article must be repeated if the nouns are taken distinctively, or in contrast. As: Ich habe den Herrn und den Diener geſehen.

3. An article is, however, not repeated when successive nouns designate the same object; as, ein Freund und Bruder, *a friend and brother;* der Herr und Gebieter, *the lord and master.*

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. At nine o'clock we shall go to school. 2. Have you been at church? 3. Do you prefer (lieber) to travel by day or by night? 4. Have you ever seen such a flower? 5. How many German lessons did you take last month? 6. I have taken eight lessons, two a week. 7. The sick man spoke with a feeble voice. 8. Life is short; art is long. 9. Nature is an open book, the leaves of which all can read who have eyes. 10. August is the hottest month. 11. The boy fell from a tree and broke *his* (ſich) arm. 12.

Why do you shake *your* head? Have you a headache? 13. No, I have a toothache. 14. I am sorry to hear that; go to a dentist, he will pull out your (Ihnen) tooth. 15. I live in Frederick Street; my brother lives in Broad Street. 16. The soldier held a sword in his hand. 17. Poor Charles is ill. 18. Come after dinner and drink a glass of wine with me. 19. This wine costs only half a dollar a bottle; I would gladly pay double the sum for it. 20. During the heat of summer we shall make a journey on foot in Switzerland. 21. In the long wars of Alexander, the Greeks marched victoriously towards the East. 22. The good [man] has ever the fear of God before [his] eyes. 23. My brother's eldest son is a lawyer; the youngest will soon become a preacher. 24. As a Christian, you cannot forget so clear a proof of the love and goodness of God.

LESSON XLVII.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON NOUNS.

Number.

422. Some nouns are used only in the singular: —

1. Names of materials; as: das Fleiſch, *flesh*, *meat;* der Honig, *honey;* die Aſche, *ashes.* Some words of this class can be used in the plural, meaning 'kinds of'; as, die Gräſer, *kinds of grass;* die Salze, *kinds of salt*, *salts.* Sometimes the plural has a slightly different meaning; as: die Gelder, *sums of money;* die Papiere, *papers*, *documents.*

2. Nouns of abstract meaning and infinitives used as nouns; as: die Ehre, *honor;* das Lob, *praise;* der Rat, *counsel;* der Tod, *death;* das Beſtreben, *the effort*, etc.

3. But for many such nouns, a plural sense may be expressed by other forms; as, die Ehrenbezeigungen, *marks of honor;* Ratſchläge, *counsels;* Todesfälle, *deaths;* die Beſtrebungen, *efforts*, etc. So: der Kohl, *cabbage;* pl. Kohlköpfe, *cabbage-heads*, etc.

4. For the singular, in expressions of weight or measure, see § 312.

423. A few nouns are used only, or usually, or with special meaning, in the plural: —

die Hoſen,	*trousers.*	Pfingſten,	*Whitsuntide.*
die Einkünfte,	*the revenue.*	Weihnachten,	*Christmas.*

Oſtern, *Easter.*
die Faſten, *Lent.*
die Ferien, *the vacation.*
die Leute, *people.*
die Koſten, *the expenses.*
die Molken, *whey.*
die Trümmer, *the ruins.*
die Alpen, *the Alps.*
die Gebrüder, *the brothers.*
die Geſchwiſter, *the brother*(*s*) *and sister*(*s*).
die Eltern, *the parents.*
die Gliedmaßen, *the limbs*,
and some others.

424. Some nouns have a double meaning in the singular, and in the plural a separate form in each meaning: —

das Band, *the ribbon.*	die Bänder, *the ribbons.*
das Band, *the tie, bond.*	die Bande, *the ties.*
die Bank, *the bench.*	die Bänke, *the benches.*
die Bank, *the* (*commercial*) *bank.*	die Banken, *the banks.*
das Geſicht, *the face.*	die Geſichter, *the faces.*
das Geſicht, *the vision.*	die Geſichte, *visions.*
das Licht, *the light.*	die Lichter, *the lights.*
das Licht, *the candle.*	die Lichte, *the candles.*
der Strauß, *the nosegay.*	die Sträuße, *the nosegays.*
der Strauß, *the ostrich.*	die Strauße(n), *the ostriches.*
der Zoll, *the inch.*	die Zolle, *the inches.*
der Zoll, *the toll.*	die Zölle, *the tolls*, and others.

425. (*a*) The following have double plurals with different meanings: —

das Horn, *the horn.*	die Hörner, *the horns.*	die Horne, *kinds of horn.*
das Land, *the land.*	die Länder, *separate countries.*	die Lande, *countries collectively* (or poetic).
der Ort, *the place.*	die Örter, *single places.*	die Orte, *places collectively.*
das Wort, *the word*, and some others.	die Wörter, *single words.*	die Worte, *connected words.*

(*b*) Der Laden, *the shop*, *shutter*, uses both plurals: die Laden, die Läden: but in the compound, die Fenſterladen usually.

(*c*) The noun Mann, *man*, presents several peculiarities: —

1. Nouns compounded with Mann form their plural with Leute, *people*, which is only used in the plural, as collective. As: —

der Arbeitsmann, *the workingman.*	die Arbeitsleute, *work-people.*
der Kaufmann, *the merchant.*	die Kaufleute, *merchants.*

der Landmann, *the countryman, rustic.* die Landleute, *rustics.*
der Landsmann, *the* (*fellow*) *countryman.* die Landsleute, (*fellow*) *countrymen.*

But the ordinary form Männer must be used when speaking of individuals: Ehrenmänner, *men of honor;* Staatsmänner, *statesmen;* and also when a distinction of sex is to be made: Eheleute, *married people;* Ehemänner, *married men;* Ehefrauen, *married women.*

2. The plural die Mannen means *vassals, warriors;* as: Schickt zu ſeinen Mannen allen in dem Lande Schwyz, etc.

3. Mann, meaning *a body of men* collectively, after a numeral is construed as a noun of measure and is indeclinable (§ 312). Example: Eine Armee von dreißig tauſend Mann, *an army of thirty thousand men.*

NOTE. — Colloquially, in imitation of § 120, sometimes occur plural forms in -s; as die Kerls, die Mädels, etc.

For other special forms in plural, see § 105.

Gender.

426. Some nouns are of the same form, with different gender and meaning. As: —

(*a*) With the same plurals: —

der Chor, *the chorus, choir.*
das Chor, *the choir* (place).
der Heide, *the heathen.*
die Heide, *the heath.*
der Erbe, *the heir.*
das Erbe, *the inheritance* (no pl.).
der See, *the lake.*
die See, *the sea.*
der Teil, *the part.*
das Teil, *the share.*
der Verdienſt, *the earning.*
das Verdienſt, *the merit,*

and others.

(*b*) With different plurals: —

der Band, *the volume.*	pl. die Bände.
das Band.	See § 424.
der Bund, *the union.*	" die Bünde.
das Bund, *the bundle.*	" die Bunde.
der Bauer, *the farmer.*	" die Bauern.
das Bauer, *the cage.*	" die Bauer.
der Schild, *the shield.*	" die Schilde.
das Schild, *the sign.*	" die Schilder.
der Tor, *the fool.*	" die Toren.
das Tor, *the gate.*	" die Tore,

and others.

Such details must be sought in the dictionaries. (See also § 105.)

For special cases in which the grammatical gender and the natural gender do not correspond, see § 452.

Plural of Proper Names.

427. The plural of proper (personal) names is variously formed: —

(*a*) *Christian Names:* Masculines ending in a consonant usually add e: die Ludwige; in a vowel, s: die Hugos. Feminines in -e add n: die Marien, die Charlotten; in -a, add s: die Lauras, die Annas; in a consonant, add e: die Eliſabethe.

(*c*) *Surnames:* ending in a sibilant add e: die Leibnitze; in other consonants, add usually s, sometimes e: die Grimms, die Schmidts, die Stollberge; in -e, add sometimes n: die Schulzen: or, generally, remain unchanged: die Schiller, die Leſſing, die Schlegel.

(*c*) When several personal names are combined, only the last is declined: Maria Stuarts Tod, Friedrich Rückerts Gedichte; or, der Tod Maria Stuarts.

NOTE. — But von excludes the declension of the following name, unless immediately before the governing noun. Thus: Friedrich von Schlegels Werke; or: die Werke Friedrichs von Schlegel.

(*d*) Some foreign plurals are adapted or retained: die Cicerone(n), die Nerone(n) (Latin); die Capuletti, die Medici (Italian); die Pitts (English), etc. And a few biblical names (besides Jeſus and Chriſtus, § 113) retain the original forms; as, Mariä, Johannis, Matthäi (genitives), etc.

There remains, however, much irregularity in the forms of proper names and foreign words generally. (See § 120, *a*.) For the article with proper names, see § 416, 3, 4.

Titles.

428. The syntax of titles presents some peculiarities: —

1. (*a*) If the title (or an appellative noun), preceding the proper name, has the article, the proper name is not declined (§ 416): Die Taten des Königs Karl des Erſten und ſeines Sohnes Karl des Zweiten.

(*b*) If the title is without the article, the proper name alone is declined: Die Regierung König Heinrichs des Achten; Kaiſer Karls Taten; or, die Taten Kaiſer Karls.

(*c*) The title, even with the article, is often left undeclined: Die Werke des Profeſſor(s) Otto. Except Herr, which must always be declined: Das

Haus des Herrn Braun (or Herrn Brauns); and on the address of a letter: Herrn (or dem Herrn) Karl Braun.

2. (*a*) The title Herr, with or without article, is often used where in English no such prefix occurs: (Der) Herr Profeſſor Braun, der Herr Graf, Ihr Herr Vater, etc., or in address, without article: (Herr) Doktor, etc.

(*b*) Often the wife of an official receives her husband's title, with the prefix (die) Frau; as: (Die) Frau Profeſſor Otto; or, in absence of the proper name: Die Frau Profeſſor — the article being usual, except in address.

(*c*) Note the forms usual in address: Herr, *Mr.*; Frau, *Mrs.*; Fräulein, *Miss* — before the name; or, omitting the name: Mein Herr, *Sir*; Madame, or gnädige Frau, *Madam*; Fräulein, or mein (gnädiges) Fräulein, *Miss*; — meine Herren, *Gentlemen*, etc.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Are you not an Englishman? I think we are countrymen. 2. The country-people lost their cattle and horses during the war. 3. An army of forty thousand men attacked the town. 4. Several merchants have failed; yet they are men of honor. 5. Have you [any] holidays at (zu) Whitsuntide? 6. No, but we have a week at Easter, and a fortnight at Christmas. 7. These (Das) were the last words of my dear old friend. 8. She has put out the lights. 9. The banks are closed on (des) Sunday. 10. Many benches stand around the fountain, where one sees a crowd [of] work-people. 11. The Alps are the highest mountain-range in all Europe. 12. The brothers Grimm were professors in the University of (zu) Berlin. 13. The largest lake in Switzerland is much smaller than many lakes in America. 14. The heathen was so called because in (the) old times he dwelt on the heath. 15. The volumes of the great poet were adorned with blue ribbons. 16. What would this world be if the fools were all dead? 17. The Gladstones and the Brights are the glory of the English State. 18. The poems of the unhappy Heinrich Heine are now the joy of the young and of the old. 19. You will find these words in Wilhelm von Schlegel's Works, on the tenth page of the third volume. 20. The Claras, the Lauras, and the Leonores of the present are the same as (wie) the Adelheids and the Brunhilds of the past. 21. The Goethes and the Schillers of German poetry belong to the past. 22. The works of Professor Steinthal are known in all Europe. 23. The reigns of King Charles I. and of his son Charles II. were the most unfortunate of (the) English history. 24. Dr. Brown and his daughter, Mrs. Professor Smith, were at (bei) the marriage of Mr. John Rich with Miss Anna, youngest daughter of General Wilson.

LESSON XLVIII.

Use of the Cases.

REMARK.— With a view to practical rather than scientific purposes, the Cases will be treated chiefly with reference to their correspondences— or the contrary — in English.

THE NOMINATIVE.

429. The nominative, having nearly the same uses in German as in English, calls for but little remark.

1. The nominative stands as the subject of a sentence. But the subject nominative is omitted:—

(*a*) Usually with the imperative proper (§ 176); but not when the third plural pronoun is used in address (§ 188) — except sometimes to avoid repetition; as, leben Sie wohl und grüßen die Ihrigen.

(*b*) With some impersonals, and some *expletive* forms, unless the subject (es) precedes; as, mich hungert; mir wird geraten, etc. (See § 453.) And often colloquially; as, kam ein Knabe, for es kam ein Knabe. (§ 346, note).

(*c*) Also, more rarely, a personal pronoun; as, hab's nicht getan, haſt's nicht getroffen — when the sense is clear.

2. With the verbs ſein, *to be;* werden, *to become;* bleiben, *to continue;* heißen, *to be called;* ſcheinen, *to seem*, *to appear*, and a few others of the same kind; and with the passive of some verbs which take in the active a second accusative as *factitive* (or *complementary*) object — such as nennen, *to name;* taufen, *to baptize*, etc., the predicate noun will be a nominative. As: Wie heißt dieſer Platz? Es iſt der Karlsplatz. Er iſt ein unwiſſender Menſch geblieben. Er iſt mein Freund geworden. Das Kind wurde Johann getauft.

NOTE.— Werden often takes zu, as, § 443, *d*: der Tropfen wird zu Gift, *becomes poison.*

3. The nominative — independent or vocative — is also the case of direct address or exclamation: Du Heilige, rufe dein Kind zurück, *Thou*, *holy one*, etc.; Schändlicher, *wretch!*

4. (*a*) A word in apposition with a nominative — subject, predicate, or vocative — will also of course be nominative. As: Ich, ein junger Schüler, kann ihn, den gelehrten Mann, nicht unterrichten; Sie guter werden mich doch nicht verlaſſen, *you, good man* (as you are) *will not*, etc.

(*b*) With als, wie, *as*, a nominative, in seeming apposition, will appear as subject of an implied verb: Dieſer Knabe ſchreibt wie ein Mann.

NOTE.— With a reflexive verb the accusative may also stand: as, er fühlt ſich einen (or ein) Mann—the former, perhaps, more usually.

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive with Nouns.

430. The genitive depends on nouns in various relations:—

(*a*) Regularly the genitive follows the governing noun. But it has been seen (§ 352, 3) that a personal (subjective or possessive) genitive often precedes; and that in poetry and elevated style, this use is widely extended—the genitive then excluding the article (§ 418, 1). This is sometimes called the "Saxon Genitive," or Possessive: Der Sohn des Gärtners, or Des Gärtners Sohn; die Blätter des Baumes; der Schöpfer der Welt; der Schein der Tugend; das Glück der Liebe; ein Mann hohen Alters; die holde Gabe der Dichtung, etc. And in poetry: Der Dichtung holde Gabe; des Rechtes Probe; der Bäume dicht Geſträuch; meiner Leiden brennendes Gefühl; Frankreichs ferner Ocean, etc.

Note.—The effect of this position is to dignify, as if by personification. The same is often done in English; as: *The lightning's flash; the cannon's roar; England's Queen*, etc.; but with less freedom than in German.

(*b*) But ambiguity in the relation of the genitive must be avoided; and, when necessary for this purpose, the objective relation will be expressed by a preposition. Thus distinguish: Die Liebe zu Gott from die Liebe Gottes; der Haß gegen den Feind from der Haß des Feindes (or des Feindes Haß), etc. (as in English, *the choice of a friend* from *a friend's choice*, etc.).

(*c*) Especially when the corresponding verb is construed with a preposition, the objective relation after a noun will take the same preposition; as: Der Gedanke an Gott (denken an), *the thought of God;* die Furcht vor dem Tode (ſich fürchten vor), *the fear of death*, etc.

Note.—But on the other hand, in some phrases, especially of persons, the English *to* will represent the German genitive; as: Ein Feind ſeines Vaterlandes, *an enemy to his country*, etc.

(*d*) The genitive of a personal pronoun is rarely used in relation with a noun; but, instead, the possessive adjective; or, objectively, often a preposition; as: Seine Liebe zu mir (not meiner), *his love of me;* er war ihr Wächter einſt (*her keeper*); dein Anblick, *the sight of you.*

(*c*) The English idiomatic *this heart of mine* is simply, mein Herz; *a friend of mine*, ein Freund von mir, or einer meiner Freunde (*one of my friends*).

The Partitive Genitive.

431. The genitive names the whole of which a part is taken; as, er ſchenkte des Weines, (*some*) *of the wine.* But this relation is also largely expressed otherwise:

(*a*) With numerals, pronouns, or a superlative, the same relation is often expressed by the preposition von, sometimes unter. Examples: Welcher meiner Freunde, or welcher von meinen Freunden, *which of my friends;* die ſchönſte aller Frauen, or die ſchönſte von allen Frauen, *the fairest of all women;* keiner ſeiner Gäſte, or keiner von ſeinen Gäſten, *no one of his guests;* unter allen meinen Dienern keiner, etc.

(*b*) As § 430 (*d*), the genitive of personal pronouns will not occur, but the preposition instead; as: Welcher von uns (not unſer), *which of us;* keiner von ihnen (not ihrer), etc. The phrase unſer einer, *one of us* (of our sort), is an exception. Such phrases as es ſind unſer vier, *there are four of us*, etc., are really not partitive.

(*c*) After nouns of measure, weight, number or quantity a simple noun is construed without case-declension (§ 312); as: Sechs Flaſchen Wein, *six bottles of wine;* zwei Dutzend Eier, *two dozen* (*of*) *eggs;* ein Stück Brot, *a piece of bread;* ein Tropfen Waſſer, *a drop of water;* ein Regiment Soldaten, *a regiment of soldiers*. But if the noun is accompanied by an adjective, the genitive or von, may be used. For instance: Eine Menge reifer Äpfel, *a great number of ripe apples*. Ein Glas dieſes Weins, or ein Glas von dieſem Wein, *a glass of this wine;* but also, eine Menge reife Äpfel, etc. — now most usually.

NOTE. — But the older genitive still occurs in poetry, and in some phrases; as: Den beſten Becher Weins; nicht viel Federleſens machen, *to make not much* (*of*) *ceremony*, etc.

(*d*) By like apposition, the proper name of a country or town, or of a month, preceded by the common name, is not declined; as: Das Königreich Sachſen, *the kingdom of Saxony;* die Stadt London, *the city of London;* im Monat Mai, *in the month of May*. The same use extends to the name of the month in dates: Der ſechſte Mai (§ 309).

PREPOSITION INSTEAD OF GENITIVE.

432. In some cases, *of*, after a noun, is regularly translated by von instead of the genitive. Such are: —

(*a*) In terms of rank or title; as: der König von England. (See § 111.)

(*b*) Before names of materials; as: Eine Brücke von Eiſen (also eine eiſerne Brücke).

(*c*) Before cardinal numerals, and other indeclinables; as: Ein Mann von ſechzig Jahren; der Vater von drei Kindern (but also, dieſer drei Kinder).

(*d*) And, generally, whenever the case is not made clear by inflection; as: Die Lage von Paris (but also, der Stadt Paris); die Straßen von London, or Londons (§ 110, *c*). See also § 430.

(*e*) Sometimes the preposition will be used to avoid a succession of genitives; as, Der älteſte von den Söhnen des Königs, or von des Königs Söhnen.

NOTE. — Generally, the use of the genitive in such relations is less common than formerly, and there is a growing tendency to use the analytic construction with preposition. This is in conformity with the general tendency in modern languages.

It has already been seen that the genitive relation is often expressed by a compound noun; as, Die Buchdruckerkunſt, *the art-of-the-printing-of-books*, etc. (§ 389.)

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. I want two pounds of raisins, three pounds of sugar, five pounds of coffee, and four pounds of tea. 2. Which of my friends will in the hour of need stand by me? 3. The city of Rome is built on seven hills. 4. The youngest of my sisters is still at school. 5. Bring me a glass of beer. 6. A marble (*adj.*) statue of the king stands in the market-place. 7. The fear of punishment is stronger than the hope of reward. 8. He died at the age of seventy years. 9. The kingdom of Saxony is the smallest kingdom in Germany. 10. The want of (an) water forced the enemy to give up the siege. 11. William the First, king of Prussia, was born on the twenty-second of March, 1797. 12. How many sacks of potatoes has the farmer bought? 13. He is the best and oldest of all my friends. 14. Want of money compelled us to give up our vacation-ramble in Switzerland. 15. Where have you bought these multitude of books? You will never be able to read them. 16. Send me three dozen eggs; do not forget it, three dozen new-laid (friſch) eggs. 17. We shall have holidays in the month of August. 18. The thought of his poor children drove the unhappy father to dare the utmost. 19. The Emperor of Germany is nephew *to* the King of England. 20. This noble hero went into the war as [a] young captain, and returned as a celebrated general. 21. He is a man of high rank and of great dignity of (the) behaviour. 22. The Colossus of Rhodes was one of the greatest wonders of (the) antiquity. 23. The false appearance of virtue is called hypocrisy. 24. Unhappy man! he was a good frind of mine — his loss is grievous to-me!

LESSON XLIX.

The Genitive. — Continued.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

433. With the following adjectives and their opposites, the genitive is used as limiting or defining object, corresponding generally to English *of*.

bedürftig,	*in want.*	mächtig,	*master* (*of*).
begierig,	*greedy.*	† müde,	*tired.*
bewußt,	*conscious.*	† ſatt,	*full, tired.*
eingedenk,	*mindful.*	ſchuldig,	*guilty.*
fähig,	*capable.*	ſicher,	*sure.*
froh,	*glad.*	überdrüſſig,	*weary.*
gewiß,	*certain.*	verdächtig,	*suspected.*
kundig,	*acquainted* (*with*).	† voll (voller),	*full.*
leer,	*empty.*	† wert,	*worth.*
† los,	*rid of.*	† würdig,	*worthy.*

and a few others, of like meaning. Examples (§ 353): des Lebens müde; jenes Unternehmens fähig; ſeiner Sache gewiß; des Weges unkundig; voll goldener Gefäße; zwanzig Finger voller Ringe (see note).

NOTE. — But some of these adjectives (marked †) may take any accusative (§ 441, *c*); and others may be construed, preferably, with a preposition; as, begierig nach; froh über; voll von, etc. The indeclinable voller stands only just before a dependent noun.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

434. As a like limiting or defining object, the genitive is used:

(*a*) As single object, with a few verbs: —

bedürfen,	*to need.*	harren,	*to wait* (*for*).
denken, gedenken,	*to remember.*	lachen,	*to laugh* (*at*).
entraten,	*to dispense* (*with*).	ſchonen,	*to spare.*
ermangeln,	*to be without.*	ſpotten,	*to mock* (*at*).

and a few others. Examples: Gedenke meiner; ſpotte nicht der Unglücklichen; der Arme bedarf der notwendigſten Lebensmittel; wir haben deiner lange geharrt, etc. Sometimes, as a so-called *false* reflexive: er ſchont ſeiner (§251).

NOTE. — But some of these may be construed with an accusative; as, jemanden ſchonen: or with a preposition; as, über jemanden lachen; an etwas denken, etc. With some, the genitive is almost wholly poetical; and generally its use, both with verbs and adjectives, is much less common than formerly, the form with preposition being usually preferred.

2. Some other verbs, formerly used with the genitive, but now more usually with the accusative or a preposition, are: achten, begehren, brauchen, gebrauchen, genießen, lohnen, pflegen, verfehlen, vergeſſen, wahrnehmen, warten.

(*b*) As secondary, or remote, object (of the *thing*) with some verbs having direct object (of the *person*) in the accusative. Such are: verbs usually followed in English by *of;* as, to *accuse*, *acquit*, etc.; to *warn*, *convict*, etc.; *privative* verbs, to *rob*, *deprive*, etc.; and verbs derived from adjectives governing a genitive (§ 433) — yet also, in many cases, with alternative use of a preposition. As:

anklagen, } *to accuse.*
beſchuldigen, }
erinnern, *to remind.*
freiſprechen, *to acquit.*
mahnen, *to warn.*
überführen, *to convict.*

berauben, *to rob, deprive.*
entheben, *to relieve.*
entledigen, *to rid.*
entlaſſen, *to dismiss.*
verſichern, *to assure.*
würdigen, *to deem worthy.*

and a few others of like meaning. Examples: Man beſchuldigt ihn eines ſchweren Verbrechens; der Richter ſprach ihn aller Schuld frei; man hat mich meines Vermögens beraubt; er hat mich ſeiner Freundſchaft gewürdigt, etc.

Or, as single object with the passive of such verbs: Er iſt eines ſchweren Verbrechens beſchuldigt worden; der Mann iſt des Dienſtes entlaſſen worden.

(*c*) As a like secondary object with some reflexive verbs, the direct object being the reflexive pronoun:

ſich annehmen, *to take interest* (*in*).
ſich bedienen, *to make use.*
ſich befleiß(ig)en, *to apply one's self.*
ſich bemächtigen, *to take possession.*
ſich beſinnen, *to recollect.*
ſich entſinnen, *to recollect.*
ſich erinnern, *to remember.*

ſich enthalten, *to abstain from.*
ſich entſchlagen, *to get rid.*
ſich erbarmen, *to have mercy.*
ſich ergötzen, *to delight in.*
ſich freuen, *to rejoice in, enjoy.*
ſich rühmen, *to boast.*
ſich ſchämen, *to be ashamed.*

and a few others. Examples: Er rühmte ſich ſeiner hohen Geburt; er ſchämt ſich ſeines rohen Betragens; Herr! erbarme dich unſer; ich kann mich deſſen nicht beſinnen, *I cannot remember* [*me of*] *that*, etc.

(*d*) Likewise with a few impersonals, the personal pronoun standing as direct object. As: Mich jammert des Volkes, *I am sorry for the people;* mich reuet meines Leichtſinns, *I repent of my folly;* es verlohnt ſich nicht der Mühe, *it does not pay for the trouble*, etc.

Adverbial Genitive.

435. The genitive is used adverbially: —

(*a*) In various adverbial relations, qualifying the verb; as: *Place:* rechter Hand, linker Hand, *on the right, — left, Time* (indefinite): des Morgens, des Abends, des Sonntags, eines Tages, etc.; but *time definite*, by the accusative or with a preposition (§309, *b*); *Manner:* regularly with descriptive adjective: ſchnellen Schrittes, *swiftly;* ſtehenden Fußes, *immediately;* meines Wiſſens, *of my knowledge;* unverrichteter Sache, *unsuccessfully;* frohen Mutes, *gladly*, etc.; and especially in poetry: düſteren Blickes, mächtigen Rufes, etc. (§ 399).

Note. — By analogy are formed the irregular nachts, des Nachts, *by night* (*nights*) — like abends, etc., though Nacht is feminine.

(*b*) Analogous to this is the use of the genitive in some phrases with the neuter verbs ſein, leben, ſterben, etc. As, predicatively: wir ſind alle des Todes, *we are all dead men;* tue was deines Amtes iſt, *do what belongs to your office;* ich bin der Meinung, *I am of the opinion;* or, adverbially: eines glücklichen Todes ſterben, *to die a happy death*, etc.

(*c*) Seemingly analogous, but really depending on the interjection, is the use (§ 336,3) of the genitive in exclamation; as, oh des Toren, *oh the fool!*

For the genitive with prepositions, see § 280. For special form of feminine genitive in –n, see § 106, note.

REMARK. — The lists given in this lesson, and hereafter, do not aim to be complete, but only illustrative, and must be supplemented by the dictionary.

The increasing use of prepositions, in lieu of the objective genitive, should be especially noted.

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. In the morning we go to school; in the evening we stay at home. 2. Old people *like to* sleep (gern) in the afternoon. 3. The prince assured us of his favor. 4. Do you remember your absent friends? I always remember them. 5. He is weary of life. 6. The man has been accused of theft. 7. I am by no means master of the German language. 8. I am not of your opinion. 9. We never considered him capable of such a deed. 10. The messenger was not acquainted with the way. 11. Have mercy on the poor. 12. I am not ashamed of his friendship. 13. They laughed at him for (wegen) his awkwardness. 14. Are you assured of his innocence? 15. I am not conscious of any guilt. 16. The countess will interest herself for the poor child. 17. Do you make use of (the) steel-pens? 18. The robbers deprived me of all [the] money (which) I had. 19. The king has relieved him of his office. 20. It is not worth while to remember every little misfortune. 21. We read in the fable that a lion once *deemed* a hare *worthy* of his friendship. 22. Of my knowledge, the prisoner has never been accused of a crime. 23. O the happy [man], that breathes the same (*one*) air with thee! 24. I think of thee (dein) when the nightingales' song resounds through the grove; when think'st thou of me?

LESSON L.

Use of the Cases. — (Continued).

THE DATIVE.

436. The dative is the case of the *indirect object*, which may be expressed in English, generally, by the preposition *to* or *for*.

Note — In English, by loss of case-inflection the indirect object is nowhere distinguished *by form*. When next to the verb it is usually without preposition; when separated from the verb, it requires the preposition; as: *I will write you a letter*: or, *a letter to you*, etc. In German, on the other hand, with its specific case-form, the indirect object is regularly the simple dative; and the preposition expresses a distinct relation, such as *motion*, etc. Thus in both constructions the German is more specific and less liable to ambiguity than the English. (See Remark, § 440.)

The Dative with Verbs.

437. The dative is used as indirect (usually personal) object with many verbs:

1. As second object with many transitives, that is, verbs which take a direct object in the accusative. As:

bieten, *to offer.*
bringen, *to bring.*
geben, *to give.*
gönnen, *to grant.*
laſſen, *to leave.*
leihen, *to lend.*

leiſten, *to afford.*
liefern, *to deliver.*
reichen, *to reach.*
ſagen, *to say, tell.*
widmen, *to devote.*
zeigen, *to show.*

and many others. For the position of the indirect object, see § 354.

Examples: Ich gebe Ihnen mein Wort; der Freund bietet dem Freunde die Hand; der König reichte ihm die Rechte; dieſe Freunde gönne ich dir; er hat mir das geſagt; der Bote brachte mir das Geld, etc.

(*b*) Observe that when such verbs are made passive the accusative object becomes subject (§ 275); the dative object remains; as: Das Geld iſt mir geboten worden; das iſt mir ſchon geſagt worden, etc. The English alternative forms — *I have been offered the money; I have been told that*, etc., are not possible in German.

Note.— These forms are also due to confusion of objects from loss of case inflection. Here again we may see — as so often in English — how the loss of *form* leads to the extension of *idiom*.

2. The dative is used as single object with many intransitives, such as: —

antworten, *to answer.*
danken, *to thank.*
dienen, *to serve.*
drohen, *to threaten.*
entſagen, *to renounce.*
fehlen, *to be wanting, ail.*
folgen, *to follow.*

helfen, *to help.*
raten, *to advise.*
rufen, *to call to.*
ſchaden, *to injure.*
ſchmeicheln, *to flatter.*
trauen, *to trust.*
trotzen, *to defy*,

and many others.

(*a*) Observe that in many instances this indirect object will appear in English as direct object (usually, also, from loss of the case-form, as § 436, note.) Such verbs require special attention. Examples: Er antwortete mir, *he answered* (*replied to*) *me;* ich danke Ihnen, *I thank* (*am thankful to*) *you;* was fehlt dir? *what ails you?* wir wollen unſerm Feldherrn folgen.

(*b*) A few verbs which in English, for the same reason, can take but one object — of the person or of the thing — may in German take, besides the dative of the person, an accusative — usually a neuter pronoun — of the thing. Thus: *I believe it*, or *I believe you;* in German also: ich glaube es Ihnen, etc. — as under group 1, above.

(*c*) As a dative object cannot become a passive subject (§ 275), intransitives governing a dative can be made passive only in the impersonal form; not as in English, *I was answered*, etc.; but: mir wurde geantwortet; mir wird geholfen, etc. — the dative object remaining.

NOTE. — The force of the English passive is however, often given by position only, as § 276: Ihm folgte der Spion, *he was followed by the spy.*

3. In both uses (1 and 2) a great number of compound verbs govern the dative, the meaning of the simple verb being so modified as to require the dative. This is especially the case with verbs compounded with ab, an, bei, entgegen, nach, vor, zu, and the inseparable prefixes, be–, ent–, er–, ge–, and wider. Examples: Sie liefen dem Diebe nach, *they ran after the thief;* wir hörten dem Redner zu, *we listened to the orator;* er ſtand mir mit ſeinem Rate bei, *he assisted me with his counsel;* das gefällt mir nicht, *I do not like that;* dieſer Fehler iſt der Aufmerkſamkeit unſeres Lehrers entgangen, *this mistake has escaped the attention of our teacher;* es widerfährt manchem mehr Unglück als er verdient, *more misfortunes happen to many a man than he deserves.* (See § 297, note).

4. A dative is also required by many verbal phrases which have the force of simple verbs, and by a number of verbs, which form *incomplete compounds* with adjectives and nouns (§ 379). As: —

leid tun, *to cause sorrow.*
wehe tun, *to give pain.*
wohl tun, *to benefit.*
wohl wollen, *to wish well.*
gleich kommen, *to equal.*
zu gut kommen, *to benefit.*
zu Hülfe kommen, *to come to one's aid.*
zu Teil werden, *to fall to one's share.*
das Wort reden, *to defend.*
Rede ſtehen, *to answer.*
Trotz bieten, *to bid defiance.*
Hohn ſprechen, *to mock at*, etc.

As: es tut mir ſehr leid, *I am very sorry;* der gute Freund kam mir zu Hülfe; mir wird ein Glück zu teil, wie ich es nimmer gehofft, etc.

5. (*a*) Some impersonal verbs (§ 291), likewise require the dative of the person; as: es ahnt mir, *I forbode;* es graut mir, *I am afraid;* es bangt mir, *I feel anxious;* es ekelt mir, *I feel disgusted;* es ſchwindelt mir, *I feel giddy;* es träumt mir, *I dream;* es dünkt mir (*or* mich), *methinks*, etc.

(*b*) In some phrases the verbs ſein, werden, gehen and ergehen, are used impersonally with the dative. As: Es geht mir wohl, *it fares well with me, I am getting on well;* mir wird ſchlimm, *I begin to feel sick;* nun iſt mir wieder wohl, *now I feel well again;* mir iſt kalt, *I am cold;* wenn dem ſo iſt, *if that is so*, etc. — the case depending on the combined predicate idea.

6. With a few reflexive verbs, the dative stands as reflexive (personal) object. These are sometimes called *false reflexives.* As: —

ſich anmaßen, *to assume.*
ſich einbilden, *to imagine.*
ſich getrauen, *to venture.*
ſich vornehmen, *to purpose,*

and some others. (See § 251.) As: ich maße mir nichts an, was nicht mein iſt; ich getraue mir nicht, das zu ſagen; er bildet ſich ein, er ſei ein großer Mann, *he imagines he is a great man*, etc.

NOTE. — The address of a letter is often put in the dative, as if after an implied verb; as. (Dem) Herrn ——; (Der) Frau ——; (Dem) Fräulein——, etc. (but also an with accusative).

For the dative in sense of *from*, see § 440.

EXERCISE L.

1. The young count flattered the old king. 2. He has served faithfully his king and country. 3. This little boy resembles his mother. 4. How do you like your new house (*how pleases you*)? 5. The poor old man thanked us. 6. The king wishes him well. 7. The robber defied me. 8. No one will help me. 9. Order me a cup of coffee. 10. It seems to me that this matter will not redound to your praise. 11. This castle belongs to the king of Saxony. 12. Tell me how this hat becomes me. 13. You ought to answer your teacher. 14. What has happened to you? 15. The captain threatened the soldiers, because they did not obey him. 16. I told him the truth, but I am sorry to say I was not believed. 17. I will read to you a few pages from this book; will you listen to me? 18. It gave me pain to refuse your request 19. How are you getting on? I am getting on very well. 20. The thief has run away from the officer; run after him. 21. He shall not escape us; believe me (that). 22. I have been told that that young man has paid a large sum of money. 23. If that (*dat.*) is so, why does he not relieve his poor parents? 24. Follow my advice, and yield to his request.

LESSON LI.

The Dative. — Continued.

Dative with Adjectives.

438. The dative is used with many adjectives, or participles used as adjectives, such as are usually followed in English by *to* or *for*.

(*a*) With adjectives that signify nearness, likeness, fitness, inclination, advantage, or their contraries; as: —

ähnlich, *similar.*
angenehm, *agreeable.*
eigen, *own, peculiar.*
fremd, *strange.*
gemein, *common.*
gleich, *like.*
gnädig, *gracious.*
heilſam, *salutary.*
hold, *favorable.*
läſtig, *troublesome.*
lieb, *dear.*
nahe, *near.*
ſchuldig, *owing.*
treu, *faithful.*
widrig, *adverse.*
willkommen, *welcome,*

and many others.

(*b*) Many of these are participles used as adjectives, or adjectives derived from verbs which govern the dative; as: —

bekannt, *known.*
geneigt, *inclined.*
gewogen, *favorable.*
gewachſen, *equal to.*
verhaßt, *hateful.*
überlegen, *superior.*
behülflich, *helpful.*
dankbar, *thankful.*
dienlich, *serviceable.*
gehorſam, *obedient.*
nützlich, *useful.*
ſchädlich, *hurtful,*

and many others.

Examples: Der Sohn iſt dem Vater ähnlich; dieſe Geſchichte iſt allen bekannt; dieſe Lebensart iſt ihm eigen; ich bin dieſer Arbeit noch nicht gewachſen; ſei mir gnädig; das helle Licht iſt den Augen ſchädlich; die Heuchelei iſt mir verhaßt; ſei mir willkommen, etc.

Note. — As in case of the genitive (§ 433-4), so instead of the dative a preposition with its case will sometimes occur, as an alternative construction, with an adjective or a verb; as: feindlich or freundlich gegen jemanden; auf einen zürnen; nimm dieſes Tuch, ich hab's für dich [dir] geſtickt, etc.

(*c*) A few such adjectives may take in German, besides the dative of the person, a second object of the thing. Compare § 437, 2, *b*; as: ich bin mir keiner Schuld (gen.) bewußt, *I am conscious of no fault;* das (acc.) bin ich ihm nicht ſchuldig, *I do not owe him that*, etc.

Dative of Interest.

439. A more remote relation, yet allied to the foregoing, is expressed by the dative of the person concerned in, or affected by, an action or its result. This is known as the *dative of interest*, or, in some cases, *the ethical dative.*

(*a*) Of the person for or against whom something is done; as: tu' es mir doch, *do it for me, please;* ſchreiben Sie mir dieſe Aufgabe ab, *copy me this exercise;* ſie iſt mir ein Plagegeiſt, *she is to me a tormenting spirit;* wo ich mir eine Freude gepflanzt, *wherever I have planted me a joy*, etc.

(*b*) Often this dative will take the place of the English possessive; as: ſie fiel dem Bruder um den Hals, *she fell on her brother's neck;* das Herz zitterte mir im Leibe, *my heart trembled within me;* ſie ſchnitten dem Feinde den Rückzug ab, *they cut off the enemy's retreat;* ich waſche mir die Hände, *I wash my hands*, etc.; and in phrases like: ihm zu Ehren, *in his honor;* mir zu Liebe, *for my sake*, etc.

Note. — Yet frequently the possessive will also stand; as, ſtreiche mir meine Pfoten, *smear (me) my paws* — sometimes with, yet also without, special emphasis.

(*c*) In many cases the relation can hardly be expressed in English, but only indicates the interest taken by the person speaking or spoken to; as: was machen Sie mir da, *what are you doing there* (*I should like to know;* bleiben Sie mir geſund, *keep well* (*I hope you may*); Ihr verführt keinen mehr, *you will seduce no one else* (*against my interests*), etc. — Sometimes only a reference to one's opinion or feeling: Ein Baſtard bin ich dir, (*you say*).

It is this use that is often called, more distinctively, *the ethical dative.*

(*d*) Here may be mentioned the dative in exclamations, though these expressions are properly elliptical and the dative a true objective; as: Heil dem Sieger, *hail to the victor;* wehe dem Beſiegten, *woe to the conquered;* Ruhe ſeiner Aſche, *peace to his ashes* (as if Ruhe ſei), etc.

The Dative Privative.

440. The dative (usually *to, for*) sometimes corresponds to the English *from* (*of*), both with verbs and adjectives.

This is sometimes called the *dative privative*, but is still really an indirect object, usually of *disadvantage*, etc. (Compare English *differ from*, or *with*; averse *from* or *to*; *to hide to* or *from* etc.); as: er nahm mir mein ganzes Vermögen, *took from me*, etc.; ſie entreißt mir den Geliebten, den Bräutigam raubt ſie mir; der Dieb iſt ſeinen Verfolgern entflohen; dem Glauben abtrünnig, *recreant from* (*to*) *the faith*, etc.

NOTE. — In some cases, by a change in a relation of objects, an alternative form may be used with the genitive. Thus, either: der Dieb raubte ihm ſein Geld, or beraubte ihn ſeines Geldes; and in other cases, a preposition (von, *from*) will be preferred: er nahm es von mir; abtrünnig von der Religion, etc.

For the dative with preposition, see §§ 164, 180, 280; special forms, § 106.

For the dative with zu, as the factitive object, see § 443, *d*.

For the position of dative objects, see § 353, § 354.

REMARK. — Attention has already been called to the loss of the earlier case-inflection in English, whereby the dative is no longer distinguished *in form* from the accusative. Many instances now recognized in English grammar as direct object (accusative) were originally dative. The student must therefore be cautioned against this *defect of form* in English, to which it is chiefly due that the dative seems to be so much more largely used in German.

It is also to be remarked that the dative in German is more freely used with pronouns than with nouns; an alternative form, with preposition, being more frequently used with the latter. This also is due to the more explicit and convenient distinction of the pronoun inflections.

EXERCISE LI.

1. The prince is very favorable to us. 2. He owes his tailor five hundred marks. 3. Be welcome to us. 3. Are you equal to the task? 5. I do not trust him, for he has not told me the truth. 6. Do not trust those who flatter you. 7. Go out of *my* way. 8. The robbers took from me all (was) I had. 9. The enemy was superior to us, therefore we retired behind (*acc.*) the walls of the city. 10. This history was known to us all. 11. Lying is odious to me. 12. Everything seemed to me strange after *such a* long absence. 13. It will be conducive to your health to *take a walk* every day. 14. The prince thanked me in the most gracious manner. 15. The company of the stranger was most agreeable to the ladies. 16. The conquered fell at (zu) the victor's feet and begged for mercy. 17. The entire army *has* fallen into the hands of (*dat.*) the enemy. 18. This unworthy son has broken his poor father's heart. 19. Too much eating (*infin.*) and drinking is injurious to the health. 20. Hail to the saviour of his country, the friend of the oppressed! 21. Don't climb (*for my sake*, *dat. pron.*) too high, my son; you might (können) fall and break *your* arm. 22. To the lazy, everything is (werden) difficult. 23. Explain me this exercise, if you please (*if it pleases you*). 24. To thee the highest jewel is my memory (*to thee is*, etc.).

LESSON LII.

Use of the Cases.—Continued.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

DIRECT OBJECT.

441. The accusative is the case of the direct object, that is, the object reached or directly affected by an action.

(*a*) All transitive verbs have their direct object in the accusative. Examples are unnecessary.

NOTE.—It has already been seen that some verbs transitive in English are intransitive in German, that is, take the object in genitive or dative, or with preposition (see §§ 434, 437). Such cases must be carefully noted.

(*b*) The accusative is also the direct (usually personal) object of most reflexive and impersonal verbs (see §§ 251, 291). For exceptions, § 437, 5, 6.

(*c*) As has been seen already, a few adjectives, some usually construed with the genitive, sometimes take an accusative, usually with ſein or werden, as if object of the combined idea. Such are: bewußt, gewahr, los, müde, ſatt, wert, würdig, zufrieden, and a few others; as: ich werde ihn nicht los, *I cannot get rid of him;* ich bin es zufrieden, *I am content with it*—most usually a neuter pronoun. With voll (voller) a simple noun may stand as § 431, *c;* as: voll (voller) Mut; but not with an article or adjective. (See § 433.)

DOUBLE OBJECTS.

442. A few verbs take two accusatives—of the person and of the thing.

These are: lehren, *to teach;* and sometimes koſten, *to cost;* and, with neuter pronoun only, fragen, *to ask;* bitten, *to beg;* überreden, *to persuade;* as: er lehrte meinen Sohn die Grammatik; das hat mich (or mir) viel Geld gekoſtet; das ſollten Sie mich nicht fragen; das können Sie mich nicht überreden, etc.

NOTE.—But more usually, fragen nach; bitten um; überreden von: er fragte mich danach; and always: er fragte nach meinem Sohn; er bat mich um Geld, etc. (with *noun* objects).

PREDICATE OR FACTITIVE OBJECT.

443. A second accusative often appears as the result, or *effect*, of the action, hence called *factitive* (sometimes *complementary*, as *completing* the idea of the verb).

(*a*) Verbs of *naming* or *calling* take the *name* as a second accusative. Such are heißen, nennen; taufen, *to baptise;* ſchelten, ſchimpfen, *to scold* (*call* *bad names*). See § 429, 2; as: wir nennen dieſen Knaben den faulen Hans; er ſchalt mich Lügner, *he called me a liar*, etc.

(*b*) In many cases the second accusative will be an adjective, expressing the condition or quality resulting from the action. Es macht mir das Herz ſchwer, *it makes my heart heavy;* er goß das Glas voll, *he poured the glass full;* der Jäger ſchoß den Haſen tot, *the hunter shot the hare dead.*

(*c*) With verbs which express the manner of regarding an object, such as halten, ausgeben, annehmen, betrachten, anſehen, erklären, and the like, für, sometimes als, is used with the adjective. Examples: Er hat die Sache für richtig erklärt, *he has declared the matter correct;* man hält ihn für einen Betrüger (*holds him for*); Sie können die Sache als abgemacht betrachten, *you may consider the matter as settled.* (See § 429, 4, *b*.)

(*d*) But, contrary to the English usage, verbs of electing, appointing, creating, etc., take the second object in the dative with zu and, in the singular, the contracted article (§ 191, note). As: wählen, erwählen, *to elect;* ernennen, *to name, appoint;* machen, *to make;* beſtimmen, beſtellen, *to appoint;* ſalben, *to anoint;* ſchlagen, *to dub* (*a knight*), etc.; as: Man hat Herrn T. zum Profeſſor erwählt; er nahm ſie zur Frau; but pl., zu Profeſſoren, zu Frauen, etc.

NOTE. — In all these cases it is only the direct or primary, usually personal, object that can be subject of the passive (§ 275); as: ich wurde darnach gefragt, darum gebeten; das Kind wurde Johann getauft; das Glas wurde voll gegoſſen; Herr A. iſt zum Stadtrat erwählt worden. In case of double accusative (§ 442) the passive is better avoided.

COGNATE OBJECT.

444. Some verbs, properly intransitives, may take the accusative of the noun, usually with a qualifying adjunct, of the same or kindred meaning with the verb. This is called the *cognate object;* as: Ich träumte einen ſchönen Traum, *I dreamed a beautiful dream;* er ſtarb einen heldenmütigen Tod; er ſchläft den Todesſchlaf.

NOTE. — This accusative is not properly *objective*, but adverbial; as: *he sleeps a deep sleep = he sleeps deeply; he died a peaceful death = he died peacefully*, etc. — the idea of the noun being really in the verb. But the usage is much extended, especially in poetry.

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.

445. Nearly allied with the accusative naming the (direct) object reached, is the accusative expressing *measure* or *extent: how far, how long, how much*, etc.

(*a*) This occurs with verbs of *motion* or *duration* or *measure;* such as: wiegen, *to weigh;* gelten, *to be worth;* koſten, *to cost*, etc., and with adjectives like alt, *old;* breit, *broad;* groß, *tall;* hoch, *high;* lang, *long;* tief, *deep;* weit, *far*, etc.; as: er iſt zehn Meilen gelaufen; der Krieg hat zehn Jahre gedauert; er horchte einen Augenblick; die Mauer iſt 30 Fuß hoch; der Oberſt iſt 60 Jahre alt; der Koffer wiegt 60 Pfund; ich bin ihm 10 Taler ſchuldig, *I owe him* 10 *dollars*, etc.

Note. — 1. To an accusative expressing duration of time the adverb lang is often added; as: 20 Jahre lang, *20 years long;* einen Tag lang, *a whole day*, etc.; and, in expressions of distance, sometimes the adverb weit; as: ſie zogen den Wagen 10 Meilen weit, *10 miles far*, etc.

2. Sometimes also a preposition is appended adverbially; as: den ganzen Tag durch, *the whole day through.* Or an adverb of direction, as: er fiel die Treppen hinunter, *down stairs;* er ſtieg den Berg hinauf, etc.

(*b*) The accusative is also used to express a definite time *when;* as: Kommen Sie zu mir dieſen Abend, nächſten Mittwoch, jeden Tag, etc., and in such expressions as zweimal den Tag, die Woche, *twice a day*, *week*, etc. (See for *dates*, § 309).

Note. — This must be distinguished from the genitive (§ 435) of indefinite time, or repeated occurrence. As: des Sonntags bleibe ich zu Hauſe, *on a Sunday*, or *Sundays:* des Abends, or abends, *in the evening*, etc.

Accusative Absolute.

446. The accusative is used in an absolute or independent construction — yet really adverbial: —

(*a*) Frequently with a perfect participle; as: die ganze Stadt lag in Aſche, einige Häuſer ausgenommen, *a few houses excepted;* den Blick auf die Erde geheftet, ſchritt er langſam her, (*with*) *his look fastened on the ground.*

(*b*) Less frequently without participle, especially in poetical style: Stolz ſtand er da, die Hand auf dem Schwerte, with *his hand on his sword.* Note this use of *with.*

For the accusative with prepositions, see §§ 178, 179, 280.

EXERCISE LII.

1. We were a whole month in London. 2. A sack of potatoes costs three marks. 3. My friend has been elected president of the society. 4. I take (hold) him for an impostor. 5. This news has made me happy. 6. The painter has painted the door green. 7. The bridge is a hundred feet long and thirty-three feet broad. 8. My grandmother is 74 years old. 9. I have run myself tired. 10. The judge declared him (for) innocent,

though he was one of the greatest thieves. 11. We were so hungry that we considered ourselves very lucky to get a little bread and cheese. 12. We proposed [to] ourselves to ascend the Brocken; therefore we remained three days at Ilsenburg and waited for fine weather. 13. We fancied that the matter was (ſei) settled. 14. Do not imagine that you will ever be elected [a] town-councillor. 15. He has been ill [for] three years, and has passed many a sleepless night on his bed. 16. Goethe was born the 28th August, 1749. 17. A train arrives every day at six o'clock in the morning and at four o'clock in the afternoon. 18. My brother has been appointed professor of (the) history at (zu) Berlin. 19. Date your letter thus: Boston, May 23d, 1887. 20. The king has appointed (the) Count B. ambassador at the Spanish Court. 21. [For] six months long, that old professor taught me dancing (*inf. n.*) three times a week, two hours each day. 22. This stormy life ended, the old hero sleeps the sleep of the just. 23. There she comes [with] the crucifix in *her* hand, and pride in her heart. 24. They were followed by (*them followed*) the sheriff, *with* a white staff in his hand.

Prepositions with Cases. — Summary.

447. In connection with the cases belongs properly the treatment of Prepositions. But it is impossible to bring this subject within the limits of elementary statement. The very term preposition is not easy to define; nor is it easier to draw the line between words which may be called *prepositions proper* and words which are only used as prepositions (sometimes called *spurious prepositions*) as § 280. There is perhaps no word which is always a preposition.

(*a*) Prepositions are, for the most part, properly adverbs, that is, verb modifiers, and are still used as such in both English and German; as: *look up; come in; go on; how came she by that light* (verb *come by*)? etc.; and in German: er fing an; er ſtand auf; er ſchrieb den Brief ab, etc. When combined with the verb alone they are properly adverbs, and should be so called; when limited or defined by an object also, they are properly prepositions. Thus prepositions have been expressively called *transitive adverbs*. Some words, however, which are habitually used with an object, are commonly called prepositions, as a distinct part of speech, even when used only as adverbs.

(*b*) In German, however, the use of the preposition must be considered in connection with the *case*, a distinction no longer obvious in English. The meaning of the entire phrase, preposition and object, is made up of the case-relation, with the preposition, combined with the action, motion, condition, etc., expressed by the verb. Primarily it is the verb that determines the case, and gives to the preposition its apparent difference of meaning — its true relation being really always the same. (This may be clearly seen in the use of the dative or accusative with the same prepositions, § 179; as: er ſaß auf dem Baume — kletterte auf den Baum; die Wolke hing über dem Berge — zog über den Berg, etc.) But by habit of use, the preposition is said to *govern the case*, or to be used in such or such a sense with this or that case, etc. The full explanation of these uses is made the more difficult in German — and still more difficult in English — because the form and force of the original cases have often become obscured or lost.

(*c*) The primary meaning of the prepositions is usually a relation of *place*, transferred often to *time*, and thence extended, or transferred, to a wide variety of figurative and often remote relations, in many of which the original meaning of the preposition is difficult to trace. The so-called spurious prepositions are mostly of occasional use, and generally have only, or nearly, their primary signification. But the more important prepositions—themselves few in number and monosyllabic: an, auf, aus, bei, durch, für, in, mit, nach, um, von, vor, zu — to which may be added über and unter — have acquired the largest variety of idiomatic use, and of secondary or transferred meaning.

The explanation of such uses, often difficult, sometimes perhaps impossible (and no less difficult in English than in German), cannot be attempted within elementary limits. Their mere enumeration would be impossible. For illustration only, and for reference, the more important uses of some of the prepositions are given in an Appendix. Other idioms must be carefully noted as they occur, and compared with the corresponding English forms.

LESSON LIII.

Adjectives.

See Lessons VIII.–XII. Some special uses will be here added.

USE.

448. Some adjectives are used only attributively — others only as predicates. This depends partly on the meaning — partly, however, on usage only — hence with possible exceptions:

1. As attributives only are used:

(*a*) Most pronominal adjectives. (Exception § 193.)

(*b*) The ordinal numerals, and superlatives. (§ 160.)

(*c*) Some adjectives of *place* and *time;* adjectives of *material* in −en, −ern, and some derivatives in −iſch, −lich, — such as: —

dortig, *of there.*	golden, *golden.*
hieſig, *of here.*	gläſern, *of glass.*
heutig, *of to-day.*	irdiſch, *earthly.*
geſtrig, *of yesterday.*	täglich, *daily*, etc.

Where such adjectives occur in the predicate, they will be construed attributively; as: die Poſt iſt eine tägliche; die Klaſſe iſt die erſte: — or a preposition will be substituted; as: die Uhr iſt von Gold, etc.

2. As predicates only are used: —

bereit, *ready.*	kund, *known.*
gar, *done.*	quer, *across.*
gewahr, *aware.*	quitt, *quit, free.*
habhaft, *in possession of.*	teilhaft, *participating in*,

and some others; a few compounds, as: —

abhold, *unfavorable.*	eingedenk, *mindful.*
anſichtig, *in sight of.*	handgemein, *hand to hand*, etc.,

with some words properly nouns; as: —

feind (feindlich),	not (nötig),
freund (freundlich),	nütz (nützlich),
leid,	ſchuld, (ſchuldig), etc.

Inflection.

449. Some irregularities, and some diversities of usage, occur in the declension of adjectives:

1. The principle which determines the *strong* or *weak* form of the adjective admits occasional exceptions:

(*a*) After personal pronouns, the strong form is strictly regular; but the *mixed* forms are used generally; as: ich armer; Sie guter Mann; but mir armen; ihr guten Männer; wir Deutſchen, etc.

(*b*) In the plural nominative or accusative the pronominals alle, einige, etliche, keine, manche, ſolche, welche (as interrogative adjective), mehrere, verſchiedene, viele, wenige, often admit the strong instead of the weak form as if simple adjectives. But this usage is less frequent after alle, keine, welche, though quite common after the other words.

(*c*) Properly, successive adjectives of *like kind* should have the same declension; as: das Zeugnis dieſes meines Sohnes; guter, ſtarker, alter Wein, etc. But sometimes a second adjective will be weak if it stands in a *nearer relation* to the noun; as: eine Flaſche von gutem roten Wein (=Rotwein); nach langem vergeblichen Suchen, etc.; but the use is not to be imitated.

(*d*) A few words used idiomatically without article in certain phrases are treated as pronominals and followed by the weak adjective. Such are: beſagt, *aforesaid;* folgend, *following;* gedacht, *mentioned;* obig, *above.* As: beſagter alte Mann, *the said old man;* folgendes ſchöne Werk, *the following beautiful work*, etc.

NOTE. — Observe that the strong form stands properly after all indeclinables; also after manch, ſolch, welch, when undeclined; and after a preceding genitive, etc.

2. In addition to the usual cases mentioned in Lesson X., the ending of the adjective is omitted:

(*a*) In the first of two adjectives which together mark one definition — especially in titles, as: das Königlich Preußiſche Miniſterium; blau und ſchwarze Bänder (*of blue and black color*), etc.

NOTE. — These are practically compounds, and might be so written, or with hyphen.

(*b*) The usage is widely extended in poetic style, in cases not admitting of such explanation. Within a few pages occur: ein unerwartet ungeheures Schickſal; den falſch verräteriſchen Rat; ein keck entſchloſſener Schwärmer; in einer finſter unglücksvollen Zeit; dieſes unſtet ſchwanke Rohr; ein geſittet fröhlich Volk (§ 145).

(*c*) This poetic usage must be carefully distinguished from the adverb; die fieberhaft zitternde Erika; das wunderlich graciöſe Mädchen; wie hinterliſtig treulos erſcheint mein Rat, *haw deceitfully faithless*, etc. (§ 314).

(*d*) Generally, it is important to remark that the adverb in German is distinguished from the uninflected adjective only by the sense. Usually, the distinction is obvious; but sometimes it may be questionable, or immaterial; as: das Mädchen wich ſcheu zur Seite; der Ruderer erreicht ſiegreich das Ufer; ihre Augen leuchteten verklärt; ſie blickte verwirrt auf; er verſchwand lautlos in der Menge; das leiſe verhallende Geläute (das leiſe, verhallende Geläute), etc. — and many like cases [*the ship arrived safe*, or *safely*].

(*e*) Rarely, in poetry, occur examples like lieb Knabe, for lieber Knabe.

NOTE. — This point will require the more attention because it is contrary to the usual analogy—the grammatical relations being, in general, more largely distinguished *by form* in German than in English.

3. In some cases the adjective is regarded as noun, and loses its adjective inflection. This occurs (though sometimes without capital initial):

(*a*) In certain set phrases, as: Alt und Jung (or: alt und jung, etc.); das Gut und Böſe; das Mein und Dein, etc.

(*b*) In the names of languages: das Deutſch, ein reines Deutſch; and of colors: das Rot, ein dunkles Blau, etc.

Such forms must be distinguished from the adjective used as noun; as, das Gute, die Alten. Compare etwas Rot, *some red;* etwas Rotes, *something red* (and English, *sweets to the sweet*, etc.).

Comparison.

450. In addition to the general rules already given (Lessons XI., XII., XXXIV.), the following are important:

1. In German, generally, all adjectives admitting comparison — including participles used as adjectives — are compared alike, without regard to number of syllables. But instead of the usual inflection, an auxiliary (adverb) comparison is used in some cases:

(*a*) With adjectives that do not admit of attributive use; as: er iſt mehr daran ſchuld als ich — am meiſten ſchuld; weniger — am wenigſten — eingedenk, etc. (§ 448, 2).

(*b*) When two qualities are compared in the same subject; as: der Knabe iſt mehr leichtſinnig als böſe. — But the inflected form also occurs, as: die Truppen waren tapferer als zahlreich, *more brave than numerous*.

(*c*) And, generally, in the superlative of *eminence*, or *absolute superlative;* as: ein äußerſt ſchönes Kind; ein höchſt ſeltener Fall (see § 316). But such forms as; ein allerliebſtes Kind; mit tiefſter Rührung, etc., also occur.

2. After a comparison of *inequality* or of *equality*, als and wie both occur; but the better usage requires als in the former, wie only in the latter; as: das Mädchen iſt ſchöner als ihre Mutter; eben ſo ſchön wie ihre Mutter.

The use of als after a negative (§ 153)—expressing inequality is therefore consistent with this general distinction.

Rarely denn (*then*) is found after a comparative—usually when als precedes; as: Er war tüchtiger als Feldherr denn als Staatsmann.

3. The distinction between the inflected superlative and the form with am, in the predicate (§ 161) — though not always strictly observed, is important. The latter is really adverbial, defining the *condition*, not the subject; the former is the true adjective superlative. As: die Sonne ſcheint am hellſten — iſt am hellſten — im Sommer; dieſes Kind iſt am ſchönſten, wenn es ſchläft; but we could not say: dieſes Kind iſt am jüngſten. The tendency

is to use the am form when the adjective superlative would be more correct. Note also the distinction between the form with am and that with aufs (§ 315), the *absolute* superlative.

4. The superlative is sometimes strengthened by the prefix aller, *of all;* der allerbeſte Mann, *the very best man;* das Allerheiligſte, *the Holy of holies — the most holy.*

NOTE. — The compound allerliebſt is the only superlative that can stand in the predicate without inflection. As: das iſt allerliebſt, *that is most charming.*

5. It was remarked (§ 316), that a few words use the superlative in –ſt as adverbs. Such are: äußerſt, höchſt, längſt, meiſt, nächſt; gefälligſt, gütigſt, gehorſamſt and a few others. These forms are used only in the *absolute* sense.

For the correlative comparison, *the —— the*, see § 334.

CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE.

451. Outside of the general rules of agreement, it is important only to remark:

(*a*) The agreement of the adjective is with its own subject noun, which, however, is often understood. As: der Elefant iſt das größte (Tier) unter den Tieren. For exception, see § 452, note.

(*b*) An adjective agreeing with the plural Sie in address will be singular, if the pronoun means one person; as, Sie guter, etc.

For the position of the adjuncts of the adjective, see § 353.

REMARK. — All the rules with regard to the inflection or concord of the adjective require the more attention because, in consequence of absence of inflection in the English adjective, they are likely to be neglected by students.

EXERCISE LIII.

1. In yesterday's paper I read the last news of the war. 2. Has to-day's newspaper come? 3. This young lady is not so amiable as her elder sister. 4. The weather is excessively cold. 5. We have received very favorable news from America. 6. She is a most modest girl. 7. This carriage is more useful than handsome. 8. The longer the day, the shorter the night. 9. The rose is the most beautiful of all flowers. 10. Charles was on the highest (uppermost) step, whilst I was on the lowest. 11. He showed us into the interior apartments of the castle. 12. Everybody wished to be (the) first. 13. He wears a gold chain, but his watch is silver. 14. The boy ran up, in greatest haste, and told me the sad news. 15. We poor sinners need

the mercy of the good God. 16. The wise [man] is content when he has only the necessary. 17. A truly modest man does not seek to seem wiser than he is. 18. An old woman, unknown to me (a to-me unknown, etc.), delivered this most (= very) distressing letter. 19. Many incredible stories are related of that poor old blind man. 20. The following event took place in the year 1818. 21. Red, white and blue flags waved on all [the] streets. 22. A crowd of people — old and young together — rushed in highest excitement over the narrow wooden bridge. 23. The testimony of these my friends will refute that most unjust charge. 24. These children are the worst that I know; they are most agreeable when they are not present.

Last half

LESSON LIV.

The Pronouns.

The Personals. ✓

452. See §§ 182–184, for declension and general statements. The following special points are to be noted:

(*a*) In consequence of the different system of gender in English, the agreement of the personal pronoun with the grammatical gender of its antecedent requires attention. As: Er hat ſeinen Schlüſſel verloren, er kann ihn nicht finden, *he has lost his key, he cannot find* it. Dieſe Stahlfeder iſt verroſtet, ich werde ſie wegwerfen; *this steel-pen is rusty, I shall throw* it *away.*

But the pronouns referring to das Weib, *the woman*, and the neuter diminutives of sex, Fräulein, Mädchen, Knäblein, Söhnchen, etc., generally prefer the natural gender. As: Wo iſt das Fräulein? Sie geht im Garten ſpazieren. Was macht Ihr Söhnchen? Ich hoffe, er iſt geſund. Not so, however, when in the same sentence with the noun, as: Ein Mädchen, welches dort lebte, *a girl who*, etc. — and, often, not so in poetic or familiar style.

Note. — This usage is sometimes extended to an adjective when it does not stand in *immediate* connection with its noun: as, die ſchönſte unter allen Mädchen.

(*b*) The prepositions halben, wegen, willen (§ 280) form compounds with the personal genitives, et or t being inserted. Thus: meinetwegen, *for my sake, as far as I am concerned;* deinetwegen, *for thy sake;* um ſeinetwillen, *for his sake;* unſertwegen, *for our sake;* eurethalben, Ihrethalben, etc.

Note. — But, as the earlier forms meinentwegen, ſeinentwillen, etc., show, these forms were originally possessives with cases of nouns — t inserted as § 398, *b*.

(*c*) The anomalous forms meinesgleichen, deinesgleichen, etc., (also meines Gleichen, etc.), *the likes of me, my equals*, etc., arose probably out of pronoun genitives, dependent on the adjective. They are now practically compounds.

For further remark on the personal genitives, see §§ 430–1. For the use of the dative where the English idiom requires possessive, see § 439. For demonstratives used as substitutes for personals, see § 457. For the relative after personals, see § 459. For the pronouns in address, see §§ 186–9.

453. The neuter pronoun es has special uses, corresponding largely to English *it* or *there*, but in part peculiar:

(*a*) Akin to its use as impersonal subject (Less. XXXI.) is its use as indefinite subject of verbs without known agent—sometimes with poetic effect. As: es lachte neben dem Erzähler hell auf, *there was a loud laugh close by the speaker;* da zog es wie mit weißen Nebelſchleiern über die Haide, *then something passed*, etc.

(*b*) As merely formal—expletive—subject, with intransitives in passive or reflexive form. As: es wird gebetet (§ 275); es wird mir geraten; es ſchläft ſich hier gut, *here is good sleeping*. But: mir wird geraten (§ 291, *note*).

(*c*) Especially as introductory—grammatical—subject, throwing the logical subject after the verb, which then always agrees with the latter (see § 210); as: was ſind die? es ſind Kartoffeln; *what are those? they are potatoes.* Often this es is purely expletive, and is then variously translated: 1. By *it;* as: es ſind oft unſere Freunde, die uns quälen, *it is often our friends that torment us.* 2. By *there:* es war einmal ein Mann; es waren Tauſende zugegen; *there was; there were*, etc. 3. Without English equivalent—often with poetic emphasis: Es fürchte die Götter das Menſchengeſchlecht; es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel, etc., *men talk and dream much of*, etc.

NOTE.—In general in its purely *expletive* uses, as in the last two and in *b*, es is omitted unless introductory; but not as true impersonal or pronoun subject.

(*d*) As representative—often not translated—of an entire sentence preceding or following; or of a predicate idea—noun or adjective: here often translated by *so*. As: Mir wird ein Glück zu Teil, wie ich es nimmer gehofft; Sie müſſen es mir erlauben, Ihnen zu ſagen, etc. Ich glaube es, *I believe so;* der iſt mein Freund, ſo wenig er es ſcheint, *however little he seems so*, etc.

(*e*) In some phrases like English *to trip it, lord it over*, etc. As: die Meinung hält es mit dem Unglücklichen—*holds* (*sides*) *with*, etc.

The phrases *it is I* (*me?*), *is it you?* etc., are in German ich bin es, ſind Sie es? etc.

Es is often written 's, as: ich bin's (§ 70).

For substitute for es with prepositions, see § 457. The occasional use of es with a preposition is now only colloquial.

THE REFLEXIVES (§ 185).

454. 1. The English compounds, *myself*, *himself*, etc., are sometimes reflexive, sometimes emphatic; as: *he himself killed himself*, etc. No such ambiguity of form exists in German.

(*a*) The reflexive object is expressed, specifically, by ſich only. Other pronoun objects may be used reflexively. (§ 185).

(*b*) The emphatic *self*, *selves*, is expressed by the indeclinable ſelbſt, or ſelber, which are used only in apposition, referring to either subject or object, as the meaning may require. As: Er hat es ſelbſt getan, *he did it himself*; er ſchonte ſeiner ſelbſt nicht, *he did not spare himself*; er hat ſich ſelber getötet, *he himself killed himself*, etc.

NOTE.—Selbſt before a noun has the sense of *even*; ſelbſt der König, *even the king*; but der König ſelbſt, *the king himself*.

(*c*) Selbſt is also used sometimes, without special emphasis, to exclude a possible reciprocal meaning (§ 252). As: Die Angeklagten verrieten ſich ſelbſt; dieſe Kinder lieben ſich ſelbſt, etc.

NOTE.—It has already been remarked (§ 252) that the reflexive idiom is used more largely in German than in English. This is due in part to the want of any specific or simple English reflexive.

THE POSSESSIVES (§§ 192–4).

455. See §§ 192–3. Only a few points need further remark:

(*a*) Doubt as between the adjective forms and the pronoun forms can occur only in the predicate. The former are simply predicative, leaving the stress on the subject; the latter are used for emphasis or distinction of persons; as: dieſes Buch iſt mein; but dieſes Buch iſt meines, nicht deines. Wem gehört dieſes Buch? Es iſt meines, etc. Unſer iſt die Arbeit, aber euer iſt der Lohn.

(*b*) The forms with the article are often used as nouns, in the plural meaning *persons*, *friends*, etc.; in the neuter singular, abstractly, *property*, *duty*, etc. As: Ich fand die Meinigen geſund wieder, *I found my family well*; wie befinden ſich die Ihrigen? *how are you all at home?* Er hat das Seinige getan, *he has done what he could.* Ich ſtehe auf dem Meinigen; jedem das Seine, etc.

(*c*) Before titles, on addresses of letters, etc., ſeine and ſeiner are often abbreviated to Se. and Sr.; and euer, eure, to Ew. As: Se. Majeſtät der König; Sr. Excellenz dem Feldmarſchall; Ew. Gnaden, *your Grace*. Ihro and Dero are old genitives, now out of use: Ihro Majeſtät, *your majesty*, etc.

(*d*) Colloquially, but incorrectly, occur such forms, as: meines Vaters—or meinem Vater—ſein Haus, etc. Like forms were current in older English: *John Smith his book*, etc.

(*e*) The phrase, (zu) ſeiner Zeit, *in due time*, is idiomatic and of doubtful explanation.

The rule for agreement in gender—and the exception—are the same as with the personals (§ 452, *a*). In general, care must be taken that the possessive shall correspond to its proper personal: as dein to du, Ihr to Sie, etc. This is often overlooked by students.

The rules for repetition of a possessive are the same as with the definite article. (§ 421).

For the article instead of possessive, see § 416, 5. For the phrases, *a friend of mine*, etc., see § 430, *e*. For the *dative possessive*, § 439, *b*.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Our wine is sour; we cannot drink it. 2. For your sake I have made this long journey. 3. Even the name of this man is unknown to me. 4. In (the) spring, the earth clothes itself with flowers. 5. Take my key; you can open your door with it. 6. We shall soon see each other again. 7. Think no more of (an) it. 8. Is it you, dear mother? Yes, it is I. 9. Can you not come yourself? 10. The poor man has done himself great harm. 11. There came lately a strange man to our town. 12. There is no other road that leads to the village. 13. Will you please (gefälligſt) lend me your grammar; I have lost mine. 14. It is not always the richest that are the happiest. 15. Will it rain to-morrow? I believe so. 16. My heart beat for joy at (über) it. 17. Is this pen mine? No, it is mine; you have yourself taken yours away. 18. This vain girl speaks always of herself only. 19. The girl forgot her fan. 20. What is mine I will maintain. 21. I shall never forget you and yours. 22. Do you still remember me? 23. There are many people in the town that I do not know. 24. I am advised by my physician to make a journey to Switzerland.

LESSON LV.

The Pronouns.—Continued.

The Demonstratives (§§ 204–10).

456. The demonstratives may all be used as adjectives or as pronouns. For inflection see §§ 204–207.

Note.—The terms "adjective pronoun" and "pronominal adjective" are equally used—as in English grammar—to indicate this double function.

1. Dieſer, jener, distinguish the nearer and the more remote: *this — that, the latter — the former.* Without such distinction, dieſer is often used for *that one, he,* etc. (just spoken of). Jener (= *you*) properly means *that yonder,* i. e. *which can be seen;* but is not always so restricted.

Note. — The English *one* is not translated with the demonstratives (*this one,* etc.).

2. Der is the more general demonstrative of reference, without regard to position, and with widest range of use. It has in part different forms as adjective and as pronoun. (§ 206). Note also:

(*a*) The old genitive singular pronoun deß — now written des — is not now used except in compounds: deswegen, indes, etc.

(*b*) The genitive plural forms derer, deren, are not always strictly distinguished: derer should be used before a relative or other restrictive; otherwise deren. As: die Freundſchaft derer, die uns ſchmeicheln, iſt gefährlich. Es gibt deren viele, *there are many of them.*

(*c*) Der — not dieſer or jener — must be used as *supplying* pronoun before a genitive — *that of* — often in English omitted, as: mein Haus und das meines Bruders, *my house and my brother's.* In this sense derjenige is sometimes less correctly used.

(*d*) The indefinite — or substantive — *that* is usually das. Was iſt das? Das weiß ich nicht. (See § 210).

For dies, das, as introductory subjects, see § 210.

(*e*) Der, adjective, is the same word as the definite article, but is distinguished from it by stress of voice — often also by type — the article having usually minimum stress. Thus, der Mann, *the man;* der Mann, *that man.*

The adjective phrase der und der means *such and such a.*

Note. — Der gives rise to many compounds, such as: deswegen, deshalb, indeſſen, indes; dergeſtalt, dergleichen, dereinſt, etc.; and of the same root, dafern, daheim, damals, etc., as well as the usual prepositional compounds darin, dabei, etc. — all of which are really demonstrative.

3. Derjenige is properly used only as antecedent to a relative. It is here not distinguished from der, but is preferred in *general* statements. As: derjenige (Mann), welcher uns ſchmeichelt, iſt kein treuer Freund.

In this use der may include both antecedent and relative; as, der am letzten wegging, war der Affe, *he who,* etc.

4. Derſelbe — adjective, *the same,* eben derſelbe, *the very same* — as pronoun has its most important uses as substitute. (See § 457).

5. Solcher (ſolch) properly implies a correlative: *such — as,* which may be expressed by wie, or by a relative clause. As: ein ſolcher Mann wie Sie;

ſolche Bücher, die man nicht leſen kann — *as one cannot read.* Its use as pure demonstrative is rare and incorrect: es kamen zu ihm mehrere Bürger und unter ſolchen auch jener Wirt, — *among them*, etc.

Such, used idiomatically before an adjective, is the adverb ſo: eine ſo ſchlechte Feder, *such a bad pen;* mit ſo ſchlechten Federn, *with such bad pens.*

Note the colloquial ſo ein, for ſolch ein; ſo etwas (was), *such a thing*, etc.

DEMONSTRATIVES AS SUBSTITUTES.

457. The demonstrative pronouns are largely used in cases where personals or possessives are used in English:

1. To distinguish things without life:

(*a*) Instead of the genitive and dative (ſeiner, ihm) of the third personal, which are identical in masculine and neuter, the demonstratives deſſen, desſelben, demſelben are used of things without life. As: er hat mir Geld angeboten, aber ich bedarf deſſen (desſelben) nicht, *I do not need it;* ich ſchäme mich deſſen, *of it* (ſeiner, *of him*); er hat mir ſein Wort gegeben, allein ich traue demſelben nicht, *I do not trust it* (ihm, *him*).

(*b*) With a preposition, for all cases, things without life take instead of the personal a demonstrative object — usually of der, or derſelbe — or, more frequently, a prepositional compound: of da, hier, for dative or accusative (§ 401); of des for genitive, where such exists. As: das Meſſer iſt ſcharf; du kannſt dich mit demſelben (damit) leicht ſchneiden. Ich habe nichts dagegen, *against it* (ihn, *him*). Es regnet; deshalb bleibe ich zu Hauſe — or, trotz deſſen gehe ich aus. Mein Freund hat meinen Regenſchirm verloren; ohne denſelben kann ich nicht ausgehen (ihn, *him*).

The forms deſſentwillen, derenthalben, etc., are like those in § 452, *b*.

(*c*) Often, for the possessive, things without life use a demonstrative genitive: der Baum und deſſen Zweige; die Stadt und deren Einwohner. Analogous with this is the use of the demonstrative to distinguish the objective from the subjective genitive, even of persons. As: ein Freund iſt ein großes Gut; der Beſitz desſelben erhöht den Wert des Lebens — ſein Beſitz would mean *his property*.

2. Sometimes a demonstrative is used to mark more closely the connection between successive sentences. As: Es war ein alter Mann; dieſer hatte drei Söhne; er verteilte ſein Gut unter dieſelben.

3. As indefinite (determinative) antecedent to a relative, *he* (*who*) is derjenige (or der); as, derjenige, welcher (= wer) glücklich iſt, iſt reich. But if the antecedent is definite, the regular personal will be used; as, er, den ich für meinen Freund hielt, hat mich verraten.

4. Sometimes for emphasis, or only for euphony:

(*a*) Emphasis, as der muß ein Narr ſein, *he* (*that fellow*).

(*b*) Euphony, as: er hat eine Tochter; kennen Sie dieſelbe? Dieſer Wein iſt gut; ich kann Ihnen denſelben empfehlen.

5. Specially important, however, is the use of the demonstrative der, derſelbe, to refer to a foregoing object, the personal, or possessive, being used to refer to the subject only. As: Er traf ſeinen Bruder und deſſen Freunde (ſeine would mean *his own*). Die Tochter ſchrieb ihrer Mutter, daß dieſelbe in London erwartet werde (ſie would mean *the daughter*). Der Lehrer lobt den Schüler, aber derſelbe dankt ihm nicht dafür; der König dankte dem Miniſter und las deſſen Rede durch; ſie malte ihre Schweſter und deren Tochter, etc. This distinction is important in long sentences, or in a sequence of sentences; and especially in cases of possible ambiguity.

REMARK. — It thus appears that, mainly by help of its demonstratives, German is more specific and distinctive than English in the use of pronouns. Every student knows the danger of ambiguity in the English personals. The old story, "And he said, saddle me the ass; and they saddled *him*," is good enough to be true.

THE INTERROGATIVES.

458. The interrogatives wer, was, welcher, was für ein, are quite fully treated §§ 217–222. See also § 240. Observe further:

1. As to their distinction, compared with English forms:

(*a*) Wer corresponds fully to English *who?* and is always substantive and personal.

(*b*) English *which?* is always welcher. But *what?* is welcher only when adjective, or definite; was, when substantive, or indefinite. As: *In what book do you find that?* in welchem Buche; *what do you say?* was ſagen Sie?

2. The interrogatives are often only exclamatory, and readily become indefinite or adverbial:

(*a*) Welcher is sometimes used in the singular, colloquially, in the sense of *some:* Haben Sie Geld? Ja, ich habe welches, *some.*

(*b*) Was is sometimes used for etwas, *something* — especially before an adjective; as, was Gutes, *something good*, etc. Also, for warum, *why;* as: Was ſchaut ihr mich ſo ſeltſam an? *Why do you look at me so strangely?* And for wie, *how?* As: Was Sie braun gebrannt ſind! *How brown you are burned!*

3. Colloquially, and irregularly, was is sometimes found with prepositions; as, mit was, etc., for womit — even where the case would not be accusative.

For the use of the prepositional compounds instead of was with prepositions, see § 222. The old wes (weß) — now used only in such compounds — was formerly used also as an indefinite adjective, as: wes Standes er auch ſei, *of whatever rank*, etc.

In the indirect or dependent question, the interrogatives are nearly connected in sense, as in construction, with the relatives — especially with the indefinite relatives (§ 236).

EXERCISE LV.

1. How can you write with such a pen? 2. The same sun shines over the just and the unjust. 3. This is my youngest brother, and those (*sing.*) are my sons. 4. With this (*comp.*) you will receive the books (which) I had promised you. 5. Take this money; I do not need it. 6. I have heard nothing of that. 7. My friend arrived on the same train as the prince and his suite. 8. Those who help us in (the) misfortune are our true friends. 9. Do you know who has brought the letter? 10. With what can we best pass our time? 11. Advise me what book I shall read. 12. What are you thinking about? what letter are you speaking of? 13. Trust not him who always flatters you. 14. In whose house have you heard that story? I do not believe it. 15. Tell me what books you want, and I will send them [to] you. 16. Do you see that man, who stands at that corner [yonder]? 17. I have sold my horses and also my son's. 18. He is my friend who always tells me the truth. 19. Such a man as he should not believe such stories. 20. The trees with their green leaves are now very beautiful. 21. I have never seen such a bad boy; I am ashamed of him. 22. Those ladies are my daughter and my brother's; do you not know them? 23. The king must respect that man; for he has just appointed his son an (zum) officer. 24. I cannot write on such bad paper.

LESSON LVI.

The Pronouns. — Continued.

THE RELATIVES.

459. See §§ 233–240, where the relatives are somewhat fully explained. Only a few remarks need to be added.

1. Der, welcher, are the definite relatives; wer, was, the indefinite. They are all properly pronouns, not adjectives, in construction; but der, welcher,

introduce adjective clauses, qualifying an antecedent; wer, was, noun clauses, without antecedent noun.

2. The definite relatives der, welcher, are for the most part used indifferently — welcher being only somewhat more formal. Except:

(*a*) In the genitive, only the forms of der are used for both, because, probably, the genitive forms of welcher might be confounded with other cases. For exception, see *c*, below.

Note. — The genitive relative never follows its governing noun: *a book on the pages of which* — auf deſſen Seiten, etc. See also § 240.

(*b*) Der is always used if the antecedent is a personal pronoun of first or second person, or Sie, in address; and then the personal is usually repeated after the relative. If the personal is not repeated, the verb stands usually in the third person. As: Ich, der ich immer ſein Freund geweſen bin. Du, der (fem. die) du mich nie verlaſſen wirſt. Sie, die Sie mir beiſtimmten, *you who agreed with me.* But: Verachteſt du ſo mich, der hier gebietet? Ich bin eine arme Frau, die keinen Menſchen hier kennt, etc.

(*c*) welcher — not der — is sometimes used as an adjective; as: Berlin, in welcher Stadt er ſtarb, *in which city he died.* And rarely welcher occurs as genitive, with a preposition; as, einige Augenblicke, während welcher, *during which.*

Note. — Thus, while der and welcher correspond in origin to *that*, *which*, respectively, they are not distinguished in use or construction like English *that* and *which* (or *who*). Neither is the distinction between the *restrictive* and the *explanatory* relative clearly marked by punctuation, as in English. Der is, in general, the more usual, except in formal prose style.

Remark. — Referring to Remark § 457, it may now be added that English has the advantage in the relatives, as clearly as German in the demonstratives.

3. Wer, *he who*, *whoever*, and was, *what*, *that which*, *whatever*, are the indefinite or "compound" relatives and cannot have definite antecedent. As: Wer früh aufſteht, lebt lange; was du tun willſt, tue bald, etc.

(*a*) But, wer, was, may be followed by a *postcedent* demonstrative, repeating the idea that has been defined by the foregoing predicate. As: Wer früh aufſteht, der (i. e. *the early-riser*) lebt lange; was du tun willſt, das tue bald, etc. This is necessary if the case is changed. As: Wer einmal lügt, dem wird nicht geglaubt; was man hat, deſſen bedarf man nicht, etc.

(*b*) In the sense of *whoever*, *whatever*, wer, was are sometimes followed immediately by da — or, with intervening word or words, by auch — also immer. As: Wer da wollte, möchte ſich ſetzen; alles was da lebt und webt, *all that lives and moves;* was man auch gegen ihn vorbringe; wer das immer geſagt hat, *whoever had said that*, etc.

(*c*) Was is sometimes used, most indefinitely, for wer; as: Früh übt ſich, was ein Meiſter werden will. (§ 460, 4, *d*.)

(*d*) For was (*that, which*) after indefinite antecedents, see § 236, *b*.

4. For prepositional compounds instead of relative objects, see § 237. This use is largely extended to all non-personal relatives (as in the demonstratives). The old genitive weß — now written wes — is used only in genitive compounds: weshalb, weswegen, etc. Weſſenthalben is formed as § 452, *b*.

5. Like the demonstratives der, da, the compounds darauf, davon, etc. (§ 184) — and some other demonstrative compounds, as dafern, dergleichen, indeſſen, etc. — may be used also in relative (dependent) sense, the use being distinguished by the construction. (See § 351, 2.)

For ſo, as relative, see § 485, 9. See also § 240.

THE INDEFINITES.

460. (See §§ 244–5). The term "indefinites" is itself very indefinite. It includes, like a "waste-basket," a group of words which lie along the dividing lines of pronoun, adjective and numeral. Some of these are also called "indefinite numerals." Only some of the most important uses will be here noted. —

1. Man supplies the want — so often felt in English — of an indefinite personal subject. It is much used, and variously translated — most frequently by our passive (§ 274). Its oblique cases are supplied by einer; its possessive by ſein; reflexive by ſich. As: Wenn man Geld verliert, ſo tut es einem leid; man iſt froh, wenn man ſeine Arbeit getan hat; wenn man ſich irrt, *when one is mistaken*, etc.

Note. — Man is often rendered by *we, you, they*, etc. But it must never be used unless the subject is *entirely indefinite*.

2. (*a*) Einer, *someone, anyone*, is also used as indefinite subject; but less general than man: wenn einer Ihnen ſagte, *if some one told you*, etc. It is also used with the article: der Eine, der Andere, *the one, the other;* die Einen, die Anderen, *some, the others* — also without capital initial.

(*b*) Der Andere, is sometimes used for *the second* (*of two only*). *Another*, meaning *one more* is noch ein(=er), as: noch eine Taſſe Thee, *another cup of tea*.

3. The indeclinable irgend is often used with ein(=er) and other indefinites, jemand, etwas, welcher, and some others, to strengthen the indefinite sense: irgend einer, *anyone at all;* was irgend gerecht iſt, *whatever is right*.

4. All, *all*, has some peculiar uses:

(*a*) Standing alone before a noun it is fully declined: Aller Anfang iſt ſchwer; alle Menſchen, *all men*.

(*b*) But preceding the article, or other pronominal, it stands often —

but not always, undeclined. As: all das Geld; all dieſe Menſchen; unter all dieſen Umſtänden, etc. Alle stands for all in a few phrases; bei alle dem, *with all that.*

(*c*) In the plural, it is rarely followed by the article; *all the boys* is, usually, alle Knaben, or die Knaben alle.

(*d*) In the plural, all often means *every;* alle Tage; alle vier Wochen, etc.; and in the neuter singular, sometimes, *everybody:* alles ſchwieg, *everybody was silent.* (See § 459, 3, *c*.) For *all*, meaning *entire*, *whole* (ganz), see § 144.

(*e*) Other neuters, eines, keines, jedes, etc., are also sometimes used of persons indefinitely, or where both sexes are included; as: Keines muß das Andere unglücklich machen, *neither* (*man nor woman*), etc.

5. Beide differs from English *both.*

(*a*) It follows instead of preceding the article or its equivalent: die beiden Knaben; meine beiden Brüder. It thus often stands for *two*, where there are only two: *my two brothers.*

(*b*) It is never followed by a partitive genitive, '*of*': wir beide, *both of us;* dieſe beiden Häuſer, *both of these houses*, etc.

(*c*) It is sometimes used in the neuter singular, beides, meaning *either, each of the two:* beides kann wahr ſein, *either may be true.*

6. Viel, wenig. Viel is sometimes declined in the singular, meaning many kinds: vieler Wein; but viel Wein, *much wine.* Wenig, *little*, and ein wenig, *a little*, are distinguished as in English. The plural wenige, is *few; a few* is einige, etliche.

7. Genug, lauter, are undeclined: Geld genug, *enough money*, or, *money enough;* lauter Geld, *nothing but money;* lauter Kleinigkeiten, *mere trifles.*

8. *Either*, *neither* are usually einer, keiner — von beiden. For *not any*, see § 244, note.

EXERCISE LVI.

1. Who are the ladies with whom you were speaking (the ladies you were speaking with)? 2. Those on whose help we most relied were the first to forsake us. 3. The author that wrote the work you have just been talking of, is an old friend of mine. 4. The subject of which we spoke yesterday is more important than we thought. 5. The gentleman whose house I bought is gone away. 6. I shall do what I have promised; you may rely on that. 7. The robbers into whose hands we had fallen took [from] us all (was) we had. 8. He was the best friend I ever had. 9. We went into a house, from the windows of which we could see the whole procession. 10. My clerk, on whose honesty I so much relied, has deceived

me. 11. I, who am older than you, will assist you with my advice. 12. He who is industrious and faithful will make progress. 13. I have no money; can you lend me some? only a little? 14. Every one must help his neighbor in (the) need. 15. We (man) forget easily what *we* have read without interest. 16. One must never forsake one's friends. 17. It is said that we shall never have peace. 18. Everything earthly is transitory. 19. All [the] travellers had to change at that station. 20. We receive letters from Germany every two weeks, during all the year. 21. All my happiness is in your hands. 22. Many were invited, but few came. 23. Both of my sons were in Europe last summer. 24. What you tell me (that) I have long known.

LESSON LVII.

The Verb.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.—CONCORD.

461. Only the more important departures from English usage will be noticed.

1. The Subject.

(*a*) For the omission of the subject, see § 429. For the position of the subject after the verb, §344.

(*b*) The subject must be repeated with connected verbs, if the order of words changes. As: er kam zu mir, ging aber ſogleich weg; but: aber ſogleich ging er weg; du betrügſt niemand, aber von andern biſt du betrogen.

(*c*) If the subjects are of different persons, the including plural pronoun will usually be expressed before the verb. As: mein Bruder und ich (wir) reiſen bald ab; du und er (ihr) ſeid im Irrtum.

2. The Verb.

(*a*) Introduced by es, das, was, etc., the verb agrees with the logical, not the grammatical subject. As: das ſind Fremde; dies ſind Männer, die Achtung verdienen; es ſind unſere Freunde, etc. (See § 210.)

(*b*) Collective nouns take a singular verb more uniformly than in English. As: dieſes Volk hat eine große Freiheit; die Menge macht den Künſtler irr' und ſcheu. But when a plural defining noun follows, the verb will be plural. As: eine Menge Schiffe lagen im Hafen; eine Anzahl Bürger haben ſich vereinigt.

(*c*) More freely than in English a series of singular subjects, unless expressly distinct, may take a singular verb. As: Haus und Hof iſt verkauft; Groll und Rache ſei vergeſſen, etc. This is especially the case when the verb precedes both or either of the subjects. As: Hier ſpricht Erfahrung, Wiſſenſchaft, Geſchmack; Meiſter rührt ſich und Geſelle, etc.

(*d*) With disjunctive singular subjects the rule is a singular verb, but with exceptions. As: weder die Union noch die Ligue miſchten ſich in dieſen Streit, *mixed themselves*, etc.

(*e*) Exceptional is the formal use of plural verbs with certain exalted titles. As: Eure Majeſtät geruhen: Eure Excellenz haben befohlen, etc., and in some set phrases of formal courtesy.

For the verb after a relative with personal pronoun, see § 459, 2, *b*.

THE TENSES.

462. Here again will be noticed only the more important departures from the ordinary sense, or from corresponding English forms.

Simple and Compound Tenses.

1. The simple tenses (§ 167), are the same in German as in English: the present and the past (preterit), sometimes — but in either language improperly — called the imperfect. The compound tenses are less complete than in English.

2. The English tenses formed with the auxiliaries *be* and *do* have no corresponding forms in German. Thus: *I stand*, *am standing*, *do stand; I stood*, *was standing*, *did stand; I have stood*, *have been standing; I shall stand*, *shall be standing*, etc., are represented in German, respectively, by the single forms only: ich ſtehe; ich ſtand; ich habe geſtanden; ich werde ſtehen, etc. The English student must carefully discriminate these forms in translation. It may be observed, also, that English has here a great advantage over not only German, but all kindred languages.

Note. — An auxiliary use of tun sometimes occurs as a vulgarism: ich tat es nicht ſagen: rarely, also, in poetry. In this use tät often stands for tat.

3. The English auxiliary *be* must be carefully distinguished when verb and when auxiliary (§ 169). Thus: *she is charming*, ſie iſt reizend (part. adj.); *she is charming me with her singing*, (pres. tense), etc. Especially also whether werden or ſein, in passive forms (§ 273).

USE OF INDICATIVE TENSES.

463. The Present.

(*a*) The present is used for the past, more frequently than in English, to make a narrative more lively (*historical present.*) As: Als wir das Schloß nun angezündet, da ſtürzt der Diethelm hervor und ruft, *rushes out and exclaims*, etc. Also often colloquially: da kommt er zu mir und ſagt, etc.

(*b*) The present, usually with ſchon, *already*, or ſeit, *since*, is regularly used, corresponding to English perfect, to express an action or state continuing in the present. As: wie lange ſind Sie ſchon hier? *how long have you been here?* Ich kenne ihn (ſchon) ſeit ſeiner Kindheit, *I have known him*, etc. In the same way the past corresponds to the English pluperfect: Ich kannte ihn ſchon ſeit ſeiner Kindheit, *I had known him since his childhood.*

(*c*) The present is used, much more freely than in English, in place of the future; usually with a future adverb; often, also, with like effect as (*a*), to express an immediate or certain future, as if actually present. As: ich komme ſogleich zurück; in zwei Tagen bin ich fertig; dieſe Nacht erſteigen wir das Schloß; ſie lebt nicht mehr, ſobald du es gebieteſt.

Note. — This belongs to the earliest uses in both German and English, before the existence of the auxiliary futures. In the same way the (present) perfect may be used for the future perfect, as in English. As: Sobald ich Nachricht bekommen habe, wollen wir nicht länger verweilen, *as soon as I (shall) have received news*, etc.

(*d*) With like effect, the present is sometimes used for an emphatic imperative: Du gehſt ſogleich, *you* (*must*) *go at once;* du ſchießeſt oder ſtirbſt, *shoot or die.*

464. The Past (Preterit) and the Perfect.

These tenses are not so sharply distinguished in German as in English. The former is properly the simple historical past — sometimes imperfect; the latter, the tense of an action completed with reference to the present — or, in English, within a time including the present. But in German the perfect is often used where in English the past would be employed. Thus:

(*a*) The perfect expresses an action as simply completed, or absolutely past, at the present time. As: Gott hat die Welt erſchaffen, *God created the world;* ich habe Ihren Freund geſtern geſehen, *I saw your friend yesterday;* dieſe Kirche iſt im 14. Jahrhundert erbaut worden, *this church was built*, etc.

(*b*) The past usually expresses a past action as connected with other past actions or circumstances, and is thus the usual tense of historical narrative:

also of continuous or *imperfect* action. As: Gott ſchuf die Welt in ſechs Tagen und ruhte am ſiebenten. Wo waren ſie zu jener Zeit? Der Knabe ſaß auf einem Stuhle, als ich ins Zimmer trat. Einige Monate verſtrichen, ehe eine Antwort kam, *some months passed before*, etc.

But in many cases the perfect is used, especially in familiar style, where the past would be more strictly required — especially of the recent past.

Note. 1. — A further distinction is stated, that the past expresses what the speaker witnessed or participated in; the perfect, the simple fact: but this can hardly be sustained.

Note 2. — It will be observed that in the English perfect, the *present* relation predominates; in the German, that of *completed* action. Thus: *I have seen him to-day*, but: *I saw him yesterday*, is a distinction that does not obtain in German.

(*c*) The *imperfect* sense is often more clearly expressed by the adverb eben (ſoeben), *just:* Ich ſchrieb eben, als, *I was just writing when*, etc.

465. The Future.

(*a*) The future is frequently used instead of the present, and the future perfect instead of the perfect, in order to express a supposition or probability. As: Er wird hungrig ſein, *I suppose he is hungry;* er wird hungrig geweſen ſein, *he has probably been hungry.* The adverbs doch or wohl are sometimes added in order to bring out the sense more clearly: Der Vater wird wohl noch ſchlafen, *I suppose father is still asleep;* er wird doch nicht lange dort geblieben ſein, *I suppose he did not stay there long.*

(*b*) The future is sometimes used for an emphatic imperative. As: Du wirſt gleich gehen, *you will go at once.* In this sense also it may be substituted by the present. (See § 463, *d*).

(*c*) The English forms, *I am going to*, *am about to*, denoting an immediate future, may be rendered in German by wollen, im Begriff ſein — often with the adverb eben (ſoeben), *just.* As: ich wollte ſoeben ſchreiben; ich war (eben) im Begriff zu ſchreiben; als er eben den Geiſt aufgeben wollte, *when he was just about to give up the ghost.*

(*d*) As already remarked (§ 268) the future must be carefully distinguished from the modal use of ſollen, *shall;* wollen, *will; shall* or *will*, as future auxiliary, being in German always werden. The English shibboleth *shall* or *will*, can be easily made clear by the German forms — the difficulty being wholly in English.

EXERCISE LVII.

1. In a few minutes I *shall be* back again. 2. Why does your brother not come? 3. I *suppose* he has no time. 4. The children are not yet (noch nicht) at home; they are *probably* in (the) school. 5. Sit down, or leave the

room. 6. I shall come as soon as I have written my letter. 7. You will carry this letter to (auf) the post, and return immediately. 8. I was just writing a letter when my friend arrived. 9. He will have left London before we arrive there. 10. We were just about to go for a walk when it began to rain. 11. How long have you been learning German? 12. I have been learning it [these] three months, and now I am beginning to make more rapid progress (*pl.*). 13. I have worn this coat [for] eight years; it is time to buy a new [one]. 14. While I was (*am*) considering the matter, I received a letter which relieved me of all further doubt. 15. Last year we made a trip up (*acc.*) the Rigi and passed the night on the mountain. 16. The sun rose splendidly, and we had a glorious view over (*acc.*) mountains and valleys. 17. I had hardly set *my* foot out of the door when it began to rain. 18. We were just about to start when we received news of the death of a near relative. 19. So we were obliged to give up our journey. 20. Of all poets Schiller has most won the love of the people. 21. Before me stand the present and the future together. 22. My people torment me to accept a husband, and I see I must obey them (ihm). 23. My friends and I have read this book together. 24. It is the facts we want; do you think we do not know what you thought of the matter?

LESSON LVIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

REMARK.—The subjunctive is the more difficult of explanation because, except to a very limited extent, it has no corresponding form or use in English. Its English equivalents—besides the rare subjunctive—are various: the indicative, the imperative, the infinitive, and the auxiliaries, *may*, *might*; *can*, *could*; *shall*, *should*; *will*, *would*, etc.—so that its idiomatic translation, as well as its wide use in German, will require the most careful attention.

466. The subjunctive may be defined, in a word, as the mood of the *ideal* (subjective)—as distinct from the indicative, the mood of the *actual* (objective). Its conception varies widely, from that which is simply *not affirmed* as true, to that which is represented as merely *desired* or *possible*, and finally to that which is distinctly implied as *unreal*, or contrary to fact. These shades of meaning it is difficult to analyse or connect logically. They will be here grouped under the several heads of *Indirect*, *Optative*, *Potential* and *Conditional*.

As its name implies, the subjunctive is used most frequently in dependent (*subjoined*) sentences; but in German this is not always true. Nor can it be said, generally, that certain connectives *govern* — or require — the subjunctive. The use of the mood always depends on the sense.

467. The Indirect Subjunctive (*Oratio obliqua*).

(*a*) The subjunctive is used in dependent sentences, expressing the statement of another as related — not quoted — and not affirmed by the writer or speaker. The tense is usually the same as would be used in the indicative, if the words were directly quoted. This occurs especially after verbs meaning *to think*, *believe*, *say*, *tell*, *hope*, *fear*, *seem*, and the like, expressed or implied. As: Er ſchrieb mir, daß er ſein Haus verkauft habe, *he wrote me that he had sold his house;* der Gärtner glaubt, daß dieſer Baum im nächſten Jahre keine Frucht tragen werde, *the gardener believes that this tree will bear no fruit next year;* der Arzt gab keine Hoffnung, daß der Kranke geneſen werde, *the physician gave no hope that the patient would recover.* In these sentences the direct statement would be: Ich habe mein Haus verkauft; dieſer Baum wird im nächſten Jahre keine Frucht tragen, etc.

(*b*) But frequently the past subjunctive will be used for the present, with a past tense of the leading verb. This is especially the case when the present subjunctive would be of the same form with the present indicative. As: Er behauptete, daß ich genug bezahlt hätte; ich ſagte ihm, daß meine Kinder nie allein ausgingen; also, without such reason, less frequently. Sometimes, for this reason, the tense will change in the same sentence; as: Der Fremde meint, es müſſe dort ſtill ſein, und die Menſchen müßten (not müſſen) ſchweigen. (You said) ich hätte einen Stein in der Bruſt, und du habeſt mein Herz. See also Remark at end of p. 278.

(*c*) When, however, the statement is represented as a fact, confirmed or admitted by the writer, the indicative will be used, and in the usual tense. As: Er geſtand, daß er unrecht hatte, *he confessed that he was wrong;* er wußte, daß ich krank war; geſetzt, ich tat's, *suppose I did it.*

Note. — The omission of daß changes the order of words (§ 350, 1), but does not otherwise affect the mood or tense. This omission is however less frequent with the indicative — more frequent with the subjunctive, especially where the form is *distinctive* (as *b*).

(*d*) The same rules, as to both mood and tense, apply also to the dependent question (§ 348), when narrated indirectly. As: Ich fragte ihn, ob er mich bezahlen könne (könnte) oder nicht. But when stated directly the indicative will be used: jetzt frage ich dich, ob du mich bezahlen kannſt oder nicht.

(*e*) Akin to the subjunctive of indirect discourse is the use of a past or pluperfect subjunctive, in exclamatory (interrogative) form, to imply emphatic denial of a real or presumed assertion. As: Gaſtfreundlich hätte England ſie empfangen, *England* (you say) *received her hospitably!* Wann hätte ich das gewollt, *when did I* (as you say) *attempt this?*

(*f*) Sometimes the subjunctive shows only that the action is viewed from the stand-point of another. As: er wollte warten, bis ſein Freund käme, *until his friend should come;* er mußte bleiben, bis die Flut verliefe; *he had to wait until* (*as he knew*) *the tide should subside.*

Note. — But often the indicative occurs, to express a *fact* or *result:* Er hielt darauf, daß keins ſeiner Kinder ſchreiben gelernt hat (*and they did not*).

468. The Optative Subjunctive.

(*a*) The subjunctive is used to express a wish, request, permission, or concession, the realisation of which is not affirmed. The tense will be present, unless the leading verb is past. As: Ich wünſche, daß er nach einem Arzt ſchicke, *I wish him to send for a physician;* ich bitte, er tue das mir zu Gefallen, *I beg he will do it for my sake;* ich erlaube (erlaubte) nicht, daß mein Sohn nach Paris reiſe (reiſte), *I do* (*did*) *not permit my son to go to Paris;* gebe Gott, or Gott gebe, *God grant;* ſo ſei es, *so be it;* es ſei wie es wolle, *be it as it will.* (See § 346, *b*.)

(*b*) A past or pluperfect subjunctive, unless following a past verb, here expresses a wish, etc., as unreal or contingent — closely allied to the conditional subjunctive (§ 470). As: Wäre er doch hier, *were he only here* (but he is not)! O, hätte ich nimmer dieſes Wort geſprochen, *would I had never spoken*, etc. — Wenn er doch heute käme, *I wish he would only come to-day.*

(*c*) As a more remote wish, a *purpose* is expressed by the subjunctive in clauses introduced by damit or daß, (auf daß, um daß). As: Er ſpricht leiſe, damit ihn niemand verſtehe, *in order that nobody may*, etc.; er verſteckte ſich, damit man ihn nicht fände, *in order that he might not be found;* löſt mir das Herz, daß ich das Eure rühre, *that I may move yours.*

Note. — Sometimes this sense is involved in a relative pronoun, as: Gib uns deinen Geiſt, der uns regiere, *give us thy spirit* (*which shall*) *rule us.*

Yet often here, also with damit, daß, etc., the indicative occurs — sometimes without obvious reason — where we should expect the subjunctive.

469. The Potential Subjunctive.

Closely allied with the foregoing is the use of the subjunctive to express *possibility* — a contingent or indefinite statement — sometimes only a softened affirmative — then sometimes called the *diplomatic* subjunctive. As: Ob er komme oder nicht, mir iſt es einerlei, *whether he come or not;* wie es auch ſei, *however it may be;* das möchte wohl wahr ſein, *that may be true;* ich wüßte nicht, *I can't say that I know;* er wäre faſt eingeſchlafen, *he had* (probably) *almost fallen asleep;* nimm meiner Rede jeden Stachel, der verwunden könnte, *that could* (possibly) *wound.*

470. The Conditional Subjunctive (*Unreal*).

(*a*) Outside of the potential conditions included above, the subjunctive in its past tenses is used in both terms of a sentence stating an *unreal condition;* that is, when the premise (*protasis*) is not fulfilled, and the conclusion depending on it (*apodosis*) is therefore not realized. The past tense here expresses present time — the pluperfect, past time. As: Wenn er ſparſamer wäre (or geweſen wäre), ſo wäre er jetzt ein reicher Mann, *if he were* (or *had been*) *more saving, he would now be a rich man* (but he is not, etc.); wenn ich das gewußt hätte, ſo hätte ich anders gehandelt, *if I had known that, I should have*, etc. (but I did not, etc.).

Note. — For the omission of wenn, and consequent change in order of words, see § 350, 2. For the conditional in the apodosis, see below, § 471.

(*b*) Often the condition is only implied. As: In ſeiner Lage hätte ich das nicht getan, (if I had been) *in his place, I should not have done that;* das täte ich gern, *I would gladly do that* (if I could, etc.). So in restrictive clauses with denn, meaning *unless, except.* As: ich trage mein Schwert nie mehr, es wäre denn gegen die Türken (that is: *If I should, then it would be*, etc.).

(*c*) Or the consequence is not stated, and then the form is like § 468, *b.*

(*d*) A condition — whether potential or unreal — is often introduced, comparatively, by als (wenn), als (ob), *as if.* As: Er ſieht aus, als wenn er krank wäre, *as if he were sick;* er tut, als wäre er verrückt. (See § 350, 2.)

(*e*) The indicative may here also express the *certainty* of the result: Mit dieſem Pfeil durchſchoß ich euch (*I had*, etc.), wenn ich mein Kind getroffen hätte.

Note. — In the modal verbs (Less. XXVI.) in consequence of their defect in English, care must be taken to distinguish the sense of the indicative and subjunctive — the former in the past tense often requiring to be expressed by *have.* As: Was du verlangteſt, könnte ich dir nicht geben, ohne arm zu werden, *I could not give you without*, etc.; but konnte ich, etc., *I could not have given you.*

Remark. — The change of tense in the indirect subjunctive (§ 467, 6), to avoid ambiguity of form, has led to an increasing use of the past (preterit) for the present subjunctive — and hence of the pluperfect subjunctive in lieu of the perfect — in indirect speech.

THE CONDITIONAL.

471. As has been seen (§173) the conditional, present and perfect, is really a past subjunctive of the future, bearing the same relation to the future, present or perfect, that the past subjunctive bears to the present. It is thus used as a substitute for the past subjunctive:

(*a*) In the principal member (apodosis) of a condition, expressed or implied, when the statement has special reference to the future. As: Du würdeſt morgen früh aufſtehen, wenn du dich jetzt zeitig zu Bette legteſt; aufſtehen würde Englands ganze Jugend, ſähe der Britte ſeine Königin, *would arise*, *if*, etc.

(*b*) Also, when the form of the past subjunctive would be like that of the past indicative. As: Unter dieſen Umſtänden würde ich nicht abreiſen (for reiſte — ab); das würde ich nicht glauben, *I should not*, etc.

NOTE. — Or, otherwise, whenever the form or meaning of the subjunctive might be ambiguous; as, er meinte, das würde gut ſein, rather than wäre, which might mean *was* or *would be*, etc. — hence especially in *indirect speech*.

(*c*) Outside of these cases, but less frequently, the conditionals may be used as equivalents of the past subjunctives in principal sentences. As: Wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre, ſo würde ich ausgehen (or ſo ginge ich aus); wäre mein Vater am Leben, ſo würde er 80 Jahre alt ſein (or ſo wäre er, etc.)

In any of these cases, the condition will often be only implied. (§ 470, *b*.)

(*d*) The conditional cannot stand for the subjunctive in the dependent member (protasis); thus, the forms are, for the unreal condition;

	(1)	(2)
A.	Wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre, Wäre das Wetter ſchön,	ſo ginge ich aus. ſo würde ich ausgehen.
	(1)	(2)
B.	Ich ginge aus, Ich würde ausgehen,	wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre. wäre das Wetter ſchön,

in each of which either of (1) may be associated with either of (2).

(*e*) Irregularly however — especially in conversational style — ſo is often omitted (in *A*) and the principal member construed normal, especially in the *conditional* form. As: Wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre (or wäre das Wetter ſchön), ich würde ausgehen, etc.

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. He speaks loud in order that every one may hear him. 2. The ancients were of opinion that the earth stood in the centre of the universe.

3. I was asked in what year I was born. 4. We are convinced that he is our friend. 5. The boy would learn more, if he were more industrious. 6. If I had been unwell, I should have remained at home. 7. Had he not himself said it, we should not believe it. 8. He acts and talks as if he were a rich man; were he really rich, he would not act and talk thus. 9. I doubt whether he will remain long in this house. 10. The physician feared the patient might die of (an *dat.*) his wounds. 11. I should never have thought that you could learn German in so short a time. 12. We wished that everything might remain as it is at present. 13. It is feared that he will not come. 14. The porter maintained that he had carried our luggage to the station. 15. I should have paid the bill, if I had had money enough. 16. Although the hotel was very bad, we should have remained in it, if the landlord had been more polite. 17. Yesterday came the news that the king was dead; but to-day we learn that it is not true. 18. You paid me that money! you have never paid it. 19. It is better that one [should] make one's enemies dumb than one's friends. 20. The old man walks as if he were lame; is he so (es)? 21. That was an act that might have been very dangerous for you. 22. The proverb says, one must strike (ſchmieden) the iron while it is hot. 23. Oh, that the beautiful time of (the) young love might ever remain!

MODAL IDIOMS — SUMMARY.

472. From the examples of the foregoing lesson, it appears that the English auxiliaries *may*, *might*, etc. are to some extent represented in German by the subjunctive mood. These auxiliaries are largely used in English as equivalents for the almost lost — and, it is to be feared, still vanishing — subjunctive. But such uses must be distinguished from those in which the auxiliaries are represented by the corresponding German modal verbs, in their own specific senses. (Less. XXVI.). The subject is, in its details, a large and a difficult one; and the difficulty is mainly in English rather than in German (§ 268 *note*). No full statement will be attempted here; but in illustration, some examples of the German modal verbs will be added.

Observe the frequent use of *have* — the perfect infinitive — to express the lacking past tense in English (§ 470, *e* note).

Note. — These examples are in part taken, by courteous permission, from that rich treasury of German idioms, the "Letters for Self-Instruction," by Dr. S. Deutsch.

1. Dürfen.

Darf ich fragen — bitten?	*may I ask — beg?* etc.
Wenn ich es ſagen darf,	*if I may be allowed to say so.*
Er darf nur befehlen,	*he need but command.*
Er darf ſich darüber nicht wundern,	*he need not wonder at it.*

Es dürfte das zu ſchwer ſein,	*that may be too hard.*
Er dürfte es vergeſſen haben,	*he may have forgotten it.*
Dürfte es nicht zu ſpät ſein?	*might it not be too late?*

2. Können.

Was kann ich dafür?	*how can I help it?*
Ich kann nicht umhin zu lachen,	*I cannot help laughing.*
Ich kann mich irren,	*I may be mistaken.*
Er kann es vergeſſen haben,	*he may have forgotten it.*
Er kann nicht weiter,	*he can go no farther.*
Er kann Franzöſiſch,	*he knows French.*
Das könnte gefährlich ſein,	*that might be dangerous.*
Das konnte gefährlich ſein,	*that might have been dangerous.*

3. Mögen.

Ich habe es nicht tun mögen,	*I did not like to do it.*
Er mag ihn nicht ſehen,	*he does not care to see him.*
Er mag ſich in acht nehmen,	*let him take care.*
Sie mögen gefälligſt warten,	*will you please wait?*
Er mag tun was er will,	*he may do as he pleases.*
Ich möchte wohl wiſſen,	*I should like to know.*
Ich möchte gern — lieber,	*I should like — had rather.*
Faſt möchte ich glauben,	*I am almost inclined to think.*
Ich mochte das nicht glauben,	*I was unwilling to believe that.*
Es mögen jetzt drei Monate ſein,	*it may be now three months.*
Es mag ſein wie du ſagſt,	*it may be as you say.*

4. Müſſen.

Es muß nun einmal ſo ſein,	*it must needs be so.*
Ich habe das Zimmer hüten müſſen,	*I have been obliged to keep my room.*
Ich muß fort,	*I am obliged to go.*
Ich mußte lachen — müßte lachen,	*I could not help laughing — should have to laugh.*
Er muß wohl krank ſein,	*he must surely be sick.*
Sie müſſen wiſſen,	*You must know (I want you to know).*
Wer muß es geweſen ſein?	*who can it have been?*
Er muß noch nicht da ſein,	*he surely cannot yet be there.*
Sie werden kommen, ſie müßten denn verhindert ſein (§ 470 *b*).	*they will come, unless they are prevented.*

5. Sollen.

Was ſoll das?	*what does that mean?*
Was ſoll mir das?	*what is that to me?*
Was ſoll ich?	*what am I to do?*
Du ſollſt es empfinden,	*you shall smart for it.*
Das ſollſt du nicht umſonſt getan haben,	*you shall pay for that.*
Wenn es ſein ſoll,	*if it must be.*
Man ſollte meinen,	*one would think.*
Wie ſollte das möglich ſein?	*how could that be possible?*
Sollte das wahr ſein?	*can that be true?*
Dies ſoll Herr N. ſein,	*this* (*portrait*) *is said to be Mr. N.*
Er ſoll ſehr reich ſein — geweſen ſein,	*he is said to be, to have been, very rich*
Er ſollte das nicht tun,*	*he ought not to do that.*
Er ſollte ein größeres Unglück erleben,	*he was destined to experience*, etc.

6. Wollen.

Willſt du ſtille ſein?	*will you be quiet?*
Wo wollen Sie hin?	*where are you going?*
Er will fort,	*he wants to go.*
Er weiß nicht was er will,	*he doesn't know what he wants.*
Was wollen Sie damit ſagen?	*what do you mean by that?*
Was will das ſagen?	*what does that mean?*
Das will viel ſagen,	*that is saying a great deal.*
Ich wollte eben ſagen,	*I was just going to say.*
Dem ſei wie ihm wolle,	*be that as it may.*
Das will nicht gehen,	*that won't do.*
Das will mir nicht recht gefallen,	*that does not quite please me.*
Ich will nicht hoffen, daß Sie krank ſind,	*I hope that you are not sick.*
Er will uns gekannt haben,	*he pretends to have known us.*
Will's Gott — ſo Gott will,	*please God.*
Das wolle Gott nicht,	*God forbid it.*
Wollte Gott, es wäre wahr,	*would God it were true.*
Wollen (wollten) Sie die Güte haben?	*will* (*would*) *you have the kindness?*

etc. etc.

---

* Observe in this and the next example, that the past subjunctive of ſollen, with present meaning, — as also of wollen — is of the same form as the past indicative.

LESSON LIX.

The Infinitive.

473. The infinitive is the verb-noun. It presents the idea of the verb as abstract (*in-finite*), without affirmation or predicate relations of concord, mood, etc. By its meaning, it is akin to the verb, and can have the usual modifiers of a verb (object, adverb, etc.). By its construction it is a noun, and can stand in the usual relations of a noun. But in consequence of its complex nature it presents, as in English, many peculiarities of construction and idiom.

Note. — The English infinitive has the forms *love*, *to love*, *loving*. The first corresponds to German lieben; the second, to zu lieben; the third, which has no specific correspondence in German, is of the same form as the present participle, and is often confounded with it — a fruitful source of difficulty in English grammar. The student will note carefully the use of this form.

Another source of difficulty is the wrong habit of learning that the English infinitive is, specifically, *to love*. Against both of these errors the student must be guarded, in studying the infinitive in German — or indeed in any other language.

As above remarked, the infinitive is not a mood, and has properly no tense. In its compound form, the perfect infinitive, it expresses completed action; but the *time* is derived from the leading verb.

The infinitive will here be treated under its forms: 1. the simple infinitive (without zu); 2. the infinitive with zu.

474. The simple Infinitive — without zu.

(*a*) The infinitive is used as a noun — usually with article or other attributive (§ 416). As: Das Schwimmen ſtärkt die Glieder; die Kunſt des Schwimmens; ein ewiges Geben; ein Heben und Tragen; das heißt Lügen, etc. — usually translated by English *—ing*.

Note. — But if preceded by an object or adverb adjunct, the infinitive is considered a verb, and it is written without capital initial. As: Zu viel eſſen iſt nicht gut; das hieße Gott verſuchen, *that would be tempting God*, etc.

(*b*) The infinitive is used with the auxiliaries: werden, in future and conditional (§ 173); and the modal auxiliaries (Lesson XXVI).

Note 1. — For the frequent omission of the infinitive after a modal verb, see § 268.

Note 2. — For the infinitive form of the modal, and some other verbs, for the perfect participle, see § 264.

(*c*) The infinitive is used after the verbs: heißen, *to bid*, *order;* helfen, *to help;* laſſen, *to let*, *to cause* (§ 269); lehren, *to teach;* lernen, *to learn;* and the *sense*-verbs, fühlen, *to feel;* hören, *to hear;* ſehen, *to see;* also finden, *to find*. As: Er hieß uns hinausgehen, *he bade us go out;* er hilft mir ſchreiben, *he helps me write;* die Kinder lernen leſen — *learn to read* (*reading*); ich hörte ihn ſingen; ich fand das Buch auf dem Tiſche liegen — *lying*, etc.; ich fühlte den Puls ſchlagen — *beat* or *beating;* laß es gut ſein, *let it be;* laß mich gehen, *let me go;* ich ließ ihn kommen, *I caused him to come* (*sent for him*); or, as § 265, ich habe ihn ſingen hören — tanzen ſehen — kommen laſſen, etc.; or, indefinitely, ich höre ſingen; ich hörte klopfen — *singing*, *knocking*, etc.

NOTE. — With lehren, lernen, sometimes zu is used, if the infinitive have an object. As: Gott lehrt uns durch ſein Wort, auf ihn zu trauen.

(*d*) With fühlen, hören, ſehen, and especially with laſſen, a transitive infinitive will often have the passive sense — the subject of the infinitive action being indefinite, or omitted. As: Ich hörte ihn laut rufen, *I heard* (*some one call him*) *him called;* laß ihn rufen, *let him be called;* ich ſah ihn ſchlagen, *I saw him struck*, etc. (Compare English: *I have heard say*, or *said*).

NOTE. — Ambiguity must be avoided; as, the above examples might read: *I heard him call*, etc. But, in fact, such ambiguity will rarely occur.

This usage is especially frequent with laſſen in reflexive form, as an equivalent for the passive (§ 274). As: er ließ ſich von ſeiner Frau überreden, *he allowed himself to be persuaded by his wife;* das läßt ſich nicht ändern, *that cannot be changed*, etc.

NOTE. — The use of the reflexive ſich, and of von (§ 294), here shows that the pronoun is conceived as object of the leading verb, and that the infinitive has actually become passive in sense — an illustration of the extension of idiomatic usage to the disregard — here to the actual conversion — of the original grammatical form.

(*e*) In certain phrases the infinitive is used with bleiben, *remain;* with the verbs of *motion*, fahren, gehen, reiten, legen; with machen, *to make* (*cause*); nennen, *to call;* with haben; and with tun (nichts als). Thus: Er blieb ſtehen, *he remained standing*, *stopped;* er iſt ſchlafen gegangen, *he has gone to bed;* er legte ſich ſchlafen, *he laid himself down to sleep;* er fährt — geht — reitet — ſpazieren, *he is gone to drive* (or *driving*), etc.; das macht mich lachen, *that makes me laugh;* das nenne ich laufen, *I call that running;* er hat gut reden, *he may well talk;* er hatte ein Meſſer aus der Taſche ſtecken, *he had a knife sticking*, etc.; er tut nichts als reden, *he does nothing but talk*, etc.

(*f*) The infinitive is used (elliptically) in an exclamatory, imperative, or interrogative sense. As: Ich dich verlaſſen! *I forsake you!* Warum aus meinem ſüßen Wahn mich wecken? *why wake me out of*, etc. (See § 336, 2).

For the position of the infinitive, with or without zu, and of successive infinitives, see § 358.

475. The Infinitive with zu.

Note. — As already remarked, this form corresponds to English *to love* — originally a preposition with dative infinitive; but now, in German as in English, with widely extended uses, in many of which the force of the preposition is obscured or lost. The form, in both German and English, is sometimes called *the supine*.

(*a*) The infinitive with zu stands rarely as simple subject; but regularly as logical subject. As: (Das) Reiſen iſt angenehm; but, es iſt angenehm zu reiſen; es iſt nicht gut, zu viel zu eſſen.

(*b*) The infinitive with zu depends on nouns, in various relations. As: Die Kunſt, reich zu werden, *the art of growing rich;* haben ſie Luſt mitzugehen? der Wille, Gutes zu tun; das Vergnügen, andere glücklich zu machen; nichts zu eſſen; ein Haus zu vermieten, *a house to let*, etc.

(*c*) The infinitive with zu depends on adjectives, in various relations. As: Bereit zu ſterben, *ready to die;* ſchwer zu leſen, *hard to read;* ich bin froh, Sie zu ſehen, *glad to see you;* das iſt nicht leicht zu tun, *easy to do* (*to be done*).

(*d*) The infinitive with zu is used with verbs generally, except those mentioned in § 474, and in various objective relations. As: Er fing an zu lachen; wir fürchteten uns, es zu ſagen, *we were afraid to say so;* ich rate dir zu ſchweigen; ich wünſche ſehr, ihn zu ſehen; es freut mich, das zu hören, *I rejoice to hear that;* and, with subject unchanged, equivalent to daß, etc.: er glaubt ein Künſtler zu ſein, *he believes he is an artist.* (See § 478, *a*.)

Note. — Remember that zu stands immediately before the infinitive — and is repeated before each one.

2. With this infinitive, haben and ſein acquire a sort of periphrastic or auxiliary sense. As: Ich habe einen Brief zu ſchreiben, *I have a letter to write*, or *to write a letter;* er hat viel Geld auszugeben, *he has to spend much money;* Sie haben nichts zu fürchten — *nothing to fear, need fear nothing.*

With ſein the infinitive has always a passive tense. As: Es iſt ſehr zu wünſchen, *much to be wished;* das iſt nicht zu glauben, *not to be believed — not credible;* das iſt noch zu tun, *yet to be done*, etc.

Note. — The same use sometimes occurs with ſtehen. As: Das ſteht nicht zu ändern, *that cannot be changed.*

(*e*) The infinitive with zu is also used, elliptically, in an absolute sense. As: Davon nicht zu ſprechen, *not to speak of that;* also in an exclamatory way: Ach! auf das mutige Roß mich zu ſchwingen, *Oh! to spring upon*, etc.

(*f*) The infinitive with zu is used with the preposition anſtatt (ſtatt), ohne, um, when the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the leading verb. The preposition stands at the head of the clause, zu immediately before the infinitive at the end. As: Anſtatt ſeine Arbeit zu tun, ſpielte er den ganzen Tag, *instead of doing his work*, etc.; er redete mich an, ohne mich zu kennen, *without knowing me.*

Note. — Sometimes, after a negative, a clause will follow independently, where ohne . . . zu (or ohne daß, § 477) would be expected. As: niemals kehrte der Vater heim, er brachte euch etwas, *never . . . (but) he brought* (= *without bringiug*) etc.

The use of um — zu requires special notice. (For other prepositions, see § 477).

476. The Infinitive with um — zu.

(*a*) The infinitive with um — zu (§ 281) is the regular form to express *purpose* (*in order to*), when (as above), the subject remains unchanged. As: Ich arbeite früh, um des Mittags mit gutem Appetit zu eſſen; er ſtieg auf den Baum, um beſſer zu ſehen.

Note. — The subjunctive with damit (§ 468, *c*) may be substituted for um — zu; but never um — zu for damit if the subject is changed. See also below § 477, *b*.

(*b*) This form is usual after an adjective or adverb qualified by zu, *too*, or genug, *enough*. As: Er iſt zu jung, um das zu verſtehen; das Zimmer war nicht groß genug, um die Verſammlung zu halten — *not large enough to hold the assembly.*

But in both these cases (*a*, *b*) zu, without um, often occurs.

EXERCISE LIX.

1. He did it in order to frighten me. 2. I never saw this place without thinking of my old friend. 3. I have to write several letters. 4. We eat in order to live; we do not live in order to eat. 5. It was a pleasure to see these happy people. 6. I am ready to follow you everywhere. 7. We are going to walk; will you go with [us]? 8. To err is human; to forgive is divine. 9. He thinks he is (*infin.*) a great man. 10. Instead of working, he went to walk. 11. Without considering the question further, we followed the advice of the physician. 12. Keep your seat (remain sitting). 13. No time is to be lost. 14. The art of flying is yet to be invented. 15. We found him lying under a tree. 16. He was tired of waiting. 17. He has promised us to bring the books with [him]. 18. The servant came to put out the lights. 19. The patient is too weak to undertake such a long journey. 20. He took it without asking me. 21. The count has not money enough to buy this estate. 22. Fishing and bathing in this stream are (*is*) forbidden under (bei) penalty. 23. I have heard tell (ſagen hören) that when (the) sailors see certain birds *flying*, they think they are (*infin.*) near land. 24. Let [there] be now an end of working (*of working be now*, etc.).

LESSON LX.

Infinitive Equivalents.

477. For some cases of infinitive construction in English another form must be used in German. These will be grouped by their English equivalents.

1. The infinitive in *-ing*.

(*a*) Prepositions other than anſtatt (ſtatt), ohne, um, cannot be used directly with the infinitive, as in English. When the infinitive stands in the relation of such preposition, the preposition is first combined, in the leading clause, with da (§ 209), and the infinitive with zu follows in apposition. As: Ich beſtehe darauf, gehört zu werden, *I insist upon* (*it, to be*) *being heard;* ich denke nicht daran, das zu tun, *I don't think of doing that* (*of it, to do that*)*;* ich bin ſtolz darauf, ein Deutſcher zu ſein, *I am proud of being a German;* er iſt damit zufrieden, den zweiten Preis erhalten zu haben, *he is content with having taken* (*to have taken*) *the second prize.*

Note. — Observe that this form applies to *objective noun* clauses only — not to *adverbial* clauses (as *d* below).

(*b*) If the subject of the action dependent on the preposition is not the same as that of the leading verb, instead of the infinitive a noun clause will be used, with daß. As: Ich beſtehe darauf, daß er gehört werde, *I insist on his being heard* (*that he be heard*)*;* er denkt nicht daran, daß Sie das tun werden, *he does not think of your doing that;* er iſt damit zufrieden, daß ſein Sohn den zweiten Preis erhalten hat, *he is content with his son's having taken* (*that his son has taken*, etc.).

Note. — This construction is widely extended in noun clauses expressing various relations. Examples: Ich erkannte ihn daran, daß er ſtammelte, *I knew him by his stammering;* er entging dadurch, daß er den Fluß durchſchwamm, *he escaped by swimming;* er iſt davon krank geworden — ſeine Krankheit rührt daher — daß er ein zu kaltes Bad genommen hat, *from taking too cold a bath;* daß er krank ſei, ſchloß ich daraus, daß er nicht kam — *I concluded, from his not coming*, etc. The mood — indicative or subjunctive — in such clauses will be determined as usual.

In the indirect question, ob will take the place of daß (§ 348). As: Was liegt dir daran, ob man es glaubt oder nicht, *what matters it to you whether*, etc.

(*c*) Similarly, with change of subject, the prepositions anſtatt (ſtatt), ohne, (see § 475, *f*), cannot govern the infinitive, but must be followed by a noun clause, with daß. As: Er ging fort, ohne daß ich ein Wort ſagte, *without my saying a word;* anſtatt daß mein Sohn nach Europa reiſte, reiſte ich ſelbſt nach Afrika, *instead of my son's travelling*, etc.; and, instead of um . . . zu, (§ 476) an adverbial clause, with damit (more rarely daß) expressing *purpose*. See § 468, *c*.

(*d*) Often the English infinitive in *-ing* with a preposition will express an *adverbial* relation, which must then be expanded into an adverb clause, with the proper adverbial conjunction. As: *Before leaving town, I shall call on you*, ehe ich die Stadt verlaſſe (*before I leave*); *after walking* (*having walked*) *a mile, he was tired*, nachdem er eine Meile gegangen war (*after he had walked*, etc.); *by persuading others we persuade ourselves*, indem wir andere überreden, überreden wir uns ſelbſt (*while we persuade*, etc.). See above *a*, note.

(*e*) The infinitive as noun (§ 474, *a*) is used in German only in an abstract way. Generally, whenever a definite action is implied, the English infinitive will in German be expanded into a clause. As: *Your writing that letter was very fortunate*, es war ſehr glücklich, daß Sie jenen Brief ſchrieben; *I did not like your writing the letter*, es gefiel mir nicht, daß, etc.; *his coming is doubtful*, es iſt zweifelhaft, ob er kommen werde (*whether he will come*).

NOTE. — It may again be remarked that the English infinitive in *-ing* in such cases must be carefully distinguished from the participle. (§ 480, 2. *b*.)

2. **478.** The infinitive with *to* will also often require to be translated in German by other forms:

(*a*) Generally, in German, the infinitive with zu cannot be used unless the subject — expressed or implied — of the infinitive action is the same as that of the leading verb. If the subject is changed, instead of the infinitive a noun clause will be used—usually with daß. Thus: Ich wünſche es zu tun; but, ich wünſche, daß er es tue, *I wish him to do it;* ich weiß, daß er ein Dieb iſt, *I know him to be a thief;* die Geſchworenen glaubten, daß er ſchuldig ſei, (or glaubten, er ſei ſchuldig), *the jury thought him to be guilty;* England erwartet, daß jedermann ſeine Pflicht tue, *expects every man to do his duty*. But with exceptions; as, ich bat ihn zu kommen; er zwang uns zu bleiben, etc.

(*b*) In objective indirect questions. As: *He did not know where to go*, er wußte nicht wo er hingehen ſollte (*should go*); *show him how to do it*, zeigen Sie ihm, wie er es machen muß (*how he must do it*); *tell him what to write* — was er ſchreiben ſoll, etc.

(*c*) In descriptive or limiting phrases. As: *There are many things to make us happy*, die uns glücklich machen ſollten; *I am not the man to do that*, der das tun würde (*that would do that*); ein (ſolcher) Mann, der es tun würde, *such a man as to do it; he ran so fast as to*, etc., ſo ſchnell, daß, etc.

(*d*) The infinitive as attributive, or complement, after passive verbs cannot be imitated in German. As: *He was seen to fall*, man ſah ihn fallen;

he was known to be there, man wußte, daß er dort war; *it is believed to be true*, man glaubt, daß es wahr ſei. (See § 275.)

For the infinitive phrase *about to*, see § 465, *c*. For *is to*, see ſollen, § 269.

Remark. — It thus appears that the English infinitive has much more extended idiomatic uses than the German — with advantage, it may be added, in brevity and precision of expression. Also that this is in large part due to the special form in *-ing* — the *participal* or *gerund* infinitive — which has a more distinctly *noun* (abstract) value than the other forms.

THE PARTICIPLES.

479. (*a*) The participles are verb-adjectives, having the meaning and adjuncts of a verb, and the grammatical construction of an adjective. The present participle expresses continuing action, and is always active; the perfect participle expresses completed action and, in transitive verbs, is of passive meaning.

(*b*) Both present and perfect participles follow the usual rules of adjective inflection, and may be used as simple adjectives. When so used they may be compared: Ein bedeutenderer Punkt, *a more important point;* die bewundertſte Weisheit, *the most admired wisdom;* or, they may be used as nouns: Ein Liebender, *a lover;* eine Geliebte, *a beloved one;* der Leſende, *the reader;* das Geleſene, *what is read;* or, as adverbs: Wütend aufgebracht, *madly excited;* ausgezeichnet ſchön, *exceedingly beautiful*, etc. — conforming in all these uses to the adjective, as heretofore explained. Their more special uses will be stated separately:

The Present Participle.

480. The present participle agrees in part with English usage, but in important points there is difference.

1. (*a*) The present participle is used freely as attributive. As: Ein liebender Bruder; die alles erwärmende Sonne, *the all-warming sun*, etc.

(*b*) It is also used appositively. As: Er ſaß weinend da; beide kamen ſchweigend herunter, etc.

(*c*) More rarely, it has predicative force, as of a clause expressing *manner*, or *contemporaneous* action. As: Sich lieblich an ihn ſchmiegend, blickte ſie hinauf, *tenderly leaning on him, she looked up;* uns freundlich grüßend, verließ er uns, *greeting us kindly, he left us.*

2. More usually, the English present participle, used appositively, will be expanded into a clause:

(*a*) When descriptive, into a relative clause. As: *We met a man carrying a fish-rod*, wir trafen einen Mann, der eine Angelrute trug; *a man doing his duty has nothing to fear*, ein Mann, der ſeine Pflicht erfüllt, etc.

(*b*) When implying adverbial relations of *cause*, *time*, etc., the present participle will be expanded into adverbial clauses. As: *This being the case, I had nothing to say*, da dies der Fall war (*as this was the case*); *going to the horsefair, I met the farmer*, indem ich auf den Pferdemarkt ging (*while I was going*, etc.); *the enemy having been beaten fled*, der Feind floh, nachdem er geſchlagen war (*after*, etc.); *walking uprightly we walk surely*, wenn wir aufrecht wandeln (*if we walk*, etc.). Compare § 477, d.

3. As already stated, the present participle is not used in compound forms like *he is laughing*, etc. (see § 462). Nor as a simple predicate, except where the participle is used only as an adjective: Sie iſt reizend, *she is charming;* der Punkt iſt ſehr bedeutend (ein ſehr bedeutender), etc.

4. The following are idiomatic forms:

(*a*) With the verb kommen, *to come*, the perfect participle of a verb of motion is used, instead of the present, to express the manner of coming. As: Er kam gelaufen, *he came running;* ein Vogel kam geflogen, *a bird came flying*, etc. — the action being regarded as *completed.*

(*b*) In a few phrases the present participle seems to have a passive sense: Eine melkende Kuh, *a milking cow;* die betreffende Sache, *the matter concerned.*

(*c*) And, on the other hand, the perfect participle will sometimes have the sense of an active participle. As: Ungegeſſen zu Bette gehen, *without eating;* gottvergeſſene Worte, *God-forgetting words.* (Cf. *a drunken man*, etc.)

The Perfect Participle.

481. 1. Unlike the present participle, the perfect participle is used in compound tenses — with haben or ſein, see §§ 171–2 — and in the passive voice, with werden, see § 174. It is also used freely as a predicate, see § 273. More freely, too, than the present participle, it is used, with its adjuncts, as the equivalent of qualifying clauses.

2. With intransitive verbs the perfect participle, which is passive in transitive verbs, expresses only the condition of completed action. As: Das geſunkene Schiff, *the sunken ship* (*that has sunk*); das Geſchehene, *what has happened;* but thus used only where the verb has the auxiliary ſein (§ 297).

3. Many words in the form of perfect participle are now used — often with special meaning — as mere adjectives. Such are: beredt, *eloquent;* bejahrt, *aged;* bekannt, *known;* erhaben, *exalted;* gelehrt, *learned;* vergnügt, *pleased;* verdient, *meritorious;* vollkommen, *perfect*, and others.

4. The perfect participle is used elliptically in *absolute construction.* As: Friſch gewagt, halb gewonnen, *well begun, half done;* geſetzt, ich tat es, *suppose I did it;* das abgerechnet, *that not counted*, etc. See § 446 (but the case will sometimes be nominative).

5. After heißen, *to be called*, the perfect participle, implying a completed action, is used as with the sense of an infinitive. As: Das heißt ſchnell gelaufen, *I call that quick running* (*quickly run*).

For the past participle, exclamatory, as imperative, see § 336, 2.

For its use with kommen, and other seemingly active senses, see § 480, 4.

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

482. The so-called future passive participle — or *gerundive* — is formed, after the analogy of the present participle, from the passive use of the infinitive with zu (§ 475, 2), and has the form of the present participle, preceded by zu. Thus: Dieſe Tat iſt zu loben — *is to be praised*, hence, eine zu lobende Tat, *an action to be praised;* eine nicht zu ertragende Hitze, *a heat not to be borne.* It is formed only from transitive verbs, and is used only attributively, and rarely.

ADJUNCTS OF THE PARTICIPLE.

483. For the position of the adjuncts of the participle, see § 353. This construction, often extended to extravagant length, is required always if the participle is attributive; but the appositive participle will sometimes stand first. The participle with adjuncts will generally be appositive in English, and will often need to be expressed by a relative clause. Examples: Der Blick von dieſem 7000 Fuß über dem Meeresſpiegel ſtehenden Turme in die rings umher liegende Gebirgswüſte, *the view from this tower, which stands 7000 feet above the sea level, into the wilderness of mountains which lies around;* die höchſte Kuppel gehört der durch die Kaiſerin Helene gebauten Kirche an, *the highest cupola belongs to the church* (*which was*) *built by*, etc.; der unter der Laſt des Kreuzes zum Tode Geführte, *he who was led to death beneath the burden of the cross;* in dem einſt durch Aſche und glühende Lava verſchütteten Herculanum . . . befinden ſich . . . aus farbigen Steinen zuſammengeſetzte unſeren Stickereien ähnliche Gemälde, *in H., which was once buried by ashes*, etc., *are found* (*mosaic*) *paintings, which are composed of colored stones, like our embroidery*, etc.

Such examples are not to be imitated by the student.

In the following examples (appositive) the participle precedes: Bald erbittert durch das Ziſchen und Geſchrei, ſtürzt der Stier, *soon exasperaded by — the bull rushes*, etc.; hier möchte man wohnen, umgeben von liebenden Herzen, *here one would wish to live, surrounded by loving hearts;* but it usually follows.

EXERCISE LX. A.

1. He insists upon your obeying his orders. 2. His father desired him to come home immediately. 3. The servant knew it to be his duty. 4. She declared him to be a fool. 5. The old shepherd came down the hill, leading his young child and attended by his faithful dog. 6. She was acquainted with the world, having lived in her youth about (at) the court. 7. Having missed the train, we were obliged to return home. 8. Having taken leave, we went away. 9. Wishing to see him, I went to his house early in the morning. 10. He died at the age of ninety (years), beloved and esteemed by all. 11. We saw a woman selling apples. 12. Having forgotten his whip, the coachman went back to the stable to fetch it. 13. While speaking with me, he was called out. 14. I gave him the letter without saying a word. 15. Having paid my bill, I ordered the porter to carry down my luggage. 16. A meritorious man does not always receive the deserved reward. 17. The long-expected news has come at last. 18. We saw the rising sun from the top of the mountain. 19. He saved himself by jumping through the window. 20. The general took the town after having bombarded it [for] three weeks. 21. It was not a learned man that taught me reading and writing. 22. Excuse me for speaking (*that*, etc.) to you in my mother-tongue. 23. A righteous man, fighting with misfortune, is a glad sight for the gods. 24. We have often heard that song *sung* in England.

B. (LESSONS LIX–LX.)

1. Have (laſſen) the coachman *called*, and the carriage driven up (vor). 2. We have allowed ourselves to be deceived. 3. These books are to be sold. 4. He did it without my knowing it. 5. Many a man loses his good name by visiting bad company. 6. He began by (mit) asking me for an alms. 7. I do not doubt (an) your keeping your word. 8. He wondered at (über) my still sleeping after 9 o'clock. 9. It matters (ankommen) not what we learn, but how we learn it. 10. A man came running up in greatest haste. 11. My brother does not think of (an) leaving to-day. 12. I have nothing against your going a-fishing to-morrow. 13. I knew nothing of his being ill. 14. Looking down into the water, we saw a sunken boat *lying* on the rocks. 15. Going to the town I met a farmer. 16. I

met a farmer going to town. 17. Don't you see that he *is laughing* at us? 18. My coming yesterday was very opportune. 19. He is not a man ever to betray his friends. 20. Before opening the letter, he sat weeping a long time. 21. He did not know what to do. 22. We have many things to think of (an) to-day. 23. The balloon was seen suddenly to fall from a great height. 24. Granted that I said it; I only resented an intolerable (not-to-be-borne) insult.

LESSON LXI.

Adverbs.

484. For the forms of the adverb, comparison, etc., see Less. XXXIV.; derivation and composition, §§ 397, 401; position, § 355; adverbs as prefixes, § 377; distinction from uninflected adjective, § 449, 2.

The use of adverbs in German corresponds, generally, to their use in English. A few special cases will be briefly noted.

(*a*) Adverbs are sometimes used before prepositions, forming a kind of compound preposition. As: Mitten um den Leib, *midway around the body;* mitten in dem Kriege, *in the midst of the war;* bis an die Stadt, *as far as the town;* bis aufs äußerſte, *to the utmost.*

(*b*) Or after a preposition, forming a compound adverb phrase. As: Von oben, *from above;* von unten, *from below;* für jetzt, *for the present*, etc.

(*c*) The adverb her denotes motion toward the speaker; hin, motion from the speaker. As: Wo kommen Sie her? *where do you come from?* wo gehen Sie hin? *where are you going* (*to*)*?* Or in composition: Woher kommen Sie? woher gehen Sie? They often stand with a preposition phrase, in many cases where they can hardly be translated in English. As: Er kam vom Felde her, *he came* (*in*) *from the field;* er ging nach der Stadt hin, *he went* (*away*) *toward the town.*

(*d*) Also, in composition with a preposition, her and hin will repeat the force of the preposition, originally with emphasis, but often only as an idiomatic phrase. As: In die Stadt hinein, *into the city;* aus der Stadt heraus, *out of the city;* um die Stadt herum, *around the city*, etc.

For her and hin, forming verb-prefixes — usually in *literal* sense — see § 377, *c*.

For the adverbs da (dar), wo (wor), hier (hie) in composition, in place of pronoun cases, see § 401, 2, and § 457.

ADVERB IDIOMS.

485. Some adverbs have particular idiomatic uses which can hardly be represented by English equivalents. In some cases the force is purely *modal*, expressing attitude of mind or feeling, such as is indicated in English largely by the tone of voice only. In other cases, special senses arise out of particular combinations. Such idioms can be learned only by practice. A few are added for illustration.

1. **Auch,** *also, even.*

Sie ſind auch ſo einer, *you are one of them, too.* — Ich kenne ihn auch nicht, *I do not know him either.* — So ſehr er auch lachte, *however much he laughed.* — Wer es auch ſei, *whoever it may be.* — Wanken auch die Berge ſelbſt? *do even the mountains shake?* — Wenn (ob) es auch wahr wäre, *even if it were true.*

2. **Doch,** *though.*

Doch, when used as an adversative particle, has a stronger accent. As: Er iſt geſchickt und hat doch einen Fehler gemacht, *he is clever and, nevertheless (in spite of that), he has made a mistake.* — Er iſt reich und doch iſt er unglücklich, *he is rich and, nevertheless, he is unhappy.* — Er hat es doch geſagt, *for all that, he has said it.* — Ich bat ihn, doch wollte er nicht, *I begged him, but he would not.* Dennoch is often used, emphatically, in this sense.

Doch sometimes stands, elliptically, after a negative: Sie kommen nicht? Doch, — *you are not coming? Yes, I am.*

Unaccented doch expresses a wish, a hope, a supposition: Sie ſind doch wohl? *I hope you are well?* Sie wiſſen doch, daß er fort iſt, *I suppose you know that he is gone.* — Machen Sie mir doch dieſe Freude, *pray, give me this pleasure.* — Wäre ich doch zwanzig Jahre, *would that I were twenty years old.* — Hätte er doch geſprochen, *would that he had spoken.* — Habe ich es doch geſagt! *didn't I say so!*

3. **Erſt,** *first.*

Nun erſt geſtand er ſeinen Fehler ein, *not till then did he confess his fault.* — Ich habe ihn erſt geſtern geſehen, *I saw him but yesterday.* — Ich hatte erſt dreißig Seiten geleſen, *I had read only (just) thirty pages.* — Wir ſind erſt am Fuße des Berges, *we are only at the foot of the mountain.* — Er wird erſt übermorgen ankommen, *he will not arrive till the day after to-morrow.* — Das braucht nicht erſt bewieſen zu werden, *that requires no proof.*

4. **Gern,** *willingly;* **lieber,** *rather;* **am liebſten.**

Ich tue es gern — recht gern, *I do it with pleasure — with great pleasure.* — Er hört ſich gern reden, *he loves to hear himself talk.* — Ich will es gern glauben, *I am quite willing to believe it.* — Ich habe es nicht gern getan, *I did not do it intentionally.* — Ich möchte keinen gern beleidigen, *I should not like to offend any one.* — Dieſe Pflanze wächſt gern in ſandigem Boden, *gaws well in sandy soil.* — Ich trinke lieber roten Wein als weißen, *I prefer red wine to white.* — Wir bleiben lieber zu Hauſe, *we had rather stay at home.* — Am liebſten wäre es mir, wenn Sie mich gleich bezahlten, *I should much prefer that you paid me at once.*

5. **Ja,** *yes, indeed.*

Ja, hören Sie einmal, *just listen to what I say.* — Warum fragſt du? du weißt es ja, *why do you ask? surely you know it.* — Sie ſehen ja ganz blaß aus! *dear me, you look quite pale!* — Bringen Sie das Buch ja mit, *be sure to bring the book with you.* — Er iſt ja ſchon fort, *he is already gone, you know.* — Er iſt ja verrückt, *why, he is crazy.*

6. **Noch,** *still, yet.*

Sind Sie noch immer krank? *are you still ill?* — Zwölf oder noch mehr, *twelve or even more.* — Er war noch vor einigen Tagen hier, *he was here but a few days ago.* — Ich tue es noch heute, *I'll do it this very day.* — Er ſoll noch kommen, *he is still to come.* — Kommt er noch nicht? *is he not yet coming?* Bitte, noch eine Taſſe Thee, *thank you for another cup of tea.*

7. **Nun,** *now, well.*

Er mag nun kommen oder nicht, *whether he come or not.* — Wir kamen um zwei Uhr an, und nun ruhten wir aus, *we arrived at two o'clock, and then we rested.* — Nun lebte aber damals ſein Vater noch, *but then his father was still alive.* — Wir haben es geſehen, und nun ſind wir überzeugt, *we have seen it, now we are convinced.* — Es iſt nun einmal ſo, *well, it can't be helped.* — Nun, hatte ich es nicht vorhergeſagt? *well, had I not foretold it?* — Nun, das iſt ſehr natürlich, *why, that's very natural.*

8. **Schon,** *already, even.*

Ich warte nun ſchon drei Jahre, *I have been waiting these three years.* — **Schon der Gedanke** iſt ein Verbrechen, *the very thought is a crime.* — Schon um der Ehre willen müſſen wir es tun, *we must do it, were it merely for the sake of honor.* — Schon gut, *all right.* — Ich werde es ihm ſchon ſagen, *I shall tell him, don't be afraid.* — Schon vor Tagesanbruch waren ſie auf den Beinen, *even before the break of day they were on their legs.*

9. **So,** *so.*

Wie der Vater, ſo iſt der Sohn, *like father, like son.* — So eine Geſchichte iſt unglaublich, *such a story*, etc. — Wie iſt die Welt doch ſo ſchön, *how beautiful the world is!* — Er iſt fort. So! iſt es möglich, *indeed! is it possible?* — So oder ſo — es muß doch getan werden, *one way or the other, it must be done.*

As general connective, § 328: omitted, § 471, *e*. Also in subordinate construction: — As relative (archaic): Die, ſo rechtſchaffen ſind, *they that are righteous.* As correlative: So gelehrt er iſt, ſo beſcheiden iſt er auch, *he is as modest as learned;* ſo groß die Vorbereitung auch war, ſo, etc., *great as was the preparation, yet*, etc. As conditional (archaic): So der Herr will, *if the Lord will;* and in phrases like ſobald, ſolange, etc. — *as soon* (*as*), with als omitted.

NOTE. — Such phrases are written in one word (ſobald, etc.) when conjunctions, but separately when adverbs.

10. **Wohl,** *well, surely.*

Heute nicht, aber wohl morgen, *not to-day, but may-be to-morrow.* — Das iſt wohl wahr, aber, *that may be so, but.* — Das iſt wohl nicht möglich, *that is scarcely possible.* — Wir haben es wohl gehört, aber nicht verſtanden, *we have heard it indeed, but not understood it.* — Sie glaubten wohl, ich hätte nichts zu tun, *no doubt, you thought I had nothing to do.*

11. **Nicht,** *not* (redundant).

The negative is sometimes used when not in English, as: — in exclamation; wie oft hat er nicht geſagt, *how often has he (not) said* (compare: *charm he never so wisely*) — or after verbs of *hindering*, etc.: ich kann nicht hindern, daß ſie nicht hören, *I cannot prevent them from hearing* (Latin, *ne audiant*).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

486. Adverbial clauses are introduced by subordinating conjunctions (§ 332) expressing various relations.

The relations of *time*, *cause*, *condition* are nearly related, and easily run into each other. The most important uses are:

1. *Time.*

(*a*) Als, *as, when*, expresses a definite past time. As: Als ich heute morgen aufſtand, *when I rose this morning*, etc.; als ich nach London kam, beſuchte er mich ſogleich, *when I came—he visited me at once.* Da is also sometimes used in this sense.

(*b*) Wenn, *when, whenever*, expresses time indefinite, future, or contingent. As: Wenn er nach London kam, beſuchte er mich immer, *whenever he came*, etc. Wenn er kommt, wird er uns beſuchen, *when he comes, he will visit us.*

NOTE.—So is unusual after clauses of *time*. With ſo inserted, the last example would be *if he comes*, etc. See § 328, note.

(*c*) Wann, *when*, is properly interrogative, and, when used as a conjunction, introduces an indirect question. As: Wann kommt er? *when will he come?* ich weiß nicht, wann er kommen wird, *I dont know when*, etc.

(*d*) Wie, *as*, is sometimes used for als, in more lively expression: Wie er mich ſah, kannte er mich, *as* (*soon as*) *he saw me, he knew me.* (See 3, *b*).

(*e*) Indem, *while, as*, expresses simultaneous time, but more frequently the occasion or ground of an action. As: Indem ich da ſtand, trat ein Fremder zu mir, *while I stood there*, etc. Er ging gleich wieder weg, indem er mich nicht zu Hauſe fand, *as he did not find me at home.* (See (*d*) below.)

(*f*) Während, *while*, expresses more definitely contemporaneous and continued time. As: Während der Krieg dauerte, *while the war lasted;* er ſchrieb, während ich las, *while I was reading.*

NOTE.—Während is originally a present participle, like our *during*.

2. *Cause.*

(*a*) Weil, *because*, expresses a real, definite cause. As: Die Fiſche können nicht gehen, weil ſie keine Füße haben, *because they have no feet.*

(*b*) Da, *as, since*, expresses a logical cause, or reason. As: Da der Wind im Oſten iſt, ſo wird es wohl trocken bleiben, *since the wind is from the east*, etc.; da der König nicht acht auf ihn gab, fing er ſelbſt an zu reden, *as the king paid no attention to him*, etc. (§ 328, note). See also 1, *a*, above.

NOTE.—*Since*, expressing *time*, is ſeitdem, (ſeit); *as*, expressing *manner*, is wie. As: Ich bin unwohl geweſen, ſeitdem wir uns ſahen, *since we saw one another;* er ſpricht (ſo), wie er denkt, *he speaks as he thinks.*

(*c*) Nun, usually an adverb, is sometimes used in sense of nun daß, *now that, since* (*now*). As: Nun er da iſt, ſterbe ich ruhig, *since* (*now that*) *he is here, I can die in peace.*

(*d*) Indem (*e* above), is more slightly causal, and is often rendered by English participle (§ 480, 2, *b*).

Note. — These causal relations — subordinate — must not be confounded with the coördinating denn, *for* (§ 326). For the distinction of the conjunctive from the adverbial use of da, etc., see § 351, 2.

3. *Condition.*

(*a*) Wenn, *if*, is the regular conditional conjunction. For its omission, see § 350, 2. For ſo, see § 485, 9; also note to 1 above.

(*b*) Wo, is sometimes used in a condition, especially in phrases like woſern, (*in so far*) *in case that;* or elliptically; as, wo nicht, *if not;* wo möglich, *if possible*, etc.; and, colloquially, often in the sense of wenn, or als, *when.*

(*c*) For the conditions als ob, als wenn, *as if*, see § 470, *d*.

4. *Concession.* The concession of a condition — *though*, *although*, *even if*, *however* — is expressed by wenn . . . gleich, wenn . . . ſchon, wenn . . . auch, ob . . . auch, wie . . . auch; or by obgleich, obſchon, obwohl — which also may be written separately, with intervening words. As: Wenn das gleich wahr wäre, *even if that were true;* wie es auch ſein mag, *however it may be;* obgleich er ſein Vermögen verloren hat, *though he has lost his property*, etc.

For the corresponding relative forms, wer . . . auch, etc., see § 459, 3, *b*.

Note. — The conditional wenn, or ob, may sometimes be omitted, as § 350, 2. As: Hat er gleich ſein Vermögen verloren; wäre es auch wahr, etc. And sometimes in poetry, auch, gleich, etc., will be omitted. As: Ob der See uns ſcheidet, ſo ſind wir eines Stammes doch, *though the lake divide us, we are yet of one race.*

For the correlative clauses of comparison, je — deſto, see § 334.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. I do not remember where I saw him last. 2. Now that he is dead, all men begin to praise him. 3. I have never liked him since I have found out what sort of a man he is. 4. Do not judge him until you know more of the matter. 5. He cannot walk, because he has broken his leg. 6. He looked as if he were thinking of past times. 7. He took leave, inviting me in the (aufs) most friendly manner to dine with him the next day. 8. He listened most attentively, whilst I translated the letter to him. 9. Although he is not a rich man, he gives more to the poor than many a rich [one]. 10. Although he is our friend, we are nevertheless dissatisfied with what he has done. 11. As soon as I arrived in Munich, I went out to look at the picture-galleries. 12. Whenever he passed by, he looked up at (nach) the window where the old gentleman usually sat. 13. Before going home, I must go into another shop in order to buy an umbrella for my sister. 14. As the gentleman was introduced to me as an American, I ad-

dressed him in the English language. 15. The longer I know him, the more I love and respect him. 16. That one language is more adapted to (zur) music than another is surely incontestable. 17. In order that a mistake might (können) never occur, the landlord himself looked after even the smallest accounts. 18. Had you only told me that you needed money, how gladly I would have lent you some (welches)! 19. Only yesterday have I learned what the whole town *has known* for (ſeit) several months. 20. Well, I am sorry; but it cannot be helped (ändern laſſen). 21. He would not tell where he came from nor where he was going. 22. The fugitive ran straight into the forest (hinein) without once looking behind. 23. I should have liked best (*to me*, etc.) to stay at home in (bei) this bad weather. 24. I know a boy who *has been studying* German six months and yet makes mistakes in every exercise.

Repetition. — Summary.

487. A grammatical term standing in a common relation to several other terms must either precede them all or follow them all. Otherwise the common term must be repeated.

1. This principle, which is of general application, will be illustrated here only in the following important cases.

(*a*) *Subject and verb.*
(*b*) *Object and verb.*
(*c*) *Auxiliary, with participle or infinitive.*

2. (*a*) Exception will regularly occur in a normal clause connected by und, etc. (§ 345, *a*), to an inverted clause. Here, generally, the subject will not be repeated.

(*b*) If the objects are in different cases, each must always be expressed.

3. Other seeming exceptions will be determined by emphasis, etc., especially in poetry.

Note. — The principle seems to be that the *line of reference shall always be in the same direction*. It is the same in English as in German. In the following examples — which might be extended indefinitely — observe that sometimes repetition is required in English when not in German; or the opposite, the principle remaining the same.

Examples. — 1. (*a*) *Subject and verb.* **Er** nahm die Diktatur an, zog gegen die Feinde und erfocht einen Sieg (subject not repeated, but:) **Er** verließ ſein Landgut und beim Weggehen ſagte **er**, etc. Mit furchtbarer Strenge unterdrückte und beſtrafte **der Kaiſer** dieſe Aufſtände, *the emperor suppresed and punished*, etc. Der Pfarrer, **der** ein rechtlicher Mann war, den Flüchtling aufnahm und verſteckte, *who was . . . and* (*who*) *received and concealed*, etc.; and, as the exception (2, *a*); Darnach ging Guſtav nach Schweden und ſuchte das Volk zu gewinnen. Doch merkte er nichts und ging weiter, etc.

(*b*) *Object and verb.* Er hat **mich** geſehen, aber nicht gegrüßt; but: Er ſah mich, grüßte mich aber nicht. Im letzten Kriege haben **mir** die Feinde das Feld verwüſtet, die Ernte zerſtört, den Hof verbrannt, etc. Der Pfarrer, der **den Flüchtling** aufnahm und verſteckte, und endlich rettete, etc.,—*who received, concealed and finally saved the fugitive*, etc. But with changed case (2, *b*): Der Gläubiger hatte das Recht, dem Schuldner alles zu nehmen, und **ihn** als Sklaven zu verkaufen.

(*c*) *Auxiliary.* Ein Bild, welches über ihrem Bette gehangen, und an welches ſie oft ihr Gebet gerichtet **hatte.** Ich hoffe, daß die Nachwelt dasjenige unterſuchen und prüfen, auch beurteilen **wird,** was, etc. Einige meinten, man **ſolle** das Korn dem armen Volke entweder ſchenken oder ſehr billig verkaufen,—**should** *either give the corn to the poor people, or sell* **it to them,** etc. (See note). But with repetition: **Sie durften** nicht in den Senat kommen, aber an der Türe **durften ſie** ſitzen, etc.

The examples might be extended to embrace also other elements of the sentence—the principle being everywhere the same.

REMARK.—Examples under (3) would belong to rhetoric rather than to grammar. But in reading, and especially in poetry, students should be taught to account for every departure from the ordinary forms; for herein often lies much of the force and beauty of expression.

(*d*) Also, the common term must have the *same form* in each of the several relations. This rule will often require repetition in German when not necessary in English. As: *With his wife and child*, mit ſeiner Frau und ſeinem Kinde; *with or without him*, mit ihm oder ohne ihn; *we had followed and overtaken him*, wir waren ihm gefolgt und hatten ihn überholt, etc.

NOTE.—In general, special emphasis may cause repetition when not otherwise necessary; but this too, belongs to rhetoric rather than to grammar.

Idiom.—Concluding Remarks.

488. Outside of and beyond all that can be taught by formal grammar, lies the subject of *idiom*—that is to say, that peculiarity of usage, in word or phrase, which is characteristic of every language, and which, more than anything else, is the expression of its genius and its power. A word, or a phrase, may be entirely grammatical, yet wholly unidiomatic; and a form of expression, perfectly idiomatic in one language, would often be ludicrous in another. This *idiom* is comprehended in an immense body of usages, often lying beyond the range of analysis or explanation—often

seemingly capricious — sometimes broad and rude, sometimes delicate and subtle — yet constituting the most characteristic features of every language and of the difference between languages, as well as the most interesting subject of study in each. This idiom, with the *Sprachgefühl* which is its only sure touchstone, cannot be taught by any rules, or learned by any systems of lessons, written or oral. It can be acquired only as one, by reading or by association, learns to think one's self *into* the language, and thus to think and to feel *in it*. The grammar can only guard against formal error, and prepare the way for this higher mastery. It is a mistake to suppose that any mode of instruction can take the place of wide and sympathetic reading, or of an actual residence among those who speak the language.

Still, it may be remarked that idiom can be properly studied only *through idiom*. We shall learn the force of the German idiom only by comparison with our own. Hence it is to be insisted upon, that in all the processes of language study the English idiom should be held sacred, as our own *norm* of thought and of comparison. No English forms should be allowed in the study of German, for example, that are not pure, idiomatic English. *Mere paraphrase is not translation*, and it degrades the idiom of both languages. Idiomatic German should be made to give idiomatic English, and *vice versâ*. Only thus can the full force of idiomatic difference be perfectly understood, and the foreign idiom be surely acquired. And it should never be forgotten that — within the limits of school and college at least — one chief end of the study of a foreign language is a better knowledge and mastery of our own.

CONTINUOUS PASSAGES

FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN.

Remark.

The following continuous passages are added, for general review.

Other exercises may easily be made as required, by paraphrasing any text in hand, and gradually varying more and more the form of construction, expression, etc., of the original.

In order not to swell the size of the book, and also because the student is now supposed to have a dictionary in hand, these exercises are not included in the vocabularies to the grammar.

FIRST COURSE.

I.

Two boys were taking[1] a walk and came to a nut-tree, under which they found a nut which they wished to divide. The elder opened it, and left the other[2] his choice, whether he would[3] have the inside[4] or the outside[4]. He chose the outside and got only the shell. "The next time,"[5] said he to himself, "I shall be wiser." Then they came to a garden and found a ripe peach. "Which will[6] you have now?" said the elder again. "The inside," said the little[7] [fellow], and so he got the stone. This story teaches that experience is only then useful when we[8] employ it with judgment.

[1] ſpazieren gehen. [2] dative. [3] wollte, subjunctive. [4] inner, äußer, as nouns. [5] Mal. [6] wollen, use second pers. sing. [7] adj. as noun. [8] man.

II.

When the celebrated Franklin was yet a youth of eighteen years, he once visited a well-known[1] preacher in Boston. The latter[2] received him kindly, and as he was going away, accompanied him a short distance[3] from the house. The door, however,[4] was so low that a grown[5] man had to[6] bend[7] in order to [8] pass through. While Franklin was speaking, and not noticing[9] the beam, he struck[10] his head sharply against it. "Ah," said the old [man], "you are young, and have the world yet before you; remember this accident. Bend when you should, and you will save yourself[11] many a hard blow in life."[12]

---

[1] bekannt. [2] demons. pron. [3] Strecke. [4] aber. [5] erwachſen. [6] müſſen. [7] reflexive. [8] um ... zu. [9] verb-tense: Acht geben auf. [10] ſtoßen. [11] dative. [12] article.

III.

One day,[1] as an ass laden with salt was passing[2] through a stream, he stumbled and fell into the water. After he had risen[3] and gone a little way, he felt that his burden became lighter; for a great part of the salt had melted. "So,"[4] thought he—for he was only an ass—whenever[5] I go through the water, I will lie down."

The next day,[6] laden with sponges which his master was carrying to market,[7] he came to the same stream. Thinking[8] himself now very wise, he let himself purposely down into the water, as[9] he had resolved. When he tried to rise, the sponges had become so heavy that he could[10] not, and so the poor ass was drowned.

---

[1] Indef. time. [2] gehen. [3] aufſtehen (omit auxiliary). [4] Alſo. [5] indefinite. [6] definite time. [7] article. [8] *As he*, etc., reason. [9] manner. [10] (it).

IV.

Diogenes, one of the seven wise men[1] of Greece, lived in a tub. King Alexander the Great, who had heard-tell[2] much of him, thought it worth the trouble[3] to visit the philosopher. When the latter[4] saw the king, with his splendid retinue, coming[5] up to him, he was lying in his tub, and warming[6] himself in the sun. Instead of rising[7] and greeting the king, he remained lying[7] still. After the king had looked at him a while, he said: "I see, Diogenes, you seem to be very poor; is there[8] any petition you would like[9] to make to me? If it[10] is possible, it[11] shall be granted you." "I do not want anything," replied the sage; "but if you will[12] do me a favor, step a little out of *my*[13] sun."

---

[1] Adj. noun. [2] ſagen hören. [3] genitive. [4] dem. pron. [5] infinitive. [6] verb-tense; add eben. [7] infinitive. [8] gibt es. [9] mogen. [10] impersonal. [11] demonstrative. [12] wollen. [13] dative pron.

V.

Baron[1] Münchausen relates the following[2] story; One evening, as I was riding in deepest winter towards a little village in Russia, darkness overtook me. Nowhere was a house to be seen.[3] The whole road lay buried under a deep snow. Tired of riding,[4] I at last dismounted and tied my horse to[5] a post which stuck out of the snow. Then I laid myself down, and slept till it was bright day.

When I awoke, I was lying on the ground, but I could nowhere find my horse. At last I heard him neighing[6] above me, and then I discovered that he was hanging to[5] the church-steeple. The snow had melted during the night, and what I had taken for a post was the steeple one hundred feet high.[7] I took a pistol, shot through the halter, and brought the horse down. Then I continued my journey, without stopping[8] longer in the village.

[1] Article. [2] no article. [3] idiom. [4] infin. noun. [5] an — case? [6] infinitive. [7] attributive. [8] ſich aufhalten, infin.

VI.

A blind man, who possessed a large sum of money, determined,[1] for fear of being[2] robbed, to hide his money where no one could[3] find it. Accordingly he went by[4] night into his garden and buried it in the neighborhood of a large tree. But one of his neighbors had watched him at[5] his work, and the next night he dug up[6] the hidden treasure and carried it off.[7] The blind man soon missed his money, and at once conceived[8] suspicion against this neighbor.

One evening, as they were talking together, he told him[9] confidentially what a sly plan he had adopted to[10] keep his money, and asked him whether he would advise him to bury a second sum in the same place. The neighbor, greedy to get a still larger sum, told him he could[3] do nothing better with it; and the same night he brought back what he had already stolen, that[11] the blind man might not miss it. Thus the blind man succeeded[12] in recovering[13] his money, and the other, instead of getting all, lost all.

[1] aus. [2] infinitive. [3] indirect (as *he* thought). [4] in the. [5] bei. [6] heraus. [7] davon. [8] faſſen. [9] demonst. [10] um .. zu. [11] damit. [12] impersonal with dat. [13] infinitive.

VII.

When the celebrated Wallenstein was a student at[1] the University of[2] Altorf, he was always the first in the wild tricks of the students. Just at this[3] time a new *carcer* was built. The rector of the university, desiring[4] that it might[5] remain long unoccupied, declared that the prison should[6] be named after him who should[6] first[7] come[5] into it as [a] prisoner. For fear of *such* a disgrace, the students were restrained[9] for a long time, and the carcer remained empty.

At last, however, Wallenstein was condemned to this punishment. He had a favorite dog that followed him[10] everywhere; and as he was about[11] to be shut in, he begged (for) permission to take his dog in[12] with [him].

This was granted, whereupon Wallenstein suddenly seized the dog and pushed him[13] in before him.[14] So the carcer was called the Dog, and thus this future general practiced in his youth the art of outwitting[15] his enemies.

[1] auf. [2] zu, or omit. [3] At (zu) just this time. [4] adv. clause. [5] subjunctive. [6] note different uses of *should*. [7] zuerſt. [8] perf. part. as noun. [9] zurückhalten. [10] case? [11] im Begriff zu. [12] hinein. [13] demonst. [14] reflex. [15] infinitive.

VIII.

In a certain town [there] lived three brothers. They heard [it] said[1] one day that the king of another country had[2] a daughter who was in the power of a magician with seven heads, and that the king had said he would give her for[3] a wife to any one[4] who could bring her back to him. They all[5] wished to try to deliver her, and set out together; but finally they had to[6] separate, and then each one tried alone to find the magician's castle. After many days two of the brothers became tired and went home again without having[7] heard anything more; but the third found the castle, stepped in,[8] and there was the king's daughter sitting[9] all alone.

She told him that the magician would certainly return soon, and that he would kill and eat him if he could.[10] And in [a] short time came the magician and tried at once to kill the young man with his sword; but he[11] defended himself well and cut off six of the magician's heads. Then the magician begged for a moment's[12] rest, and at once all his heads came back to him. But the young man did not lose courage, and finally succeeded[13] in cutting[14] off all his[15] heads. Then the magician was really dead, and the princess went back to her father's palace with the young man.

[1] infinitive. [2] following clauses all indirect. [3] zur. [4] that one. [5] they wished all. [6] müſſen. [7] infinitive. [8] compound. [9] tense. [10] [it], subjunctive. [11] this (one) however. [12] accusative. [13] impers. [14] infin. [15] dem. pronoun.

IX.

There was once a king who had three sons, but he was blind, and though he consulted all the[1] physicians that came to that country, no one had been[2] able to cure him. One day there came one who said: "There is no remedy that can cure the king except the water from the fountain in the garden of Queen Angelica." "I will go to seek it," said the eldest son. He started and searched [for] a long time, but without finding any one who could[3] tell him where this fountain was.[3] After a year had passed without news of him, the second son said he would go and get the water, and also bring back his brother. He too searched in vain; he could neither find his brother nor hear anything about the queen.

At last the king's youngest son said he would[3] try to find his brothers, and get the water which would[3] cure his father. The king was unwilling to let[4] him go, but finally consented; and the prince was told[5] in a dream where he should[3] seek the queen's garden with the fountain, and also how, with the aid of the same water, he could[3] find his two brothers. He found the garden and the enchanted fountain, took as much of the water as he could carry, then easily found (he) his brothers and went back with them to the palace; and the water[6] he brought did[7] indeed cure the king, as[8] the physician had said.

[1] omit. [2] idiom. [3] indirect. [4] gehen laſſen. [5] impersonal passive. [6] relative pron. verb-tense. [8] wie.

X.

There was once a king's daughter who *had* fallen in love[1] with a poor young man, and since her father would not consent[2] to her marrying him, they were married secretly. When the king found it out, he drove her away from the palace, and *the two* fled into a forest and lived there for many years. The husband used to go[3] hunting[4] daily to[5] get something to[5] eat, and one day he saw on a tree a large black bird[6] he did not remember having[7] ever seen before. He tried to kill it, and immediately it changed[8] into a magician with seven heads, who came down and began to fight with him, soon killed him and then disappeared. Now this man had a son, who, having[9] heard from his mother how his father had[10] been killed, wished, if[11] possible, to avenge his[12] death. He lived there till he was twenty years old without seeing the magician, and began to believe he never should[13] see him.

But one day, when he was sitting under the same tree, he saw the black bird flying[14] through the air, and soon the magician stood before him and said: "I killed[15] your father, and now I will kill you too." Hardly had the magician said these words when a lion appeared and attacked him and quickly killed him. Then the lion changed into a beautiful lady, who told the young man that she was[16] a fairy, and that the magician had[16] been her greatest enemy, and that it was[16] only possible for her[17] to overcome him under that tree, where he never came[16] when he thought she could[16] be there. And because this young man was the cause of the magician's coming[18] there, she was always friendly to him afterwards, and helped him[19] to become king of that country when the old king died.[20]

[1] verliebt in (*acc.*). [2] (to it) that. [3] verb-tense. [4] auf die Jagd. [5] note difference. [6] relative. [7] infinitive. [8] reflex. [9] clause: when he had, etc. [10] omit auxil. [11] wo. [12] demonst. [13] conditional. [14] infin. [15] tense? [16] indirect. [17] dative, or clause, *that she*, etc. [18] clause, *thereof that the m. had come*, etc. [19] case. [20] was dead.

ALPHABETICAL VERB LIST.

THE following list contains all verbs which depart from the regular (weak) conjugation:

For convenience of learning and of reference the verbs are arranged in synoptical form, in a table containing all standard or usual forms; — except that single weak forms are not given when included in a foot-note (as in backen, etc.). Forms antiquated, or now incorrect, are included in [ ]. Forms still in use, but not commended, are included in ( ). When two forms are given without further indication, the more usual is in general placed first. Quantity is marked only in special or doubtful cases. The § refers to the section of the grammar in which the verb, or class, in question is treated. Special remarks are added in foot-notes.

The **principal parts** are printed in full-faced type. Along with the infinitive is given the most usual English meaning, which when COGNATE is printed in small caps.

To show the relation of vowels, the present and imperative are placed next after the infinitive, and the preterit subjunctive after the preterit or past indicative. When these forms are not given they are regular; that is, the present and imperative as in weak verbs; the pret. subj. from the pret. indic., according to the usual rule.

Compound verbs are given only when the primitives are not in use.

REMARKS. — The following remarks are prefixed for convenient reference:

1. In verbs with root **e**, and some with **i**, having past **a**, another form of the past subjunctive in **ö**, sometimes **ü**, is often preferred, to distinguish more clearly in sound from the present indicative; as beföhle, begönne, hülfe — often from earlier forms of past indicative.

2. Verbs with sibilant stems, **ſ**, **ß**, **ſch**, **z**, often contract the 2d pers. sing. pres. indic., both in sound and spelling, so as to be identical with 3d pers., as: du heißeſt, or heißt: er heißt; du wäſcheſt, or wäſcht; er wäſcht, etc.

3. An old 2d, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. and 2d sing. imper. in **eu** occurs (chiefly in poetry) in some verbs with **ie** roots: biegen, bieten, fliegen, fliehen, fließen, genießen, gießen, kriechen, etc., as: **beugſt**, **beugt**; **beug**; 2d, 3d pres. **fleußt** (Rem. 2), impv. **fleuß**, etc.

4. Often in impv. **e** is dropped when there is no vowel-change, as: **bleib**, **lauf**, etc.; but no rule can be given.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
backen,[1] BAKE	2. bäckſt 3. bäckt	....	**buk**	....	**gebacken**	249
-bären	*see* gebären					
befehlen, *command*	2. befiehlſt 3. befiehlt	befiehl	**befahl**	beföhle befähle	**befohlen**	232
befleißen, *apply*	2. befleißeſt *or* befleißt	....	**befliß**	....	**befliſſen**	246
beginnen,[2] BEGIN	....	....	**begann**	begönne begänne	**begonnen**	232
beißen, BITE	2. beißeſt *or* beißt	....	**biß**	....	**gebiſſen**	246
bellen,[3] *bark*	2. [billſt] 3. [billt]	[bill]	[boll]	....	[gebollen]	242
bergen, *hide*	2. birgſt 3. birgt	birg [berge]	**barg**	bürge bärge	**geborgen**	232
berſten,[4] BURST	2. birſt(eſt) 3. birſt	birſt	**barſt** **borſt**	börſte bärſte	**geborſten**	232
bewegen,[5] *induce*	....	....	**bewog**	....	**bewogen**	242*b*
biegen,[6] *bend*	....	....	**bog**	....	**gebogen**	241
bieten,[7] *offer*	....	....	**bot**	....	**geboten**	241
binden, BIND	....	....	**band**	....	**gebunden**	231
bitten, *ask*	....	....	**bat**	....	**gebeten**	243
blaſen,[8] *blow*	2. bläſ(eſ)t 3. bläſt	....	**blies**	....	**geblaſen**	248
bleiben, *remain*	....	....	**blieb**	....	**geblieben**	247

---

[1] Also weak, except in past participle.

[2] Old forms in past, begonn, begonnte.

[3] Now weak. Old forms, as above, now obsolete.

[4] Also weak throughout.

[5] Weak, except in this sense.

[6] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. beugſt, beugt, beug.

[7] Old (poetic) pres. and impv. beutſt, beut, beut.

[8] Rarely also weak in present.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2. SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
bleichen,[1] BLEACH	....	....	**blich**	....	**geblichen**	246
braten,[2] *roast*	2. brätſt 3. brät	....	**briet**	....	**gebraten**	248
brechen, BREAK	2. brichſt 3. bricht	brich [breche]	**brach**	....	**gebrochen**	232
brennen, BURN	....	....	**brannte**	brenn(e)te	**gebrannt**	254
bringen, BRING	....	....	**brachte**	brächte	**gebracht**	254
–deihen	*see* gedeihen					
denken, THINK	....	....	**dachte**	dächte	**gedacht**	254
–derben	*s.* verderben					
dingen,[3] *hire*	....	....	**dung** **dang**	....	**gedungen**	231*a*
dreſchen,[4] THRESH	2. driſch(eſ)t 3. driſcht	driſch	**droſch** **draſch**	dröſche dräſche	**gedroſchen**	242
–drießen	*s.* verdrießen					
dringen, *press*	....	....	**drang**	....	**gedrungen**	231
dürfen, *may*	Pr. darf, darfſt, darf; dürfen, etc.	....	**durfte**	dürfte	**gedurft**	261
empfehlen, *recommend*	*see* befehlen					
eſſen, EAT	2. iſſeſt, ißt 3. ißt	iß [eſſe]	**āß**	....	**gegeſſen**	243*a*
fahren, *go*	2. fährſt 3. fährt	....	**fuhr**	....	**gefahren**	249
fallen, FALL	2. fällſt 3. fällt	....	**fiel**	....	**gefallen**	248

---

[1] Also weak, intrans. As trans. always weak.

[2] Also weak, except in p. part.

[3] Also weak — usually in p. indic and now always in p. subj.

[4] Also weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
falten,[1] FOLD	....	....	....	....	**gefalten**	
fangen, *catch*	2. fängſt 3. fängt	....	**fing** (fieng)	(fienge)	**gefangen**	248
fechten,[2] FIGHT	2. ficht(e)ſt 3. ficht	ficht	**focht**	....	**gefochten**	242
-fehlen[3]	*see* befehlen					
finden, FIND	....	....	**fand**	....	**gefunden**	231
flechten,[4] *braid*	2. flicht(e)ſt 3. flicht	flicht	**flocht**	....	**geflochten**	242
-fleißen	*see* befleißen					
fliegen,[5] FLY	....	....	**flog**	....	**geflogen**	241
fliehen,[6] FLEE	....	....	**floh**	....	**geflohen**	241
fließen,[7] *flow*	2. fließeſt *or* fließt	....	**floß**	....	**gefloſſen**	241
fragen,[8] *ask*	2. [frägſt] 3. [frägt]	....	[frug]	[früge]	....	249
freſſen, *eat*	2. friſſeſt *or* frißt 3. frißt	friß [freſſe]	**fraß**	....	**gefreſſen**	243
frieren, FREEZE	....	....	**fror**	....	**gefroren**	241
gären,[9] *ferment*	....	....	**gor**	....	**gegoren**	242
gebären,[10] BEAR	2. gebierſt 3. gebiert	gebier	**gebar**	....	**geboren**	232*b*

---

[1] Weak, except p. part. gefalten, as adj. [2] Also weak, except in p. part. See 4.

[3] Occurs only in befehlen, empfehlen; fehlen, *to fail*, is weak.

[4] Also weak, except in p. part. In 2. pres. also flichſt; and in fechten, fichſt.

[5] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fleugſt, fleugt, fleug.

[6] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fleuchſt, fleucht, fleuch.

[7] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fleußt, fleuß.

[8] Weak, except (rarely) as above.

[9] Also weak. Spelled also gähren, etc.

[10] Sometimes weak in pres. and impv. Old geberen.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	
geben, GIVE	2. gibſt (giebſt) 3. gibt (giebt)	gib (gieb)	**gab**	....	**gegeben**	243
gedeihen, *thrive*	....	....	**gedieh**	....	**gediehen**	247
gehen, GO	....	....	**ging** [gieng]	[gienge]	**gegangen**	248 (*note*).
gelingen, *succeed*	....	....	**gelang**	....	**gelungen**	231
gelten, *be worth*	2. giltſt 3. gilt	gilt [gelte]	**galt**	gölte, gälte [gülte]	**gegolten**	232
geneſen, *get well*	....	....	**genas**	....	**geneſen**	243
genießen,[1] *enjoy*	....	....	**genoß**	....	**genoſſen**	241
geſchehen, *happen*	3. geſchieht	....	**geſchah**	....	**geſchehen**	243
gewinnen, WIN	....	....	**gewann**	gewönne gewänne	**gewonnen**	232
-geſſen	*s.* vergeſſen					
gießen,[2] *pour*	....	....	**goß**	....	**gegoſſen**	241
-ginnen	*s.* beginnen					
gleichen,[3] *be* LIKE	....	....	**glich**	....	**geglichen**	246
gleißen,[4] *glitter*	....	....	**gliß**	....	**gegliſſen**	246
gleiten,[5] GLIDE	....	....	**glitt**	....	**geglitten**	246
glimmen,[6] GLEAM	....	....	**glomm**	....	**geglommen**	242
graben, *dig*	2. gräbſt 3. gräbt	....	**grub**	....	**gegraben**	249

---

1. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. geneußt, geneuß.
2. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. geußt, geuß.
3. When trans. *to liken*, usually weak; but not in compds., as vergleichen, etc.
4. Usually weak. 5. Often weak. 6. Sometimes weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
greifen, *seize*	....	....	**griff**	....	**gegriffen**	246
haben, HAVE	2. haſt 3. hat	....	**hatte**	hätte	**gehabt**	256*a*
halten,[1] HOLD	2. hältſt 3. hält	....	**hielt**	....	**gehalten**	248
hangen,[2] HANG	2. hängſt 3. hängt	....	**hing** (hieng)	(hienge)	**gehangen**	248
hauen,[3] HEW	....	....	**hieb**	....	**gehauen**	248
heben, *lift*	....	....	**hob** **hub**	hübe höbe	**gehoben**	242*b*
hehlen,[4] *conceal*						
heißen, *be named*	2. heißeſt *or* heißt	....	**hieß**	....	**geheißen**	248
helfen, HELP	2. hilfſt 3. hilft	hilf [helfe]	**half**	hülfe hälfe	**geholfen**	232
keifen,[5] *scold*	....	....	**kiff**	....	**gekiffen**	246
kennen, *know*	....	....	**kannte**	kenn(e)te	**gekannt**	254
kieſen,[6] *choose*						
klemmen,[7] *press*	....	....	**klomm**	....	**geklommen**	242
klieben,[8] CLEAVE	....	....	**klob**	....	**gekloben**	241
klimmen,[9] *climb*	....	....	**klomm**	....	**geklommen**	242
klingen,[10] *sound*	....	....	**klang**	[klänge]	**geklungen**	231

---

[1] Impv. halt! as interj. *halt.*

[2] Sometimes written hängen. Sometimes also weak pres. to dist. fr. weak trans. hängen.

[3] Rarely weak.

[4] Weak, except in p. part. verhohlen, as adj. or adv.

[5] Usually weak.

[6] Now regularly weak; see küren.

[7] Usually weak.

[8] Also weak.

[9] Often weak.

[10] Sometimes weak in sense of *resound* (*loud*).

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
kneifen,[1] *pinch*	....	....	**kniff**	....	**gekniffen**	246
kommen,[2] COME	2. (kömmſt) 3. (kömmt)	....	**kam**	....	**gekommen**	232*b*
können, CAN	Pr. kann, kannſt, kann; können, etc.	....	**konnte**	könnte	**gekonnt**	261
kreiſchen,[3] *scream*	....	....	[kriſch]	....	[gekriſchen]	246
kriechen,[4] *creep*	....	....	**krŏch**	....	**gekrŏchen**	241
küren,[5] CHOOSE	....	....	**kor**	....	**gekoren**	242*a*
laden,[6] LOAD	2. lädſt 3. lädt	....	**lud**	....	**geladen**	249
laſſen, LET	2. läſſeſt, läßt 3. läßt	laß laſſe	**ließ**	....	**gelaſſen**	248
laufen, *run*	2. läufſt 3. läuft	....	**lief**	....	**gelaufen**	248
leiden,[7] *suffer*	....	....	**litt**	....	**gelitten**	246
leihen, *lend*	....	....	**lieh**	....	**geliehen**	247
leſen, *read*	2. lieſ(eſ)t 3. lieſt	lies [leſe]	**las**	....	**geleſen**	243
liegen, LIE	....	....	**lag**	....	**gelegen**	243
-lieren	*see* verlieren					
-lingen	*see* gelingen					
löſchen,[8] *go out* (*fire*)	2. liſch(eſ)t 3. liſcht	liſch	**loſch**	....	**geloſchen**	242*a*

---

[1] Also weak. The form kneipen is regularly weak.

[2] The ö forms in pres. are now rarely used.

[3] Now regularly weak.

[4] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. kreuchſt, kreucht, kreuch.

[5] From old kieſen; also weak.

[6] Often weak in pres., more rarely in past. So also laden, *to invite*, which was originally weak.

[7] As trans. *to hurt*, and in derivs. verleiden, etc., weak.

[8] Also weak, especially when trans. *to put out;* also in p. subj., to dist. from pres. indic.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
lügen,[1] LIE	....	....	**log**	....	**gelogen**	242
mahlen,[2] *grind*	....	....	[muhl]	....	**gemahlen**	
meiden, *shun*	....	....	**mied**	....	**gemieden**	247
melken,[3] MILK	2. milkſt 3. milkt	milk	**molk**	....	**gemolken**	242
meſſen, *measure*	2. miſſeſt *or* mißt 3. mißt	miß [meſſe]	**māß**	....	**gemeſſen**	243
mißlingen	*see* gelingen					
mögen, MAY	Pr. mag, magſt, mag; mögen, etc.	[mög]	**mochte**	möchte	**gemocht**	261
müſſen, MUST	Pr. muß, mußt, muß; müſſen, etc.	....	**mußte**	müßte	**gemußt**	261
nehmen, *take*	2. nimmſt 3. nimmt	nimm [nehme]	**nahm**	....	**genommen**	232*d*
nennen, NAME	....	....	**nannte**	nenn(e)te	**genannt**	254
-neſen	*see* geneſen					
-nießen	*see* genießen					
pfeifen *whistle*	....	....	**pfiff**	....	**gepfiffen**	246
pflegen,[4] *cherish*	....	....	**pflog** [pflag]	....	**gepflogen**	242*b*
preiſen,[5] PRAISE	2. preiſ(eſ)t 3. preiſt	....	**pries**	....	**geprieſen**	247
quellen,[6] *gush out*	2. quillſt 3. quillt	quill	**quoll**	....	**gequollen**	242

---

[1] Old liegen; hence, poetic forms, pres. and impv. leugſt, leugt, leug.

[2] Now regularly weak, except in perf. part.

[3] Now usually weak throughout.

[4] Usually weak; now always, except in this sense.

[5] Originally weak; now very rarely so.

[6] As trans. *to soak*, weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
rächen,[1] *avenge*	....	....	[roch]	....	(gerochen)	241
raten,[2] *advise*	2. rätſt 3. rät	....	**riet**	....	**geraten**	248
reiben, RUB	....	....	**rieb**	....	**gerieben**	247
reißen, *tear*	....	....	**riß**	....	**geriſſen**	246
reiten, RIDE	....	....	**ritt**	....	**geritten**	246
rennen,[3] RUN	....	....	**rannte**	renn(e)te	**gerannt**	254
riechen,[4] *smell*	....	....	**rŏch**	....	**gerŏchen**	241
ringen,[5] *wrestle*	....	....	**rang** [rung]	[rünge]	**gerungen**	231
rinnen, *flow*	....	....	**rann**	rönne ränne	**geronnen**	232
rufen,[6] *call*	....	....	**rief**	....	**gerufen**	248
ſalzen,[7] SALT	....	....	....	....	**geſalzen**	248
ſaufen,[8] *drink*	2. ſäufſt 3. ſäuft	....	**ſoff**	....	**geſoffen**	242
ſaugen,[9] SUCK	....	....	**ſog**	....	**geſogen**	242
ſchaffen,[10] *create*	....	....	**ſchuf**	....	**geſchaffen**	249*a*
ſchallen,[11] *sound*	....	....	**ſcholl**	....	**geſchollen**	242*b*

---

[1] Now regularly weak, except (rarely) in p. part. See riechen.

[2] Sometimes weak pres., rateſt, ratet.

[3] Sometimes weak; so always in trans. *to melt* (*iron*, etc.).

[4] See rächen. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. reuchſt, reucht, reuch.

[5] The trans. ringen (Ring) is weak; except, occasionally, umrang, umrungen.

[6] Weak forms rarely.

[7] Weak, except in perf. part.

[8] Also weak in pres.

[9] Also weak; trans. ſäugen, *to suckle*, always weak.

[10] Strong only in this sense.

[11] Now usually weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
-ſchehen	*s.* geſchehen					
ſcheiden, *part*	....	....	**ſchied**	....	**geſchieden**	247
ſcheinen, *seem*	....	....	**ſchien**	....	**geſchienen**	247
ſchelten, SCOLD	2. ſchiltſt 3. ſchilt	ſchilt [ſchelte]	**ſchalt**	ſchölte ſchälte	**geſcholten**	232
ſcheren,[1] SHEAR	2. ſchierſt 3. ſchiert	ſchier	**ſchor**	....	**geſchoren**	242
ſchieben, SHOVE	....	....	**ſchob**	....	**geſchoben**	241
ſchießen,[2] SHOOT	2. ſchießeſt *or* ſchießt	....	**ſchŏß**	....	**geſchoſſen**	241
ſchinden,[3] *flay*	....	....	**ſchund** [ſchand]	[ſchände]	**geſchunden**	231*a*
ſchlafen, SLEEP	2. ſchläfſt 3. ſchläft	....	**ſchlief**	....	**geſchlafen**	248
ſchlagen, *strike*	2. ſchlägſt 3. ſchlägt	....	**ſchlug**	....	**geſchlagen**	249
ſchleichen, *creep*	....	....	**ſchlich**	....	**geſchlichen**	246
ſchleifen,[4] *whet*	....	....	**ſchliff**	....	**geſchliffen**	246
ſchleißen, SLIT	2. ſchleißeſt *or* ſchleißt	....	**ſchliß**	....	**geſchliſſen**	246
ſchliefen,[5] SLIP	....	....	**ſchloff**	....	**geſchloffen**	241
ſchließen,[6] *shut*	2. ſchließeſt *or* ſchließt	....	**ſchlŏß**	....	**geſchloſſen**	241
ſchlingen, SLING	....	....	**ſchlang**	....	**geſchlungen**	231

---

1. Often weak, except in p. part.
2. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. ſcheußt, ſcheuß.
3. Weak rarely, except in perf. part.
4. Often weak, in sense of *glide;* always as intrans. *to drag.*
5. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſchleufſt, ſchleuft, ſchleuf.
6. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſchleußt, ſchleuß.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
ſchmeißen, *dash*	....	....	**ſchmiß**	....	**geſchmiſſen**	246
ſchmelzen,[1] MELT	2. ſchmilz(eſ)t 3. ſchmilzt	....	**ſchmolz**	....	**geſchmolzen**	242
ſchnauben[2]	*s.* ſchnieben					
ſchneiden, *cut*	....	....	**ſchnitt**	....	**geſchnitten**	242
ſchneien,[3] SNOW	....	....	[ſchnie]	....	[geſchnie(e)n]	246
ſchnieben,[4] SNORT	....	....	**ſchnob**	....	**geſchnoben**	242
ſchrauben,[5] SCREW	....	....	**ſchrob**	....	**geſchroben**	242
ſchrecken,[6] *be afraid*	2. ſchrickſt 3. ſchrickt	ſchrick	**ſchrak**	....	**geſchrocken**	232
ſchreiben, *write*	....	....	**ſchrieb**	....	**geſchrieben**	247
ſchreien, *cry*	....	....	**ſchrie**	....	**geſchrieen**	247
ſchreiten, *stride*	....	....	**ſchritt**	....	**geſchritten**	246
ſchrinden, *crack*	(*obsolete*)	....	**ſchrund** **ſchrand**	ſchründe	**geſchrunden**	231
ſchroten,[7] *clip*	....	....	....	....	**geſchroten**	248
ſchwären,[8] *fester*	2. ſchwierſt 3. ſchwiert	....	**ſchwor** **ſchwur**	ſchwöre ſchwüre	**geſchworen**	242
ſchweigen,[9] *be silent*	....	....	**ſchwieg**	....	**geſchwiegen**	247

---

[1] Also weak; as trans. properly (though not always) weak.

[2] In this form now usually weak.

[3] Usually and properly weak.

[4] Now usually ſchnauben, with weak forms. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. ſchneubſt, ſchneubt, ſchneub.

[5] Usually weak.

[6] Usually erſchrecken, with also weak impv. erſchrecke. As trans. *frighten*, regularly weak.

[7] Weak, except, sometimes, in p. part.

[8] Has also weak pres. — no impv.

[9] As trans. *silence*, weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
ſchwellen,[1] SWELL	2. ſchwillſt 3. ſchwillt	ſchwill [ſchwelle]	**ſchwoll**	....	**geſchwollen**	242
ſchwimmen, SWIM	....	....	**ſchwamm** [ſchwomm]	ſchwömme ſchwämme	**geſchwommen**	232
ſchwinden, *vanish*	....	....	**ſchwand** [ſchwund]	ſchwände [ſchwünde]	**geſchwunden**	231
ſchwingen, SWING	....	....	**ſchwang** [ſchwung]	ſchwänge [ſchwünge]	**geſchwungen**	231
ſchwören, SWEAR	....	....	**ſchwor** **ſchwur**	ſchwüre ſchwöre	**geſchworen**	242
ſehen,[2] SEE	2. ſiehſt 3. ſieht	ſieh(e) [ſehe]	**ſah**	....	**geſehen**	243
ſein, *be*	*see paradigm* (181)	....	....	....	....	256*b*
ſenden,[3] SEND	....	....	**ſandte**	ſendete	**geſandt**	254
ſieden,[4] *boil*	....	....	**ſott**	....	**geſotten**	241
ſingen, SING	....	....	**ſang**	....	**geſungen**	231
ſinken, SINK	....	....	**ſank**	....	**geſunken**	231
ſinnen,[5] *think*	....	....	**ſann**	ſönne ſänne	**geſonnen**	232
ſitzen, SIT	2. ſitzeſt *or* ſitzt	....	**ſaß**	....	**geſeſſen**	243*a*
ſollen, SHALL	Pr. ſoll, ſollſt, ſoll; ſollen, etc.	....	**ſollte**	ſollte	**geſollt**	261
ſpalten,[6] SPLIT	....	....	....	....	**geſpalten**	248

---

[1] As trans. weak; also, rarely, as intrans., except in p. part.

[2] The impv. ſiehe usually stands alone, or as interjection.

[3] Also weak throughout.

[4] Usually weak.

[5] Rarely weak — chiefly in p. part. geſinnt, as adj.

[6] Weak, except in p. part.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
ſpeien,[1] SPIT	....	....	**ſpie**	....	**geſpieen**	247
ſpinnen, SPIN	....	....	**ſpann**	ſpönne ſpänne	**geſponnen**	232
ſpleißen,[2] SPLIT	2. ſpleißeſt *or* ſpleißt	....	**ſpliß**	....	**geſpliſſen**	246
ſprechen, SPEAK	2. ſprichſt 3. ſpricht	ſprich [ſpreche]	**ſprach**	....	**geſprochen**	232
ſprießen,[3] SPROUT	2. ſprießeſt *or* ſprießt	....	**ſprŏß**	....	**geſproſſen**	241
ſpringen, SPRING	....	....	**ſprang**	....	**geſprungen**	231
ſtechen, *prick*	2. ſtichſt 3. ſticht	ſtich	**ſtach**	....	**geſtochen**	232
ſtecken,[4] STICK	2. ſtickſt 3. ſtickt	....	**ſtak**	....	[geſtocken]	232
ſtehen, STAND	....	....	**ſtand** [ſtund]	ſtände ſtünde	**geſtanden**	249 (*note*).
ſtehlen, STEAL	2. ſtiehlſt 3. ſtiehlt	ſtiehl [ſtehle]	**ſtahl** [ſtohl]	ſtöhle ſtähle	**geſtohlen**	232
ſteigen, *mount*	....	....	**ſtieg**	....	**geſtiegen**	247
ſterben, *die*	2. ſtirbſt 3. ſtirbt	ſtirb [ſterbe]	**ſtarb**	ſtürbe ſtärbe	**geſtorben**	232
ſtieben,[5] *scatter*	....	....	**ſtob**	....	**geſtoben**	241
ſtinken, STINK	....	....	**ſtank**	ſtänke ſtünke	**geſtunken**	231
ſtoßen, *push*	2. ſtöß(eſ)t 3. ſtößt	....	**ſtieß**	....	**geſtoßen**	248
ſtreichen, STROKE	....	....	**ſtrich**	....	**geſtrichen**	246

---

[1] Also weak throughout.

[2] Also weak — and now rare.

[3] Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſpreußt, ſpreuß.

[4] Usually weak throughout.

[5] Also weak. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſteubſt, ſteubt, ſteub.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
ſtreiten, STRIVE	....	....	**ſtritt**	....	**geſtritten**	246
tragen, *carry*	2. trägſt 3. trägt	....	**trug**	....	**getragen**	249
treffen, *hit*	2. triffſt 3. trifft	triff [treffe]	**traf**	....	**getroffen**	232*d*
treiben, DRIVE	....	....	**trieb**	....	**getrieben**	247
treten, *step*	2. trittſt 3. tritt	tritt [trete]	**trat**	....	**getreten**	243*a*
triefen,[1] DRIP	....	....	**troff**	....	**getroffen**	241
trinken, DRINK	....	....	**trank**	....	**getrunken**	231
trügen,[2] *cheat*	....	....	**trog**	....	**getrogen**	242*a*
tun,[3] DO	Pr. tue, tuſt, tut; tun, etc.	tu(e)	**tat**	....	**getan**	255
verderben, *spoil*	2. verdirbſt 3. verdirbt	verdirb	**verdarb**	verdürbe [verdärbe]	**verdorben**	232
verdrießen[4] *vex*	2. verdrießeſt *or* verdrießt	....	**verdrŏß**	....	**verdroſſen**	241
vergeſſen, FORGET	2. vergiſſeſt, *or* vergißt 3. vergißt	vergiß [vergeſſe]	**vergāß**	....	**vergeſſen**	243
verlieren,[5] *lose*	....	....	**verlor**	....	**verloren**	241
wachſen,[6] *grow*	2. wächſ(eſ)t 3. wächſt	....	**wuchs**	....	**gewachſen**	249

---

[1] Now usually weak. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. treufſt, treuft, treuf.

[2] Old triegen; hence old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. treugſt, treugt, treug.

[3] Irregular. See paradigm (255). In popular phrase tät is often used for tat, as auxil. with infin. Impv. tu chiefly colloquial.

[4] Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. verdreußt, verdreuß.

[5] Old form, verlieſen; hence still occasionally the p. part. verleſen.

[6] Rarely weak in pres.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
wägen,[1] WEIGH	*see* wiegen	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	242
waſchen,[2] WASH	2. wäſch(eſ)t 3. wäſcht	. . . .	**wuſch**	. . . .	**gewaſchen**	249
weben,[3] WEAVE	. . . .	. . . .	**wob**	. . . .	**gewoben**	242*b*
-wegen	*see* bewegen					
weichen,[4] *yield*	. . . .	. . . .	**wich**	. . . .	**gewichen**	246
weiſen, *show*	. . . .	. . . .	**wies**	. . . .	**gewieſen**	247
wenden,[5] *turn*	. . . .	. . . .	**wandte**	wendete	**gewandt**	254
werben, *sue*	2. wirbſt 3. wirbt	wirb [werbe]	**warb**	würbe wärbe	**geworben**	232
werden,[6] *become*	2. wirſt 3. wird	werde	**wurde** **ward**	würde	**geworden** worden	256*c*
werfen, *throw*	2. wirfſt 3. wirft	wirf [werfe]	**warf**	würfe wärfe	**geworfen**	232
wiegen,[7] WEIGH	. . . .	. . . .	**wog**	. . . .	**gewogen**	241
winden, WIND	. . . .	. . . .	**wand**	. . . .	**gewunden**	231
-winnen	*see* gewinnen					
wirren,[8] *tangle*	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	(geworren)	242
wiſſen, *know*	Pr. weiß, weißt, weiß; wiſſen, etc.	. . .	**wußte**	wüßte	**gewußt**	254

---

1. Usually wiegen; both often weak; wägen usually transitive.
2. Rarely weak in pres.
3. Usually weak — always, except in sense of *weave*.
4. Always weak in sense of *soften* (from adj. weich).
5. Also weak throughout.
6. ward is used only in the singular; worden only as passive auxiliary, or poetically
7. See wägen. The two are equivalent forms, wiegen more usual.
8. Weak, except, rarely, in p. part.; usually as adj.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
wollen, WILL	Pr. will, willſt, will; wollen, etc.	wolle	**wollte**	wollte	**gewollt**	261
zeihen, *accuse*	....	....	**zieh**	....	**geziehen**	247
ziehen,[1] *draw*	....	....	**zog**	....	**gezogen**	241
zwingen, *force*	....	....	**zwang**	....	**gezwungen**	231

[1] Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. zeuchſt, zeucht, zeuch.

General Remark. — The classification of strong verbs (§ 228, etc. — and especially the forms of vowel sequence (§ 225) — will be found helpful for practice. Other classifications might also be given (as in some other grammars). But, after all, no classification can relieve the necessity of learning most of the verbs *as individuals.* How this may best be done is a question of method, for each teacher to decide. But at any rate, the habit should early be formed of verifying the conjugation of each verb as met with, and of consulting the Alphabetical List in all cases of doubt. In this way the most important verbs, which are of frequent use, may be soon learned without painful effort.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

The books of this series are printed according to the official rules now generally followed in Germany. These rules, and the words to which they apply, are fully given in a pamphlet entitled, „Regeln für die deutſche Rechtſchreibung, nebſt Wörterverzeichnis" (latest ed. Berlin, 1902) which can be had at small cost. But for the immediate guidance of students who may have to use dictionaries, etc., printed after the old orthography, the following selection of the most important changes is given for reference. —

I. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

The modified capitals—even in Roman type—always Ä, Ö, Ü; Ä, Ö, Ü—not Ae, Oe, etc.

e, not **ä,** in echt, Grenze, Greuel, Hering, ſtets, deuchte, leugnen, and some others.

i, not **ie,** in fing, ging, hing; also gib, gibſt, gibt; but: —

ie, not **i,** in verbs like ſtudieren, etc.

Single vowel for double vowel in: —

bar (Barſchaft),
Herd,
Herde,
Los (loſen),
Loſung,
Maß,
Schaf,
Schar,
Schoß,
Star,
Wage,
Ware, etc. — though in some other words the double vowel is retained.

The following are distinguished by spelling: —

Fiber, *fibre.*	Fieber, *fever.*
Geiſel, *hostage.*	Geißel, *scourge.*

Lid, *lid.*	Lied, *song.*
gräulich, *grayish.*	greulich, *terrible.*
Mähre, *mare.*	Märe, *story.*
Mine, *mine.*	Miene, *mien.*
Stil, *style.*	Stiel, *handle.*

and others.

II. CONSONANTS.

t not **th**, in German words*; as:

a) *Initial*, Tau, tauen, Teil, Tier, teuer, verteidigen, Turm, tun, Tat, Tor, etc.

b) In the suffix –**tum**: Eigentum, Reichtum, etc.

c) *Final or medial*, as: Mut, Armut, Not, rot, raten, Atem, mieten, Wirt, etc.

f, not **ph**, in all German words.

s, not **ß**, in the pronoun compounds: deswegen, deshalb, weshalb, indes, etc. And in the suffix –**nis** (but plural –**niſſe**): **Gleichnis**, Gleichniſſe, etc.

t, not **dt**, in Brot, Ernte, Schwert, tot (adj.), töten, etc.

k for **c** in many foreign words; as: Kanon, korrekt, konkret, Konjunktion, kurſiv, etc.

z for **c** in many foreign words; as: Offizier, Prozeß, Konzert, etc.; while in many others, not so fully naturalized, **c** is retained; as: Docent, ſocial, etc.

III. CAPITALS.

The use of capitals is limited, more closely than heretofore, to nouns and words used strictly as nouns (§ 65).

---

* See § 42. Till recently, th was retained before a long single vowel; as, Thun, That, Thor; and was formerly used much more largely, as in all the examples here cited. It is now restricted to foreign words and proper names.

VOCABULARIES.

EXPLANATORY.

THESE Vocabularies, being part of a Grammar, are intended not to take the place of, but to assist — and, indeed, compel — grammar study. Hence only such help is given as the student ought to need. Thus, inflections are indicated only where they may not be known under the *most general* rules; for example, in nouns: the plural of Apfel, Arm, but not of Bäcker, Weg*, etc.; and such indications are not unnecessarily repeated, as in Feiertag, etc. (but given in Bahnhof, etc., because Hof does not occur). Special forms, as Antwort, Band, etc., are, however, not only given, but referred to the appropriate §§. Also, no more indication is given than is necessary; as, in general, where the plural sufficiently indicates the genitive, etc.

In verbs all peculiarities are referred to the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc. *S* stands for *strong verbs; M* for *mixed verbs* (§ 253); the auxiliary ſein is indicated by ſ. Separable compounds are indicated by the double hyphen (⸗); inseparable are simply written as one word. In special cases reference is made to the §.

Accents are indicated only when foreign or otherwise doubtful. Important points of syntax are indicated by references. The parts of speech are named only in case of double uses of the same word, or when the English equivalent might possibly be ambiguous.

Compounds (except verbs), and sometimes obvious derivatives, are grouped under a common title-word. Adverbs, unless of special form, are included under the adjectives. Separable prefixes are classed as adverbs.

The abbreviations employed are such as are generally understood. Outside of these, the straight line — indicates the title form unchanged. as Achtel —, for Achtel; Arm, –e, for Arme, etc.; while ″ indicates vowel modification, as Arzt, ″e, for Ärzte, etc.; and similarly in compounds, as acht, — zehn, for achtzehn, etc. The ending indicated after nouns is always that of the plural, unless otherwise stated; after adjectives ″ indicates *strong* comparison, as, alt, ″, for älter, etc. All numerical references are to §§ of the grammar.

For special notes on nouns and on prepositions, see Appendix p. 367, etc.

* The following plurals are assumed as regular, all departures from which are recorded: *Monosyllables*: masculines, *pl.* –e. *Polysyllables*: masculines and neuters of class I, *pl.* —; all others, *pl.* –e (except masculines in –e, *pl.* –n); feminines, *pl.* –(e)n. Modification of vowel is always recorded.

I.

GERMAN=ENGLISH.

A.

ab, off, from, away, down.

Abend, *m.*, -e, evening, the west; des —s, *or* abends, *adv.*, evenings, in the evening (*indef.*).

aber, but, however.

ab=fahren, *S.*, ſ., to drive off, depart.

ab=gehen, *S.*, ſ., to go off, leave; result.

ab=reiſen, ſ., to start off, set out (on a journey).

ab=ſchreiben, *S.*, to write off, copy.

Abt, *m.*, ¨e, abbot.

acht, eight; —zehn, eighteen; —zig, eighty; der —(t)e, the eighth.

Achtel, *n.*, —, eighth (part).

achten, 212, to regard, esteem.

addie'ren, 215, to add.

Akademie', *f.*, academy.

all, 460, all, every; alles, everything, everybody; aller—, *gen. pl. as sup. pref.*, allerheiligſt, most holy, etc.

allein', alone; *conj.*, but, only.

Alpen, *pl.*, Alps.

als, *adv.*, as, than; *conj.*, as, when (*def. past*); — wenn, ob, as if.

alt, ¨, old; die Alten, (*often*) the ancients.

Alter, *n.*, age, old age.

altern, 214, to age, grow old.

am, *for* an dem.

Amerika'ner, *m.*, (an) American.

an, *adv.*, on; *prep.* (*dat.*), near, by, on (of dates); (*acc.*), to, towards, against; denken an *or* von, p. 134.

ander, other; second; —thalb, one and a half, 311.

an=erkennen, *M.*, 289, to acknowledge.

Anfang, *m.*, ¨e, beginning; anfangs (*adv.*), at first.

an=fangen, *S.*, to begin.

angenehm, acceptable, agreeable.

an=kommen, *S.*, ſ., to arrive; — auf, *impers. w. acc.*, to depend on, matter.

an=nehmen, *S.*, to accept, assume; *reflex.*, to take interest in (*gen.*).

Antwort, *f.*, -en, 122, answer.

antworten, 212, to answer (*dat.*).

anziehen, *S.*, to draw on, attract; *intr.* ſ., to draw near, approach; *reflex.*, to dress (one's self).

Apfel, *m.*, ¨, apple.

Appetit', *m.*, -e, appetite.

April', *m.*, *gen.* -s, April.

Arbeit, *f.*, work, labor; —er, *m.*, laborer; —smann, *pl.* —sleute, workman, workpeople, 425.

arbeiten, to work.

ärgern, 214, to vex, anger; *reflex.*, to be angry.

Arm, *m.*, -e, arm (limb).

arm, ¨, poor.

artig, kind, good, polite.

Arzt, *m.*, ¨e, physician.

Aſien, *n.*, Asia.

Aſt, *m.*, ¨e, bough, branch.

auch, also, even, 485; wer, was —, whoever, whatever; wenn, ob —, even if, although, 486.

auf, *adv.*, up, open; *prep.* (*dat.*), on, upon, at; (*acc.*), upon, to, towards; for (time); after, according to; — daß, in order that.

auferſtehen, *S.*, ſ., 289, to rise (from the dead).

Aufgabe, *f.*, exercise, task.

auf=gehen, *S.*, ſ., to go up, rise.

auf=heben, *S.*, to lift up, raise, put away.

auf=ſtehen, *S.*, ſ., to stand up, rise (from bed).

Auge, *n.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, eye; —n=blick, *m.*, moment.

Auguſt′, *m.*, *gen.* –s, August.

aus, *adv.*, out, forth, throughout; *prep.* (*dat.*), out of, from, by, on account of.

aus=geben, *S.*, to give out, spend; *reflex.*, to give one's self out (für).

aus=gehen, *S.*, to go out, proceed, end.

aus=ruhen, to rest, repose.

aus=ſehen, *S.*, to look, seem; *as noun*, look, appearance.

außer, *dat.*, outside of, without, except; —dem, *adv.*, besides.

aus=ziehen, *S.*, to draw out, pull off; *intr.* ſ., to move out, march out; *reflex.*, to undress (one's self).

B.

backen, *S.*, to bake.

Bäcker, *m.*, baker.

Bad, *n.*, ¨er, bath.

baden, 212, to bathe.

Bahnhof, *m.*, *comp.* ¨e, station (of railway).

bald, soon, now; ſo—, as soon (as).

Band, *n.*, ¨er, ribbon; –e, bond; *m.*, ¨e, volume, 424, 426.

bangen, *impers. w. dat.*: mir bangt, I feel afraid.

Bank, *f.*, ¨e, bench; –en, bank (commercial, 424).

Bauer, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, peasant, farmer.

Baum, *m.*, ¨e, tree.

Bäumchen, Bäumlein, *n.*, *dim.*, little tree.

beantworten, 212, to answer, reply to (*acc.*).

bedecken, to cover.

befinden, *S.*, *reflex.*, to find one's self, do (in health).

begleiten, 212, to attend, accompany.

bei, *adv.*, by, near; *prep.* (*dat.*), by, near, at, in, with, among, at the house of, on condition of.

bei=ſtehen, *S.*, to stand by, help (*dat.*).

beißen, *S.*, to bite.

bekannt, *part. adj.*, known; acquainted; *as noun*, (an) acquaintance.

belagern, 214, to besiege.

benachrichtigen, to inform.

bereiſen, 213, to travel through.

bereits, *adv. gen.*, already.

Berg, *m.*, mountain.

berühmt, *part. adj.*, celebrated, famous.

beſehen, *S.*, to look at, inspect.

Beſorgnis, *f.*, –ſſe, care, apprehension.

beſſer, beſt, *irr. comp. and sup.* gut, better, best.

beſuchen, to visit.

betreffen, *S.*, to befall, concern.

betrügen, *S.*, to deceive, cheat.

Bett, *n.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en *or* –e, 105, bed.

bewegen, *S.*, to induce; *weak:* to move, excite.

bewußt, conscious (of, *gen.*).

bezahlen, to pay.

Bibliothek′, *f.*, library.

biegen, *S.*, to bend.

bieten, *S.*, to offer, bid.

binden, *S.*, to bind.

binnen, (*dat.*), within (time).

bis, *adv.*, so far as; *prep.* (*acc.*), up to, till; *conj.* (*for* bis daß), until.

Biſchof, *m.*, ¨e, bishop.

bitten, *S.*, to beg, pray. Bitte, I beg, please.

Blatt, *n.*, ¨er, leaf, sheet (of paper).

blau, blue. **bläulich,** bluish.

bleiben, *S.*, ſ., to continue, remain; ſtehen —, to stop.

blind, blind.

Blume, *f.*, flower.

Boot, *n.*, –e *or* Böte, 105, boat.

Börſe, *f.*, purse, Bourse.

böſe, bad, angry.

Bote, *m.*, messenger.

Botſchaft, *f.*, message.

Branntwein, *m. comp.*, brandy.

braten, *S.*, to roast.

Braten, *m.*, —, roast (meat).

brauchen, to use, need (*rarely gen.*).

braun, brown.

Braut, *f.*, ¨e, bride.

brechen, *S.*, to break.

breit, broad.

brennen, *M.*, to burn.

Brief, *m.*, letter.

bringen, *M.*, to bring.

Brot, *n.*, –e, bread.

Brücke, *f.*, bridge.

Bruder, *m.*, ¨, brother.

Buch, *n.*, ¨er, book; —binder, *m.*, book-binder.

bunt, variegated, gay.

C (*see* K).

Chemie′, *f.*, chemistry.

Chriſt (Chriſtus, 113), *m.*, Christ.

Chriſt, *m.*, –en, christian; —entum, *n.*, christianity.

D.

da, *adv. dem.*, there, then; *conj. rel.*, when, as, since, 486; *in comp. before vowels* dar, 401.

Dach, *n.*, ¨er, roof.

dadurch, 184, thereby; through, by it *or* them.

dagegen, 184, against it *or* them; on the contrary.

Dame, *f.*, lady.

damit, *adv.*, therewith; with it *or* them, 184; *conj.*, in order that, 468; — ſagen, to mean.

Dampfboot, *m. comp.*, steamboat.

Dank, *m.*, thanks; (*no pl.*).

danken, to thank (*dat.*).

dann, then (time).

dar, *for* da *in comp. before vowels.*

darauf, 184, thereupon; upon, to, after — it *or* them; — daß, in order that.

daraus, 184, thereout; out of it *or* them, thence.

darf, *pres.* dürfen.

darum, 184, thereabout; around, for it *or* them, therefore, on that account; — daß, in order that, 468.

daſelbſt, *comp.* da, in that same place, there.
daß, *conj.*, that, so that, in order that.
davon, 184, therefrom, thereof; of, by it *or* them; away, off.
dazu, 184, thereto; to it *or* them; in addition; for that purpose.
dein, *poss. adj.*, thy, your; *gen. pers.* (*for* deiner), of thee, of you; —er, *poss. pron.*, thine, yours; *gen. pers.*, of thee, of you, 186.
denken, *M.*, to think; — of (p. 134).
denn, *conj.*, then, for.
der, *art.*, the; *dem.*, that, that one, he; *rel.*, who, which, that, 234.
derjenige, 208, that one, he (who).
derſelbe, 208, the same; *as substitute for personal, etc.*, 457.
deshalb, *comp.*, on that account, therefore, 456.
deſto, *correl.*, je —, 334, so much the (more).
deutlich, plain, clear.
deutſch, German; *as noun*, (a) German; —land, *n.*, Germany.
dicht, tight, close.
Dieb, *m.*, thief.
dienen, to serve (*dat.*).
Diener, *m.*, servant; —in, *f.*, –nen, woman-servant.
dies, *for* dieſes.
dieſer, *dem.*, this, this one; the latter; he, *etc.*, 457.
Ding, *n.*, –e, thing.
direkt′, direct.
dividie′ren, 215, to divide.
doch, though, yet, however, surely, at any rate, please, 485.
Doktor, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –en, 117, doctor.
Dom, *m.*, –e, dome, cathedral.
donnern, 214, to thunder.
Dorf, *n.*, ¨er, village; —ſchaft, *f.*, village community.
Dorn, *m.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* ¨er *or* –e *or* –en, 105, thorn.
dort, there; —ig, *adj.*, of there.
drei, three; —zehn, thirteen; —ßig, thirty.
dritt, third; —ehalb, two and a half.
drucken, to print.
du, thou, you, 186.
durch, *adv.* (*as pref.*, 287), through, throughout; *prep.* (*acc.*), through, throughout, by, by means of.
durchziehen, *S.*, *sep.*, to draw through; *insep.*, to pass through, 287.
dürfen, 261, *modal*, to be allowed, may, need, *etc.* 472.

E.

eben, even, level; *adv.*, just, exactly.
Ecke, *f.*, corner.
edel, noble, 139.
Efeu (*old* Epheu), *gen.* –s, ivy.
ehren, to honor.
Eigentum, *n.*, property.
Eile, *f.*, haste, hurry.
ein, *indef. art.*, an, a; *num.*, one; *pron.* –er, one, some one; —s, one.
ein⸗, *adv. form of* in, *as prefix.*
einander, *comp. indecl.*, one another, each other.
einerlei, *indecl.*, of one kind, all the same.
einige, *pl.*, some, several, a few.
ein⸗laden, *S.*, to invite.
Einladung, *f.*, invitation.
eins (in counting), *see* ein.
ein⸗ziehen, *S.*, *tr.*, to draw in; *intr.* ſ., to move in, march in.

Eis, *n.*, ice; —kalt, ice-cold.
Eiſen, *n.*, iron.
eiſern, of iron, iron.
elf (**eilf**), eleven.
Eltern, *pl.*, parents.
empfehlen, *S.*, to recommend; *reflex.*, to send one's compliments (to, *dat.*).
Ende, *n.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, end.
endlich, final, last; *usually adv.*; finally, at last.
Engländer, *m.*, Englishman.
engliſch, English.
Enkel, *m.*, grandson.
entlang, *adv.*, along; *as prep.* (*acc.*).
entweder, either.
er, ſie, es, he, she, it.
Erde, *f.*, earth; auf Erden, 106.
erfinden, *S.*, to find out, invent.
erfriſchen, 213, to refresh.
erhalten, *S.*, to obtain, receive; keep, sustain.
erlöſchen, *S.*, *intr.*, ſ., to go out; (a light).
erreichen, to reach to, attain, arrive at.
erſchrecken, *S.*, to be frightened; *tr. weak:* to frighten.
erſt, *ord. num.*, first; der —ere, the former (157); *adv.*, first, only, just.
erwarten, 212, to await, expect.
erziehen, *S.*, to bring up, train, educate.
es, it, there, 453.
eſſen, *S.*, to eat.
etwas, something, anything.
Europa, *n. gen.* –s, Europe.
Evange′lium, *n. gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 118, gospel.
Exercitium, *n. gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 118, exercise.

F.

fahren, *S.*, ſ., to drive, ride (in a carriage); ſpazieren —, to take a drive.
fallen, *S.*, ſ., to fall.
fallie′ren, 215, to fail, become bankrupt.
fechten, *S.*, to fight.
Federmeſſer, *n. comp.*, penknife.
fehlen, to fail, lack, miss; *usually impers.*, to ail (*dat. obj.*).
Fehler, *m.*, fault, mistake.
Feiertag, *m. comp.*, holiday.
Feind, *m.*, enemy; *as adj. pred. for:*
feindlich, hostile, 448.
Feld, *n.*, –er, field; —herr, *m.*, commander, general.
Fels *or* **Felſen**, *m.*, *gen.* –en *or* –ens, *pl.* –en, 101, rock.
Fenſter, *n.*, window.
Fertigkeit, *f.*, readiness, skill.
fett, fat.
Feuer, *n.*, fire; —verſicherung, *f.*, fire insurance.
finden, *S.*, to find.
Finger, *m.*, finger.
Fiſch, *m.*, fish.
Flamme, *f.*, flame.
Flaſche, *f.*, flask, bottle.
Fleiſch, *n.*, flesh, meat.
fleißig, industrious, diligent.
fliegen, *S.*, to fly (*aux.*, 298).
fliehen, *S.*, ſ., to flee.
Flügel, *m.*, wing.
Fluß, *m.*, ¨ſſe, river.
folgen, ſ., to follow (*dat.*).
Foſſil′, *n.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 119, fossil.
Frage, *f.*, question.
fragen, to ask, inquire.
Frankreich, *n.*, France.
Franzo′ſe, *m.*, Frenchman.

franzö′ſiſch, French; *as noun*, *n.*, French (language).

Frau, *f.*, -en, woman, wife; *in address*, Mrs.

Fräulein, *n. dim.*, young lady, miss, *in address*, Miss.

frei, free; *in comp.*, 379, —ſprechen, to acquit (of, *gen.*).

freilich, *adv.*, indeed, truly.

Freitag, *m. comp.*, Friday.

fremd, foreign, strange; *as noun*, foreigner, stranger; *f.*, die —e, foreign parts.

freſſen, *S.*, to eat (*used of beasts*).

Freude, *f.*, joy, 106.

freuen, to make glad; *usually reflex.*, to be glad, rejoice (*gen.*).

Freund, *m.*, friend; —in, *f.*, -nen, friend (female). [peace.

Friede(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99,

Friedrich, *m.*, Frederick.

frieren, *S.*, to freeze; *impers.*, to be cold (*acc. obj.*, 291).

friſch, fresh.

froh, glad, joyous.

Frucht, *f.*, ¨e, fruit.

früh, early; in early morning.

Frühling, *m.*, spring (season).

führen, to lead, conduct, drive, carry (on).

fünf, five. [spark.

Funke(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99,

für, (*acc.*), for, instead of.

Fürſt, *m.*, -en, prince.

Fürſtentum, *n.*, -tümer, principality.

Fuß, *m.*, ¨e, foot, 312.

G.

galoppie′ren, 215, to gallop.

Gans, *f.*, ¨e, goose.

ganz, all, whole, entire, 144; *adv.*, quite, very.

Garten, *m.*, ¨, garden.

Gaſt, *m.*, ¨e, guest; —hof, *m.*, ¨e, hotel, inn.

gebären, *S.*, to bear, bring forth.

geben, *S.*, to give; es gibt, *impers.*, there is, there are, 294.

Gebirge, *n.*, —, mountain range, mountains.

geboren, *p. p.* gebären, *tr.*, borne; *intr. as adj.*, born.

Gedanke(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99. thought.

Geduld, *f.*, patience.

Gefahr, *f.*, -en, danger, risk.

gefallen, *S.*, to please (*dat.*); ſich — laſſen, to submit to.

Gefallen, *m.*, pleasure; mir zu —, for my sake.

gefälligſt, *sup. adv.*, if you please.

ge′gen (*acc.*), against, towards, about (number), in comparison with, for.

Ge′gend, *f.*, neighborhood.

gegenü′ber, *adv.*, *and prep.* (*dat.*, 280), over against, opposite to.

gehen, *S.*, ſ., to go, walk, fare; ſpazieren —, to take a walk.

gelb, yellow.

Geld, *n.*, money; —ſumme, *f.*, sum of money.

gelegen, *p. p.* liegen, situated; *as adj.*, convenient.

gelingen, *S.*, ſ., *impers.* (*dat.*, 292), to turn out, succeed.

Gemälde, *n.*, —, painting.

geneſen, *S.*, ſ., to recover, get well.

Genf, *n.*, Geneva.

genießen, *S.*, to enjoy (*sometimes gen.*).

genug, *indecl.*, enough.
gerade, straight, direct; *usually adv.*, exactly, just.
geraten, *S.*, ſ., to turn out; *also p. p.* raten.
gern, 485, willingly, with pleasure.
geſchehen, *S.*, ſ., to happen, occur, be done.
Geſellſchaft, *f.*, company.
Geſetz, *n.*, –e, law.
geſtern, yesterday.
gewinnen, *S.*, to win.
gewogen, *p. p.* wiegen; *as adj.*, inclined to, favorable (*dat.*).
gießen, *S.*, to pour.
Glas, *n.*, ¨er, glass.
glauben, to believe (*dat. pers., acc. thing*, 437).
Glaube(n), *m.*, *gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99, faith, belief.
gleichen, *S.*, to be like, resemble (*dat.*).
Glück, *n.*, happiness, fortune.
glücklich, happy, fortunate.
golden, golden, (of) gold.
Gott, *m.*, ¨er, god; God; — lob, (*interj.*), praise God!
graben, *S.*, to dig.
Graf, *m.*, –en, count.
Gramma'tik, *f.*, grammar.
groß, größer, größt, great, large, tall.
grün, green.
gut, beſſer, beſt, good; *as adv.*, well.
Gut, *n.*, ¨er, property, estate; *pl.*, goods.
Güte, *f.*, goodness, kindness.

H.

Haar, *n.*, –e, (a) hair; *pl.* (the) hair.
haben, 256, to have (*as auxil.*, 296).
hageln, to hail.
halb, half, 144; — acht, half past seven, *etc.*
–halb, *in comp.*, *as* deshalb, for:
halben, halber, (*gen.*, 280), on account of, for the sake of; meinet=—, *etc.* 452, *b.*
Hälfte, *f.*, half.
halten, *S.*, *tr.*, to hold, keep, contain; (für) to hold for, consider; *intr.*, to hold on, halt, last.
Hand, *f.*, ¨e, hand.
handeln, 214, to act, deal, trade.
Häschen, *n. dim.*, little hare.
Haſe, *m.*, hare.
Haus, *n.*, ¨er, house, home.
heben, *S.*, to heave, lift, raise.
Heft, *n.*, –e, copy-book, note-book.
heilig, holy.
Heinrich, *m.*, Henry.
heiß, hot.
heißen, *S.*; *tr.*, to bid, call; *usually intr.*, to be called; to mean.
heiter, cheerful.
Held, *m.*, –en, hero.
helfen, *S.*, to help (*dat.*).
Hemd, *n.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en, shirt.
her, hither, along; ago; *as pref. in comp.* 377, 484.
heraus=kommen, *S.*, ſ., to come out, come forth, result.
Herbſt, *m.*, autumn, fall.
Herr, *m.*, *gen.* –n, *pl.* –en, master, lord, gentleman; sir, Mr. (428): mein —, sir; *pl.* gentlemen.
Herrin, *f.*, –nen, lady, mistress.
herrlich, noble, glorious.
herunter=fallen, *S.*, ſ., to fall down.
Herz, *n.*, *gen.* –ens, *pl.* –en, 102, heart.
heute, to-day; — abend, this even-

ing; — zu Tage, at the present day.

hier, here; *in comp.*, —mit, herewith. with this, 401.

Himmel, *m.*, heaven, sky.

hin, hence, away, off (see her).

hinten, *adv.*, behind.

hinter, *adv.* (*as pref.*, 287), behind, back: *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), behind.

hintergehen, *S.*, *sep.* ſ., to go behind; *insep.*, to deceive (287).

Hirt, *m.*, –en, shepherd.

hoch, höher, höchſt, *before* e, hoh, high.

hoffen, to hope.

Holz, *n.*, wood.

hören, to hear.

Hund, *m.*, –e, dog.

hundert, (a) hundred.

Hut, *m.*, ¨e, hat.

Hütte, *f.*, hut, cottage.

I.

ich, I.

ihr, her, their; Ihr, your, 188.

ihrig (der — e), hers, theirs; Ihrig, yours, 188.

im, *for* in dem.

immer, always, ever; wer . . . immer, whoever.

in, *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), in; into.

Infanterie′, *f.*, infantry.

inner, 158, inner, interior.

ins, *for* in das.

Inſekt′, *n.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en, insect.

irren, to wander, err; *reflex.*, to be mistaken.

J.

ja, yes, indeed, 485.

Jäger, *m.*, hunter, sportsman.

Jahr, *n.*, –e, year; —eszeit, *f.*, time of the year, season.

jammern, 214, to lament, mourn; *impers.* (*acc*)., it grieves.

je, ever; *correl.*, je . . . deſto, 334, the (more) . . . the (more).

jeder, each, every; ein —, every one.

jedermann, 244, everybody.

jemand, 244, somebody.

jener, that, that one; the former.

jenſeit(s), (*gen.* 280), on that side of, beyond.

jetzig, of now, present (time).

jetzt, now.

jung, ¨, young.

Jüngling, *m.*, youth, young man.

K.

Kahn, *m.*, ¨e, boat.

Kaiſer, *m.*, emperor; —in, –nen, empress.

kalt, ¨, cold.

Kaplan′, *m.*, –äne, chaplain.

Karl, *m.*, Charles.

Karlchen, *n. dim.*, (little) Charley.

Kartof′fel, *f.*, potato.

kaufen, to buy.

Kaufmann, *m.*, –leute *or* –männer, 425, merchant.

Kavallerie′, *f.*, cavalry.

kein, no, not any; *pron.*, —er, no one, none.

kennen, *M.*, to know, be acquainted with.

Kind, *n.*, –er, child; —erſtube, *f.*, nursery.

Kirche, *f.*, church.

Kirſche, *f.*, cherry.

klar, clear.

Klaſſe, *f.*, class.

Kleid, *n.*, –er, garment, dress: *pl.*, clothes.

klein, little, small.
klettern, 214, climb, clamber.
klingen, *S.*, to sound, resound, ring.
Kloſter, *n.*, ″, cloister, convent.
Knabe, *m.*, boy; —nſchule, *f.*, boys' school.
Koch, *m.*, ″e, cook (man).
Köchin, *f.*, –nen, cook (woman).
Köln, Cologne; Kölner, *indecl.*, 143, (of) Cologne.
kommen, *S.*, ſ., to come; — aus, (*dat*.), to come — result — from.
König, *m.*, king; —sſtraße, *f.*, King Street; —**in**, *f.*, –nen, queen.
königlich, kingly, royal.
können, 261, *modal:* to be able; can, may, 472; to know.
Konzert′, *n.*, –e, concert.
krank, ″, sick, ill.
Kranz, *m.*, ″e, wreath, garland.
Krieg, *m.*, war; —sheer, *n.*, army.
Kuh, *f.*, ″e, cow.
kühl, cool.
kurz, ″, short, curt; *adv.*, briefly, in short.

L.

Laborato′rium, *n.*, *gen.*, –s, *pl.* –ien, 118, laboratory.
lächeln, 214, to smile.
lachen, to laugh.
Land, *n.*, ″er *or* –e, 425, country, land; —gut, *n.*, farm; —haus, *n.*, country house; —leute, *pl.*, country people, 425.
lang(e), long; *adv.*, — her, long ago.
längs (*gen. or dat.*, 280), along.
laſſen, *S.*, to let, leave; *causative* 269, to make (do), have, cause to be (done); *reflex. for pass.* 274, can be (done).
laufen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298), to run.
laut, loud; *adv.*, aloud.
leben, to live; *noun*, **Leben**, *n.*, life.
leben′dig, living, alive.
legen, to lay, put.
Lehrer, *m.*, teacher.
leicht, light, easy.
leiden, *S.*, to suffer.
leihen, *S.*, to lend.
lernen, to learn.
leſen, *S.*, to read.
letzt, last; der —ere, the latter, 157.
Leute, *pl.*, people; (*in comp.* 425).
lieb, dear; *adv.*, —er, am —ſten, rather, liefer, liefest, 485.
lieben, to love.
Lied, *n.*, –er, song.
liegen, *S.*, to lie, be situated.
link, left; *adv.*, links, on the left.
loben, to praise.
Lord, *m.*, *pl.* –s, 120, lord (English).
Löwe, *m.*, lion.
Luft, *f.*, ″e, air.
lügen, *S.*, to lie, speak falsely.
Luſt, *f.*, ″e, pleasure, desire: — haben, to have a mind (to).

M.

machen, to make, do.
Mädchen, *n. dim.*, girl, maiden.
Magd, *f.*, ″e, maid (-servant).
Maler, *m.*, —, painter.
man, *indef.*, 460, one, we, they, people, *etc.*; *or by pass.*
Mann, *m.*, ″er, man, 425.
Mantel, *m.*, ″, mantle, cloak.
Marie′, *gen.*, Mari′ens, Mary.
Markt, *m.*, ″e, market, market-place.
Matro′ſe, *m.*, sailor.
Mauer, *f.*, –n, wall.

mehr (*irr. comp.* viel), *indecl.* more; —ere, *pl.* 157, several.

Meile, *f.*, mile.

meinen, to think, mean.

meinig (der —e), mine.

melken, *S.*, to milk.

Menſch, *m.*, –en, man, human being.

Meſſer, *n.*, knife.

Metall′, *n.*, –e, metal.

Milch, *f.*, milk.

Mineral′, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 119, mineral; —waſſer, *n.*, mineral water.

Mini′ſter, *m.*, minister.

Minu′te, *f.*, minute.

mißlingen, *S.*, ſ., *impers.*, to fail.

mit, *adv.*, along (with one); *prep.* (*dat.*), with, along with, in company with.

mögen, 261, *modal*: to like; may, can, *etc.* 472.

Monat, *m.*, –e, month.

Mond, *m.*, –e, moon.

Monument′, *n.*, monument.

Morgen, *m.*, —, morning, the east; des —s *or* morgens, of a morning.

morgen, *adv.*, to-morrow.

müde, tired.

multiplicie′ren, 215, to multiply; —mit, by.

Münſter, *n.* (*or m.*), minster, cathedral; —platz, *m.*, — square.

Muſe′um, *n.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –en, 118, museum.

müſſen, 261, *modal*: must, have to, [472.

Mutter, *f.*, *pl.* ¨, mother.

N.

nach, *adv.*, after, behind; *prep.* (*dat.*), after, according to, towards; —dem, *conj.*, after; —her, *adv.*, afterwards.

Nachbar, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, neighbor.

Nachmittag, *m. comp.*, afternoon; (des) —s, of an afternoon.

nächſt, *irr. sup.* nah; *as prep.*, next (to, *dat.*).

Nacht, *f.*, ¨e, night.

Nadel, *f.*, needle.

nah(e), näher, nächſt, near (*dat.*).

Name(n), *m.*, *gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99, name.

Narr, *m.*, *pl.*, –en, fool.

neben, *adv.*, near, beside; *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) beside, by, near, along with.

nebſt, *prep.* (*dat.*), along with, besides.

Neffe, *m.*, nephew.

nehmen, *S.*, to take (from, *dat. pers.*).

nein, no.

nennen, *M.* to name, call.

neu, new; —lich, *adv.*, recently.

neun, nine; —zehn, nineteen; der —te, the ninth.

nicht, not.

nichts, nothing.

niemand, 244, nobody.

noch, still, yet; — ein, one more; — nicht, not yet; (weder) . . . noch, nor.

Nord(en), *m.*, north.

Not, *f.*, need, distress.

November, *m.*, November.

nun, now, then, well, 485; *as conj.*, now that, since, 486,2.

nur, only, merely; was . . . nur, whatever, *etc.*

nützlich, useful.

O.

ob, *conj.*, whether, if; als —, as if; —gleich, although, 486.
oben, *adv.*, above, up (stairs).
oberhalb (*gen.*, 280), above, over.
Ochſe, *m.*, ox.
oder, or.
Offizier′, *m.*, –e, officer.
oft, ¨, often, frequently.
ohne (*acc*)., without, but for; — zu, without . . . *infin.*; — daß, 477, *c.*
Ohr, *n.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en, ear.
Onkel, —, uncle.
Oſt(en), *m.*, the east.

P.

Paar, *n.*, –e, pair (312); ein paar, a few (245).
Pantof′fel, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, slipper.
Papier′, *n.*, –e, paper.
Papſt, *m.*, ¨e, pope.
Paſtor, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –en, 117, pastor.
pfeifen, *S.*, to whistle, pipe.
Pferd, *n.*, –e, horse.
pflanzen, 213, to plant.
Plan, *m.*, ¨e *or* –e, plan.
Platz, *m.*, ¨e, place, square (in a city).
plaudern, 214, to chat.
plündern, 214, to plunder.
Poſt, *f.*, –en, post-office, mail.
Preis, *m.*, prize, price.
Preuße, *m.*, Prussian.
Prinz, *m.*, –en, prince.
Profeſſor, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –en, 117, professor.
Pulver, *n.*, —, powder.

Q.

quellen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298), to spring, well.

R.

Rand, *m.*, ¨er, edge, brink.
raten, *S.*, to advise (*dat.*).
Rathaus, *n. comp.*, council-house, town-hall.
rechnen, 212, to reckon, count.
Rechnung, *f.*, account.
recht, straight, right, just; right (hand); —s, *adv.*, on, to, the right.
Recht, *n.*, –e, right, justice, law; — haben, to be right.
reden, 212, to speak.
Regen, *m.*, rain.
Regiment′, *n.*, *pl.* –er, regiment.
regnen, 212, to rain.
reich, rich.
reif, ripe.
Reiſe, *f.*, travel, journey.
reiſen (213, *aux.*, 298), to travel, make a journey.
reißen, *S.*, to tear.
reiten (246, *aux.*, 298), to ride (on horseback).
Reſultat′, *n.*, –e, result.
retten, 212, to rescue, save.
Rhein, *m.*, Rhine.
Rock, *m.*, ¨e, coat.
rot, ¨, red.
rötlich, reddish.
rufen, *S.*, to call, summons.
ruhig, quiet, peaceful.
rühren, to move, excite.
Rußland, *n. comp.*, Russia.

S.

’s, *for* es, it.
Sache, *f.*, thing, affair, business.

ſagen, to say.

Samstag, *m. comp.*, Saturday.

ſauer, sour.

ſaufen, *S.*, to drink (of animals).

Schaf, *n.*, –e, sheep.

Schäfer, *m.*, shepherd. [do.

ſchaffen, *S.*, to create, make; *W.*, to

ſcharf, ¨, sharp.

Schauſpiel, *n. comp.*, –e, spectacle, play.

ſcheinen, *S.*, to shine, seem.

ſchelten, *S.*, to scold, call (a bad name).

ſcheren, *S.*, to shear, cut.

ſchicken, to send.

ſchießen, *S.*, to shoot.

Schiff, *n.*, –e, ship, boat.

Schiffer, *m.*, skipper, boatman.

Schlacht, *f.*, –en, battle.

ſchlafen, *S.*, to sleep.

ſchläfrig, sleepy.

Schlafzimmer, *n. comp.*, sleeping-room.

ſchlagen, *S.*, to strike, beat, knock, *reflex.*, to fight.

ſchlecht, bad, poor.

ſchleichen, *S.*, ſ., to creep, slink.

ſchleifen, *S.*, to whet, sharpen.

ſchließen, *S.*, to shut, close, lock.

ſchlingen, *S.*, to sling, twine.

Schloß, *n.*, ¨ſſer, castle, palace.

Schlüſſel, *m.*, key.

ſchmelzen, *S.*, ſ., to melt.

Schmerz, *m.*, 101, pain.

ſchnauben, *S.*, to snort.

Schnee, *m.*, *gen.* –s, snow.

ſchneiden, *S.*, to cut.

Schneider, *m.*, tailor.

ſchneien, to snow.

ſchnell, quick, fast; —zug, *m.*, fast train, express.

ſchon, already, even, surely, 485.

ſchön, fine, beautiful, handsome.

ſchreiben, *S.*, to write.

ſchreien, *S.*, to cry (out), scream.

ſchreiten, *S.*, ſ., to stride, step.

Schuh, *m.*, –e, shoe.

Schuld, *f.*, –en, debt, guilt; *as adj. pred.*, in fault, to blame, 448.

Schule, *f.*, school; —knabe, *m.*, school-boy; —ſtube, *f.*, school-room.

Schüler, *m.*, scholar, pupil.

Schüſſel, *f.*, dish.

ſchütteln, 214, to shake.

ſchwach, ¨, weak.

ſchwarz, ¨, black.

Schwefel, *m.*, sulphur; —holz, *n.*, ¨er, (sulphur) match.

Schweiz, *f.*, Switzerland, 416.

ſchwer, heavy, difficult; —lich, *adv.*, hardly.

Schweſter, *f.*, sister.

ſchwimmen, *S.*, to swim (*aux.*, 298).

ſchwindeln, 214, *impers.* (*dat.*), to be giddy.

ſchwinden, *S.*, ſ., to vanish, disappear.

ſechs, six; —mal, six times; —zehn, sixteen; —zig, sixty.

See, *m.*, –(e)n, lake; *f.*, sea (426).

ſegeln, 214, to sail (*aux.*, 298).

ſehen, *S.*, to see, look.

ſehr, very, much.

ſeiden, silken, of silk.

Seife, *f.*, soap.

ſein, 256, *b*, to be; (*as aux.*, 297).

ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*), since; *as conj.* (*for* ſeitdem), since (time), 486.

Seite, *f.*, side; page.

September, *m.*, September.

ſetzen, 213, to set, put: *reflex.*, to take a seat; *p. p.* geſetzt, suppose.

ſieben, seven; —(en)zehn, seventeen.

ſingen, *S.*, to sing.

ſinken, *S.*, ſ., to sink.

ſinnen, *S.*, to think, meditate.

ſitzen, *S.*, to sit.

ſo, so, thus, then; *often not transl.*; *for special uses*, 485; —eben, just; ſo . . . wie, as . . . as; eben—, just (as); —wohl, as well as, also.

Sohn, *m.*, ¨e, son.

Soldat′, –en, soldier.

ſollen, 261, *modal:* shall, is to; is said to, 472.

Sommer, *m.*, —, summer.

ſondern, but, 326.

Sonnabend, *m. comp.*, Saturday.

Sonne, *f.*, sun; —nſchein, *m.*, sunshine.

Sophi′e (*gen.* –ns), Sophia.

Spa′nien, *n.* (*gen.* –s), Spain.

ſpät, late; —eſtens, *gen. adv.*, at latest.

Spaten, *m.*, —, spade.

ſpazie′ren, 215, to walk, exercise; — fahren, gehen, reiten, *all* ſ., to take a drive, walk, ride.

Spazier′gang, *m.*, *comp.* ¨e, walk.

Speiſeſaal, *m.*, *comp.* –ſäle, dining-room.

ſpielen, to play.

Sprache, *f.*, speech, language.

ſprechen, *S.*, to speak.

ſpringen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298), to spring, jump.

Staat, *m.*, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en, state.

Stadt, *f.*, ¨e, city, town; —mauer, *f.*, city-wall.

ſtark, ¨, strong.

ſtechen, *S.*, to sting, prick.

ſtehen, *S.*, to stand; — bleiben, to stand still, stop.

ſtehlen, *S.*, to steal.

ſteigen, *S.*, ſ., to mount, rise.

Stein, *m.*, stone.

ſtellen, to place, put.

ſterben, *S.*, ſ., to die.

ſtieben, *S.*, to scatter, fly (like dust).

Stiefel, *m.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* — *or* –n, 105, boot.

ſtill, still, quiet.

Stock, *m.*, ¨e, stick, cane; story (of house).

Straße, *f.*, street.

Streichholz, *n. comp.*, ¨er, match.

ſtreiten, *S.*, to contend, quarrel.

Stube, *f.*, room.

Student′, –en, student.

ſtudie′ren, 215, to study.

Studium, *n.*, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 118, study.

Stuhl, *m.*, ¨e, chair.

Stunde, *f.*, hour, hour's walk.

Sturm, *m.*, ¨e, storm.

Süd(en), *m.*, south.

ſüß, sweet.

T.

tadeln, 214, to blame.

Tag, *m.*, –e, day.

Tal, *n.*, ¨er, valley, vale.

Taler, *m.*, —, dollar.

Tanne, *f.*, fir, pine.

Tante, *f.*, aunt.

tanzen, 213, to dance.

Tanzlehrer, *m. comp.*, dancing-master.

tapfer, brave, bold.

tauſend, (a) thousand.

Tat, *f.*, –en, deed, fact.

Teil, *m.*, part; —s, *gen. adv.*, partly.

Tempel, *m.*, temple.

Theologie′, *f.*, theology.

Thron, *m.*, –e *or* en, 105, throne.
tief, deep.
Tier, *n.*, –e, animal, beast.
Tinte, *f.*, ink.
Tiſch, *m.*, table.
Tochter, *f.*, ¨, daughter.
Tod, *m.*, death.
tot, dead. **töten,** to kill.
Tor, *m.*, –en, fool.
Tor, *n.*, –e, gate.
träg(e), lazy.
tragen, *S.*, to carry, bear; wear.
träumen, to dream.
treffen, *S.*, to hit, strike, meet with.
treiben, *S.*, to drive, pursue; *intr.* (*aux.*, 298), to drift, move.
treten, *S.*, ſ., to step, tread.
triefen, *S.*, to drip, drop.
trinken, *S.*, to drink.
tröſten, 212, to comfort.
tun, 255, to do, make; *intr.*, to act.
Tür(e), *f.*, door.

U.

über, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287), over, above; *prep.* (*dat.*), over, above; (*acc.*), over, above, beyond; about, concerning.
überall, everywhere.
übergehen, *S. sep.*, ſ., to go over, cross; *insep. tr.*, to pass over, omit.
übermorgen, day after to-morrow.
überſetzen, *sep.*, to set over, put across; *insep.*, to translate.
überſtehen, *S.*, *sep.*, to project jut out; *insep.*, to overcome, outlast.
Ufer, *n.*, shore, bank.
Uhr, *f.*, –en, watch, clock; (*indecl.*) o'clock, 305.
um, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287), around, about; *prep.* (*acc.*), around, about, concerning, for, at (time); um . . . willen, (*gen.*, 280), for the sake of; um . . . zu, (*infin.*), in order to (281).
umgehen, *S.*, *sep.*, ſ., to go around; *insep. tr.*, to evade.
um=kommen, *S.*, ſ., to perish.
um=ſchreiben, *S.*, *sep.*, to write again; *insep.*, to paraphrase.
unartig, unkind, naughty.
und, and.
Un′gar, –n, Hungarian.
ungeachtet, *part. adj. as prep.* (*gen.*), disregarding, in spite of, 280.
ungeduldig, impatient.
Univerſität′, *f.*, university.
unrecht, wrong; — haben, to be wrong.
unreif, unripe.
uns, us, (to) us.
unſer, our.
unten, *adv.*, under, below.
unter, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287), under; *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), under, beneath, among.
unter=gehen, *S.*, ſ., to go under, sink, set.
unterhalten, *S.*, to maintain, entertain; *reflex.*, to converse.
unweit, *adv.*, not far; *prep.* (*gen.*, 280), not far (from).

V.

Vater, *m.*, ¨, father.
verbieten, *S.*, to forbid.
Verbot′, *n.*, –e, prohibition.
verdrießen, *S.*, to vex, annoy.
Verfaſſer, *m.*, —, author.
vergeſſen, *S.*, to forget.
vergleichen, *S.*, to compare.

Vergnügen, *n.*, satisfaction, pleasure.
verhalten, *S.*, to hold back; *reflex.*, to hold one's self, be related.
verheiraten, 212, to give in marriage; *reflex.*, to marry, get married.
verirren, *reflex.*, to go astray, get lost.
verkaufen, to sell.
verlieren, *S.*, to lose.
vermittelſt (*gen.*, 280), by means of.
verſprechen, *S.*, to promise.
verſtehen, *S.*, to understand.
Verſuchung, *f.*, trial, temptation.
verzeihen, *S.*, to pardon (*dat.*).
Verzeihung, *f.*, pardon.
Vetter, *m.*, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -n *or* —, 105, cousin.
viel, much; *pl.*, many, 245, *c.*
vier, four; der —te, the fourth.
Viertel, *n.*, fourth (part), quarter.
Vogel, *m.*, ¨, bird.
Volk, *n.*, ¨er, people, nation.
vom = von dem.
von *dat.*, from, of, by, concerning.
vor, *adv.*, before, forward; *prep.* (*dat.*), before, in front of; for; ago; (*acc.*), before, to the front of.
vorgeſtern, day before yesterday.
vorig, preceding, previous, last.
Vormund, *m.*, ¨er, guardian.
vorn(e), *adv.*, forward, in front.

W.

während, *prep.* (*gen.*), during; *as conj.*, while.
wahrhaf′tig, true, real.
wahrſcheinlich, probable.
Wald, *m.*, ¨er, wood, forest.
wann, when (*interrog.*), 486.
warten, 212, to wait.
warum, *inter. or rel.*, (war *for* wor, 222), for what, wherefore, why.
was, *inter.*, what; *rel.*, what, that, which; *indef. for* etwas, something, some; *adv.*, why, how.
waſchen, *S.*, to wash.
Waſſer, *n.*, — *or* ¨, water.
weder, neither; . . . noch, nor.
Weg, *m.*, way, road.
weg, *adv. or sep. pref.*, away, off.
wegen, (*gen.*, 280), on account of, for.
weich, soft.
weichen, *S.*, ſ., to yield, submit.
weil, while; *usually*, because.
Wein, *m.*, wine.
weinen, to weep.
Weiſe, *f.*, way, manner.
weiſ(e), wise.
weiß, white; —lich, whitish.
weit, wide, broad; far.
welcher, *inter.*, which, what; *rel.*, who, which, that; *indef.*, some.
Welt, *f.*, -en, world.
wenig, little; ein —, a little; *pl.*, few, 245, *c.*
wenn, 486, when, whenever; if; — auch, gleich, although, 386.
wer, *inter.*, who; *rel.*, who, whoever.
werden, *S.*, ſ., to become; (*as aux.*, 173–4).
werfen, *S.*, to throw.
Werk, *n.*, -e, work.
Weſte, *f.*, vest.
Weſt(en), *m.*, west.
Wetter, *n.*, weather.
wie, *inter.*, how; *rel.*, how, as, when.
wider, *adv. and insep. pref.*, 288, again, against; *prep.* (*acc.*), against.
wieder, *adv. and sep. pref.*, 288, again, back.

wiegen, *S.*, to weigh.
wieviel, *comp.*, how much; *pl.*, how many; der —ſte, *as ord. num.*, what number, what (day of the month).
wild, wild, savage.
Wind, *m.*, wind.
winden, *S.*, to wind, twine.
Winter, *m.*, winter.
wiſſen, *M.*, to know, know how, understand.
wo, *inter. and rel.*, where, when, if; *in comp.*, *before vowels*, wor, 222.
Woche, *f.*, week.
wofür, 222, wherefor, for what.
woher, whence, where from (*also sep.*, 484).
wohin, whither, where to (*also sep.*, 484).
wohl, well, surely, indeed, 485.
wohlhabend, *part. adj.*, well off, wealthy.
wohnen, to dwell, live.
Wohnzimmer, *n.*, dwelling-room, sitting-room.
Wolke, *f.*, cloud.
wollen, 261, *modal:* to will, wish, intend, pretend (472).
woran, 222, whereon; on, at, what *or* which.
worauf, 222, whereupon; upon, after, what *or* which.
woraus, 222, whereout; out of, from, what *or* which.
Wort, *n.*, ¨er, *or* –e, 425, word.
Wörterbuch, *n. comp.*, dictionary.
worüber, 222, wherover; over, on, concerning, what *or* which.
wovon, 222, wherefrom; from, by, of, what *or* which.
Wunde, *f.*, wound.
wünſchen, 213, to wish.

Z.

Zahl, *f.*, –en, number.
zahlen, to pay.
zählen, to number, count.
Zahn, *m.*, ¨e, tooth; —weh, *n.*, toothache.
zehn, ten; der —te, the tenth.
zeichnen, 212, to draw, design.
zeigen, to show.
Zeit, *f.*, –en, time; —alter, *n.*, age (of the world).
Zeitung, *f.*, newspaper.
zerſtören, to destroy.
ziehen, *S.*, to draw, pull; *intr.* ſ., to move, march.
zieren, to adorn.
Zimmer, *n.*, room.
zu, *adv.* (*w. verb*) to; (*w. adj.*), too; *prep.* (*dat.*), to, in addition to; at, in, on; — Fuß, on foot; *with infin.*, um . . . zu, in order to.
zufrie′den, *adj. comp.*, content, satisfied.
Zug, *m.*, ¨e, draught, train, march; trait, feature.
zum, *for* zu dem.
zur, *for* zu der.
zurück′, *adv.*, back, behind.
zurück=kommen, *S.*, ſ., to come back.
zurück=ſchicken, to send back.
zuſammen, together.
zuwider (*dat.*, 280), contrary, repugnant (to).
zwanzig, twenty; der—ſte, the twentieth.
zwar, indeed, truly.
zwei, two; —mal, twice; der —te, the second.
zwingen, *S.*, to compel, force.
zwölf, twelve.

II.

ENGLISH-GERMAN.

See Explanatory Notes, p. 324. References are to §§.

A.

a, an, 419; many, such, what —, 420; not —, kein.

abbot, der Abt, ¨e.

able, tüchtig; to be —, können, 261, 472.

aboard, an Bord; all —! ein=ſteigen, 336.

about, *adv.*, um, 287, umher, herum; *prep.* (around) um (*acc.*); (on account of) wegen (*gen.*); concerning) über (*acc.*); (near) gegen (*acc.*); to be — to, im Begriff ſein . . . zu.

absent, abweſend, *part. adj.;* **absence,** die Abweſenheit.

abuse, *v.*, mißbrauchen, 288; (in words) ſchimpfen; *n.*, der Mißbrauch.

accept, an=nehmen, *S.*

accidental, zufällig; *adv.*, —ly, —erweiſe, 399.

accompany, begleiten, 212.

accomplish, vollbringen, 288.

account, die Rechnung; on — of, wegen (*gen.*); on that —, deshalb.

accuse, an=klagen, beſchuldigen, 434, *b.*

acknowledge, an=erkennen, 289.

acquainted (with), bekannt mit, (*dat. person*); kundig (*gen. thing*).

acquit, frei=ſprechen (*acc.*, *gen.*, 379).

across, *adv.*, über, hinüber; *prep.*, über (*acc.*).

act, *v.*, handeln, 214, tun, 255; *n. same as:*

action, die Handlung, die Tat, –en.

adapted, geeignet; (— to, zu).

address, *v.*, an=reden; *n.*, die Anrede; (*of a letter*) die Adreſſe.

adorn, zieren, ſchmücken.

advice, der Rat, 422; *v.*, **advise,** raten (*dat.*, 248).

affair, die Angelegenheit.

afraid, bange; to be —, ſich fürchten; to feel —, bangen (*impers.*, 291).

after, *prep.*, nach (*dat.*); *conj.*, nachdem; —wards, nachher, darnach.

afternoon, der Nachmittag; in the —, des —s, *or* nachmittags.

again, wieder, wiederum; once —, nochmals, noch einmal.

against, gegen (*acc.*), wider (*acc.*); — it, dagegen.

age, *n.*, (old age), das Alter; — of the world, Zeitalter; *v.*, altern, 214.

ago, vor (*dat.*), her; a year —, vor einem Jahre; long —, lange her.

agree, ſich vertragen, 249, überein=kommen, *S.*, ſ.

agreeable, angenehm (to, *dat.*).

air, die Luft, ¨e.

alas, ach! leider (*inverts verb*).

all, all, 460; (entire) ganz, 144.

allow, erlauben (*dat.*, *acc.*, 437); be —ed, dürfen (*modal*, 472).

almost, faſt, beinahe.
alms, das Almo′ſen.
along, *prep.*, längs (*gen.*), entlang (*acc.*); — with, mit, nebſt (*dat.*); *adv.*, (with one) mit.
aloud, laut.
Alps, die Alpen, *pl.*
already, ſchon.
also, auch.
although, obgleich, obſchon, obwohl; *also sep.*, ob . . . gleich, *etc.*, 486.
always, immer, ſtets.
ambassador, der Geſandte (*part.*, ſenden, *as noun*).
American, der Amerika′ner; —, *adj.*, amerikaniſch.
amiable, liebenswürdig.
amount, *n.*, die Summe; *v.*, — to, betragen, *S.*
ancient, alt, ¨, ehemalig; the —s, die Alten.
and, und; both —, ſowohl . . . als.
angry, zornig, böſe; to be —, zürnen.
animal, das Tier, –e.
another, ein anderer; (additional) noch ein.
answer, *n.*, die Antwort, –en; *v.*, antworten (*dat.*, 212); (correspond to) entſprechen, *S.*, (*dat.*).
antiquity, das Altertum, ¨er.
any, irgend ein; *pron.*, —body, —one, jemand; —thing, etwas; not —, kein; not —thing, nichts; *often not trans.*
apartment, das Zimmer, das Gemach, ¨er.
appearance, die Erſcheinung, der Schein (*seeming*).
appetite, der Appetit′, *gen.* –s.
apple, der Apfel, ¨; —-tree, der Apfelbaum.
appoint, beſtimmen; (to office, 443, *d*) ernennen, *M.*
apprentice, der Lehrling.
arch–, *prefix*, Erz′–; —angel, der Erzengel; —bishop, der Erzbiſchof, ¨e; —duke, der Erzherzog, –e.
arise (from), hervor=gehen, *S.*, ſ., (aus, *dat.*).
arm, (limb) der Arm, –e; (weapon) die Waffe; coat of —s, das Wappen, —.
army, die Armee′, –(e)n, das Heer, –e.
around, *prep.*, um (*acc.*), um . . . her; *adv.*, umher, herum.
arrive, an=kommen, *S.*, ſ.
art, die Kunſt, ¨e.
as, *adv.*, als, wie, 450, 2; as . . . as, (eben)ſo . . . wie; *conj.*, wie, da (reason, 485); — if, als (wenn), als (ob), 350, 2.
ascend, *tr.*, beſteigen, erſteigen; *intr.*, (hin)auf=ſteigen, ſ. *all S.*
ashamed, beſchämt; to be —, ſich ſchämen (*gen.*).
ask (question), fragen; (petition) bitten, *S.*, — (for), — um (*acc.*).
assertion, die Behauptung.
assist, bei=ſtehen, *S.*, helfen, *S.*, (*both dat.*).
assure, verſichern.
at, an, zu, bei, in, auf (*dat.*), um (*acc.*); — home, zu Hauſe; — noon, zu Mittag; — 10 o'clock, um 10 Uhr; — once, auf einmal; — one's house, bei (*dat.*).
attack, *n.*, der Angriff; *v.*, an=greifen, *S.*
attend (company), begleiten; (presence) bei=wohnen (*dat.*).
attentive, aufmerkſam.

August, der Auguſt′, *gen.* –s.
aunt, die Tante.
author, der Verfaſſer, —.
autumn, der Herbſt.
await, erwarten.
awake, *v. tr.*, wecken; *intr.*, auf-wachen, ſ.
away, weg, ab, fort.
awkwardness, die Ungeſchicklichkeit.

B.

back, *n.*, der Rücken; *adv.*, zurück, nieder; **—wards**, rückwärts.
bad, ſchlecht; (active) böſe.
baggage, die Baggage, das Gepäck.
bake, backen, *S.*
baker, der Bäcker.
balloon, der Ballon′.
bank, (shore) das Ufer, —; (commercial) die Bank, –en, 424.
bath, das Bad, ″er.
bathe, baden.
be, ſein; *pass. auxil.*, werden, 273; is to, ſollen, 472; (in health) ſich befinden, *S.*
bear, *n.*, der Bär, –en; —'s skin, das Bärenfell.
bear, *v.*, (carry) tragen, *S.*; (suffer) ertragen.
beat, ſchlagen, *S.*
beautiful, ſchön.
because, weil.
become, (grow) werden; (suit) geziemen (*dat.*); — of, werden aus (*dat.*).
bed, das Bett, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en, 105.
beer, das Bier.
befall, begegnen, ſ. (*dat.*).
before, *prep.*, vor (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, vorher; *conj.*, bevor, ehe; —hand, vorher; (*also sep. pref.*).
beg, bitten, *S.*; — for, — um (*acc.*).
begin, beginnen, *S.*; an-fangen, *S.*
behave, ſich betragen, *S.*; ſich benehmen, *S.*
behavior, das Betragen, das Benehmen (*inf. nouns*).
behind, *adv.*, hinter, 287, hinten; *prep.*, hinter (*dat. or acc.*).
believe, glauben (*dat.*, *acc.* 437, 2).
bell, die Glocke.
belong, gehören (*dat.*).
beloved, geliebt (*part. adj.*).
below, *adv.*, unten; *prep.*, unter (*dat. or acc.*).
bench, die Bank, ″e, 424.
beside, *prep.* (*dat.*, *acc.*), neben.
besides, *prep.* (*dat.*), außer; *adv.*, außerdem.
best, beſt (*irr. sup.*, gut); to do one's —, ſein Beſtes tun.
betray, verraten, *S.*
better, beſſer (*irr. comp.*, gut).
between, *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), zwiſchen.
big, groß, ″, 156.
bill (account), die Rechnung; (of exchange) der Wechſel.
bird, der Vogel, ″.
bishop, der Biſchof, ″e.
bite, beißen, *S.*
bitter, bitter; —ly, bitterlich.
black, ſchwarz, ″.
blame, tadeln.
blind, blind.
bloom, blühen.
blossom, blühen.
blow, *n.*, der Schlag, ″e.
blow, *v.*, blaſen, *S.*; — up, ſprengen.
blue, blau. **bluish**, bläulich.
boat, der Kahn, ″e, das Boot, 105; —man, der Schiffer.
body, der Leib, –er, der Körper; any—, *etc.*, *see* any.

bombard, bombardie'ren.
Boniface, Bonifacius.
book, das Buch, ¨er.
boot, der Stiefel, *gen.* -s, *pl.* 105.
born, geboren, *p. p.* gebären (*as adj.*).
both, beide, die beiden; beides, 460; *conj.*, both . . . and, ſowohl . . . als.
bottle, die Flaſche.
bough, der Aſt, ¨e, der Zweig.
boy, der Knabe; —s' school, die Knabenſchule.
brave, tapfer.
bread, das Brot, -e.
breadth, die Breite.
break, brechen, *S.*; — out, aus=brechen; — in pieces, zerbrechen.
breakfast, *n.*, das Frühſtück; *v.*, to —, frühſtücken, 380.
breathe, atmen, 212.
bride, die Braut, ¨e.
bridge, die Brücke.
bright, hell.
bring, bringen, *M.*; — with (one's self), along, mit=—; back, zurück=—.
broad, breit; — -shouldered, breitſchultrig.
brother, der Bruder, ¨; *or pl. coll.*, die Gebrüder, 387.
build, bauen; —ing, *n.*, das Gebäude, —.
bundle, das Bund, -e, 426; der, (das) Bündel.
burn, brennen, *M.*; — up, verbrennen.
bush, der Buſch, ¨e; *coll.*, bushes, das Gebüſch.
but, *conj.*, aber, allein, ſondern, 326; *adv.*, (only) nur; *prep.*, (except) außer (*dat.*).
butter, die Butter.
buy, kaufen.
by, *prep.*, (place) bei, neben (*dat.*); (agent) von (*dat.*); (means) durch (*acc.*); *adv.*, (near) dabei; (past) vorbei.

C.

cab, die Droſchke.
call, rufen, *S.*; (name) nennen *M.*; — out, aus=rufen; — on, (visit) beſuchen; — out (local) heraus=rufen.
can, können, 261, 472.
capable, fähig (*gen.*).
captain, der Hauptmann, ¨er; der Kapitän', -e.
carriage, der Wagen, — *or* ¨.
carry, (bear) tragen, *S.*, bringen, *M.*; (lead) führen; — out, (execute) ausführen, (local) hinaus=tragen; — up, hinauf=tragen, *S.*
castle, das Schloß, ¨ſſer.
cat, die Katze.
cattle, das Vieh.
cause, *n.*, die Ur'ſache; (reason) der Grund, ¨e; *v.*, verurſachen.
celebrated, *tr.*, berühmt (*part. adj.*).
cellar, der Keller.
center, der Mittelpunkt, -e; — of gravity, der Schwerpunkt.
certain, gewiß, beſtimmt (*part. adj.*).
chain, die Kette.
chair, der Stuhl, ¨e.
change, ändern, wechſeln; *intr.*, ſich —; — cars, um=ſteigen, *S.*
chapter, das Kapi'tel, —.
charge, (accusation) die Beſchuldigung; (attack) der Angriff.
Charles, Karl.
chat, plaudern.
cheese, der Käſe, *gen.* -s, *pl.* —.
chemistry, die Chemie'.

cherry, die Kirſche; **—tree,** der Kirſchbaum.

child, das Kind, –er; **—hood,** die Kindheit; **—ish,** kindiſch; **—like,** kindlich.

Christian, der Chriſt, –en; *adj.*, chriſtlich.

Christianity, das Chriſtentum.

Christmas, die Weihnachten, *pl.*

church, die Kirche; **—-tower, -steeple,** der Kirchturm.

city, die Stadt, ¨e; **—wall,** die Stadtmauer.

class, die Klaſſe.

clean, *adj.*, rein; *v.*, reinigen.

clear, klar, deutlich.

clerk, der Kommis′, 120, der Schreiber.

climb, klimmen, *S.*, ſ.

cloak, der Mantel, ¨.

cloister, das Kloſter, ¨.

close, ſchließen, *S.*, zu-machen.

cloth, das Tuch, ¨er.

clothes, *pl.* die Kleider.

clothe, kleiden.

cloud, die Wolke; *coll.*, clouds, 387.

coach (*see* carriage); **—man,** der Kutſcher.

coat, der Rock, ¨e.

coffee, der Kaffee, *gen.* –s.

cold, kalt, ¨; it is —, es friert; I am —, es friert mich, mich friert.

Cologne, Köln; *as adj.*, Kölner, 143.

color, die Farbe; *v.*, färben.

Colossus, der Koloß′, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –e.

come, kommen, *S.*, ſ.; — of, werden aus (*dat.*).

comfort, *n.*, der Troſt; *v.*, tröſten.

command, *v.*, (order) befehlen, *S.*; (control) gebieten, *S.*, (über, *acc.*).

companion, der Gefährte; *f.*, Gefährtin, –nen.

company, die Geſellſchaft; (*milit.*) die Compagnie′ (*French*).

compare, vergleichen, *S.*

comparison, der Vergleich.

compel, zwingen, *S.*

compliment, das Kompliment′, –e; to send one's —s to, ſich empfehlen, *S.* (*dat.*).

comprehend, begreifen, *S.*

concern, betreffen, *S.*; an-gehen, *S.*, (*both acc.*).

concert, das Konzert′, –e.

conducive, dienlich, behülflich; (*both dat.*, 438).

conduct, *v.*, (lead), führen; — one's self, ſich benehmen, *S.*; *n.*, das Benehmen (*infin.*).

conquer (a place), erobern; (an enemy) beſiegen.

conscious, bewußt (*gen.*, 433).

consider, *tr.*, bedenken, *M.*, überlegen; *intr.*, ſich bedenken; — as, halten für (*acc.*).

contented, zufrieden.

contrary; — to, zuwider (*follows dat.*); on the —, dagegen, im Gegenteil.

convent, das Kloſter, ¨.

conversation, das Geſpräch, –e, die Unterhaltung.

convert, *v.*, verwandeln; (moral) bekehren.

convince, überzeugen (*acc.*, *gen.*, 434).

cook, (man) der Koch, ¨e; (woman) die Köchin, –nen.

cool, kühl.

copy, *v.*, ab-ſchreiben, *S.*

corner, die Ecke.

cost, *v.*, koſten (*acc.*, 442).

cottage, die Hütte.

count, *n.*, der Graf, –en; **—ess,** die Gräfin, –nen.

count, *v.*, zählen; (reckon) rechnen.
country, das Land, *pl.* ¨er, *or* –e, 425; —man, der Landmann, *or* Landsmann, 425, *c*; —people, Landleute.
course, der Lauf, *gen.* –es; of —, natürlich, es verſteht ſich.
court, der Hof, ¨e.
cousin, der Vetter, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n, *or* —, 105; die Couſi′ne.
cover, *v.*, decken, bedecken; *n.*, die Decke, der Deckel.
cow, die Kuh, ¨e.
creep, kriechen, *S.*, (slink) ſchleichen, *S.*
crime, das Verbrechen.
cross (over), über-ſetzen, 287.
crowd, die Menge, 431, *c.*
crown, die Krone; —prince, der Kronprinz.
crucifix (cross), das Kreuz, –e.
crumble (to pieces), zerfallen, *S.*, ſ.
cry (out), ſchreien, *S.*; (weep) weinen.
cup, der Becher, die Taſſe.
curse, *n.*, der Fluch, ¨e; *v.*, verfluchen.
cut, *v.*, ſchneiden, *S.*; — off, abſchneiden.

D.

dance, *n.*, der Tanz, ¨e; *v.*, tanzen.
dancing-master, der Tanzlehrer.
dangerous, gefährlich.
dare, wagen, dürfen, 261, 472.
dark, dunkel; to grow —, dunkeln.
date, *n.*, das Datum; *v.*, datie′ren.
daughter, die Tochter, ¨.
day, der Tag, –e; to-—, heute; *adj.*, of to—, heutig; some —, einſt.
dead, tot.
deaf, taub; — and dumb, taubſtumm.
dear, lieb, teuer.
death, der Tod, 422.
deceive, betrügen, *S.*, hintergehen, *S.*
decide, entſcheiden, *S.*
declare, erklären, behaupten.
deed, die Tat, –en.
deem, halten, *S.*, für; — worthy, würdigen, (*acc.*, *gen.*).
deep, tief.
defy, trotzen (*dat.*); Trotz bieten, *S.* (*dat.*, 437).
degenerate, *adj.*, mißgeartet, 288.
delight, *n.*, die Freude, 106; *v.*, erfreuen; *intr.*, ſich freuen (*gen.*); to be —ed, ſich freuen (*or impers.*, 291)
deliver, liefern, überliefern.
dentist, der Zahnarzt.
deny, leugnen, verneinen.
depend, ab-hangen, *S.*; — on, von (*dat.*).
deprive, rauben, berauben, 440.
desert, *v.*, verlaſſen, *S.*
desert, *n.*, die Wüſte.
deserve, verdienen.
desire, verlangen; *also impers.*, mich verlangt (nach).
despise, verachten.
destroy, zerſtören, (spoil) verderben, *S.*
devotion, die Ergebenheit.
dictionary, das Wörterbuch.
die, ſterben, *S.*, ſ.
difficult, ſchwer.
dig, graben, *S.*
dignity, die Würde.
diligent, fleißig.
dine, zu Mittag eſſen, *S.*, 379.
dining-room, der Speiſeſaal, –ſäle.
dinner, das Mittageſſen (*inf. noun*).
disagreeable, unangenehm (to, *dat.*).
disapprove, mißbilligen, 288.
dish, die Schüſſel.
dismiss, entlaſſen, *S.*, 434.

dissatisfied, unzufrieden.

distance, die Entfernung, die Weite.

distinct, (clear) deutlich; (different) verſchieden.

distinguish, unterſcheiden, *S.*; — one's self, ſich aus=zeichnen.

distress, *n.*, die Not, das Elend; —ing, *adj.*, elend, peinlich.

ditch, der Graben, ¨.

divide, dividie′ren, 215; (separate) entzweien; (distribute) verteilen.

divine, göttlich.

do, tun, 255, machen; (in health) ſich befinden, *S.*; *as aux. not transl.*

doctor, der Doktor, 117; (physician) der Arzt, ¨e.

dog, der Hund, —e.

dollar, der Taler, —.

door, die Türe.

double, doppelt.

doubt, *n.*, der Zweifel; *v.*, zweifeln.

down, nieder; her= *or* hin=ab, =unter, 484; — hill, bergab.

dozen, das Dutzend.

draw, (attract) ziehen, *S.*; (design) zeichnen; —ing, die Zeichnung.

dress, *n.*, das Kleid, die Kleidung; *v. tr.*, kleiden; *intr.*, ſich anziehen, *S.*

drink, *v.*, trinken, *S.*, (of animals) ſaufen, *S.*; *n.*, das Getränk.

drinkable, trinkbar.

drip, triefen, *S.*

drive, *tr.*, treiben, *S.*; (a carriage) *tr.*, führen; *intr.*, fahren, *S.*, ſ.; to take, go for a —, ſpazieren fahren.

drunken, betrunken.

dry, *adj.*, trocken; *v.*, trocknen.

dumb, ſtumm; deaf and —, taubſtumm.

during, während (*gen.*, 280).

duty, die Pflicht, –en.

dwell, wohnen.

dye, *n.*, die Farbe; *v.*, färben.

E.

each, jeder; — one, jeder, ein jeder; — other, einander (*indecl.*).

eagle, der Adler, —.

ear, das Ohr, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en.

early, früh.

earth, die Erde, 106; —ly, irdiſch.

easy, leicht.

East, der Oſten; (*fig.*) der Morgen.

Easter, Oſtern (*pl.*).

eat, eſſen, *S.*, (of animals) freſſen, *S.*

eatable, eßbar.

edge, der Rand, ¨er; (of knife) die Schneide.

education, die Erziehung.

egg, das Ei, –er.

eight, acht; —(t)een, achtzehn; —(t)y, achtzig.

either, beides, 460; *correl. conj.*, entweder . . . oder (*or*).

elderly, ältlich.

elect, *v.*, wählen, erwählen (zu, 443).

eleven, elf; the —th, der elfte.

emperor, der Kaiſer.

end, *n.*, das Ende, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n; *v.*, endigen.

enemy, der Feind; *coll.*, the —, *pl.*

England, (das) England.

English, engliſch; —man, der Eng′länder.

enmity, die Feindſchaft.

enough, genug′ (*usually follows*).

enter, (her= *or* hin=) ein=gehen, *S.*, ſ.; ein=treten, *S.*, ſ.

entertain, unterhalten, *S.*

entire, ganz, 144; *adv.*, *also* gänzlich.

equal, gleich (*dat.*), gewachſen (*dat.*); *v.*, gleich=kommen, *S.*, ſ. (379, *dat.*).

err, ſich irren.

errand-boy, der Laufburſche.

escape, entgehen, *S.*, ſ.; (run off) entlaufen *S.*, ſ. (*both dat.*).

estate, das Gut, ¨er; — country, Landgut, ¨er.

esteem, achten, halten für.

Europe, (das) Europa.

evade, umgehen, *S.*, 287.

even, *adj.*, eben; *adv.*, auch, 485, ſelbſt, 454.

evening, der Abend, –e; in the —, des —s *or* abends, 435.

event, die Begebenheit, das Ereignis, –ſſe.

ever, je, jemals; (always) immer.

every, jeder, aller, 460; —body, —one, ein jeder, jedermann; —thing, alles; —where, überall.

except, *v.*, aus=nehmen, *S.*; *as prep.*, außer (*dat.*), ohne (*acc.*); *part.*, ausgenommen.

excessive, übermäßig; *as adv.*, äußerſt, 450, —, *c.*

excitement, die Aufregung.

excuse, *v.*, entſchuldigen; *n.*, die Entſchuldigung.

exercise, die Übung; (lesson) das Exercitium, 118.

exhibition, die Ausſtellung.

expect, erwarten; *n.*, —ation, die Erwartung.

expensive, teuer, koſtbar.

explain, erklären.

express, *v.*, aus=drücken; *n.*,— (train), der Schnellzug.

expression, der Ausdruck, ¨e.

expressive, ausdrucksvoll.

eye, das Auge, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n.

F.

fable, die Fabel.

face, das Geſicht, –er.

fact, die Tatſache; in —, in der Tat.

fade, verbleichen, *S.*, ſ., verblühen, ſ.

fail, fehlen; (bankrupt) fallie′ren.

fairy-tale for children, das Kindermärchen.

faith, der Glaube, *gen.* –ns, 99.

faithful, treu.

fall, fallen, *S.*, ſ.; — in (her= *or* hin=) ein=fallen, *S.*, ſ.

false, falſch.

famous, berühmt (*part. adj.*).

fan, der Fächer.

fancy, *v.*, meinen, ſich ein=bilden, 437.

far, fern, weit; as — as, ſo fern (als), bis (*prep.*).

farmer, der Bauer, 104.

fast, (firm) feſt; (rapid) ſchnell.

fat, fett.

fate, das Schickſal, –e.

father, der Vater, ¨.

fault, der Fehler; in —, ſchuldig, ſchuld, 448.

favor, die Gunſt, –en, 106, *note*.

favorable, günſtig, gewogen (*part. adj.*), *both dat.*

fear, *n.*, die Furcht; *v.*, fürchten, 212; ſich fürchten (vor, *dat.*).

feature, der Zug, der Geſichtszug, ¨e.

February, der Februar′.

feeble, ſchwach, ¨.

feel, fühlen, ſich fühlen; — afraid, bangen; — giddy, ſchwindeln, *both impers.* (*dat.*).

fell, fällen.

fellow, der Burſche; —man, Mitmenſch, –en.

fetch, holen.

few, wenige (*pl.*); a —, einige (*pl.*).
field, das Feld, -er.
fifteen, fünfzehn (*or* funfzehn).
fifth (the), der fünfte.
fifty, fünfzig (*or* funfzig).
fight, fechten, *S.; n.*, das Gefecht.
find, finden, *S.*, — out, erfahren, *S.*
fine, (size) fein; (look) ſchön.
fire, das Feuer; —insurance, die Feuerverſicherung.
first (the), der erſte; *adv.*, erſt, 485; —ly, erſtens; at —, zuerſt, anfangs; —-born, erſtgeboren (*part. adj.*).
fish, *n.*, der Fiſch; *v.*, fiſchen.
five, fünf; of — kinds, fünferlei, 306.
flag, die Flagge, die Fahne.
flame, die Flamme.
flatter, ſchmeicheln (214, *dat.*).
flattery, die Schmeichelei′.
flay, ſchinden, *S.*
flee, fliehen, *S.*, ſ.
flow, fließen, *S.;* rinnen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298).
flower, die Blume; — basket, der —nkorb, ¨e; — -garden, der —ngarten.
fly, *v.*, fliegen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298).
fly, *n.*, die Fliege.
follow, folgen, ſ. (*dat.*).
folly, die Torheit.
food, die Speiſe, die Nahrung (*infin.*, das Eſſen).
fool, der Narr, der Tor, *both pl.* -en; —ish, närriſch, töricht.
foot, der Fuß, ¨e; on —, zu Fuß.
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*), (cause) vor (*dat.*), wegen (*gen.*); *conj.*, denn.
forbid, verbieten, *S.*
force, zwingen, *S.; n.*, der Zwang.
foreign, fremd; —er, *n.*, der Fremde; — parts, die Fremde, das Ausland.
foremost, der erſte.
foresee, vorher′=ſehen, *S.*
forest, der Wald, ¨er.
foretell, vorher′=ſagen.
forget, vergeſſen, *S.*, (*rarely gen.*); — -me-not, das Vergißmeinnicht.
forgive, vergeben, *S.*, (*dat.*).
former, vorig; (the) —, erſterer, 157, 417, jener.
forsake, verlaſſen, *S.*
fortnight, vierzehn Tage; a — ago, vor —n (*dat.*).
forty, vierzig.
fossil, das Foſſil′, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -ien, 118.
fountain, die Quelle, der Brunnen, —.
four, vier; — -cornered, —eckig; —-footed, —füßig; —teen, —zehn.
franc, der Franke.
Frederick, Friedrich; — Street, die —sſtraße.
freedom, die Freiheit; — of will, die Willens—.
freeze, frieren, *S.*
French, *adj.*, franzö′ſiſch; *n.*, (language) das Franzöſiſch; the —, *n.*, die Franzo′ſen.
frequent, häufig; *adv.*, *also* oft, öfters.
friend, der Freund; —ly, —lich; —-ship, die —ſchaft.
frighten, *tr.*, *weak*, erſchrecken; *intr.*, be —ed, erſchrecken, *S.*, bangen (*impers. dat.*, 291).
from, von (*dat.*), aus (*dat.*); (cause) vor (*dat.*), wegen (*gen.*).
fruit, die Frucht, ¨e.
fugitive, der Flüchtling.
full, voll, 433.
further, weiter (*comp.*).
future, *n.*, die Zukunft; *adj.*, zukünftig.

G.

garden, der Garten, ″; — -wall, die Gartenmauer.
gardener, der Gärtner.
gate, das Tor, –e.
gem, der Edelſtein.
general, der Feldherr, der General′ (*pl.* –äle).
gentleman, der Herr, 97.
German, *adj.*, deutſch; *as noun*, a —, ein Deutſcher; — (language), das Deutſch.
Germany, (das) Deutſchland.
get, (obtain) bekommen, *S.; intr.*, (become) werden; — in, — out, ein=, aus=ſteigen, *S.*, ſ.; — on, gehen, *S.*, ſ. (*impers. dat.*); — well, geneſen, *S.*, ſ.
giant, der Rieſe.
giddy, ſchwindelig; to be, feel —, ſchwindeln (*impers. dat.*).
gilded, vergoldet.
girl, das Mädchen, (servant) die Magd, ″e.
give, geben, *S.;* — up, auf=geben.
glad, froh; to be — of, ſich freuen (*gen.*); *adv.*, —ly, gern, 485.
glass, das Glas, ″er; *adj.*, gläſern.
glide, gleiten, *S.*
glimmer, glimmen, *S.*
glorious, herrlich.
glory, (fame) der Ruhm (*gen.* –es); (splendor) die Herrlichkeit.
go, gehen, *S.*, ſ.; — by, vorbeigehen; — out (a light), erlöſchen, *S.*, ſ.; — to walk, ſpazieren gehen; — with, mit=gehen.
god, der Gott, ″er; **God**, Gott.
gold, das Gold; *adj.*, golden.
good, gut; *also adv.* (*for* well); *noun*, das Gut, ″er.
goodness, die Güte.
goose, die Gans, ″e.
gospel, das Evangelium, 118.
gracious, gnädig.
gradual, allmälig.
grammar, die Gramma′tik.
grand, großartig; (rank) vornehm; —father, der Großvater; —mother, die Großmutter.
grant, zu=geben, *S.*, verleihen, *S.;* God —, gebe Gott.
great, groß, ″, 156.
Greek, *n.*, der Grieche; *adj.*, griechiſch.
green, grün; *n.*, das Grün; —ish, grünlich.
grievous, ſchmerzlich; (heavy) ſchwer.
grind, (corn) mahlen; (a knife) ſchleifen, *S.*
grove, der Hain.
grow, wachſen, *S.*, ſ.; (become) werden; — dark, dunkeln.
guest, der Gaſt, ″e.
guilt, die Schuld (*pl.* –en, debts).
gun-powder, das Schießpulver.

H.

hail, *n.*, der Hagel; *v.*, hageln.
hair, das Haar (*pl.* –e, *as coll.*).
half, halb, 144; a, the — 420; *n.*, die Hälfte.
hand, die Hand, ″e; the right, left —, die Rechte, Linke.
handsome, ſchön.
hang, *intr.*, hangen, *S.; tr.*, *weak*, hängen; — up, auf=hängen.
happen, geſchehen, *S.*, ſ.
happiness, das Glück; (joy) die Freude.
happy, glücklich.
harbor, der Hafen, ″.

hardly, ſchwerlich; (scarcely) kaum.
hare, der Haſe.
harm, der Schade(n) 100; *v.*, ſchaden (*dat.*).
haste, die Eile; hasty, eilig.
hat, der Hut, ¨e.
have, haben (*as aux.*, 296); — to, müſſen, ſollen (*modal*).
hawthorn, der Weißdorn.
he, er; der, dieſer, derſelbe, 457; — (who) der, derjenige, 208.
head, der Kopf, ¨e; —ache, das Kopfweh.
health, die Geſundheit.
hear, hören; — tell, ſagen hören.
heart, das Herz, *gen.* –ens, *pl.* –en, 102.
heat, die Hitze; *v.*, heizen.
heath, die Heide.
heathen, der Heide; —ism, das Heidentum.
heaven, der Himmel.
height, die Höhe.
help, helfen, *S.*, beiſtehen, *S.* (*both dat.*); *n.*, die Hilfe.
Henry, Heinrich.
her, *pers.*, ſie, (*dat.*, to) ihr; *poss. adj.*, ihr; —self, *reflex.*, ſich; *emph.*, ſelbſt, 454.
here, hier; *adj.*, hieſig; —with, hiermit, 401.
hero, der Held, –en.
high, hoch, *irreg.*, 135, *a*, 156.
hill, der Hügel; up, down —, bergauf, —⸗ab.
him (*acc.*), ihn, (*dat.*, to) ihm; —self *reflex.*, ſich; *emph.*, ſelbſt, 454.
his, *adj.*, ſein; *pron.*, ſeiner; deſſen, desſelben, 457.
history, die Geſchichte.
hit, treffen, *S.*
hold, halten, *S.*; — for (consider), — für (*acc.*); — worthy, würdigen (*acc.*, *gen.*).
holiday, der Feiertag.
home, die Heimat, –en; *adv.*, (to), at, from —, nach, zu, von Hauſe.
honesty, die Ehrlichkeit.
honor, *n.*, die Ehre, 106; man of —, der Ehrenmann, 425; *v.*, ehren.
hope, *v.*, hoffen; *n.*, die Hoffnung; —ful, hoffnungsvoll; —less, hoffnungslos; — of, *or* for, auf (*acc.*).
horse, das Pferd, –e.
hospital, das Hoſpital′, ¨er.
hot, heiß.
hotel, der Gaſthof, ¨e; — -porter, der Hausknecht.
hour, (duration) die Stunde; (o'clock) (die) Uhr, 305; —ly, ſtündlich.
house, das Haus, ¨er; — of lords, das Herren—.
how, wie.
human, menſchlich; — being, der Menſch, –en.
humanity, die Menſchheit; (feeling) die Menſchlichkeit.
humble, demütig.
hundred (a), hundert.
Hungarian, der Un′gar, –n.
hungry, hungrig; to be —, hungern; *impers.* (*acc.*).
huntsman, der Jäger.
hurry, die Eile; in a —, in Eile.
husband, der Mann, Ehemann, 425.
hut, die Hütte.
hypocrisy, die Heuchelei′.

I.

I, ich.
ice, das Eis; cold as —, eiskalt.
if, wenn (*omitted*, 350, 2); even —, wenn . . . auch, 486; (whether) ob.

ill, krank, ¨; dangerously —, ſterbenskrank; —ness, die Krankheit.

image, das Bildnis, –ſſe.

imagine, ſich (*dat.*) einbilden.

immediately, ſogleich.

immortality, die Unſterblichkeit.

impatient, ungeduldig.

important, wichtig, bedeutend.

impostor, der Betrüger.

improvidence, die Unvorſichtigkeit.

in, *prep.*, in (*dat.*), into (*acc.*); *adv.*, (place) darin; (motion) herein, hinein; *as sep. pref.*, ein-.

include, ein-ſchließen, *S.*

incontestable, unſtreitig.

incredible, unglaublich.

industrious, fleißig.

infer, ſchließen, *S.*; — from, aus, (*dat.*); (from one's look) an-ſehen, *S.* (*dat. pers.*).

inform, benachrichtigen.

injurious, ſchädlich (*dat.*).

inn, das Wirtshaus.

innocence, die Unſchuld.

innocent, unſchuldig.

insist, beſtehen, *S.*; — on, auf (*acc.*, 477).

inspect, beſehen, *S.*

instead, (of), anſtatt, ſtatt (*gen.*); *before infin.*, 475, 2.

insult, *v.*, beleidigen; *n.*, die Beleidigung.

interest, *n.*, das Intereſſe, *gen.* –s, *pl.*, –n; *v.*, an-gehen, *S.*; — one's self in, ſich an-nehmen, *S.* (*gen.*).

interior, inner, 158; *as n.*, das Innere.

into, *prep.*, in (*acc.*); *adv.*, herein, hinein.

intolerable, unerträglich; *see also* 482.

introduce, ein-führen; (a person) vorſtellen.

invent, erfinden, *S.*

invention, die Erfindung.

invite, ein-laden, *S.*

iron, das Eiſen; *adj.*, eiſern.

island, die Inſel, das Eiland, –e.

it, es, 452–3; its, ſein, *or dem.*, *gen.*, 457.

J.

January, der Januar′.

jewel, das Kleinod, *pl.* –e, *or* –ien.

journey, die Reiſe.

joy, die Freude; for —, vor —n.

judge, urteilen; (official) richten; *n.*, der Richter.

jump, ſpringen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298).

just, *adj.*, gerecht; *adv.*, gerade; (time) ſoeben, erſt.

K.

keep, halten, *S.*; (retain) behalten, *S.*; *intr.*, ſich halten, bleiben, *S.*, ſ.

key, der Schlüſſel.

kill, töten.

kind, die Art, –en; — of, *by suffix*, —erlei, 306; what — of, was für.

kind, gütig; —ness, die Güte.

king, der König; —dom, das Königreich, –e.

kitchen, die Küche.

knife, das Meſſer.

knock, klopfen; (hit) ſtoßen, *S.*

know, kennen, wiſſen, 254 (*see note*, *p.* 134); können, 268.

known (well —), bekannt (*part. adj.*).

knowledge, die Kenntnis, –ſſe, das Wiſſen (*infin.*); of my —, meines Wiſſens.

L.

laboratory, das Laborato′rium, 118.

laborer, der Arbeiter.

lacerate, zerfleiſchen.

lady, die Dame.

lake, der See, 104, 426.

lame, lahm.

land, *n.*, das Land, 425; *v.*, landen, ſ.

landlord, der Wirt, der Hausherr.

language, die Sprache.

large, groß, ″, 156.

last, letzt, 157; (preceding) vorig; *adv.*, at —, endlich, zuletzt.

late, ſpät; —ly, neulich; at latest, ſpäteſtens (*gen.*).

laugh, lachen; — at, lachen (*gen.*), aus=lachen (*acc.*).

law, das Geſetz, –e.

lawyer, der Advokat′, –en, der Rechtsgelehrte (*adj.*, *noun*).

lay, legen.

lazy, träge.

lead, führen, leiten.

lead, das Blei.

leaf, das Blatt, ″er.

leap, ſpringen, *S.*; (*aux.*, 298).

learn, lernen (*infin.*, 474); —ed, gelehrt (*part.*, *adj.*).

leave, *v.*, laſſen, verlaſſen, *S.*; *intr.*, (depart) ab=fahren, *S.*, ſ.

leave, *n.*, (permission) die Erlaubnis; (departure) der Abſchied, –e.

leg, das Bein, –e.

lend, leihen, *S.*

length, die Länge; *adv.*, at —, endlich.

lessen, (ver)mindern.

lesson, (task) die Aufgabe; (hour) die Stunde.

let, laſſen, *S.*; *or by imperat.*

letter, der Brief; (of alphabet) der Buchſtabe, *usually gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99; —-carrier, der Briefträger.

liberate, befreien, frei=laſſen, *S.*, 379.

liberty, die Freiheit; to set at —, in — ſetzen.

library, die Bibliothek′.

lie, (posture) liegen, *S.*

lie, (falsehood) lügen, *S.*; *n.*, die Lüge; to tell a —, lügen.

life, das Leben; —-insurance, die Lebensverſicherung.

lift, heben, *S.*; — up, auf=heben.

light, das Licht (*pl.*, 424); — of day, 389, 2.

lighten, (flash) blitzen.

like, *v.*, (love) lieben; — to, mögen, 472, *or adv.*, gern 485.

like, *adj.*, gleich, ähnlich (*dat.*); *adv.*, wie; to be —, gleichen, *S.*, (*dat.*); *adv.*, —ly, wahrſcheinlich.

limb, das Glied, –er.

lion, der Löwe.

listen, horchen, zu=hören (to, *dat.*).

little (size), klein; (quantity) wenig; a —, ein wenig; (*often tr. by dim.*).

live, leben; — to see, erleben.

load, *v.*, laden, *S.*; *n.*, die Laſt, –en.

lock, ſchließen, verſchließen, *S.*

long, *adj.*, lang; *adv.*, lang(e); — ago, lange her, längſt.

look, blicken, ſehen, *S.*; (seem) aus=ſehen; — for (seek), ſuchen; (expect) erwarten; — at, an=ſehen, beſehen, *S.*

lord, der Herr, *gen.* –n, *pl.* –en.

lose, verlieren, *S.*; — one's way, ſich verirren, ſich verlaufen, *S.*; — at play, verſpielen.

loss, der Verluſt, ″e.

loud, laut.

love, *v.*, lieben; — to, *adv.* gern, 485; *n.*, die Liebe; —-letter, der Liebesbrief.

lovely, lieblich, liebenswürdig.

low, niedrig, (soft) ſanft.

lucky, glücklich.

luggage, das Gepäck.

M.

magnanimous, großmütig.

maid-servant, die Magd, ⁿe.

maintain, (assert) behaupten; (support) erhalten, *S.*

make, machen; — haste, eilen.

malicious, boshaft.

man, (sex) der Mann, ⁿer (*see* 425); (human) der Menſch, –en.

manner, (mode) die Weiſe; (custom) die Sitte.

many, viele (*pl.*); — a, mancher, manch ein; how —, wie viele.

marble, der Marmor; *adj.*, marmorn.

March, der März.

march, marſchie′ren, 215; (*aux.*, 298); ziehen, *S.*, ſ.; *tr.*, — laſſen, 269.

mark (coin), die Mark, 312.

market, der Markt, ⁿe; — place, —, der Marktplatz.

marriage, (state) die Ehe; (wedding) die Hochzeit.

Mary, Marie′, 110.

mast, der Maſt, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en.

master, der Herr, *gen.* –n, *pl.* –en; — of, mächtig (*gen.*).

material, das Material′, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –ien, 119.

matter, *n.*, (affair) die Sache; to be the —, fehlen (*impers.*, *with dat.*); it matters, es kommt darauf an.

May, der Mai.

may, mögen, können, dürfen, 472.

maybe, *adv.*, vielleicht.

mayor, der Bürgermeiſter.

me, mich (*acc.*); mir (*dat.*).

mean, meinen, ſagen wollen, *p.*, 121.

mean(s), das Mittel; by — of, vermittelſt (*gen.*), durch (*acc.*); by no —, keineswegs, 399.

measure, *n.*, das Maß, –e; *v.*, meſſen, *S.*; take one's —, anmeſſen, *S.* (*dat. pers*; for *acc.*).

meat, das Fleiſch.

meditate, ſinnen, *S.*

meet, begegnen, ſ. (*dat.*); — with, treffen, *S.*

melt, ſchmelzen, *S.*, ſ.

memory, das Gedächtnis.

mend, beſſern, aus=beſſern.

merchant, der Kaufmann (*pl.*, 425).

merciful, barmherzig, gnädig (to, *dat.*).

mercy, die Barmherzigkeit; to have —, ſich erbarmen (on, *gen.*).

meritorious, verdient, (*part. adj.*).

messenger, der Bote.

Michael, Michel.

middle, *n.*, die Mitte; *adj.*, mittler (*comp.*, 158).

midnight, die Mitternacht.

mighty, mächtig.

mild, mild(e).

mile, die Meile, die Stunde (hour's walk).

milk, die Milch; *v.*, melken (*see List*).

mine, meiner, meinig; *in pred. also* mein, 193.

minister, der Mini′ſter.

minute, *n.*, die Minu′te (time).

misfortune, das Unglück.

miss, verfehlen; (feeling) vermiſſen; — the mark, vorbei=ſchießen, *S.*

Miss, *n.*, das Fräulein; (title, 428).

mistake, *n.*, der Fehler; (error) der Irrtum, –tümer; *v.*, to be —n, ſich irren.

modest, beſcheiden (*part. adj.*).

moment, der Augenblick.

Monday, der Montag.

money, das Geld; sum of —, die Geldſumme.

monk, der Mönch.

monkey, der Affe.

month, der Mo′nat, –e.

monument, das Monument′.

moon, der Mond, –e; full —, der Vollmond.

more, mehr (*indecl.*); noch, 485; *or by comp. inflection;* the —, 334.

morning, der Morgen, —; in the —, des —s, *or adv.*, morgens.

morrow (to-) morgen; day after —, übermorgen.

most, meiſt, am meiſten; *abs. superl.*, höchſt, äußerſt; *or by sup. inflection.*

mother, die Mutter, ¨; — tongue, die Mutterſprache.

mount, ſteigen, *S.*, ſ.; *tr.*, beſteigen; — up, auf=ſteigen, ſ.

mountain, der Berg; —-range, das Gebirge, —.

mouse, die Maus, ¨e.

move, *tr.*, bewegen; (excite) rühren; *intr.*, ziehen, *S.*, ſ.

Mr., (der) Herr; **Mrs.,** (die) Frau, 428.

much, *adj.*, viel, 245, *also adv.;* (degree) ſehr (*adv.*).

multiply, multiplizie′ren, 215; — by, mit (*dat.*).

multitude, die Menge, 431.

museum, das Muſe′um, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –en, 118.

music, die Muſik′.

must, müſſen, 261, 472.

my, mein; —self, (*subj.*), ſelbſt; (*obj. reflex.*) mich, mir (ſelbſt, 434).

N.

name, *n.*, der Name, *gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99); his — is, er heißt; *v.*, nennen, *M.;* be —ed, heißen, *S.*

narrow, enge, ſchmal.

nature, die Natur′.

naughty, unartig, böſe.

near, *adj.*, nah, näher, nächſt (*dat.*); *prep.*, neben, bei (*dat.*); *adv.*, —ly, beinahe.

nearness, die Nähe.

necessary, nötig.

need, *n.*, die Not; *v.*, brauchen, bedürfen (*gen.* 434); *modal*, dürfen, 472.

needle, die Nadel.

neglect, vernachläſſigen.

neighbor, der Nachbar, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n.

neither, *pron.*, keiner (von beiden); *conj.*, weder . . . (nor) noch.

never, nie, niemals.

nevertheless, dennoch, deſſen ungeachtet, 280.

new, neu; — laid (egg), friſch.

news, die Kunde, die Nachricht; —-paper, die Zeitung.

next, *adj.* (*see* nah); (following) folgend; *adv.*, zunächſt.

night, die Nacht, ¨e.

nightingale, die Nachtigall.

nine, neun; —teen, —zehn; —ty, —zig.

no, *adj.*, kein; — one, —body, keiner, niemand; —thing, nichts; *adv.*, nein.

noble, edel; —man, der Edelmann (*pl.*, 425).

none, *pl.*, keine.

nonsense, der Unſinn.

nor, (neither) . . . , (weder) . . . noch.

north, der Nord(en).

not, nicht; — yet, noch nicht; — any, one, kein, keiner; — anything, nichts.
nothing, nichts.
now, (time) jetzt, nun, 485; *adj.*, (of now) jetzig.
number, die Zahl, –en; (amount) die Anzahl.
nursery, die Kinderſtube.
nut, die Nuß, ¨ſſe.

O.

O, oh, Oh! ach!
oath, der Eid; on —, eidlich.
obey, gehorchen (*dat.*).
obliged, verbunden (*part.*, verbinden); to be —ed, (must) müſſen, 472.
occur, vorkommen, *S.*, ſ.; (to the mind) ein=fallen *S.*, ſ. (*dat.*).
o'clock, Uhr, 305; what —? wie viel Uhr; at two —, um zwei Uhr.
odious, verhaßt (*part. adj.*).
of, von, (out of) aus, (among) unter, *all dat.;* (on) an, über (*acc.*); *or by gen. case.*
off, ab, davon.
offer, bieten, *S.*, an=bieten.
office, das Amt, ¨er.
officer, der Offizier′, –e.
often, oft, öfters.
old, alt, ¨; grow —, altern.
olive-tree, der Ölbaum.
on (place), auf, (time) an (*dat.*); (direction) auf, über (*acc.*); — foot, zu Fuß, *adv.*, fort, hin.
once, einmal, 401, 2; — more, noch —.
one, *adj.*, ein; (in counting, *neut.*) eins; *indef. pron.*, einer, man, 460; — another, einander; every —, (ein) jeder; no —, keiner.
only, *adj.*, einzig; *adv.*, allein′, nur; not — . . . but, nicht nur . . . ſondern.
open, *adj.*, offen; *v.*, öffnen, auf=machen.
opinion, die Meinung; to be of —, meinen, der Meinung ſein.
opportune, gelegen.
oppress, unterdrücken.
or, oder.
orchard, der Baumgarten.
order, *v.*, (person) befehlen, *S.*; (thing) beſtellen; *n.*, der Befehl, die Beſtellung; in — to, um . . . zu, 281.
other, ander; each —, one an—, einander (*indecl.*); (one more), noch ein.
ought (to), ſollen, 261, 472.
our, unſer; *pron.*, ours, unſ(e)rer, unſ(e)rig; ourselves (*subj.*), wir ſelbſt; (*obj. reflex.*), uns (ſelbſt).
out, *adv.*, aus, heraus, hinaus, (outside) draußen; — of, *prep.*, aus, außer (*dat.*).
outside, *adv.*, draußen; — of, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*), außerhalb (*gen.*); *n.*, das Äußere, 158, die Außenſeite.
over, *adv.*, über, her=, hin=über; (past) vorüber, vorbei; *prep.*, über (*dat.*, *acc.*).
overcome, überwinden, *S.*
owe, ſchuldig ſein, 438.
ox, der Ochs(e).

P.

page, die Seite.
pain, der Schmerz, 101; to give —, wehe tun, 437, 4.
paint, malen; —er, der Maler, —; —ing, das Gemälde, —.
pair, das Paar, 431, *c*.

pale, bleich; turn —, erbleichen, *S.*, ſ.
paper, das Papier′, –e; news—, die Zeitung. [–ſſe.
parable, die Para′bel; das Gleichnis,
parade, die Para′de.
pardon, verzeihen, *S.; (dat.); n.*, die Verzeihung; I beg —, ich bitte um V.
parents, die Eltern.
part, (divide) teilen; (separate) ſcheiden, *S.; (also intr.*, ſein); *n.*, der Teil; on the — (of), von Seiten, 106; for my —, meinerſeits, 399.
partly, teils (*gen. adv.*).
pass (away), vergehen, *S.*, ſ.; (happen) vorgehen; (by) vorbei=gehen (*all*, ſein); (time) zu=bringen, *M.*
passage, die Überfahrt, –en.
past, *adj.*, vergangen (*part. adj.*); *adv.*, vorbei; *n.*, the —, die Vergangenheit; of the — (*adj.*), vorherig; half —, *etc.*, 305.
pastor, der Paſtor, *pl.* –en, 117.
patience, die Geduld. [–en.
patient, geduldig; *n.*, der Patient′,
pay, bezahlen; (for, penalty) büßen; — a visit, einen Beſuch machen.
peace, der Friede, *gen.*, –ns, *pl.* –n.
peasant, der Bauer, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n.
pen, die Feder.
penalty, die Strafe; under — of death, bei Lebensſtrafe.
people, das Volk, ¨er; die Leute (*pl.*); *indef.*, man, 460.
permission, die Erlaubnis, –ſſe.
persuade, überreden.
petrify, verſteinern.
physician, der Arzt, ¨e.
pick, leſen, *S.;* — out, aus=leſen; — up, auf=heben, *S.*
picture, das Bild, –er; —-book, das Bilderbuch; — -gallery, (painting) die Gemäldegallerie′.
pin, die Stecknadel.
pit, die Grube.
place, *n.*, der Ort, *pl.*, 425; *v.*, ſtellen; (lay) legen.
plan, der Plan, ¨e *or* –e.
plant, *n.*, die Pflanze; *v.*, pflanzen.
play, *n.*, das Spiel, –e; *v.*, ſpielen; to lose by —, verſpielen.
pleasant, angenehm.
please, gefallen, *S.*, (*dat.*); (pray), bitte; if you —, gefälligſt (*sup. adv.*).
pleasure, das Vergnügen; (joy) die Freude, (106, *note*).
plough, *n.*, der Pflug, ¨e; *v.*, pflügen.
poem, das Gedicht′.
poet, der Poet′, –en, der Dichter.
poetry, die Poeſie′, die Dichtung.
polite, höflich.
political, politiſch.
poor, arm, ¨; (quality) ſchlecht.
porter, (hotel), der Hausknecht.
portmanteau, der Koffer, —.
post-office, die Poſt, –en.
potato, die Kartoffel.
pound, das Pfund, 312.
pour, gießen, *S.*
power, die Macht, ¨e.
praise, *v.*, loben, preiſen, *S.*; *n.*, das Lob; to my —, mir zu Lobe.
pray, beten; (I)—, (ich) bitte.
prayer, das Gebet′.
preach, predigen; —er, der Prediger.
precious, koſtbar, köſtlich; — stone, der Edelſtein.
prefer, vor=ziehen, *S.; see* gern, 485.
present, *n.*, (gift) das Geſchenk; (time) die Gegenwart; *adj.*, gegenwärtig; (place) anweſend; at —, jetzt; of the —, jetzig.

president, der Präſident′, –en.
prick, ſtechen, *S.*
pride, der Stolz.
prince, der Prinz, der Fürſt, *both* –en.
print, drucken; —ing-office, die Druckerei′.
prison, das Gefängnis, –ſſe; —er, der Gefangene (*part. noun*).
privilege, das Vorrecht, –e.
probable, wahrſcheinlich; *idiom.*, 465.
procession, der Aufzug, ″e.
professor, der Profeſſor, 117.
profit, der Nutzen; (money) der Gewinn; *v.*, nützen (*dat.*).
progress, die Fortſchritte (*pl.*).
prohibition das Verbot, –e.
project, *v.*, (jut over) über=ſtehen, *S.*
promise, verſprechen *S.; also n.;* —ing (*part. adj.*), hoffnungsvoll.
proof, der Beweis.
propose, vor=ſchlagen, *S.; intr.*, ſich vor=nehmen, *S.*
proverb, der Spruch, ″e, das Sprichwort, ″er.
Prussia, (das) Preußen; –n, preußiſch; *n.*, der Preuße.
pull, ziehen, *S.;* — out, heraus=—.
punishment, die Strafe.
pupil, der Schüler; (*fem.*) die —in.
push, ſchieben, *S.;* (strike) ſtoßen, *S.*
put, (set) ſetzen; (place) ſtellen; (lay) legen; — off, verſchieben *S.;* — on (clothes) an=ziehen, *S.;* — out (a light) aus=löſchen, *S.*

Q.

quarter, das Viertel, (place) das Quartier′.
queen, die Königin, –nen.
question, die Frage; it is the —, es fragt ſich.
quick, (rapid) ſchnell.
quiet, ruhig, ſtill; *v.*, beruhigen.
quire, das Buch (Papier, 312); (choir) der Chor, ″e, 426.
quite, ganz, durchaus.

R.

railway, die Eiſenbahn, –en; — -station, der Bahnhof, ″e.
rain, *n.*, der Regen; *v.*, regnen.
raisin, die Roſine.
rank, (row) der Rang, ″e; (social) der Stand, ″e.
ransack (plunder), plündern.
rapid, ſchnell, geſchwind.
reach, reichen; (attain) erreichen.
read, leſen, *S.;* — (aloud), vorleſen; —ing, *n.*, die Lectu′re, das Leſen, (*infin.*).
ready, bereit; (finished) fertig.
real, wirklich.
receive, empfangen, *S.;* erhalten, *S.*, *usually things* (*get*).
recent, neu; *adv.*, —ly, neulich.
recollect, ſich beſinnen, *S.* (*gen.*).
recover, *intr.*, geneſen, *S.*, ſ.
rector, der Rektor, –en, 117.
red, rot; — as fire, feuerrot.
redden, *tr.*, röten; *intr.*, erröten.
redound, gereichen (*dat.*).
refresh, erfriſchen.
refuse, (deny) verweigern; (reject) ab=ſchlagen, *S.*
refute, widerlegen.
regiment, das Regiment′, –er.
reign, regie′ren, 215; *n.*, die Regie′rung.
rejoice, *intr.*, ſich freuen (*gen.* 434); *or impers.*, es freut (*acc.*, 292); *tr.*, erfreuen.

relate, (tell) erzählen; be —ed, ſich verhalten, *S.*; (akin) verwandt ſein.
relation, das Verhältnis, –ſſe; (kinsman) ein Verwandter (*adj. n.*).
relieve, zu Hilfe kommen (*dat.*, 437); (of) entheben, *S.*, entledigen (*both gen.*, 434).
rely, ſich verlaſſen, *S.*, (on, auf, *acc.*).
remain, bleiben, *S.*, ſ.; —ing, übrig (*adj.*).
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, gedenken, *M.*; ſich erinnern (*both gen.*, 434).
remit, (send) überſenden, *M.*; (let off) erlaſſen, *S.*, 434.
reply, entgegnen, (*dat.*).
request, *v.*, bitten, *S.*; *n.*, die Bitte.
resemble, gleichen, *S.* (*dat.*).
resent, rächen.
resound, erſchallen, *S.*
respect, achten.
result, heraus-kommen, *S.*, ſ.
retire, abtreten, *S.*, ſ.; ſich zurück-ziehen *S.*
return, *v.*, zurück-kehren; *n.*, die Rückkehr.
reward, belohnen; *n.*, die Belohnung.
Rhenish, rheiniſch.
Rhine, der Rhein.
Rhodes, das Rhodus.
ribbon, das Band, ¨er, 424.
rich, reich.
riddle, das Rätſel.
ride, reiten, *S.* (*aux.*, 298); take a — ſpazieren —; —r, der Reiter.
rifle, *n.*, die Büchſe.
right, recht; — hand, die Rechte; on, to the —, rechts; *n.*, das Recht; to be —, recht haben.
righteous, gerecht, rechtſchaffen.
ring, *n.*, der Ring.
ring, *v.*, (resound) klingen, *S.*; (bell) klingeln; —ing of bells, das Geläut.
ripe, reif.
rise, (get up) auf-ſtehen, *S.*, ſ.; (go up) auf-gehen, *S.*, ſ.; (from the dead) auferſtehen, *S.*, ſ. (289).
river, der Fluß, ¨ſſe.
road, der Weg, die Landſtraße.
roast, braten, *S.*; *n.*, der Braten.
robber, der Räuber.
rock, *n.*, der Fels, Felſen, 101.
roof, das Dach, ¨er.
room, (space) der Raum, ¨e; (of a house) das Zimmer, die Stube.
rose, die Roſe.
row, *n.*, die Reihe.
row, *v.*, rudern.
royal, königlich.
run, rennen, *M.*, laufen, *S.*; (*both aux.*, 298); — after, nach-— (*dat.*); — off, davon-—; — up, heran-laufen, *S.*, ſ.; — away (from) entlaufen, *S.*, ſ. (*dat.*).
rush, ſtürzen.
Russia, (das) Rußland.

S.

sack, (bag), der Sack, ¨e.
sad, traurig.
sailor, der Matro′ſe.
sake, for the —, wegen, um . . . willen (*gen.*, 280); for my —, meinet —, *etc.* (452, *b*).
same (the), derſelbe, 208; all the —, ganz derſelbe, einerlei; at the — time, zugleich.
Saturday, der Samstag, der Sonnabend.
sausage, die Wurſt, *pl.* ¨e.
save, retten; (spare) ſparen.

saving, ſparſam.

savior, der Retter; the Saviour, der Heiland.

Saxony, (das) Sachſen.

say, ſagen; be said to, ſollen, 472.

scholar, (pupil) der Schüler; (learned) der Gelehrte (*part. noun*).

school, die Schule; —room, die Schulſtube; boy's —, die Knabenſchule.

scold, ſchelten, *S.*

scream, ſchreien, *S.; n.*, das Geſchrei; *or infin. noun.*

sea, das Meer, –e, die See, –(e)n, 426; —sick, ſeekrank.

seal, *n.*, das Siegel; *v.*, ſiegeln, verſiegeln.

season (of the year), die Jahreszeit.

seat, *n.*, der Sitz; *v.*, ſetzen; to take a —, ſich ſetzen.

second (the), der zweite, der andere (of two).

see, ſehen, *S.;* call to — (visit), beſuchen.

seek, ſuchen.

seem, ſcheinen, *S.*, vor-kommen, *S.*, ſ.

seize, greifen, *S.*

self, (*emph.*) ſelbſt, ſelber; (*object*) *the refl. prons.*, 434.

sell, verkaufen.

send, ſchicken, ſenden, *M.;* — for (person) kommen laſſen; (thing) holen laſſen, *S.*

sentiment, die Geſinnung.

servant, (man) der Diener; (woman) die Dienerin; — -girl, die Magd, ″e; body of —s, die Dienerſchaft.

serve, dienen (*dat.*)*;* (wait upon) bedienen (*acc.*).

service, der Dienſt.

set, *tr.*, ſetzen; *intr.*, (go down) untergehen, *S.*, ſ.: — across, over, überſetzen, 287.

settle, *tr.*, (arrange) ordnen; (quiet) beruhigen.

seven, ſieben; —ty, ſieb(en)zig; — times, ſiebenmal.

several, mehrere, 157; — times, mehrmals.

severe, (strict) ſtreng; (grievous) ſchwer.

shake, ſchütteln.

shall, *modal:* ſollen, 261, 472; *as fut. aux.*, 173.

sharp, ſcharf, ″.

she, ſie, (es, 452).

shear, ſcheren, *S.*

sheep, das Schaf, –e.

sheet (of paper), der Bogen, 431, *c.*

shepherd, der Schäfer; —ess, die Schäferin, –nen.

sheriff, der Scherif (*Eng.*).

shine, ſcheinen, *S.;* (glitter) glänzen.

ship, das Schiff, –e.

shirt, das Hemd, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en.

shoe, der Schuh, –e.

shoot, ſchießen, *S.*

shop, der Laden, *pl.* ″en, *or* —.

shore, das Ufer.

short, kurz, ″; —ly (time), bald, in kurzem; —ness, die Kürze.

show, *n.*, die Schau; *v.*, zeigen, weiſen, *S.*, (guide) führen.

shut, ſchließen, *S.*, zu-machen.

sick, krank, ″.

side, die Seite; on this, that — of, diesſeit(s), jenſeit(s) (*gen.*, 280).

siege, die Belagerung.

sight, der Anblick, die Anſicht (*pl.* –en); in — of, anſichtig (*gen.*).

silent, ſchweigend (*part. adj.*).

silver, das Silber; *adj.*, (of) —, ſilbern.

sin, die Sünde; —ner, der Sünder.

since, *prep.*, ſeit (*dat.*)*; conj.*, (time) ſeit, ſeitdem; (reason) da, 486.

sing, ſingen, *S.*
sink, ſinken, *S.*, ſ.
sir, Herr, mein Herr, 97, 428.
sister, die Schweſter.
sit, ſitzen, *S.;* — down, ſich ſetzen; —ting-room, das Wohnzimmer.
six, ſechs; —th (the), der ſechſte; — part, das Sechſtel.
skin, *n.*, die Haut, ¨e; (pelt) das Fell, –e; *v.*, ſchinden, *S.*
sky, der Himmel; — blue, himmelblau.
sledge, der Schlitten.
sleep, *v.*, ſchlafen, *S.;* —ing-room, das Schlafzimmer; *n.*, der Schlaf; —y, ſchläfrig; —less, ſchlaflos; go to —, ein=ſchlafen (ſein).
slipper, der Pantof′fel (105).
small, klein.
smile, lächeln.
sneak, ſchleichen, *S.*, ſ.
snore, ſchnarchen.
snow, *n.*, der Schnee; *v.*, ſchneien; —-white, ſchneeweiß.
so, ſo, 485; (then) alſo.
soap, die Seife.
society, die Geſellſchaft.
soldier, der Soldat′, –en.
some, einige (*pl.*); welches (*sing.*); *as part. adj. often not transl.*; —body, one, jemand; —thing, etwas; —times, zuweilen; —where, irgendwo; — day, einſt.
son, der Sohn, ¨e; —-in-law, der Schwiegerſohn.
song, der Geſang, ¨e; das Lied, –er.
soon, bald; *comp.*, eher; (earlier) früher; (rather) lieber; as — (as), ſobald.
Sophia, Sophi′e, *gen.* –ns.
sorry, betrübt (*part. adj.*); I am —, es tut mir leid, 437.
sort, die Sorte; what — of, was für.
soul, die Seele.
sound, klingen, *S.; n.*, der Klang, ¨e.
sour, ſauer.
South, der Süd(en); —ern, ſüdlich; —wards, ſüdwärts.
Spain, (das) Spa′nien.
Spanish, ſpaniſch.
spark, der Funke, *gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99.
speak, ſprechen, *S.*, reden, 212.
speech, die Sprache; die Rede; *infin. n.*, das Sprechen.
speed, die Eile; —y, eilig.
spell, buchſtabie′ren, 215, *b*.
spend, (money) aus=geben, *S.;* (time) zu=bringen, *M.*
spin, ſpinnen, *S.*
spite, der Widerwille, 99; in — of, trotz (*gen.* 280).
splendid, prächtig.
spoil, verderben, *S.*, *intr.*, ſ.
sportsman, der Jäger.
spring, (jump) ſpringen, *S.;* (well) quellen, *S.*, (*both aux.*, 298); *n.*, der Sprung, ¨e; die Quelle; (season) der Frühling.
sprout, *v.*, ſprießen, *S.*
square, (figure) das Viereck; (place) der Platz, ¨e; *adj.*, viereckig.
stable, der Stall, ¨e; —boy, der Stallknecht.
staff, der Stab, ¨e.
stair(s), die Treppe; up —, oben; down —, unten; (motion) —, her=, hin=unter.
stand, ſtehen, *S.;* (endure), aus=halten, *S.;* — by (help), bei=ſtehen, *S.*, (*dat.*); — still (stop), ſtehen bleiben, *S.*, ſ.
star, der Stern.

start, (depart) ab=fahren, *S.*, ſ., ab=reiſen, ſ.

state, der Staat, *gen.* –es, *pl.* –en.

station, die Station′; (house) der Bahnhof, ″e.

sta′tue, die Bildſäule.

stay, bleiben, *S.*, ſ.; (a time) verweilen.

steal, ſtehlen, *S.*

steel, der Stahl; — pen, die Stahlfeder; *adj.*, ſtählern.

step, *v.*, treten, *S.*, ſ; *n.*, der Tritt; stair —, die Stufe.

stick, der Stock, ″e.

still, *adj.*, ſtill(e); *adv.*, (time) noch; (however) doch, 485.

stone, der Stein; of —, ſteinern.

stoop (down), ſich bücken.

storm, der Sturm, ″e; —y, ſtürmiſch.

story, (tale) die Geſchichte, die Sage; (of a house) der Stock, *pl.* ″e.

straight, recht, gerade; — on, geradeaus.

strange (foreign), fremd; (odd) ſonderbar.

stranger, der Fremde (*adj. n.*).

stream, der Strom, ″e; *v.*, ſtrömen.

street, die Straße.

strength, die Stärke; *v.*, ſtärken.

strike, ſchlagen, *S.*; (hit) treffen, *S.*; (the mind) auf=fallen *S.* ſ. (*dat.*).

strong, ſtark, ″.

student, der Student′, –en.

study, *v.*, ſtudie′ren, 215; *n.*, das Studium, *gen.* –s, *pl.*, 118.

subject, der Gegenſtand, ″e.

succeed, gelingen, *S.*, ſ. *impers.* (*dat.*); (follow) folgen, ſ. (*dat.*).

such, ſolcher; — a, ein ſolcher, ſolch ein, 207; *before adj.*, ſo, 456.

sudden, plötzlich.

suffer, leiden, *S.*; (allow) erlauben.

suffice, genügen, genug ſein.

sufficient, genug, hinreichend (*part.*).

sugar, der Zucker.

suite, das Gefolge.

sum, die Summe.

summer, der Sommer.

summit, der Gipfel, die Höhe.

sun, die Sonne; —shine, der Sonnenſchein.

Sunday, der Sonntag.

sunken (*part. adj.*), geſunken.

superior, überlegen; —to (*dat.*).

suppose, an=nehmen, *S.*; *idiom, see* 465; — (that), angenommen, geſetzt (daß), 480.

sure, ſicher, gewiß; *adv.*, —ly, gewiß; doch, ja, wohl, 485.

surrender, *tr.*, übergeben, *S.*; *intr.*, ſich ergeben (243), *S.*

sweet, ſüß.

swell, ſchwellen, *S.*, *intr.*, ſ.

swim, ſchwimmen, *S.*; (*aux.*, 298).

swing, ſchwingen, *S.*

Swiss, *adj.*, ſchweizeriſch; *n.*, der Schweizer; *f.*, die —in.

Switzerland, die Schweiz, 416.

sword, das Schwert, –er, der Degen.

T.

table, der Tiſch, die Tafel.

tailor, der Schneider.

take, nehmen, *S.*; — from, *dat. pers.*; — off (clothes), aus=ziehen, *S.*; — place, ſtatt=finden, *S.*, 379; — a drive, ride, walk (*see these words*).

talk, ſprechen, *S.*; — of, beſprechen; *n.*, das Geſpräch.

tall, hoch, 133, *a*, 156; (person) groß, 156.

task, die Aufgabe.

taste, ſchmecken; (try) probieren, 215; *n.*, der Geſchmack.

tea, der Tee.

teach, lehren, 442; —er, der Lehrer.

tear, reißen, *S.*; — to pieces, zerreißen.

tell, ſagen; (a story) erzählen; — a lie, lügen, *S.*

temptation, die Verſuchung.

ten, zehn; the —th, der zehnte; —-fold, zehnfach.

testimony, (testimonial) das Zeugnis, –ſſe.

than, als; *rarely* denn, 449, 2.

thank, danken (*dat.*); *n.*, —s, der Dank.

that, *dem.*, der, jener, dieſer, 456; *rel.*, der, welcher, 459; *conj.*, daß; in order —, damit, 468, *c*.

the, der, *def. art.*, 416; *adv. correl.*, the . . . the, je . . . deſto, 334.

thee, dich (*acc.*), dir (*dat.*).

theft, der Diebſtahl (*gen.* –s).

their, ihr; —s, ihrer, der ihrige.

them, ſie (*acc.*), ihnen (*dat.*); *or dem.*, 457; —selves, (*emph.*), ſelbſt, ſelber; (*reflex.*) ſich (ſelbſt).

then, (time) dann, damals; (inference) denn, alſo.

theology, die Theologie′.

there, dort, da (*in comp.*, 184); *expletive*, — (is, are), es, 294; *adj.*, dortig.

therefore, deshalb, daher, alſo.

they, ſie, *or dem.* 457.

thief, der Dieb.

thine, *adj.*, dein; *pron.*, deiner, der deinige.

thing, das Ding, –e; any—, some—, etwas; not any—, nichts.

think, denken, *M.*; — of, (*as object*), *gen. or* an (*acc.*); (opinion) von (*dat.*); (believe), glauben.

third, *adj.*, (the) der dritte; *n.*, das Drittel (part).

thirst, *n.*, der Durſt; *v.*, dürſten (*or* durſten); —y, durſtig; I am —, es dürſtet mich, 290.

thirty, dreißig.

this, dieſer, der; *in ccmp.*, hier, 401.

thou, du, 186.

though, *adv.*, doch, jedoch; *conj.* (although), obgleich, wenn . . . auch, 485.

thought, der Gedanke, *gen.* –ns, *pl.* –n, 99; — of, an (*acc.*).

thousand, (a), tauſend.

threaten, drohen (*dat.*).

three, drei; — cornered, —eckig, — times, —mal; of — kinds, —erlei.

thresh, dreſchen, *S.*

throne, der Thron, –e, *or* –en.

through, *adv.*, durch, 287; *prep.*, durch (*acc.*); (motive) aus (*dat.*).

thunder, der Donner; *v.*, donnern.

Thursday, der Donnerstag.

thus, ſo, 485; alſo (inference).

thy, dein.

ticket, das Billet′; take —, löſen.

till, *prep.*, bis, bis auf (*acc.*); *conj.*, bis, bis daß.

time, die Zeit *pl.* –en; (counting) das Mal, *in comp.*, -mal; of that —, *adj.*, damalig; —-table, der Fahrplan; at (what) —, um (*acc.*).

timid, furchtſam.

tired, müde; — to death, todmüde.

tiresome, mühſam, langweilig.

to, zu; (place) nach (*dat.*); an, auf, bis (*acc.*); *or by dat. case; before infin.*, zu (um . . . zu).

together, zuſammen.
too, *adv.*, zu; *conj.*, (also) auch.
tooth, der Zahn, ¨e; —ache, das Zahnweh.
top, die Höhe, der Gipfel.
torment, quälen.
towards, nach (*dat.*), gegen (*acc.*).
tower, der Turm, ¨e.
town, die Stadt, ¨e; —-councillor, der Stadtrat, ¨e.
train, der Zug, ¨e; express-—, der Schnellzug.
transitory, vergänglich.
translate, überſetzen, 287.
travel, reiſen (*aux.*, 298); *n.*, —er, der Reiſende (*part. n.*).
tree, der Baum, ¨e.
trip, (journey), die Reiſe.
trouble, *n.*, (pains) die Mühe; (affliction) die Trübſal, -e.
trousers, die Beinkleider (*pl.*).
true, wahr; (faithful), treu; *adv.*, —ly, wahrlich, wahrhaf′tig; zwar.
trust, trauen (*dat.*).
truth, die Wahrheit.
try, verſuchen; (test), probie′ren.
Tuesday, der Dienstag.
turn, drehen, wenden, *M.*; — in, ein=kehren; — out, geraten, *S.*, ſ.; — pale, erbleichen, *S.*, ſ.
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig; —-second, der zweiund—ſte.
twice, zweimal.
two, zwei, beide, 460.

U.

umbrella, der Regenſchirm.
uncle, der Oheim.
under, *adv.*, unten, unter, 287; *prep.*, unter (*dat.*, *acc.*).
understand, verſtehen, *S.*
undertake, unternehmen, *S.*
undress (one's self), ſich aus=ziehen, *S.*
unfavorable, ungünſtig (to, *dat.*).
unfortunate, unglücklich; *as adverb*, *usually*, —erweiſe, 399.
unhappy, (*same as preceding*).
universe, das Weltall (*gen.* -s).
university, die Univerſität′.
unjust, ungerecht.
unknown, unbekannt (*part. adj.*).
unmanageable, unlenkſam.
unripe, unreif.
until, *prep.*, bis, bis auf (*acc.*); *conj.*, bis, bis daß.
unwell, unwohl.
unworthy, unwürdig.
up, *adv.*, auf, herauf, hinauf; — hill, bergan′; — stairs, oben.
upon, *prep.*, auf, über (*dat.*, *acc.*).
upper (the), der obere; —most, der oberſte, 158.
us, uns (*dat. acc.*).
use, brauchen (*rarely gen.*); — up, verbrauchen; make — of, ſich bedienen (*gen.*).
useful, nützlich (*dat.*).
usual, gewöhnlich.
utmost (the), der äußerſte, 158.
utter, *v.*, äußern, 214.

V.

vacation-ramble, die Ferienreiſe.
vain, eitel; in —, vergebens.
valley, das Tal, ¨er.
value, der Wert.
vanish, ſchwinden, *S.*, ſ.
vanity, die Eitelkeit.
very, ſehr; *abs. sup.*, höchſt, äußerſt.

victor, der Sieger; **—ious,** ſiegreich.

view, (sight) die Ausſicht; (opinion) die Anſicht.

village, das Dorf, ¨er; — community, die Dorfſchaft.

virtue, die Tugend.

virtuous, tugendhaft.

visit, beſuchen; *n.*, der Beſuch.

voice, die Stimme.

volume, der Band, ¨e, 426.

vowel, der Vokal′, -e; — change, der Ablaut; — modification, der Umlaut.

W.

wait, warten; — for, *rarely gen.*, 434; *usually* auf (*acc.*); —ing-room, der Warteſaal; *n.*, —er, der Kellner.

wake (up), auf=wachen; *tr.*, wecken.

walk, *v.*, gehen, *S.*, ſ.; go to —, ſpazie′ren —; *n.*, der Spazier′gang.

wall, die Mauer; (of a room) die Wand, ¨e.

want, *v.*, brauchen, bedürfen (261, *gen.*); *n.*, (need) das Bedürfnis; (lack) der Mangel (an, *dat.*).

war, der Krieg.

wardrobe, die Garderobe.

warm, warm; I am —, mir iſt —.

wash, waſchen, *S.*; *also reflex.*

watch, wachen; *tr.*, bewachen; *n.*, die Wache; (time) die Uhr, -en.

water, das Waſſer; *v.*, wäſſern, begießen, *S.*

wave, *n.*, die Welle; *v.*, wehen; *tr.*, ſchwingen, *S.*

way, der Weg; (manner) die Weiſe.

we, wir.

weak, ſchwach, ¨.

wealthy, reich, vermögend (*part. adj.*).

wear, tragen, *S.*

weary, müde, ermüdet (*part. adj.*).

weather, das Wetter; **—cock,** der Wetterhahn, ¨e.

Wednesday, der Mittwoch, 388.

week, die Woche.

weep, weinen.

weigh, wiegen, *S.*; *tr.*, wägen (242).

welcome, willkommen.

well, *adj.*, wohl; *adv.*, gut, wohl, 486.

what, *inter. rel. pron.*, was; *inter. adj.*, welcher; —ever, alles was, was . . . auch, 459; — kind of, was für, 221.

when, *inter.*, wann; *indef.*, wenn; *def.*, als, da, 486; —ever, wenn.

whence, woher, *or sep.*, 483.

where, wo; (*in comp., before vowels,* wor, 222).

whether, *conj.*, ob.

which, *inter.*, welcher; *rel.*, welcher, der, 234.

while, *n.*, die Weile; *conj.*, (whilst) während, indem, indeſſen, 486.

whip, die Peitſche.

whistle, pfeifen, *S.*

white, weiß.

Whitsuntide, Pfingſten (*pl.*).

who, *inter.*, wer; *rel.*, welcher, der, 234; (he) —, —ever, wer, wer . . auch, 459.

whole, ganz, 144; *n.*, das Ganze.

whose, *inter.*, weſſen; *rel.*, deſſen, deren, 234.

why, warum, weshalb, was, 458.

wicked, böſe.

wife, die Frau, -en.

wilderness, die Wüſte, die Wildnis.

will, *n.*, der Wille, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99; (last) das Teſtament′; *v.*, wollen, 261; *modal*, 472; *as fut.*, 173.

willing, willig; to be —, willens ſein.
win, gewinnen, *S.*
wind, der Wind.
wind, winden, *S.;* — up (a clock), auf=ziehen, *S.*
window, das Fenſter.
wine, der Wein; —-glass, das Weinglas, ¨er.
wing, der Flügel; —ed, geflügelt.
William, Wilhelm.
winter, der Winter.
wise, weiſe.
wish, *n.*, der Wunſch, ¨e; *v.*, wünſchen.
with, (together) mit, ſamt, bei (*dat.*); (means) durch (*acc.*).
within, *adv.*, innen, darin; *prep.*, (time) binnen (*dat.*); (place) innerhalb (*gen.*).
without, *adv.*, draußen; *prep.*, ohne (*acc.*), außer (*dat.*), außerhalb (*gen.*).
woman, das Weib, –er, die Frau, –en.
wonder, *n.*, das Wunder, —; *v.*, ſich wundern (über, *acc.*).
wood, (material) das Holz; (place) der Wald, ¨er; —en, hölzern.
woodman (cutter), der Holzhauer.
word, das Wort, *pl.* ¨er, –e, 425.
work, *n.*, das Werk, –e, die Arbeit; *v.*, arbeiten; — -people, die Arbeitsleute (*pl.* 426).
world, die Welt, –en.
worm, der Wurm, ¨er.
worth, *adj.*, wert (*gen.*); — while, der Mühe wert.
wound, *n.*, die Wunde; *v.*, verwunden.
wreath, der Kranz, ¨e.
write, ſchreiben, *S.*
writer (author), der Schriftſteller.
writing, *n.*, die Schrift, –en; in —, ſchriftlich.
wrong, *adv.*, unrecht; *n.*, das Unrecht; to be —, unrecht haben.

Y.

year, das Jahr, –e.
yellow, gelb.
yeoman, der Bauer, *gen.* –s, *pl.* –n.
yes, ja.
yesterday, geſtern; *adj.*, of —, geſtrig; day before —, vorgeſtern.
yet, (time) noch; not —, noch nicht; (however) doch, jedoch, 485.
yield, weichen, *S.*, nach=geben, *S.; both dat.*
yonder, *adj.*, jener; *adv.*, dort.
you, (*pl.*) ihr; (*sing.*) du; (*s. or pl.*) Sie, 189, *note.*
young, jung, ¨; — man, der Jüngling; — lady, das Fräulein.
your, **yours**, *adj. and pron.* (*see* you); —self, selves, (*emph.*), ſelbſt; *or refl. object*, 454.
youth, die Jugend; (young man), der Jüngling.

APPENDIX.

I. Plural of Nouns.

See Foot-Note, p. 46. The following lists are added for reference: —

1. Strong I. (*a*) The following masculines modify the vowel (§ 76). Der Apfel, Acker, Boden, Bruder, Garten, Hafen, Hammel, Hammer, Handel, Mangel, Mantel, Nagel, Ofen, Sattel, Schnabel, Schwager, Vater, Vogel.

(*b*) Variant are: Der Faden, Graben, Laden, Nabel, Schade(n), Wagen; and the neuter, das Lager — with a few others, rarely, as der Bogen, der Magen, etc.

2. Strong II. (*a*) The following masculine monosyllables do not modify the vowel (§ 83, *b*): Der Aal; Aar, Arm, Bord, Born, Docht, Dolch, Druck (but in comp. Ausdrücke, etc.), Forſt, Grad, Gurt, Hauch, Huf, Hund, Lachs, Laut, Luchs, Molch, Mond (Monden = *months*), Pfad, Pol, Puls, Punkt, Schuft, Schuh, Stoff, Tag, Zoll (*inch*), and a few others, with some of variant usage (§ 424–5).

(*b*) But the following foreign masculines modify the vowel of the last syllable: Der Altar′, Biſchof, Choral′, General′, Kanal′, Kaplan′, Kardinal′, Moraſt′, Palaſt′ — to which may be added the neuters, das Hoſpital′, Spital′ (pl. –äler).

3. Strong III. For masc. plurals in –er, see pp. 29–30. There may be added — though with variant forms — Der Dorn, Strauß (*nosegay*), Wicht, Böſewicht (§ 105).

4. Weak. For masculine monosyllables of weak declension see p. 34. There may be added: Der Fels (§ 101), Fink, Geck, Nerv, Spatz; also (§ 121), Steinmetz, Vorfahr. Der Burſch, der Geſell (as also der Hirt, der Ochs, and others rarely) occur with or without final e.

5. The strong feminines (§ 82) are the monosyllables: Die Angſt, Axt, Bank (*bench*), Braut, Brunſt, Bruſt, Fauſt, Frucht, Gans, Gruft, Hand, Haut, Kluft, Kraft, Kuh, Kunſt, Laus, Luft, Luſt, Macht, Magd, Maus, Nacht, Naht, Nuß, Stadt, Wand, Wurſt, Zunft; and, with variant forms, Not, Sau, Schnur, Zucht. Also, -flucht, -kunſt in comp., Armbruſt, Geſchwulſt; and Mutter, Tochter (§ 77).

6. Neuter monosyllables with plural -e (§ 82) are:

(*a*) In -r: Das Haar, Heer, Jahr, Meer, Paar, Rohr, Tier, Tor (*gate*), and the following:

(*b*) Das Beet, Beil, Bein, Boot, Brot, Ding (*thing*), Erz, Fell, Feſt, Gift, Heft, Joch, Knie, Kreuz, Los, Maß, Netz, Pferd, Pfund, Pult, Recht, Reh, Reich, Riff, Roß, Salz, Schaf, Schiff, Schwein, Seil, Sieb, Spiel, Stück, Werk, Zelt, Zeug, Ziel, with a few others, and some of variant usage (§ 105).

7. The most important nouns of *mixed declension* are given § 99–104. There may be added, though with some variation of usage: Der Gevatter, Lorbeer, Pfau (?), Strauß (*ostrich*), Untertan, Zierat, and the neuter, das Leid, with a few foreign words, as Kon′ſul, Intereſ′ſe, Juwel′, Statut′.

8. Other lists might be added, but hardly with advantage to the student. For special irregularities, variant or double forms, etc., reference must be made to the dictionaries. (See also §§ 105, 424–6).

II. Uses of Some Prepositions.

See § 447. The following are selected for illustration. The arrangement is made alphabetical, for reference:

An, with dative or accusative, **at** or **to** a point.

1. With dative: (*a*) *Place* **at** or **near**: (1) er ſteht an der Türe, an der Ecke, (nah) an der Wand, etc.; (2) **on**: der Hut hängt an der Wand; an dem Ufer ſtehen; die Wacht am Rhein; and (3) **of**, of battles named for *rivers:* die Schlacht an der Alma (see bei).

(*b*) *Relative point or degree* (see pred. superl. § 160): Die Tage ſind jetzt am längſten, (*at the*) *longest.*

(*c*) *Definite specification*, (1) primarily of *place*, **in**: lahm an einem Fuße; (2) *manner*, **by**: an der Hand greifen, führen, halten, ziehen, *by the hand;* hence, *means*, **by**: an der Stimme erkennen, *to know by the voice;* (3) *plenty* or *want*, **of**, **in**: reich, arm, ſtark, ſchwach an; Überfluß, Mangel, an Geld; *excess, want, of money.* (4) *cause*, **from**: leiden, ſterben, an; **from**, or **of** (a disease; see vor). (5) And with verbs, as fehlen, hindern, zweifeln, *to doubt of;* teilnehmen, Luſt finden, *to take pleasure in*, etc.

(*d*) *Time*, definite without duration, **at**, **in**: am Morgen geht die Sonne auf; am Anfange; am Ende. **On**: am Montag; am neunten Mai (dates § 309); an meinem Geburtstage (see zu; and for time of day, um).

(*e*) In many phrases, as, es iſt an mir zu reden, *my turn to speak;* es iſt nichts an der Geſchichte, *nothing in the story;* am Leben, *alive;* an ſeiner Stelle, *in his place;* an deſſen Stelle, *instead of that*, etc.

2. With accusative, *motion* or *direction* **to**.

(*a*) *Place* — **to, on, against**: er geht an die Ecke, ſtellt den Tiſch an das Fenſter, hängt den Hut an die Wand; klopft an die Türe; ſtößt den Fuß an einen Stein; lehnt ſich an die Mauer; and in phrases like: An die Arbeit gehen, *go to work*, etc. So, with motion implied (where sometimes dat. of ind. object): einen Brief ſchreiben; ein Buch ſenden; eine Rede halten—an, **to**; and in address, without verb — letters, poems, etc., as: an Emma, an die Freude.

(*b*) Figuratively, *direction of mind:* denken, erinnern, mahnen, an, **of**; glauben, an, **in**; gewöhnen an, **to**, etc., and the corresponding nouns: der Gedanke, Glaube, an; as, ich glaube an einen Gott, *in one God* (see denken von p. 134).

(*c*) *Number* or *time;* here an, alone, denotes indefinite amount, **up to**, or **nearly**: es koſtet an die zehn Taler; more usually with bis, **to, till**: bis an das Ende; vom Morgen bis an den Abend, etc.

Auf, with dat. or accus., **on, upon**, a surface.

1. With dative: (*a*) *Place*, **on, upon**, literally, as: auf dem Tiſche, dem Berge, der See, dem Schiffe, der Straße, ſein, etc. Hence (*b*), with places implying *elevation* or *importance*, **at**: auf meinem Zimmer (*up stairs*); auf dem Schloſſe (*up at*); and so, auf der Univerſität, der Ausſtellung, dem Balle, dem Markte, der Poſt, ſein, etc. Also (*c*), local *occupation* or *condition*, **at, on**: Er iſt auf der Schule (= *still a pupil*, while *in school* = in der Schule); auf der Jagd; auf einer Reiſe, etc. And hence in phrases like auf dem Lande, *in the country;* auf der Stelle, *on the spot;* auf der Tat, *in the very act*, etc. (*d*) Metaphorically, resting or standing **on**: bauen, beruhen, beharren, beſtehen (*insist*) auf (yet also accusative).

2. Much more largely, sometimes when dative might be expected, auf is used with accusative:

(*a*) *Place*, with verbs of motion or action, corresponding to *a*, *b*, *c* above; as, **on**: auf den Berg, die See, die Straße, gehen; **to**: auf den Ball, den Markt, die Poſt, das Land, gehen; **on** or **for**: auf die Jagd, eine Reiſe, gehen, etc.

(*b*) **(Up) to**, a point, or degree; as: bis auf den Tod; er hat mich aufs äußerſte gebracht; — and here the *absolute superlative* (§ 315): aufs ſchönſte grüßen, etc.

(*c*) *Direction*, **on** or **after**: Schlag auf Schlag, *blow upon* (*after*) *blow;* der Sonnenſchein folgt auf den Regen. Hence, **on**, as *occasion:* das tue ich auf Ihren Befehl, *on your order.* And so, in phrases expressing *manner*, **in**: auf dieſe Weiſe, *in this way;* auf Deutſch, *in German;* aufs neue, *anew*, etc.

(*d*) *Direction* **on** or **toward** an object or purpose: ſie hat immer ein Auge auf das Kind; er gibt viel Geld auf Bücher aus, *on* or *for books* (thus, auf daß, *for*, *in order that*). Hence, as prospective *condition*, **on**: auf die Gefahr handeln, *on the risk;* auf Leib und Leben; auf dieſe Bedingung; or **in**: auf dieſen Fall; auf alle Fälle (literally, *for all cases*); or **at**: auf meine Koſten, *at my expense*, and other phrases.

(*e*) So, with verbs and adjectives, denoting direction of mind **on** or **towards** as, **for**: hoffen, warten; **to**: antworten, hören, merken: er antwortet mir; but: auf meine Frage; er hört auf meine Rede; **on**: rechnen, ſich verlaſſen, es wagen, zählen; — adjectives, **of**: eiferſüchtig, neidiſch, ſtolz; **at**: böſe, erboſt, etc.

(*f*) *Time* (1) **on, towards**: es geht auf neun; ein Viertel auf drei, *a quarter past two;* (2) prospectively **for** a point, or period: eine Reiſe auf den erſten Mai feſtſetzen — auf eine Woche verſchieben; er reiſt auf eine Woche ab, *for a week;* and in phrases like: auf immer, *for ever;* auf Wiederſehen, *till we meet again*, etc., in *prospective* sense, **for, till.** (3) **On** or **at** a point, precisely: Kommen Sie auf die Minute, *at the minute;* auf einmal, *all at once.*

NOTE. — Auf is much used adverbially (*up*, *open*, etc.), and in adverbial phrases.

Aus, with dative only — **out of** (from within).

(*a*) *Place* — motion **out of**: (1) Aus dem Hauſe kommen; Geld aus der Taſche nehmen; aus dem Fenſter ſehen, *to look out of the window;* sometimes **from** (yet strictly **from within**): aus der Stadt kommen, etc.

(2) More rarely removal **away from**: aus den Augen; aus der Mode, *out of sight, fashion*, etc.

(*b*) *Source* — **from, by**: (1) Ich ſehe aus Ihrem Briefe—aus ſeinem Betragen; ich weiß aus Erfahrung — aus vielen Gründen; aus Verſehen, *by mistake.*

Hence, (2) *origin*, **from**: Er ſtammt aus einer alten Familie — aus Berlin; ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten; Nachrichten—Briefe—aus Deutſchland, etc.

(*c*) *Material* — **out of, of**: Aus Gold gemacht; aus Lehm gebrannt; der Menſch beſteht aus Leib und Seele; aus nichts wird nichts; werden aus, *to become of*, etc.

(*d*) *Motive* — **from, for**: Aus Eitelkeit, Geiz, Not handeln; aus Mangel an Geld, *for want of money;* aus Achtung gegen Sie, *out of respect*, etc.

Bei, with dative only — **by, near.**

(*a*) *Place*—properly (near) **by**: Er wohnt bei der Kirche; ich ſtand bei dem König. So in many phrases: bei Tiſche, *at table;* bei Hofe, *at court;* beim

Wein ſitzen; ich habe kein Geld bei mir, *about me;* die Schlacht bei Leipzig, **of** (with names of *towns*); bei Sinnen ſein, *in one's senses;* bei Seite, *aside*, etc.

(*b*) More especially **at one's house**: (1) Bei dem Schneider, *at the tailor's* (house or shop); er wohnt bei mir, *with me* (at my house—mit mir, elsewhere). Hence (2) as *characteristic* — **with, among, in**: Das iſt bei uns Mode — bei den Deutſchen üblich, *with us, among the G.;* das Wort findet ſich bei den Dichtern — bei Goethe, *in the poets*, etc. Das ſteht bei Ihnen, *stands with—depends on—you;* fragen Sie bei ihm nach, *inquire of him*, etc.

(*c*) *Instrument* — **by** (less frequently than in English): (1) Bei der Hand nehmen; bei ſeinem Namen nennen, *to call by his name*. So (2) in *adjuration:* bei Gott, *by* (*the help of*) *God;* bei meiner Ehre, *by*, or *on my honor;* and (3) *condition*—**on**: bei Lebensſtrafe, *on penalty of death;* bei alle dem, *with* (*in spite of*) *all that.*

(*d*) *Time* — (1) **on**, as occasion: Bei dieſer Gelegenheit, *on this occasion;* bei dieſen Worten, *at these words*. And (2) in phrases, **during, by**: bei Nacht; bei Tage; bei Lichte, *by candlelight;* bei hellem Tage, *in broad day;* bei dieſem Wetter; beim Leſen, *while reading*. Rarely with *numbers*, meaning **nearly.**

Durch, with accusative only — **through.**

(*a*) *Place* — motion **through**: Durch die Stadt — den Wald—reiten; durch einen Fluß ſchwimmen, *across a river;* durch alle Gefahren ſiegreich, etc.

(*b*) *Means* — **through, by**: Der Brief kam durch die Poſt, *through* (*by*) *the mail;* er ward reich durch den Handel — durch Ihren Beiſtand, *by trade*, etc.; durch einen Pfeil verwundet, *by an arrow*, etc.

(*c*) *Time*—extension **through:** here durch usually follows the noun (more frequently, hindurch): das ganze Jahr durch; den Tag hindurch, *all day long.*

NOTE. — Durch is much used adverbially (**throughout**); and, as prefix, is separable or inseparable, with changed sense (§ 287).

Für, with accusative only — **for** (originally same as vor).

(*a*) Primarily, place—in front of; hence, **in behalf of, for**: wir kämpfen für König und Vaterland; meine Freunde ſtimmen für mich, *vote for me;* ich ſorge für dich, etc.

(*b*) Hence, **in place of, for**: (1) Er handelt für mich, *for me* (*as my agent*); billige W(a)aren für b(a)ares Geld, *cheap goods for cash;* ich nehme es für Bezahlung an, *for*, or *in, payment*. (2) *Price* — **for**: für zehn Taler kaufen — verkaufen. (3) And **for, as**: in phrases like achten, erklären, gelten, halten, ſich ausgeben — für (§ 443, *c*), etc.

(*c*) Hence, *fitness, destination* — **for**: Das Glück iſt nicht für mich; Spielzeuge für Kinder, *toys for children*, etc. Or (2) *proportion, correspondence:*

Er iſt alt für ſeine Jahre, *old for his years;* and phrases like Mann für Mann; Tag für Tag; Wort für Wort, etc. (3) *Restriction:* für heute, für dieſes Mal, *for this time;* für mich, *as for me;* an und für ſich, *in and for itself, per se*, etc.

In, with dative or accusative — **in, into.**

1. With dative — position **in** (nearly as in English).

(*a*) *Place* or *time*—**in, within:** in dieſem Hauſe—dieſem Jahre—der nächſten Woche; in Berlin; im Winter, etc.; **at:** in der Kirche — der Schule, *in school* (see auf); in Kurzem, *in a short time;* in aller Frühe, *as soon as possible:* im Alter von 60 Jahren, *at the age*, etc.

(*b*) *Condition:* in Gedanken; in Verzweiflung; in einer unglücklichen Lage — Stimmung — ſein, etc. Im Begriff ſein zu ſchreiben (*in the idea*) *on the point of writing* (§ 465).

(*c*) *Manner:* im Geiſte beten, *in spirit;* in der Eile, *in haste;* in einem beleidigenden Tone, *in* (*with*) *an insulting tone;* in Wahrheit; in der Tat, *in fact;* beſtehen in, *to consist in.*

2. With accusative — motion **into.**

(*a*) *Place* — **into:** in das Haus — den Garten — gehen, etc.; **to:** in die Kirche — die Schule — das Theater — gehen, *to church*, etc.; **in:** er ſchnitt ſich ins Bein — hatte einen Schnitt in die Wange, *a cut in his cheek.*

(*b*) *Condition* — change **into:** Waſſer in Wein — Traurigkeit in Freude — verwandeln; in zwei Stücke teilen, *into two pieces;* in Üppigkeit verfallen; in die Flucht jagen, *to put to flight;* einwilligen in, *to consent;* ſich miſchen in, *to meddle with.*

Note. — In, as prefix, is ein — see also herein, hinein.

Mit, with dative only — company, participation with.

(*a*) Usually **with:** wohnen — eſſen — mit (see bei); also **to:** ſprechen mit; verwandt mit, *related to;* **on:** Mitleid haben mit, *to have pity on;* **by:** ein Mann mit Namen Schmidt, *by name* (see bei), etc.

(*b*) *Time* — coincident **with:** Mit dem Frühling kommen die Schwalben; mit dieſen Worten ging er ab; mit Tagesanbruch, *at* (*with*) *daybreak*, etc.

(*c*) *Instrument* — **with:** Mit einem Meſſer ſchneiden; mit einem Dolche ſtechen, etc.; mit Füßen treten, *under foot;* mit b(a)arem Gelde kaufen, *to buy for cash;* mit der Poſt ſchicken, *by mail;* ich ſage damit, *I mean;* multiplicieren — dividieren — mit, *by.*

(*d*) *Manner* — **with:** mit Vergnügen; mit großen Augen anſehen, *with surprise;* mit Vorſatz — Fleiß, *on purpose*, and various adverbial phrases.

Note. — Mit, often stands as adverb, without object — with, along (with).

Nach with dative only (akin to nah, **near**)—**towards, to, after.**

(*a*) *Place*—direction **towards, to** (not of persons): Ich reiſe nach England — nach Berlin — nach dem Süden; nach der Stadt — nach Hauſe — gehen, *home.*

(*b*) Hence, of object aimed **at—after, for**: laufen nach, *to run after;* nach den Sternen greifen, *to grasp at.* So, fragen, ſehen, ſtreben, ſchicken — nach, *after*, or *for;* ſchießen, trachten, werfen, zielen — nach, *at*, etc.; and with adjectives, begierig nach, etc.

(*c*) *Time*—**after**: (1) Nach Neujahr; nach zehn Uhr; nach einer Minute; (2) **succession after, next to**: nach dir iſt er mein liebſter Freund, *next to you*, etc.

(*d*) Hence, **after, according to** (in this sense often follows): Nach einer Vorſchrift ſchreiben, *after a copy;* nach Befehl handeln; nach meiner Meinung; nach meiner Uhr, *by my watch;* nach den Geſetzen; dem Alter nach, *according to age;* der Reihe nach, *in a row.* And in phrases like richten, urteilen — nach, *to judge by;* riechen, ſchmecken — nach, *to taste of.*

Über, with dat. or accus, **over, above.**

1. With dative, position **over.**

(*a*) *Place*, **over**: Der Nebel ſteht über dem Berge; niemand ſteht über dem König (*in rank*).

(*b*) **over, beyond**: Über dem Meere lag eine neue Welt.

(*c*) **over, during**: Über dem Buche, dem Leſen, ſchlief er ein, *while reading;* über dem Spiele entſtand der Streit, *during the game* (*over, concerning* = über das Spiel), etc.

2. More freely with accusative, of motion, extent, action, expressed or implied, **over, above, beyond, about,** etc.

(*a*) *Direction* **over**: Über die Brücke gehen; über das Haus fliegen; den Hut über den Tiſch hängen; eine Brücke über den Fluß ſchlagen, *over* (*across*) *the river*, etc. Here belong such verbs as herrſchen, regieren, ſiegen—über, etc.

(*b*) **Over, beyond**: (1) Über das Ziel ſchießen, *beyond the mark;* über den König ſetzen; über eine Meile weit; über meine Kräfte; über alle Maßen; über 60 Jahre alt. **Also** (2) **past, by**: Über Paris nach London, *via Paris;* and (3) **after, in addition to**: Briefe über Briefe ſchreiben, *letters upon letters;* einen Tag über den andern, *one day after another*, etc.

(*c*) *Time* **beyond, after**: (1) Über ein Jahr ſehen wir uns wieder, *in* (*after*) *a year;* heute über zehn Tage, *ten days hence;* über kurz oder lang, *sooner or later;* (2) In some phrases, **during** (here usually follows the case):

über Nacht, *over night* (*in the night*); die Nacht über, *all night*; den Sommer über, *all* (*through*) *the summer*.

(*d*) Frequently of *object* or *cause*: **about, concerning, of,** etc. Thus:

(1) With verbs, as ſprechen, ſchreiben, erzählen—über, **about** (see von); (2) especially of emotions and their expression, as: ſich ärgern, ſich freuen, ſich wundern, erſchrecken; klagen, lachen, trauern, weinen—über, and with like adjectives, froh, traurig, etc., über, **of, for, at,** etc.

Um, with accus. only, **around, about.**

(*a*) *Place:* Um den Tiſch ſitzen, laufen; etwas um den Hals binden, tragen; die Gegend um Boſton, etc.

(*b*) *Time*, or *number*—(1) indefinite, **about**: um Mitternacht; um zweihundert, *about* 200; but (2) of the *time of day*, definite, **at:** um welche Zeit? um zwei Uhr, *at two o'clock*, etc. Also (3) *excess*, **by**: um ein Jahr älter, *a year older*. (4) *Succession*, **after**: einer um den andern, *one after another*.

(*c*) *Rotation* **around,** (1) *alternation:* einen Tag um den andern, *every other day*; (2) *Exchange*, **for**: Auge um Auge, *an eye for an eye*; um einen hohen Preis kaufen, **for (at)** *a high price*. (3) *End*, or *loss*; um das Leben bringen, *to deprive of life*; um das Geld kommen, *to lose one's money*; es iſt um mich geſchehen, *all over with me*. Compare die Zeit iſt um, *over* (as of a circuit completed), and so in many phrases.

(*d*) Very largely with remote object, **about, for**: um etwas ſtreiten, um Brot, Verzeihung, bitten; um Geld ſpielen; um Rat fragen; um Hülfe rufen; um Gottes Willen, *for God's sake*. And with still more general reference: Wie ſteht es um ihn, um ſeine Geſundheit? *how is it about*, etc.? Es iſt um ſein Leben zu tun, *his life is at stake*, etc.

Note.—Sie ſtritten über, um, einen Apfel: über expresses cause of quarrel, um, the object of contention. This more *remote sense* of um is seen in the infin., um . . . zu, of *purpose*. Um has many uses in adverb phrases.

Unter, with dat. or acc., **under.**

1. With dative, position **under, beneath.** (*a*) *Place:* Unter einem Baume ſtehen; er ſteht tief unter dir (*in rank*); unter der Hand, *underhand, secretly*; unter Segel, *under sail*; unter meinem Schutze ſtehen, *under my protection*; unter den Geſetzen, *subject to the laws*; unter dieſer Bedingung, **under (on)** this condition. So (2) *time:* unter der Regierung Napoleons; unter den deutſchen Kaiſern, *under*, etc.

(*b*) **Among,** frequently: (1) unter andern, *among other things*; die ſchönſte unter allen (so, often, for part. gen., § 431): unter einander, *in confusion*;

sometimes (2) **between**: unter uns geſagt, *entre nous;* unter Brüdern, *confidentially*, etc., or (3) **amid**: unter Jubeln, *amid shouts.*

(*c*) **Below, less than**: Unter dem Wert angeben, unter Preis verkaufen, *below value;* unter zwanzig Jahren alt; unter aller Kritik, *beneath all criticism.*

2. With accusative, motion, **under, beneath** (*a*): unter einen Baum treten, ſich flüchten, *to take refuge under;* er hat alle Dinge unter ſeine Füße getan, *put under;* ich nehme dich unter meinen Schutz, etc.

(*b*) **Among**: Unkraut unter den Weizen ſäen, *to sow tares among the wheat;* unter die Soldaten gehen, *to enlist.*

Von, with dative only, **from, of, by**:

(*a*) *Place* (1) motion **from**: Er kommt von der Stadt; reiſt von Paris nach London; and in phrases, von oben, von hinten; von einander gehen, *to separate*, etc. (2) *Transition* **from**: von Worten zu Schlägen, *from words to blows;* von einer Krankheit geneſen, *recover from.* (3) *Separation* **from**: ſechs Meilen von Berlin; rein von; frei von Schulden, *free of debt;* freigeſprochen von, *acquitted of.*

(*b*) *Time*, **from** (often with added adverb): von Morgen bis Abend; von heute; von Kindheit an; von Jugend auf; von Alters (Zeit) her, *from olden times*, etc.

(*c*) *Source*, **from**: (1) von ehrlichen Eltern geboren; etwas von einem verlangen, erhalten, etc., *to ask from*, or *of;* von Herzen, *from the heart;* von ſelbſt, *voluntarily*, etc. (2) *Material*, **from, of**: Eine Brücke von Eiſen (but aus Eiſen machen), ein Herz von Stein (for the adj. § 432). (3) *Means*, **from, by**: er lebt von ſeinem Handel; von der Luft leben, *on air;* naß vom Regen; von Froſt erſtarrt, etc.

(*d*) *Agency*, **by**, especially of passive verb, usually personal (§ 274).

(*e*) *Specification*, **of** (and here often for genitive, § 431–2):

(1) der König von England; keiner von uns; trinken Sie von dieſem Wein; and with adjectives: voll von, *full of*, etc. (§ 433). (2) *Description:* Ein Mann von Ehre, von 60 Jahren; ein Schauſpieler von Profeſſion, *by profession;* ein Teufel von einer Frau, *a devil of a woman;* and in many phrases. So with *names*, primarily **from** (local): thence **of**, as sign of nobility: Fürſt von Bismarck, etc.

(*f*) *Limiting object*, **of, concerning**; with verbs like denken, halten, hören, ſagen, ſchreiben, ſprechen, wiſſen, etc.: was denken Sie von ihm? *your opinion of* (see an); ich ſprach davon, *of it, mentioned it* (darüber, *about it, in detail*).

Vor, with dat. or accus., **in front of, before.**

1. With dative: (*a*) *Place*, (1) position **before**: vor dem Tore ſtehen; vor meinen Augen; Schritt vor Schritt, *step by step*. (2) *In presence of*, **before**: vor dem Gerichte, dem Richter, ſtehen.

(*b*) *Time*, (1) priority **before**: vor Weihnachten; vor Chriſti Geburt; (2) preference **before**: vor allen Dingen, *before all, first*. (3) Especially of time past, **ago**: vor einem Jahre; vor Zeiten, *in times past*.

(*c*) In presence of **before, from**: (1) vor einem fliehen, to *flee* **from**; vor dem Tode erſchrecken; and with like verbs: ſich fürchten, zittern; ſich hüten, verbergen, verſtecken — vor, *before*, or *from* (to avoid), warnen vor, *to warn against*, etc. Hence (2) *Cause*, **from**, or **for**: vor Angſt fliehen; vor Freude weinen; vor Hunger ſterben (see aus).

2. With accusative, motion **before**: wir ſetzen uns vor das Tor (*go out and*, etc.); die Hand vor die Augen halten; vor das Gericht gefordert werden (with motion *implied*); ſiehe vor dich, *look before you* (direction); but ich ſah es vor mir liegen (place), etc.

Zu, with dative only, properly **to**, but with various uses. (*a*) Primarily, *motion* **to** — (1) *a person* (for place, see nach): er kam zu mir, lief zu ſeiner Mutter. Hence (2) to one's house (see bei): zu dem Schneider gehen, *to the tailor's*. Also (3) of actions directed to persons: er ſprach zu mir, ſang zu mir, *spoke, sang to me*, etc.

(*b*) Outside of persons, (1) *motion* **to** (yet with notion of *arrival* **at**, thus distinct from nach): Er geht täglich zur Stadt, *to town* (iſt nach der S. gegangen, *has gone* (*started*) *to the town*; ſie legten das Geld zu ſeinen Füßen, *at his feet*; von Ort zu Ort, *from place to place*; and in many phrases: zu Ende kommen; zu Grunde gehen; zu Schanden werden, etc. (2) In addition to: er nimmt Waſſer zu ſeinem Wein, *with his wine*; zudem, dazu, *besides*. (3) *Limit, degree* — **up to**: das iſt ſchön zum Entzücken; das iſt zum Lachen; zum Tode betrübt; zum wenigſten, *at least*.

(*c*) *Direction* **to**, (1) *Object*: die Liebe zu Gott, *love to God*; Luſt zum Tanzen, *desire to dance*. (2) *Purpose, fitness*, **for**: Das Meſſer dient zum Schneiden, mein Sohn iſt zum Kaufmann beſtimmt, *for a merchant*; bereit zum Tode; and in phrases: zu Gaſte bitten, *as a guest*; zu Rate gehen, nehmen; zu Bette gehen (*for sleep*); zu Tiſche gehen (*to eat* — nach dem T., *to the table*); mir zu Gefallen; zum Beiſpiel, *for example*, etc.

(*d*) *Effect*, (1) *Transition* **to**: Das Waſſer wird zu Eis; der Knabe wächſt zum Manne heran; and in phrases: zu Stande bringen, *to accomplish*; zu Geſichte bekommen, *to get sight of*; zum Narren haben, *to make a fool of*, etc. Hence (2) as *factitive object* (§ 443, *d*).

(*e*) without motion, **at** (see *b*): (1) *Place* (towns, etc.), zu Paris; die Univerſität zu Berlin; and in phrases: zu Hauſe; zur Hand, *at hand;* zur See, *at sea;* einem zu Füßen liegen — especially with following adverb: Zum Tore, Fenſter — hinaus, *out of* (*at*), etc. (2) *Time*, **at**, in *general* expressions (see an, um): Zu Weihnachten (but am 25. December); zu Mittag (but um 12 Uhr); zur Zeit der Medicäer; zu gleicher Zeit; zu ſeiner Zeit, *in due time;* also **for**: ein Geſchenk zum Geburtstage, *a birthday gift.* (3) *Proportion* — **at, to**: Das Stück zu zwei Groſchen, *two groschen a piece;* das Pfund zu 16 Unzen gerechnet; zum Teil, *in part;* zu Tauſenden, *by thousands* (*at a time*); je zu zwölf, *twelve at a time.* (4) Manner, in many phrases, **on, by,** etc.: zu Land, zu Waſſer, zu Pferd, zu Fuß, zu Wagen, zu Mut, etc.

NOTE. — For zu with infinitive, see § 475. — In some of its uses zu must be carefully distinguished from the indirect (dative) object; as §§ 436, 438, etc.

REMARK:—The foregoing examples may suffice to illustrate the idiomatic uses of prepositions, and their wide extension of meaning. A full exhibition of this subject would require a volume. It may be worth while to add here the well-known doggerel lines of the German grammars:

I. GENITIVE.

Unweit, mittels, kraft und während,
laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
oberhalb und unterhalb,
innerhalb und außerhalb,
diesſeit, jenſeit, halben, wegen,
ſtatt, auch, längs, zufolge, trotz:
ſtehen mit dem Genitiv,
oder auf die Frage weſſen?
Doch iſt hier nicht zu vergeſſen,
daß bei dieſen letzten drei
auch der Dativ richtig ſei.
Hierzu kommt noch „um — willen."

II. DATIVE.

Schreib:
mit, nach, nächſt, nebſt, ſamt,
bei, ſeit, von, zu, zuwider,
entgegen, außer, aus,
ſtets mit dem Dativ nieder.

III. ACCUSATIVE.

Bei den Wörtern: durch, für, ohne,
ſonder, gegen, um und wider,
ſchreibe ſtets den vierten Fall,
nie einen andern nieder.

IV. DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

An, auf, hinter, neben, in,
über, unter, vor und zwiſchen
ſtehen mit dem vierten Fall,
wenn man fragen kann: wohin?
Mit dem dritten ſtehen ſie ſo,
daß man nur kann fragen: wo?

NOTE ON THE ORDER OF WORDS (LESS. XXXVI).

The following mnemonics have been found useful for beginners. Of course they do not cover all possible cases.

Referring to the formulae, p. 177, let also a denote any single verb-adjunct, and c any subordinating connective; also let P stand for Principal, and D for Dependent sentence. Then:

$$P = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N = \text{S. V. A.} \\ I = a\text{V. S. A.} \end{array} \right\} \text{two forms.}$$

$$D = \quad T = c\,\text{S. A. V.—one form;}$$

the verb, V, being the *Variable*.

NOTE. — 1. a may also be an introductory clause (§ 344, b).
2. In a relative clause, c is included in the pronoun.

In Complex sentences:

(1) The Principal preceding:

P D = N T, or = I T — two forms.

(2) The Dependent preceding — here P = I — hence:

D P = T I — one form. (For Exceptions, see § 350).

The order of possible verb-adjuncts may be indicated by the following formula:

A = 1. Pron. Objects: *a.* accusative, *b.* dative; 2. Adverb Time; 3. Noun Objects: *a.* Dat., *b.* Accus., *c.* Gen.; 4. Adverb: *a.* Place, *b.* Manner; 5. Objects with prep.: *a.* person, *b.* thing; 6. Pred. noun or adj.; 7. Last, the non-personal part of the verb: sep. pref., part., infin., in their order (see also § 357).

Of course all such adjuncts will not occur together; and exceptional cases are not here included. We may add, however, especially:

D — daß = P (§ 350, 1) — (read D *minus* daß, etc.).
D — wenn = I (§ 350, 2).

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

(REFERENCES TO §§.)

Ablaut, verbs, 223; nouns, 383–4; adjectives, 394.
Absolute, acc., 446; superl., 316, 450, c.; infin., 475; part., 481, 4.
Accentuation: 48–55; foreign, 56–60; compounds, 379, 390, 400–1.
Accusative: with prep. 178, 280 (or dat.) 179; direct obj., 441; with adjs., 441, *c.*; double, 442; factitive, 443; cognate, 444; adverbial, 445; absolute, 446.
Address: pronouns, 186–9; nouns, 428, *c.*; (letter) p. 247, *note.*
Adjectives: declension, 127–30; strong, 131–3; weak, 134-5; mixed, 136–8; as nouns, 140; as adverbs, 142; neut. end. dropped, 145; successive, 147; compared, 149–58, 450; word-order, 352–3; derivation, 393–6; composition, 400; with gen., 433; with dat., 438; with accus. 441; special forms, 448–50; concord, 451; participial, 479, 481, 3.
Adjective pronouns, 86–8; possess., 192; demonst., 204–10; interr., 220–1; indef., 245; clauses, 348, *b*; adjuncts, 352.
Adjuncts of noun, 352; of adjective, 353; of verb, 354–7; of participle, 353, 483.
Adverbs, 314–21; compared, 315–7; position, 322, 355; derivation, 397–8; composition, 401; dist. from adj., 449; special uses, 484; idioms, 485.
Adverbial phrases, 320; conjunctions, 327–8; clauses, 348, *c*, 350, 2, 480, 2, *b*, 486; gen., 435; acc., 445.
Alphabetical list, verbs, p. 307.
Apostrophe, 70.
Appendix, nouns, p. 367; preps. p. 368.
Apposition, 429, 4: for gen., 431, *c.*
Article: *def.*, decl., 72; contr. with preps., 191; use, 416; omitted, 417; repeated, 421; *indef.*, decl., 79; use, 419; position, 420; repeated, 421.
Auxiliary verbs, 167–74; distinguished, 296–9; omitted, 350, 4; of mood, 260–8, 472.

Capital letters, 61–66; modified, 66.
Cardinal numerals, 300–4; compounds, 306.
Case (see nom., gen., etc.); with preps., summary, 447.
Causative verbs, 362; laſſen, 269.
Cause, clauses of, 486, 2.
Clauses, dependent, 330–4; 348; 486; position of, 359–60.
Comparison, 149–55; irreg., 156–8; of adverbs, 315–7; correl., 334; special forms, 450.
Composition of verbs, insep., 277–9, 369–76; sep., 282–5, 377; sep. or insep., 287–8, 378; special forms, 289, 379–81; of nouns, 388–92; of adjs., 400; of adverbs, 401; summary, 402, *rem.*
Compound nouns, decl., 121; exceptions, 122, 388; accent, 53, 390; verbs, etc. (see **Composition**); phrase compounds, 389, 7; successive, 392; verbs with dat., 437, 3.
Concession, clauses of, 468, 486, 4.
Concord, adj., 451; pron., 452; verb, 461, 2.
Condition, potential, 469; unreal, 470; contracted, 350, 2, 471; clauses of, 486, 3.
Conditional (the), form, 173; use, 471.
Conjugation, 195–200; weak, 201, 211–4; strong, 223–7; mixed, 253–4; modal, 261; passive, 271; reflexive, 251; (see alph. list).
Conjunctions, 324–5; pure, 326, 345, 349; adverbial, 327–8; subordinating, 330-4.
Correlative, comparison, 334; pronouns, 456, 5; adverbs, 485.
Countries, names of, 111, 416, 2.

Dates, 309–10.

Dative, ind. obj. verbs, 203, 437 ; with prep., 164, 280, (or acc.) 179 ; with adjs., 438 ; of interest, ethical, 439 ; privative (from), 440 ; factitive, 443, *d* ; special forms, 106.
Days and months, 313 ; in dates, 309–10.
Declension — of nouns, 73 ; strong, 74 : — class I., 75–8 ; II., 81–5 ; III., 89 ; weak, 92–6 ; mixed, 104 ; peculiarities, 99–107 ; proper names, 109–13 ; foreign, 115–20 ; compound, 121–2 ; synopsis, 124. Of adjectives, 127–30 — strong, 131–2, weak, 134–5, mixed, 136–8 ; special cases, 139–147. Pronouns (see their classes).
Demonstrative, adj. and pron., 204–10, 456 ; as substitutes, 457 ; as relative, 459, 5.
Dependent clauses, 348, 359 ; verb (position), 347–50.
Derivation — of verbs, 361: by root-change, 362–3 ; by suffix, 364–5 ; from nouns, 366 ; from adjs., 367 ; — of nouns : from verbs, 382–4 ; from adjs. or nouns, 385–6 (without suffix, 382–3 ; with suffix, 384–6); by prefix, 387 ; — of adjectives, 393–6 (suffix, 395 ; prefix, 396) ; — of adverbs, 397 ; summary, 402, *rem.*
Digraphs (and trigraphs), consonant, 33–43.
Diminutives, 78, 386, 6.
Diphthongs, 16–20.

Emphasis, (type) 70 ; der, 206 ; ein, 301.
English — relation to German : summary, Less. XLV.
Euphony, in nouns, 85 ; adjs., 139 ; verbs, 211–4.
Exclamation, 336 ; with dat., 439, *d* ; infin., 474, *f* ; part., 336, 2.
Expletive (es), 291, 453.

Factitive, acc., 443 ; dat. (zu), 443, *d.*
Feminine, dat. in -n (106).
Foreign words pronounced, 47 ; accented, 56–60 ; declined, 115–120, 427, *d.*
Future tense, form, 173 ; use, 465.

Gender, 71, 125–6 ; special forms, 426, 452, *a.*
Genitive, 71; with prep., 280 ; position, 352 ; with nouns, 430 ; partitive, 431; with adjs., 433; with verbs, 434 ; adverbial, 435 ; exclam., 336, 3.
German — relation to English ; summary, Less. XLV.

Grimm's Law (outline), 408.

Hour (o'clock), 305.
Hyphen, in compounds, 69, 392.

Imperative forms, 176 ; vowel change, 226 ; sentences, 346 ; infin. or part. for, 336, 2.
Impersonal verb, 290–5 ; for passive, 274 ; with gen., 434, *d.*; with dat., 436, 5 ; subject, 453.
Incomplete compounds, 379, 437, 4.
Indefinite, pron. and adj., 244–5 ; use of, 460 ; relat., 236, 459, 3.
Indirect object, 203, 437 ; mood and tense, 467 ; question, 348, 467, *d.*
Infinitive, form of past part., modal, 264–5 ; exclam., 336 ; position, 358 ; uses, 473 ; simple, 474 ; with zu, 475 ; with um — zu, 476; equivalents, 477–8; as noun, 75, 416, 1.
Inseparable verbs, 277–9 ; 369–76 ; special forms, 380.
Interjections, 335–7 ; with gen., 435, *c* ; with dat., 439, *d.*
Interrogative, pron. and adj., 217–22 ; use of, 458 ; infin., 474, *f.*
Inverted order, 165 ; 344–6.

Measure (terms of), 312, 431, *c.*
Mixed nouns, 99–104 ; adjectives, 136–8 ; verbs, 253–4 ; prefixes, 381.
Modal verbs, 260–7 ; with omitted infin., 268 ; idioms, 472.
Modification of vowel, 10 ; in nouns, 76, 83, 89, 124, *rem.*; in adjs. (comp.), 151–2 ; in verbs, 224, 226 ; in derivation, *rem.*, p. 189 ; written, 10, 15, 66.
Monosyllables — nouns ; masc. 81, p. 30, p. 38 ; fem. 82, *b*, 92, *b* ; neut. 81, 89 ; adjs., 151.
Months and days (names), 313 ; in dates, 309–10.
Mood — indic., (tenses), 462–5 ; imper., 176 ; subjunct., (see *subjunct.*) ; aux. of (see *modal*).

Negative, 322, 5 ; idioms, 460, 8 ; redundant, 485, 11.
Nominative case, 429.
Normal order, 339, 350 ; restored after pure conj. 345 ; in dep. clause, 350.
Nouns, declension, 73 ; strong, 74 — I., 75–8 ; II., 81–5 ; III., 89 ; weak, 92–6 ; mixed,

99–105; proper, 109–13; foreign, 115–20; compound, 121–2; derivation of: from verbs, 382–4; from adj. or nouns, 385–6; by prefix, 387; composition of, 388–92 (and accent.).

Noun clauses, 348; normal, 350; objective, 477.

Number, 71; special cases, 422–5; verb, 461, 2.

Numerals, cardinal, 300–4; compounds, 306; ordinal, 307-8; compounds, 311.

Objects, position of, 354; indirect, 203, 437; direct, 441; double, 434, 437, 442; factitive, 443; cognate, 444; repeated, 487.

Optative, sentences, order, 346: subjunct., 468: adverb (doch), 485, 2.

Order of words; see *position.*

Ordinal nums., 307–8; compounds, 311.

Orthography, official, p. 323.

Participles, decl., 141; perfect: — augment, 215-6; in modal perfects, 264–5; exclam., 336, 2; in comp. tenses, 341; uses of, 479–81; absolute, 481, 4: — present, 479–80; — fut. pass., 482; adjuncts of part., 483.

Participial adjectives, 479; 481, 3; equivalents, 480, 2.

Partitive, no art., 418; gen., 431; apposition, 431, *c*, *d*.

Passive, conj., 270; use of, 272–3, 437, *c*; substitutes for, 274–76.

Past tense, 464.

Perfect tense, 464; part. (*see participle*).

Personal pronouns, decl., 182; address, 186–9; special forms, 452; demonst. for, 457; with relat., 459, 2, *b*.

Personification, by attrib. gen., 430, *note*.

Plural, of nouns, 124; foreign, 115–20, 427, *d*; special forms, 424–5; double, 424–5; of proper names, 427; pl. verb with titles, 461, 2, *c*; pron. address, 178–8. (See App.).

Position (order of words), first rules, 177, 202; summary (Less. XXXVI.): — verb, 338; normal, 339–43; inverted, 344–6; transposed, 347–9; special cases, 350–1; — adjuncts: of noun, 352; of adj., 353; of part., 483; — objects, 354; infin., 358; dependent clauses, 359–60; synopsis, p. 185, p. 378.

Possessive, adjectives, 192; pronouns, 193–4; for personal, 430, *d*; art. for, 416; tr. by dat. pers., 439; special cases, 455.

Potential subjunctive, 469.

Predicate, adj., 127, 356; superl., 160–1; concord of verb, 461.

Prefixes, insep., 277–9; sep., 282–5; sep. or insep., 287–8; compound, 289; special forms, 379–81; — meaning of, insep., 369–76; sep., 377; in nouns, 387; in adjs., 396.

Prepositions, with dat., 164; acc., 178; dat. or acc., 179; contr. with art., 191; (spurious) 280; compound, 402; for gen., 431–2–3–4; for acc., 442; summary, 447; with infin., 475; adverbial, 445, *note*. (See Appendix).

Present tense, vowel change, 226; use of, 463.

Privative dat. 440.

Pronouns, personal, 182–4, 452–3; address, 186–9; reflexive, 185, 454; possess., 193, 455; demonst., 204–10, 456–7; interrog., 217–22, 458; relat., 233–40, 459; indef., 244, 460; expletive (es), 453; position of objects, 354; concord, 452.

Pronunciation, vowels, 3–9; mod. vowels, 10–15; diphthongs, 16–20; consonants, 21–43; double letters, 44; foreign words, 47.

Proper names, decl., 109–113; article, 416; plural, 427; titles, 428.

Purpose, subjunct, 468, *c*; infin. (um — zu), 476.

Reflexive pronouns, 185, 434; verbs, 250–2; for pass., 274; (false) with gen., 434, *c*; with dat., 437, 6.

Relative pronouns, 233–40, 459; indef., 236, 459, 3.

Repetition, of art., 421; of possess., 455; of subject, object, auxil. (summary), 487.

Schrift (German Script), p. 385, etc.

Separable prefixes, 282–5; compound, 289; position, 342, 357; meaning, 377; special forms, 379.

Strong decl. of nouns, 74–89; of adjs., 131–3; (or weak) adj. forms, 449; conj. of verbs, 223–7; classes of (see synopsis, 259; and alphabetic list); change to weak deriv., 362.

Subject, omitted, 429; repeated, 461, 487; concord with, 461, 2; change of 477–8.

Subjunctive mood, 466; indirect, 467; optative, 468; potential, 469; conditional, 470–1; purpose, 468, *c*.

Subordinating conjs., 330–4.

Substitutes, for pron. obj. with prep., 184, 222, 459, 4; for passive, 274–6; demons. for pers. pron., 457; adv. for adj. inflect., 450.

Suffixes of derivation: verbs, 364–5; nouns, 384–6; adjs., 395–6; adv., 398.

Superlative, 149, 155; predicate, 160–1; absolute, 316, 450.

Supine, infin., 176, 2.

Syllables, 68.

Synopsis, noun decl., 124; adjs., 166; strong verbs, 259; verb-position, p. 185.

Tenses, indicative, 462; present, 463; past and perfect, 464; future and fut. perf., 465; subjunctive, 467, 470.

Time, 293; of day, 305; date, 309–10; indef. (gen.), 435; def. (acc.), 445; clauses of 486.

Titles, 428, 455, 461, *c*.

Transposed order, 347–9; special cases, 350–1.

Umlaut, 10, 223, note; p. 189, *rem.*; written, 10, 15, 66.

Verbs, auxiliary, 167–74; conjugation, 195–200; weak, 201, 211–4; strong, 223–7; classes of strong, 228–30 (see synopsis, p. 134, and alph. list); mixed, 253–4; modal, 260–1; irregular, 255–6 (see list); reflexive, 250–2; passive, 270–6; impersonal, 290–5. Composition of: — insep., 277–9; 369–76; sep., 282–5, 377; sep. or insep., 287, 378; compound prefixes, 289; special cases, 379–81. Syntax of: with gen., 434; with dat., 437; with acc.. 441; double objects, 434, *b*, 437, 443; cognate obj., 444; infin. obj., 474. Concord, 461. Position of, 338 — normal, 339–43; inverted, 344–6; transposed, 347–9; special cases, 350–1; synopsis, p. 185.

Vowels, quantity, 3; pronunciation, 4–9; modified, 10–15; doubled, 44; change of (ablaut), 223, *note*; sequence in strong verbs, 225, *note*.

Weak, decl. of nouns, 92–6; of adj., 134–5; (or strong) adj., forms, 449; conj. of verbs, 201, 211–4.

Weather, 290, 293.

Weight (and measure), 312, 431, *c*.

INDEX OF WORD-FORMS.

NOTE. — Forms not here indexed are referred in the Vocabulary.

aber, 326.

all, 420, 1; 460, 4; **aller=,** sup. pref., 450, 4.

allein, 326.

als, *adv.*, 153–4, 450, 2; (apposition) 429; *conj.* (condition) 470, *d*; (time) 486.

am, with. sup., 160, 450, 3; dist. from aufs, 315.

an, Appendix.

ander (second), 460, *b*; —thalb, 311, 2.

anſtatt, infin., 475, *f*; — daß, 477, *c*.

=artig, adj., 400, 5.

auch, with rel., 459, 3; with conj., 486, 4; idioms, 485.

auf, Appendix.

aus, Appendix.

be= 370, 1.

bei, Appendix.

beide, beides, 460, 5.

bis, *prep.*, 280; *conj.*, 332.

=chen, *dim.*, 78, 386, 6.

=d, nouns, 384, 1.

da (dar), in comp., 184, 209, 457; dem. or rel. 351, 2; indef., 459, 3; *conj.* (reason) 486, 2.

das, dies, gram. subj., 210.

daß, omitted, 350, 1; clauses, 477, *b*.

=de, nouns. 384, 1.

denn, *conj.*, 326; *adv.*, 450, 2; 470, *b*.

der, *art.*, 79; *dem.*, 206, 456, 2; 457; *rel.* 23, 459; *dem. or rel.*, 351, 2.

derjenige, derſelbe, 208, 456–7.
Dero, 455, *c*.
des, *pron. comp.*, 456, 2.
dieſer, 456–7; **dies**, 210
doch, 485, 2.
dreier, dreien, 302.
durch, Appendix.

e, dropped: nouns, 85, 89, 92, *c*, 94; adjs. 139, 150; verbs, 201, 214, 367; changed to ie, or **i**, 226; — added, 147, 318, 389, *b*.
=e, nouns, 384, 386; adj., adv., 147, 318.
eben (**ſoeben**), 464, *c*.
=ei, nouns, 384, 8, 386, 3.
eilf (**elf**), 300, *note*.
ein, *art.*, 79; *num.*, 301; —er, 244.
ein=, prefix, 283.
=el, nouns, 75, 384, 3; adjs., 139; verbs, 364.
emp=, 371, *d*.
=en, nouns, 75, 384, 6; adjs., 139, 395, 2; for =es, gen. adj., 133.
=ens, adv., 311 3; 399, *f*.
ent=, 371.
entweder, 329.
er=, 372.
=er, nouns, 75, 384, 2, 386, 2; adjs., 139; indecl., 395, 3; verbs, 364.
Er, address, 189.
=erlei, (see =lei).
=ern, adj., 395, 2.
erſt, *adj.*, 307; *adv.* 485, 3; —er=er, 157, 417.
erz=, 387, 5.
es, *pron.* (position), 202; pass., 275; impers., 290–4; idioms, 453.
=es, *neut. adj.*, dropped, 145, 449, 2.
=et, in pron. comp., 452, *b*.
Ew., titles, 455, *c*.

=fach, =fältig, adj., 306, 3; 400, 5.
folgend, 417, 449, 1, *d*.
Frau, Fräulein, titles, 428.
fünf= zehn, =zig, 300, *note*.
für, Appendix.

ge= (augment), 215–6; double, 243, *a*; (prefix), verb, 375; noun, 387.
gegeſſen, 243, *a*.
gehen, *impers.*, 437, 4, *b*.
genug, 322, 460, 7.
gern, 317, 485, 4.
gibt (es), 294.

gleich (wenn, ob), 486, 4.
=gleichen, pron. comp., 452, *c*.

haben, *aux.*, 171, 296; with infin., 475, 2.
=haft, haftig, adj., 395, 4.
halb, 144; comp., 311, 2.
=halb, 280; comp., 459, 4.
heißen, with infin., 474, *c*; p. part., 481, 5.
=heit, noun, 386, 4.
her, 484, *c*; prefix, 377, *c*.
hier, in comp., 401, 457, 1, *b*.
hin, 484; prefix, 377, *c*.

=icht, adj., 395, 6.
=ien, pl., 118–9
=ieren, verbs, 215, 365.
=ig, adj., 395, 5.
Ihr, address, 189; Ihro, 455, *c*.
in, Appendix.
=in, nouns, 386, 5; pl., 95.
indem, 486.
irgend, 460, 3.
=iſch, adj., 395, 8.

ja, 485, 5.
jeder (ein), 245.
jener, 456.

=keit, nouns, 386, 4.
kommen, with perf. part., 480, 4.

lauter, indecl., 460, 7.
=lei (=erlei), 306.
=lein, dim., 78, 386, 6.
letzter=er, 157, 417.
=lich, adj., 395, 10; adv., 398.
lieber, *comp.*, 485, 4.
=ling, noun, 384, 8; 386, 7.
=lings, adv., 399, 1.
=los, adj., 400, 4.

=mal, in comp., 306, 2.
man, 244, 274, 460.
manch(**er**), 245.
=mäßig, adj., 400, 5.
mehr, 156, 450; —ere, 157.
mit, Appendix.

=n, dropped, 103, 384, 6; inserted, 384, 2, 386, 2.
nach, Appendix.
=nis, noun, 384, 4; 386, 8; *pl.*, 83.
noch, *adv.*, 328; *conj.*, 329; — ein, 460. 2: idioms, 485, 6.

nun, *adv.*, 485, 7; *conj.*, 486, 2.
ob, *prep.*, 280; prefix, 283; *conj.*, 332, 477, *b*; omitted, 350, 2, 470, *d*; — auch, etc., 486, 4.
ohne, (zu) infin., 475, *f.*; — daß, 477, *c*.

Paar (ein), 312, 431, *c*; ein paar, 245, note.

=reich, *adj.*, 400, 5.

=s, plur., 120; adv., 399, *d*.
's, for es (it), 453; for das, 72 *note*.
=ſal, **=ſel**, noun, 384, 7.
=ſam, adj., 395, 11.
=ſchaft, noun, 386, 9.
ſchon, with present, 463, *b*; idioms, 485, 8.
Se., **Sr.**, (titles), 455, *c*.
ſein, *v.*, aux., 172, 297; dist. from werden, 273; impers., 293–4; with gen., 435., *b*; with dat. 437, 5, *b*; with infin., 475, 2.
ſeit, *prep.*, 280; with pres., 463, *b*; conj., 486, 2.
ſelbſt, **ſelber**, 454.
=ſelig, adj., 395, 7.
ſich, for einander, 252; position, 354, 4.
Sie, address, 188–9; concord, 451, *b*.
ſo, with comp., 153; connective, 328; (such), 456, 5; omitted, 471, *e*; idioms, 485, 9.
ſolch(er), 207, 456, 5.
ſondern, 326.
Sr., 455, *c*.
ß, **ſſ**, 41.
=ſt, adj., 149, 307; adv., 316; noun, 384, 1.
ſtatt, **anſtatt**, (zu) infin., 475, *f*; — daß, 477, *c*.

=t, noun, 384, 1; for =tet, verb, 226, *b*.
=t= inserted, 398, *b*.
=tel, 311, 388, *note*.
=tet, contr. to =t, 226, *b*.
th, restricted use, 42.
=tum, noun, 386, 10; *pl.*, 89,

über, Appendix.
Uhr, idioms, 305.
um, Appendix. . . . zu, 476; — daß, 468.
un=, 387, 3.
=ung, noun, 384, 5.
unter, Appendix.
ur=, 387, 4.

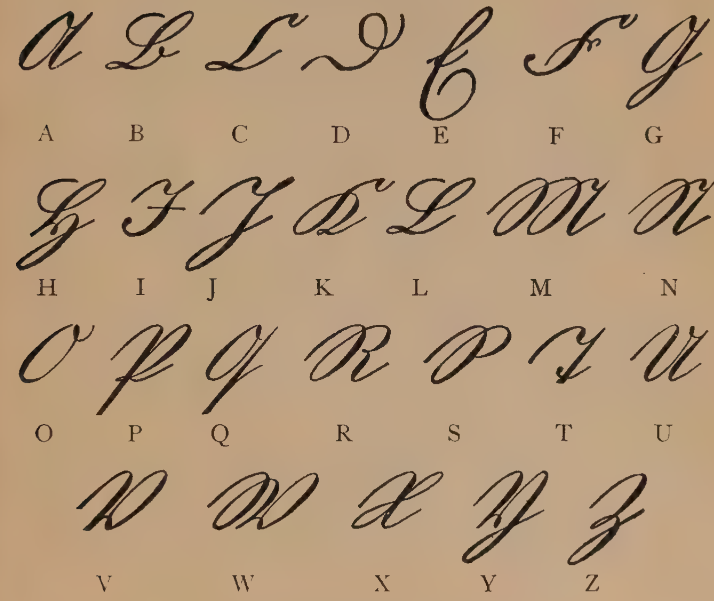
ver=, 373.
viel, 156, 245, *c*, 460, 6.
voll=, 288, *c*; =voll, 400, 4; *adj.*, 433.
voller, 433, *note*.
von, Appendix.
vor, Appendix.

während, *prep.*, 280; *conj.*, 486, *f*.
wann, 486, 1.
ward, 190, 256, *c*.
=wärts, 399, *b*.
was, *int.*, 219, 458; *rel.*, 236–7, 459; — für, 221; *indef.* and *adv.*, 458, 2, 459, 3.
weder (noch), 329.
weil, 486, 2.
=weiſe, adv., 399, *c*.
welcher, *int.*, 220, 458; *rel.*, 234, 459; *indef.* 458.
wenn, (time) 486, 1; (cond.) 486, 3; (concess.) 486, 4; omitted, 350, 2.
wer, *int.*, 219, 458; *rel.*, 236, 459.
weß (**wes**), 222, *b*; 458, 3; 459, 4.
wenig, 245, 460, 6.
werden, aux., 173–4; 273; position, 350, 3; impers., 387, 4, *b*.
wider, **wieder**, prefixes, 288.
wie, *adv.*, 153, 450, 2; (apposition) 429; (time) 486, *d*; —**vielſt**, 308.
wo (wor, 222, 237); cond., 486, 3.
wohl, 485, 10; ob . . ., 486, 4.
worden, 270.

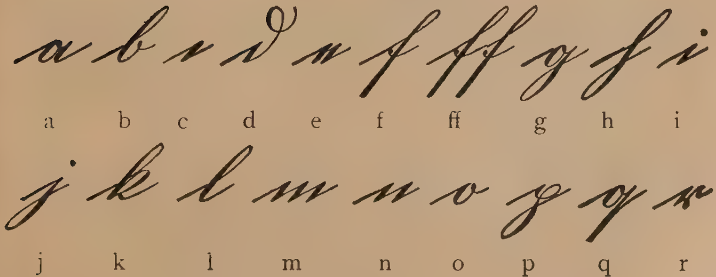
zer= 374.
zu, *prep.*, Appendix; infin., 176; 475–6; factitive dat., 443, *d*; *adv.*, 476.
zween, **zwo**, 300, *note*.
zweier, **zweien**, 302.

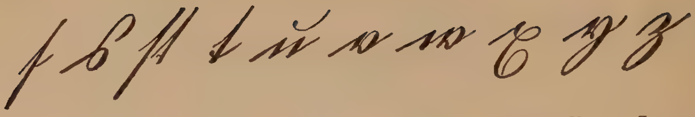
GERMAN HANDWRITING [Schrift].

The Large Alphabet.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

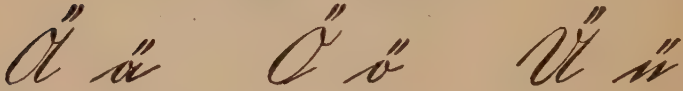
The Small Alphabet.


a
b
c
d
e
f
ff
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r



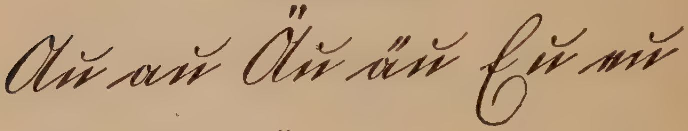
s s st t u v w x y z

Modified Vowels.

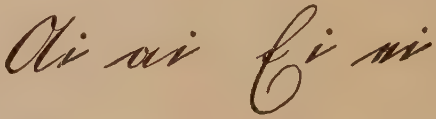


Ä ä Ö ö Ü ü

Diphthongs.

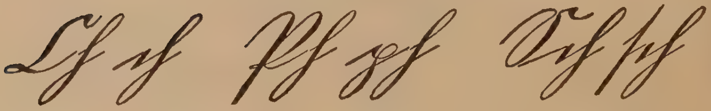


Au au Äu äu Eu eu

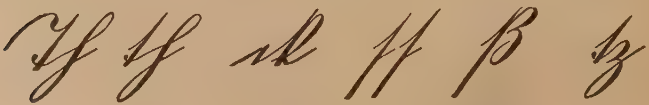


Ai ai Ei ei

Double Consonants.



Ch ch Ph ph Sch sch



Th th ck ss sz = ss tz

Note. — As has been stated, p. 1, it is not necessary — at least not at first — to write the German *Schrift*. But it may become necessary to learn to read it. This can be done only by practice in reading actual handwriting. As an introduction, a few pages of the *Schrift* will be added.

Früh aufſtehen.

Ein Vater ermahnte ſeinen Sohn, früh aufzuſtehen und erzählte ihm die Geſchichte von einer Perſon, welche früh Morgens eine Börſe mit Geld gefunden habe. – „Ja," ſagte der Knabe, „die Perſon, welche das Geld verloren hat, iſt aber doch noch früher aufgeſtanden."

Gute Antwort.

Ein Arzt eilte zu einem Kranken. Ein vorübergehender Bekannter bemerkte im Ärmel des Rockes ein Loch und ſagte zum Doktor: „Da guckt die Weisheit heraus." – „Und die Dummheit hinein," erwiderte der Arzt kalt.

Die Prüfung.

In einer Prüfung wurde ein Schüler gefragt: „Wie viele Inseln liegen im atlantischen Meere, und wie heißen sie?" Der Schüler antwortete: „Im atlantischen Meere liegen sehr viele Inseln, und ich heiße Müller."

Niemand fragt danach.

Ein Deutscher, der bei einem Lord zu Gaste war, warf aus Verſehen ein Glas um. Der Engländer fragte ihn, ob das in Deutſchland ſo Sitte ſei. Gefaßt erwiderte der Deutſche: „Das wohl nicht; aber wenn es dennoch geſchieht, fragt wenigſtens niemand danach.

Stolz.

Als Cortez nach Spanien zurückkehrte, wurde er vom Kaiſer Karl dem Fünften kühl empfangen. Eines Tages ſtellte er ſich unerwartet dem Monarchen vor. „Wer biſt du?" fragte der Kaiſer hochmütig. Cortez entgegnete eben ſo ſtolz: „Ich bin der Mann, der dir mehr Provinzen gab, als deine Vorfahren dir Städte hinterlaſſen haben.

Goldmachen.

Ein gewiſſer Italiener hatte ein Buch über die Kunſt, Gold zu machen, geſchrieben und es in der Hoffnung auf eine gute Belohnung dem Papſte Leo dem Zehnten gewidmet. Da der heilige Vater ſah, daß der Mann ihn beſtändig verfolgte, ſo gab er ihm endlich eine große, leere Geldbörſe und ſagte:

„Da du Gold machen kannst, so brauchst du nur einen Beutel, um es hinein zu tun."

Ein Prahler.

„Ich habe große Reisen gemacht," sagte ein Prahler, „und zwar ohne alles eigene Vermögen oder sonstige Unterstützung. „Wie sind Sie dann aber fortgekommen?" fragte ihn jemand. – „O, durch meinen Witz und Verstand," entgegnete er. „Da sind Sie allerdings sehr wohlfeil gereist," erhielt er zur Antwort.

Ruhm.

„An demſelben Tage, an welchem Göthe ſtarb, kam ich zur Welt," ſagte ein eingebildeter Schriftſteller. Darauf bemerkte jemand: „Beide Ereigniſſe gereichten der deutſchen Literatur zum größten Nachteil.

Zu Hauſe.

Eine Dame ſagte zu ihren Gäſten: „Machen Sie es ſich bequem, und tun Sie, als wären Sie zu Hauſe; da ich ſelbſt zu Hauſe bin, ſo wünſche ich von Herzen, Sie alle wären es auch."

Wohl geſpeiſt zu haben!

Man ſtand von einem Tiſche auf, wo die Koſt ſehr mager war. Der Wirt rief den Gäſten zu: „Ich wünſche, wohl geſpeiſt zu haben!“ – Saphir, welcher ſich ebenfalls unter den Gäſten befand, bemerkte dem Wirt „Ich wünſchte, wohl geſpeiſt zu haben.“

Teure Eier.

Der König von Sachſen reiſte einſt durch Tyrol. Bei einer Dorfſchenke ließ er anhalten und ſich zwei gekochte Eier in den Wagen bringen. Der Wirt verlangte dafür fünfzig Gulden. Dieſe Forderung fand der König unverſchämt und ließ den Wirt zu ſich holen. „Mein Freund," redete er dieſen an, „ſind denn die Eier in Tyrol ſo ſelten?" – „Das eben nicht," erwiderte der Wirt ſehr ehrerbietig, „aber deſto ſeltener die Könige."

Keinen Platz.

Dem König Jakob dem Erſten von England ſetzte ſich eine Fliege auf die Naſe. „Ich habe drei Königreiche," rief er, „kannſt du da keinen andern Platz finden?"

VOCABULARY TO THE SCRIPT.

(ABRIDGED)

Including the Script Words not found in the general Vocabulary.

allerdings, by all means, surely.
an=halten, to hold on, stop.
an=reden, to address, say to.
Ärmel, *m.*, sleeve.
atlantiſch, Atlantic.

beide, both.
Belohnung, *f.*, reward.
bemerken, to remark.
bequem, convenient.
beſtändig, continual.
Beutel, *m.*, purse.

danach, after it, about it.
dennoch, nevertheless.
Doktor, *m.*, doctor.
Dorfſchenke, *f.*, village tavern.
Dummheit, *f.*, stupidity.

ebenfalls, likewise.
ehrerbietig, reverent.
Ei, *n.*, egg, *pl.* -er.
eigen, (one's) own, peculiar.
ein′gebildet, vain, conceited.
einſt, once, one day.
empfangen, to receive.
Engländer, *m.*, Englishman.
entgegen, to reply, retort.
Ereignis, *n.*, event, occurrence.
ermahnen, to exhort, warn.
erwidern, to reply.
erzählen, to tell, relate.

Fliege, *f.*, fly.
Forderung, *f.*, demand.
fort=kommen, to get on, get through.
fünft, fifth.
fünfzig, fifty.

gefaßt, collected, cool.
gereichen, to redound, result.
Geſchichte, *f.*, history, story.
gewiß, certain.
Gold, *n.*, gold.
gucken, to peep.
Gulden, *m.*, florin.

hinein, into, in.
hinterlaſſen, to leave behind, bequeath.
hochmütig, haughty, proud.
Hoffnung, *f.*, hope.
holen, to fetch, bring; — laſſen, to send for.

Inſel, *f.*, island.
Italie′ner, *m.*, Italian.
Jacob, *m.*, James.

kochen, to cook, boil.
Königreich, *n.*, kingdom.
Koſt, *f.*, food.
kühl, cool.
Kunſt, *f.*, art.

leer, empty.

Litteratur′, *f.*, literature.
Loch, *n.*, hole.
Lord, *m.*, lord.

mager, lean, meagre.
Meer, *n.*, sea, ocean.
Monarch′, *m.*, monarch.

Nachteil, *m.*, disadvantage.
Naſe, *f.*, nose.

Papſt, *m.*, pope.
Perſon′, *f.*, person.
Prahler, *m.*, boaster.
Provinz′, *f.*, province.
Prüfung, *f.*, examination.

Rock, *m.*, coat.
Ruhm, *m.*, fame, glory.

Sachſen, *n.*, Saxony.
Schriftſteller, *m.*, author.
Schüler, *m.*, scholar, pupil.
ſelten, rare, scarce.
Sitte, *f.*, custom.
ſonſtig, other, else.
Spa′nien, *n.*, Spain.
ſpeiſen, to eat, dine.

ſtolz, proud; *noun*, *m.*, pride.

teuer, dear.
tun, to do, make, put.
Tyrol, *n.*, Tyrol.

um=werfen, to overturn.
unerwartet, unexpected.
Unterſtützung, *f.*, support, aid.
unverſchämt, shameless.

verfolgen, to pursue, persecute.
verlangen, to desire, demand.
Verſehen, *n.*, oversight, mistake.
Verſtand, *m.*, understanding, sense
Vorfahr, *m.*, ancestor.
vor=ſtellen, to present, introduce.
vorüber=gehen, to pass (by).

Wagen, *m.*, carriage.
Weisheit, *f.*, wisdom.
wenigſtens, at last.
widmen, to dedicate.
Wirt, *m.*, landlord.
Witz, *m.*, wit.
wohlfeil, cheap.

zurück=kehren, to return.
zu=rufen, to call (out) to.

EXERCISES

ALTERNATIVE OR SUPPLEMENTARY TO THOSE IN PART I.

BY C. F. KAYSER, PH.D.,
Instructor in German and Latin, Boys' High School, New York City.
WITH THE COÖPERATION OF PROFESSOR E. S. JOYNES.

EXERCISE I.

(*a*) 1. Der Lehrer des Fräuleins iſt[1] der Bruder des Malers. 2. Die Mütter der Mädchen ſind[1] die Töchter des Engländers — des Engländers Töchter — Töchter des Engländers. 3. Der Mantel gehört[2] der Mutter des Schülers. 4. Das Gemälde gehört den Brüdern des Kloſters. 5. Iſt der Bruder in[3] dem Kloſtergarten[4] (= Garten des Kloſters) der Maler des Gemäldes? 6. Die Vögel auf[3] dem Bäumchen dort[5] ſind Adler; ſie ſind die Vögel des Himmels. 7. Hat[6] der Himmel auch[7] Fenſter? 8. Hat der Schüler den Vogel im (= in dem) Mantel? 9. Sind die Brüder der Mutter (= der Mutter Brüder) in Klöſtern? 10. Hat das Bäumchen im Garten des Amerikaners ſchon[8] Äpfel? 11. Die Flügel der Adler, der Vögel des Himmels, ſind groß.[9] 12. Der Spaten gehört dem Amerikaner, dem Maler des Kloſterfenſters.

[1] iſt, *is*; ſind, *are*; ſie ſind, *they are*. [2] gehört, *belongs*. [3] in, *in*; auf, *on*, *upon*; with dative when expressing rest. [4] Compound nouns have the declension of the last component. [5] dort, *there*. [6] hat, *has*. [7] auch, *also*. [8] ſchon, *already*. [9] groß, *large*, *tall*, *great*.

(*b*) 1. Is the teacher of the pupils also [a] painter? 2. The cloister has two[1] wings. 3. The painting belongs to-the brother of the teacher. 4. Are the friars (= brothers) of the cloisters Americans or[2] Englishmen? 5. In the fields and[3] the gardens [there] are birds. 6. Has the eagle also wings? 7. The sky belongs to the birds. 8. The mother of the girl there is also in (auf) the painting. 9. The apples of the little-trees in the cloister-garden belong[4] to the brother of the young-lady. 10.

The painter of the window is the teacher of the girl's brother; he[5] is [a] window-painter.[6]

[1] two, zwei. [2] or, oder. [3] and, und. [4] belong, 3d pl., gehören. [5] he, er. [6] window-painter, Fenſtermaler.

EXERCISE II.

(*a*) 1. Hat der Bruder der Braut auch ein Pferd? 2. Nüſſe ſind Früchte. 3. Wir wohnen[1] einen Monat[2] im Jahr, oft[3] auch zwei, im Gebirge. 4. Die Offiziere ſind ſchon auf den Schiffen. 5. In den Gärten der Stadt ſind Stühle und Bänke unter[4] den Bäumen. 6. Die Vögel ſind die Schiffe der Luft. 7. Der Vater der Jünglinge iſt ein Freund des Tanzes. 8. Wir machen[5] aus[6] den Haaren der Pferde oft Zeug für[7] Röcke. 9. Eine Mutter iſt oft Tage und Nächte in Beſorgnis um[8] einen Sohn. 10. Der Kloſterſchüler hat zwei Hefte unter dem Arm und einen Stock in der Hand. 11. Der Engländer gab[9] einem[10] Sohne des Offiziers ein Pferd und einem Bruder der Braut einen Hund. 12. Die Braut des Offiziers iſt in Trübſal und in Beſorgnis um die[11] Mutter.

[1] wir wohnen, 1st pl., *we live.* [2] duration of time is expressed by acc. [3] oft, *often.* [4] unter, *under*; with dat., expressing rest. [5] wir machen, 1st pl. pres.; *we make.* [6] aus, *out of*, *of*, *from*; with dat. [7] für, with acc., *for.* [8] um, *around*, *about*, *for*; with acc. [9] gab, 3d p. past, *gave.* [10] dat. expresses indirect object. [11] Transl. art. by possessive, *her.*

(*b*) 1. The officers of the ships are sons of the city. 2. Only one (= a, *with emphasis*) ship is on the sea, but[1] two are on the river. 3. The eagle has no[2] teeth in his (=the) head. 4. Have cities always gates? 5. Are the sons of the Americans the friends of the guests? 6. Are the days also cool[3] in the mountains? 7. The eagles are the kings of the birds of the air (*pl.*). 8. The mice are an obstacle[4] to-the trees and fruits of the fields. 9. The maid-servants have also cares and troubles. 10. I have a friend there; he is a friar (brother) in a cloister. 11. In two years [there] are twenty-four[5] months. 12. Has the brother of the young-man (= youth) a horse and a cow, or only a dog?

[1] but, aber [2] no, *plur.* keine. [3] cool, kühl. [4] put pred. noun last; repeat the article. [5] twenty-four, vierundzwanzig = four-and-twenty.

EXERCISE III.

(*a*) 1. Ich bin ein Kind dieſes Landes ſo[1] gut[2] wie[1] du. 2. Seine Reichtümer ſind groß; er hat Geld, Felder und Wälder und auch Häuſer in den Dörfern und ein Schloß in der Stadt. 3. Mein Freund hat zwei Ämter in dieſem Jahre. 4. Die Länder jenes Mannes ſind ſo groß wie[1] die zwei Fürſtentümer. 5. In den Blättern der Bäume wohnen die Vögel. 6. Ihre Leiber ſind alt, aber ihr Geiſt iſt noch[3] jung. 7. Die Offiziere unſerer Regimenter ſind Männer von[4] Geiſt und Kraft.[5] 8. Sind wirklich[6] Geiſter und Geſpenſter in den Gemächern jenes Schloſſes? 9. Die Bäder in unſeren Hoſpitälern ſind ſchon ſehr[7] alt. 10. Die Götter ihrer Väter ſind auch ihre Götter. 11. Die Ränder der Hüte dieſes Jahres ſind klein, aber die Hüte ſelbſt[8] ſind hoch. 12. In den Geſichtern dieſer Kinder liegt[9] Gemüt. 13. Jene Örter des Tales ſind reich an[10] Gold und Silber. 14. Die Vormünder dieſer Kinder haben ſelbſt keine Kinder. 15. Sind die Ränder jener Gläſer auf dem Tiſche nicht[11] grün?

[1] ſo ... wie, ſo ... als, *as ... as, so ... as.* [2] gut, adv., *well.* [3] noch, *still, yet.* [4] von, with dat., *of.* [5] die Kraft, *power, strength.* [6] wirklich, *really.* [7] ſehr, *very.* [8] ſelbſt, *themselves.* [9] liegt, *lies.* [10] an, with dat. if expressing rest, *at, in.* [11] nicht, *not.*

(*b*) 1. God is our father in (the) heaven and we are his children. 2. On every page (= leaf) of that book are errors. 3. Are the children in the houses of their guardians? 4. There[1] is feeling in the songs of these peoples. 5. Are the roofs of these houses really [made] of glass? 6. In these nuts and apples [there] are worms. 7. There are no spooks (= Geſpenſt) in the apartments of the king's castles.[2] 8. Is she the mother of those children there? 9. The trees have garments of leaves. 10. Children's hands (= the hands of children) are not so large as men's hands. 11. Is our country

(Land) rich in forests? 12. Books are always[3] our friends. 13. The villages and cities of a country are mostly[4] in its valleys. 14. He has two glasses in each of his hands.

[1] *There*, as introductory, es. [2] king's castle, Königsſchloß. [3] always, immer. [4] mostly, meiſtens.

EXERCISE IV.

(*a*) 1. In dieſer Schule waren die Söhne der Fürſten und Grafen des Landes; aber ſie waren nicht ſehr fleißig. 2. Meine Töchter und deine Mutter waren Freundinnen in [der] Schule 3. Wir finden[1] Tugenden nicht nur bei[2] Frauen, ſondern[3] auch bei Männern. 4. Sind die Mohren in Afrika auch Chriſten? 5. Die Söhne jener Advokaten waren vor[4] zwei Jahren noch Studenten. 6. Zwei der Prinzen vor den Mauern der Stadt ſind Preußen und zwei ſind Engländer. 7. Die Affen in dem Garten dort ſind die Freude der Kinder und der Mägde. 8. Die Zahl der Blumen in meiner Stube iſt jetzt[5] nicht ſo groß als vor einem Monat. 9. Die Fürſten ſind die Herren der Länder. 10. Die Taten [des] Herrn Schmidt waren Taten eines Helden. 11. Herr N. iſt ein Neffe meiner Frau. 12. Philoſophen machen[6] auch ihre Fehler oder Irrtümer; denn[7] ſie ſind auch nur Menſchen. 13. Die Uhren der Damen ſind nicht ſo groß als die Uhren der Herren.

[1] finden, 1st p. pl., *find*. [2] bei, with dat., *by*, *with*, *in*. [3] ſondern, *but*, after a negative. [4] vor, with dat., *before*, *ago*. [6] jetzt, *now*, *at present*. [6] machen, 3d p. pl., *make*. [7] denn, *for*, conj.

(*b*) 1. Are [there] only trees in the garden before your (= thy) house, or also flowers? 2. In which room have the girls their pins and pens? 3. Birds[1] have garments of (von) feathers. 4. Not only oxen[1] and cows[1], but also horses[1] are useful[2] to man[1] (Menſch). 5. The fools of the kings were very often philosophers. 6. The sons of (the[3]) Mr. and ( ) Mrs. Müller were students in Berlin, and their daughter was the wife of a lawyer there. 7. Miss Emma, where are the dishes, with the fruit (*pl.*) and the nuts? 8. Those gentlemen were guests in the house of the count. 9. He was a philosopher, but also a man of (the) deed. 10. The air belongs to the birds, the earth to man.[1] 11. The number of heroes in these regiments was not very large. 12. There were students of both (beider) sexes in these schools. 13. The gates of the city walls[4] were not so large as the doors of our houses.

[1] Abstract nouns, or nouns used in their generic or class sense, take the def. art. [2] pred. adj. usually stand last. [3] The def. art. is also used before titles, except in address. [4] The city wall, die Stadtmauer.

EXERCISE V.

(*a*) 1. Die Hemden auf den Betten und die Pantoffeln unter den Bänken gehören den Vettern meines Nachbars. 2. Der Wille des Volkes iſt immer das Geſetz dieſer Staaten geweſen. 3. Der Glaube der Bauern an[1] die Banken dieſer Stadt iſt nie ſehr ſtark geweſen. 4. Seid ihr auf den Maſten jener Boote geweſen? 5. Die Nadeln dieſer Bäume ſind ſo ſcharf wie die Stacheln dieſer Inſekten. 6. Waren ſeine Worte nicht wirklich Funken des Geiſtes (genius)? 7. Haben die Inſekten auch Ohren und Augen? 8. Unter den Dächern dieſer Menſchen iſt nie Friede geweſen. 9. Des Menſchen Wille iſt oft ſehr ſchwach. 10. Meine Freude iſt dem Nachbarn immer ein Dorn im Auge geweſen. 11. In den Strahlen ſeines Auges liegt Freude. 12. Die Kraft (force) ſeines Willens iſt nie[2] ſo ſtark geweſen als der Glaube ſeines Herzens. 13. Wir finden die Samen zu[3] dieſen Taten in den Worten dieſes Philoſophen. 14. Die Felſen im Meere ſind die Beſorgniſſe jedes Schiffers. 15. Die Muskeln ſeines Armes waren ſo hart wie dieſer Fels. 16. Buchſtaben machen Wörter, nicht Worte.

[1] an, with acc., *to*, *in*. [2] nie, *never*. [3] zu, with dat., *to*, *for*, *at*.

(*b*) 1. The names of these men have always been bonds of (the) peace. 2. How large has been the number of the students in this university during[1] the year? 3. His words had been rich in (an) thought (*pl.*). 4. We were heroes in her eyes. 5. Had the pains in your ears been very sharp? 6. The stings of these insects are as large as thorns. 7. Each of these words has only six[2] letters. 8. No rose with-

out[3] thorns. 9. My cousins are farmers of (= in) this state. 10. Our country has now forty-six[4] states. 11. The ends of my spurs have never been very sharp. 12. The ribbons and slippers[5] on the benches there belong to the daughter of my neighbor. 13. His strength[6] lies not in (*with dat.*) the muscles of his arm, but in the faith of his heart. 14. He has a summerhouse (Sommerhaus, *n.*) on a rock of this lake.

[1] during, während, with gen. [2] six, ſechs. [3] without, ohne, with acc. [4] forty-six, ſechsundvierzig. [5] Articles must be repeated. [6] strength, die Stärke.

EXERCISE VI.

(*a*) 1. Viktoria, eine Tochter der Königin von England, war die Mutter des Kaiſers Wilhelm von Deutſchland. 2. Wirſt du jetzt wirklich fleißig ſein? 3. Der Wille des Volkes wird in Amerika immer Geſetz ſein. 4. Deutſchlands Fürſten ſind auch nicht immer Helden geweſen. 5. Ich werde nun[1] auch bald der Lehrer deiner Schweſter Marta ſein. 6. Wir werden im (= in dem[2]) Winter wahrſcheinlich[3] einen Monat mit Marie in der Stadt ſein. 7. Die Häuſer von Paris ſind nicht ſo hoch als die Häuſer New Yorks. 8. Werden die Bürgermeiſter von New York jetzt drei oder vier Jahre im Amte ſein? 9. Goethes Werke werden in Amerika nie ſo populär[4] ſein wie (als) die Werke Shakeſpeares. 10. Das „Leben Jeſu" von David Strauß iſt in der Bibliothek[5] unſerer Univerſität. 11. Meine Schweſter hat ein Bild [der] Sophie (Sophiens), der Schweſter Maxens und Friederikens. 12. Unſere Ära[6] beginnt[7] mit der Geburt[8] Jeſu Chriſti.

[1] nun, *now*. [2] German uses def. art. with seasons, months and days. [3] wahrſcheinlich, probably. [4] populär′, *popular*. [5] die Bibliothek′, *library*. [6] die Ära, *era*. [7] beginnt, 3d p. sing. pr. tense, *begins*. [8] die Geburt, *birth*. — Note that adverbs of time precede other adverbs.

(*b*) 1. Shall you be in (the) town to-morrow? 2. These books will be very useful[1] not only to-Mary (*dat.*) but also to-William. 3. Shakespeare was a poet in the time of Queen Elizabeth. 4. In the palace (= castle) of Emperor William [there] is an apartment with the paintings of the Kings of Prussia. 5. Will the gentleman really be Bertha's teacher? 6. The sister of that young-lady will soon be the wife of Charles. 7. Her belief in[2] the Lord Jesus Christ was very strong. 8. We find these words in Schiller's works. 9. Has Sophie's sister been here to-day, or will she be here to-morrow? 10. The forests, rivers,[3] and lakes[3] of America are very large. 11. The mayor of New York will be in the country during (the) summer. 12. Will Fred's (Fritz) painting of (von) Emma soon be ready? 13. His book begins with the words: In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.

[1] pred. adjectives immediately precede the infinitive (see Ex. IV *b*, Note 2). [2] Cf. Ex. V *a*, Note 1. [3] Cf. Ex. V *b*, Note 5.

EXERCISE VII.

REMARK.—The future perfect in independent sentences expresses usually a supposition, or probability, in the past, e.g. Er wird hier geweſen ſein = I suppose (presume) he *has been* here.

(*a*) 1. Die Kinder werden gut geweſen ſein; nicht wahr?[1] 2. Der Bruder dieſes Advokaten iſt ein Doktor der Medizin[2] und (ein) Profeſſor an der Univerſität. 3. Die Profeſſoren an den Univerſitäten Deutſchlands ſind meiſtens Doktoren der Philoſophie. 4. Republiken haben keine Herrenhäuſer. 5. Die Antworten des Paſtors waren Worte eines Genies (genius). 6. Jenes Haus wird wohl[3] früher[4] eine Mädchenſchule geweſen ſein. 7. Sind die Laboratorien der Phyſik und der Chemie in der Hochſchule ganz[5] neu? 8. In den Klöſtern ſind keine Biſchöfe, ſondern Äbte. 9. Du wirſt wohl immer der Augapfel deiner Mutter geweſen ſein. 10. Die Studien des Profeſſors über[6] die Foſſilien unſeres Muſeums ſind das Werk eines Menſchenlebens (life-time). 11. Iſt Lord Bacon wirklich der Autor (author) von Shakeſpeares Dramen? 12. Das Landhaus meines Hausherrn liegt an einem Gebirgsſee. 13. Die Stadt liefert[7] Wörterbücher und Schreibmaterialien[8] für die Schulen.

[1] nicht wahr, (*is it*) *not so?* [2] die Medizin, *medicine.* [3] wohl, *probably.* [4] früher, *formerly.* [5] ganz, *entirely*, *quite.* [6] über, with dat. or acc., *over*, *about.* [7] liefert, 3d p. sing., *furnishes.* [8] writing-materials.

(*b*) 1. [I suppose], the children of the count have already been in a dancing-school. 2. In the city-park[1] [there] are monuments of the poets Goethe, Schiller and Lessing. 3. Has every pupil two dictionaries? 4. [I suppose], your father has also been a doctor of (the) philosophy. 5. The bishops of England are members[2] of the House of Lords. 6. The book: "Studies of a husbandman about the instincts of (the) insects" is a monument to (für) the author, Prof. Maier of our University. 7. The abbot of this monastery (cloister) is a friend of (von) flowers; he has more than[3] forty kinds [of] roses in his flower-garden. 8. The son of the rector of the city-schools is the pastor of our church. 9. [I presume], the chaplains of these regiments have already been in Rome. 10. The city furnishes the materials for the laboratories of the boys'-high-school.[4] 11. In our museum [there] are fossils of (von) birds, insects and plants.

[1] city-park = city-garden, der Stadtpark. [2] member, das Mitglied, *pl.*–er. [3] more than, mehr als. [4] boys'-high-school, die Knabenhochſchule.

EXERCISE VIII.

(*a*) 1. Nützliche Bücher ſind gute Freunde. 2. Fräulein Eliſe, die Tochter [der] Frau Wolf, hat ſchöne, rote Haare und große, blaue Augen. 3. Die Wintermonate ſind Monate mit kurzen Tagen. 4. Reicher Leute[1] Kinder ſind oft nicht ſo fleißig als die Kinder armer Leute. 5. Neue Städte haben gewöhnlich breite Straßen und hohe Häuſer. 6. Du haſt hier einen Rock von feinem Tuch und ſehr ſchöner Farbe.[2] 7. Die Landhäuſer an jenem Gebirgsſee gehören reichen Herren aus der Stadt. 8. Kleine Kinder mit frohen[3] Geſichtern ſind meine Freude. 9. Kalte Bäder ſind für ſchwache Menſchen nicht ſo gut als warme. 10. Junge Leute ſind meiſtens immer gutes (guten) Muts[4] und freudigen[5] Herzens. 11. Liebe Mutter, biſt du immer bei[6] guter Geſundheit?[7] 12. Mein Hausherr hat immer weißen und roten Wein im Keller.[8]

[1] Leute, pl., *people.* [2] die Farbe, *color.* [3] froh, *glad*, *happy.* [4] der Mut, *courage*, *cheer.* [5] freudig, *joyful*, *glad*, *happy.* [6] bei, with dat., *by*, *in*, *at.* [7] die Geſundheit, *health.* [8] der Keller, *cellar.*

(*b*) 1. Grimm's German dictionary is very large. 2. English words are usually not as long as German [words]. 3. Poor child, you have great pains in your (= the) head, [is it] not so? 4. On the table of poor people [there] is usually no wine, but only cold water. 5. He is a man of (von) great mind (Geiſt); he has always good thoughts. 6. Great men have often been the sons of poor peasants. 7. Every man (human being) has his days of serious[1] trouble and care. 8. Small insects caused[2] (in) this year great damage (harm) to-the trees of our orchards (*dat. precedes acc.*). 9. The Moors are people of (von) black color. 10. I have small scholars and large [ones]. 11. I am a friend of (von) boys and girls with joyful hearts and happy faces.

[1] serious, ernſt. [2] caused, 3d p. pl. past, verurſachten.

EXERCISE IX.

(*a*) 1. Die alten Germanen[1] hatten blonde Haare und blaue Augen. 2. Der gute Name iſt der Reichtum des armen Mannes. 3. Alte Leute ſprechen[2] ſehr oft von den guten alten Zeiten. 4. Heidelberg iſt wegen[3] ſeines ſchönen Schloſſes und ſeiner alten Univerſität auf der ganzen Erde berühmt. 5. Welcher preußiſche König hatte ſeine Freude an den großen Soldaten? war es nicht Friedrich Wilhelm der Erſte, der Vater Friedrichs des Großen? 6. Der berühmte Profeſſor Heine war in Göttingen mein Lehrer der deutſchen Sprache. 7. Das Geburtshaus[4] jenes berühmten Malers liegt an der ſchönen blauen Donau.[5] 8. Die Bäume des kalten Nordens ſind meiſtens Nadelbäume; die Bäume des warmen Südens dagegen[6] haben gewöhnlich große, breite Blätter. 9. Der franzöſiſche Lehrer des jungen Prinzen iſt der Verfaſſer (Autor) von zwei franzöſiſchen Grammatiken und dieſer engliſchen. 10. Im großen Saale[7] des neuen Muſeums ſind nur Gemälde moderner[8] Maler, aber im kleinen ſind die (Gemälde) der alten.

[1] der Germane, *German*. [2] ſprechen, 3d p. pl. pres., *speak*. [3] wegen, prep. with gen., *on account of*. [4] das Geburtshaus, *house of birth*. [5] die Donau, *Danube*. [6] dagegen, *on the other hand*. [7] der Saal, *hall*. [8] modern′, *modern*.

(*b*) 1. The beautiful pictures on (an) the walls of this hall are paintings by the famous German painter, Kaulbach. 2. In the great libraries of the old universities of Germany [there] are books of every kind and of every language. 3. The grammar of the modern languages is not so difficult as the [grammar] of the ancient [ones]. 4. The great deeds of great men are the property[1] of all men. 5. The free sons of (the) free Switzerland are friends of (the) free speech (= word). 6. The schools of those good old times were very poor. 7. The earth was covered with deep snow during the whole winter.[2] 8. The feathers of the birds of the cold North are not so rich in[3] gay colors as the [feathers] of the birds of the warm South. 9. We had very bad times during the last three years[2]. 10. In which German country lies the city [of] Magdeburg?

---

[1] property, das Eigentum. [2] adverbial expressions of time precede objects and other adverbial expressions. [3] rich in, reich an, with dat.

EXERCISE X.

(*a*) 1. Ich habe nie eine engliſche Grammatik in der (my) Hand gehabt. 2. Die königlichen Prinzen waren während des letzten Sommers mit ihrem engliſchen Lehrer auf einem kleinen Landgut am Rhein. 3. Goethes Mutter hatte ein ſehr heitres und glückliches Gemüt, ſein Vater dagegen war ernſt. 4. Hatte deine große Schweſter vor zwei Jahren nicht ein blaues, ſeidnes Kleid gehabt? Nein, ſie hatte ein rotes. 5. Ein guter Name iſt ein hohes Kleinod.[1] 6. Ein unnütz[2] (–es) Leben iſt ein früher Tod. 7. Das Gute iſt immer der Feind des Böſen geweſen. 8. Mein lieber Fritz, du wohnſt (live) hier wirklich ſehr ſchön. 9. Das Berliner Tageblatt[3] und die Wiener[4] Neue Freie Preſſe[5] ſind zwei ſehr bekannte deutſche Zeitungen. 10. Ganz New York war an Waſhingtons Geburtstag auf den Beinen[6] geweſen. 11. Grimms „Märchen"[7] iſt ein Buch für Groß(–e) und Klein(–e). 12. Kein guter Deutſcher vergißt[8] ſein altes Vaterland.

---

[1] das Kleinod, pl. Kleinodien, *treasure*. [2] unnütz, *useless*. [3] das Tageblatt,

journal. [4] Wien, *Vienna.* [5] die Preſſe, *press.* [6] das Bein, *bone, leg.* [7] das Märchen, *fairy tale.* [8] vergißt, 3d p. sing., *forgets.*

(*b*) 1. We have had to-day a very pleasant day, dear sister. 2. Your good old friend has rarely had bad luck, is it not so? 3. The study of a modern language is not so difficult as the [study] of an ancient (old) [one]. 4. Bayard Taylor's first wife was a German [lady], but he himself (ſelbſt) was no German. 5. The large Heidelberg tun lies in the cellar of the famous old castle. 6. My brother has had two noble horses, a white one and a black one. 7. Our French teacher is an old gentleman and a brother of our Spanish professor. 8. The whole of (all) Germany is not so large as the state [of] Texas. 9. The old [woman] with the poor clothes and the cheerful face had great wealth (riches) years ago.[1] 10. The seeds of the Good, the True, and the Beautiful lie in the heart of every man. 11. These fairy tale-books belong to my little [ones]. 12. There[2] are more people in one English city than in all Switzerland.

[1] cf. Ex. IV*a*, Note 4. [2] cf. Ex. III*b*, Note 1.

EXERCISE XI.

(*a*) 1. Wir werden morgen wahrſcheinlich angenehmeres Wetter haben. 2. Raum[1] iſt in der kleinſten Hütte für ein glücklich liebend (–es) Paar. 3. Ich hatte meine frohſten und glücklichſten Tage, gerade wie die meiſten anderen Menſchen, während meiner Schulzeit. 4. Das Beſte iſt für unſere Kleinen gerade[2] gut genug. 5. Die hinteren Zimmer des oberſten Stockes dieſes Gebäudes ſind ebenſo hell[3] wie die vorderen, und ſogar[4] noch heller als die äußeren Zimmer des unterſten Stockes. 6. Karl Schurz war vor mehreren Jahren, unter dem Präſidenten Hayes, Sekretär des Innern geweſen. 7. Das Gold iſt ein edleres Metall als das Eiſen, aber das letztere iſt das nützlichere. 8. Die beſten Schüler ſind oft die Kinder ärmerer[5] Leute. 9. Werden wir nicht bald kühlere[6] Nächte und kürzere Tage haben? 10. Die größten Früchte ſind nicht immer die ſüßeſten. 11. Er war kein beſſ(e)rer, aber ein tapfrerer

Mann, als ſein Bruder. 12. Ein fleißiger Schüler iſt im Kleinen ebenſo pünktlich[7] wie im Großen.

[1] der Raum, *room*. [2] gerade, *exactly, just*. [3] hell, adj., *light, clear*. [4] ſogar, *even*. [5] absolute comparative = *rather poor*. [6] kühl, *cool*. [7] pünktlich, *punctual*.

(*b*) 1. Paul, the youngest child of my elder sister, is a bright (klug) boy. 2. The Republic of the United[1] States is the freest country of the world. 3. Other cities will soon have still higher buildings than the highest in New York. 4. An honest[2] man is the noblest work of God. 5. The exterior of the museum is more beautiful than the interior. 6. Wealth[3] is agreeable, mind more agreeable, but health the most agreeable [thing] in the life of man. 7. There was no prouder couple (pair) at (bei) the dance than that elderly (older) gentleman with his youngest daughter. 8. The front (foremost) man of a regiment is usually the tallest, and the hindmost usually the smallest. 9. Her youngest daughter (das Töchterlein) writes a better exercise, with fewer mistakes, than her oldest [one]. 10. (The) most people wear[4] in summer lighter (hell) clothes than in winter.

[1] united, vereinigt. [2] honest, ehrlich, rechtſchaffen. [3] cf. Ex. IV *b*, Note 1. [4] wear, 3d p. pl., tragen.

EXERCISE XII.

Remark. — Read introductory Remark, Exercise VII.

(*a*) 1. Die Jungen werden auf dem Landgut ihres Onkels einen angenehmen Sommer gehabt haben. 2. Die kürzeſten Nächte ſind immer am wärmſten, und die längſten ſind meiſtens am kälteſten. 3. Gottes Hilfe[1] iſt gewöhnlich am nächſten, wenn[2] die Gefahr am größten iſt. 4. Seit einem Jahre wohne ich (= English perfect) in Berlin bei einer freundlichen alten Dame aus der franzöſiſchen Schweiz. 5. Wir kommen eben von Hauſe und gehen jetzt nach der Stadt zu unſerer Tante (to our aunt's). 6. Im Sommer iſt eiskaltes Waſſer ſehr angenehm, aber es iſt nicht immer am ge-

ſundeſten. 7. Das Mädchen mit den kohlſchwarzen Haaren (*tr. sing.*), den ſchneeweißen Zähnen und dem heitren Geſichtchen[3] iſt ein Töchterchen meines Hausherrn. 8. Außer den vier Häuſern wird Heinrich wohl kein Eigentum gehabt haben. 9. Wir werden wohl unſere ſchönſten Tage gehabt haben, denn morgen gehen wir wieder[4] in die Schule. 10. In ganz England iſt kein herrlicheres Landgut als das des Grafen Heinrich.

[1] die Hilfe, *help*, *assistance.* [2] wenn, *if*; in subordinate, or dependent, clauses the inflected verb stands last. [3] the endings -chen, -lein form diminutive neuter nouns. [4] wieder, *again*.

(*b*) 1. How often have you been at home during spring[1] and summer?[1] 2. *I suppose* no one has had so many mistakes in his German exercise as you, Charles. 3. Since when have you been (=are you) at home? 4. The straightest way is always the shortest, but not always the most pleasant. 5. At [the house of] my aunt [there] lives a German gentleman from Dresden with his wife and children. 6. Most people are happiest when (=if) they are well. 7. I presume we have had our hottest days, for tomorrow[2] we shall have (have we) already the first [of] August.[3] 8. The Albinoes[4] of the North are people with snow-white hair and reddish eyes. 9. In summer[1] we go usually to (in) the mountains or to (an) the seashore.[5] 10. [I suppose] nobody from home *has* been here since yesterday. 11. Out of (the) distress is not out of (the) danger.

[1] With seasons, months and days we use def. art. in German. [2] to-morrow, morgen. [3] August, der Auguſt′. [4] Albino, der Albino, pl., die Albinos. [5] seashore, die Seeküſte (*acc.*).

EXERCISE XIII.

(*a*) 1. Im Wald und auf der Heide[1] da hab' ich meine Freude. 2. Vor dem Geſetze ſind alle Menſchen gleich. 3. Wider ihren Willen und ohne ihre Erlaubnis[2] würde der junge Herr ſich gewiß nicht neben die Dame geſetzt haben. 4. Es iſt ein Fehler, wenn du mehr Gewicht[3] auf die Worte als auf die Gedanken deiner Rede[4]

legſt. 5. Haben die beſten Zeitungen des Landes für oder gegen den Krieg geſchrieben? 6. Fritz ſchreibt aus dem Weſten, daß das Leben unter fremden Menſchen und ohne Freunde für ihn (him) wenig Freude habe. 7. Hinter jenem Dorfe am Rande des Waldes gerade über der Landſtraße liegen zwei Regimenter Soldaten. 8. Er würde mehr Freude gehabt haben, wenn er nicht ſein ganzes Herz an den Reichtum und das Geld gehängt hätte. 9. Vor einem Jahre hat mein Vater eine Reiſe um die Welt gemacht. 10. Haſt du nicht geſagt, daß du durch deinen Freund in Berlin ſeltne deutſche Bücher ſehr billig[5] gekauft habeſt? 11. Wir würden das Monument neben der Kirche von jenem Orte ſehr gut geſehen haben, wenn die Jungen ſich nicht immer vor unſere Augen geſtellt hätten. 12. Wir kommen gerade in die mittlere Stadt, wenn wir über dieſe Brücke gehen.

[1] die Heide, *heath, meadow land.* [2] die Erlaubnis, *permission.* [3] das Gewicht, *weight.* [4] die Rede, *speech.* [5] billig, *cheap.*

(*b*) 1. My friend says that he has written (*subj.*) always for, never against (the) peace. 2. We should never have found the way through the forest, if we had not seen a light in the house upon the mountain. 3. The Berlin papers write that the Emperor has bought (*subj.*) a number of new pictures for his castle Under the Linden[1] (*pl.*). 4. He has without my permission placed the post[2] in-front-of my house. 5. Karl's teacher says that he has written the exercise without a mistake. 6. There is a great difference[3] between the cities of Europe and of America. 7. Philosophers have always placed virtue over wealth (*acc*); yes, even over life. 8. A year ago I had a seat in the theatre next to (beside) your sister, just behind a post; but this year (*acc.*) I am-sitting in-front-of the post, between my brother and his wife. 9. I should hang your picture on (an) the wall between the two windows, if [there] were enough light there, but it is too dark. 10. There comes and goes no day against (wider) the will of God. 11. The enemy (*pl.*) would certainly come into the city, if we had not placed soldiers on and behind the

walls. 12. I place (rechne) Count von Moltke among[4] the greatest generals of all times.

[1] linden (tree), die Linde. [2] post, der Pfoſten. [3] difference, der Unterſchied. [4] Case?

EXERCISE XIV.

(*a*) 1. Habe die Güte und ſtelle dich gerade vor mich. Habt die Güte und ſtellt euch gerade vor mich. Haben Sie die Güte und ſtellen Sie ſich gerade vor mich. 2. Du warſt ganz außer dir vor (for) Freude. Ihr waret ganz außer euch vor Freude. Sie[1] waren ganz außer ſich vor Freude. 3. Sei was du willſt,[2] nur ſei es recht. 4. Er ſagt, daß die Liebe zwiſchen ihm und ihr nie ſehr groß geweſen (ſei) und auch jetzt nicht ſehr groß ſei. 5. Haben Sie etwas dagegen, Herr Bürgermeiſter, wenn ich einen Artikel[3] darüber in die Zeitung ſetze? Gewiß nicht, ich bin ſogar dafür. 6. Du wirſt uns und ihnen willkommen ſein, liebe Emma, auch wenn du ohne ihn kommſt. 7. Der Himmel ſei euch gnädig, wenn ihr in ſolcher Not ſeid, denn mir iſt es unmöglich,[4] euch zu helfen. 8. Würdeſt du ihr einen neuen Hut gekauft haben, wenn du ſie bei dir gehabt hätteſt? 9. Sie will damit nur ſagen,[5] daß ich weder deiner noch ihrer wert[6] ſei. 10. Du kennſt das Sprichwort:[7] Wie du mir, ſo ich dir; ſei deshalb unſer eingedenk,[8] wenn du Glück haſt. 11. Unter uns war die Sprache (talk) davon letzten Sommer, aber heute denkt[9] kein Menſch mehr daran.

[1] Note that Sie, at the beginning of a sentence, may be *you* or *they*. [2] ich will, du willſt, *will*, *want*. [3] der Arti′kel, *article*. [4] unmöglich, *impossible*. [5] ſie will damit ſagen, *she means by that*. [6] wert, *worthy*. [7] das Sprichwort, *proverb*. [8] eingedenk, *mindful*; like wert, used with gen. [9] denken an, *think of*.

(*b*) Remark.—Translate the first five sentences in the three ways possible: 1. Have no fear, but be brave and you will be free. 2. You say that you have (*subj.*) no money with (bei) you. 3. Would you take (=make) a trip around the world, if you were rich? 4. Have you ever been at my house (at the house of (bei) me)? 5. Be seated (seat your-

self-selves) next to me. 6. He says that he has nothing against it, but that he is not in favor of (for) it either.[1] 7. Peace be with you all (*in two ways*). 8. Two of my sons have (are) gone to (into the) war, and day and night I am thinking of them. 9. I have given them my opinion about it, and they say that they have been satisfied with it. 10. If you have not yet written with the pens, I shall[2] give you new [ones] for them. 11. I should certainly have bought her these books, if I had not found those great errors in them. 12. In luck and misfortune I shall remain mindful of you,[3] dear mother.

[1] not . . . either, auch nicht. [2] The principal clause has inverted word-order, if it follows the dependent clause. [3] Say, of thee.

EXERCISE XV.

(*a*) 1. In Deutſchland wird jeder junge Mann im 21ſten (einundzwanzigſten) Lebensjahr Soldat, wenn er nicht wegen eines Fehlers (defect) frei wird. 2. Was wird zuletzt[1] aus dem Lande werden, wenn niemand mehr Landmann oder Bauer werden will? 3. König Wilhelm von Preußen wurde im Jahre 1871 (achtzehnhundert ein und ſiebzig) Kaiſer von Deutſchland. 4. Was würde aus dir und den Deinen geworden ſein, wenn du damals[2] keine Freunde gehabt hätteſt? 5. Max hat vor einigen Wochen den Seinen aus Leipzig geſchrieben, daß er am erſten Februar Doktor der Philoſophie geworden ſei. 6. Mein iſt die Arbeit und dein wird die Ehre[3] ſein. 7. Nach meiner Meinung würde Herr Fiſcher der rechte Mann am rechten Platze ſein, wenn er Bürgermeiſter der Stadt würde. 8. Ihr [Herr] Bruder wird wohl ſchon General geworden ſein; der meine iſt erſt Major. 9. Ich tue das Meine (Meinige) (my part), wenn Sie das Ihre (Ihrige) tun. 10. Er wurde erſt wohlhabend, nachdem[4] er ein alter Mann geworden war. 11. Gott ſprach (spoke): Es werde[5] Licht, und es ward Licht. 12. Kinder, werdet nie böſe gegen eure Eltern; ſie ſind eure beſten Freunde.

[1] zuletzt, *at last.* [2] damals, *then, at that time.* [3] die Ehre, *honor.* [4] nachdem, conj., *after.* [5] subjunctive expresses a wish, or command.

(*b*) 1. An old proverb says, out of nothing [there] comes (= becomes) nothing. 2. The people will become still poorer, if the times get still worse. 3. Lincoln was the child of poor parents, but before his death he had become the most famous American. 4. My folks (= mine) have become acquainted with yours, years ago, and ever since[1] they have been friends. 5. Boys, become good men, and you will become good citizens[2] of the state and the republic. 6. The papers say, that nothing as yet[3] has come (become) of (= out of) the affair, and that nothing ever (= never anything) will come of it. 7. In my years and yours, people grow a little quieter; we have had our gayest days, John. 8. He would never have become so rich, if he had not become acquainted in his youth with this and that rich man. 9. His cares and joys are mine, and mine are his also. 10. I became a teacher when[4] I was twenty-one years old. 11. Many people would be satisfied with little, if they only became well[5] again. 12. [I suppose] he has become a still better teacher in the many years since my school-time[6], but he was already at that time a very good one.

[1] ever since, ſeither. [2] citizen, der Bürger. [3] as yet, noch; nothing as yet, noch nichts. [4] when, expressing past time, conj., als. [5] well, adj., geſund. [6] school-time, die Schulzeit.

EXERCISE XVI

(*a*) 1. Das Werk lobt den Meiſter.[1] 2. Geteilte[2] Freude iſt doppelte[3] Freude, geteilter Schmerz iſt halber Schmerz. 3. Was wird dein Vater dazu ſagen, wenn er hört, daß du in der Schule nichts lernſt? 4. Kinder lachen und weinen oft in derſelben Minute. 5. Lebe ſo, wie du am Ende deines Lebens wünſchen wirſt, gelebt zu haben. 6. Ich werde im nächſten Sommer mit meinen Eltern und denen meiner Frau eine Reiſe nach der Schweiz machen. 7. In der Geſellſchaft liebender und lachender Kinder wird mein altes Herz immer wieder jung. 8. Ich habe mir das in meiner Jugend immer gewünſcht, aber jetzt, da[4] ich es habe, brauche

ich es nicht mehr. 9. Das ſind ihre vier kleinen Brüder; deren älteſter (= der älteſte derſelben) iſt noch nicht ſechs Jahre alt. 10. Der berühmte Feldherr Pyrrhus ſagte nach einer Schlacht: Noch[5] ein[6] ſolcher Sieg[7] und wir ſind verloren.[8] 11. Er hat es dir geſagt; aber damit iſt nicht geſagt, daß es auch wahr ſei. 12. Ich würde dir nichts darüber geſchrieben haben, wenn er es nur dem (dieſem) oder jenem Freunde gezeigt hätte, aber er hat es der ganzen Welt gezeigt.

[1] der Meiſter, *master*. [2] teilen, *divide*, *part*. [3] doppelt, *double*. [4] da, *since*, *when*. [5] noch, *still*; noch ein, *one more*. [6] The numeral *one* is of same form as the indef. art., but is pronounced with emphasis, and is often printed with separated letters ein. [7] der Sieg, *victory*. [8] verloren, *lost*.

(*b*) 1. Are those William's books or yours? No, these here are mine; his are not here yet. 2. Here is the desired (= wished) money; buy a hat or a pair [of] shoes with it. 3. Of that I shall never hear the end as-long-as[1] I live. 4. Do not ask me about that and I shall tell (= say) you no lie. 5. These are the last words of a loving father; remain mindful of them and you will make no great mistakes in life. 6. There is very little difference between your home-made[2] and this purchased (= bought) gown (coat). 7. Last week a travelling company played Shakespeare's Hamlet in our town. 8. [I suppose,] these children have learned their German in Germany, for they lived (*perf.*) there [for] a whole year. 9. I should certainly have showed you the desired cups, if you had asked for (nach) them. 10. Neither the laughing nor the weeping philosopher sees[3] the world as it really is; for this one sees it worse and that one better than it is. 11. Soldiers, be brave and show yourselves as the true and loving sons of your fatherland. 12. Everybody likes him, for he laughs with those that laugh (= the laughing) and weeps with those that weep (the weeping). 13. Since he sent my books with those of my brother, I did not need to pay-for them.

[1] ſolange. [2] home-made, ſelbſtgemacht. [3] 3d pers. sing.

EXERCISE XVII.

(*a*) 1. Zurück, du retteſt den Freund nicht mehr, drum[1] rette dein eignes Leben. 2. Viktoria, die geachtete Königin von England, hatte ſchon über ſechzig Jahre regiert und war die älteſte regierende Fürſtin der Welt. 3. Tadle mich nicht immer, beſter Freund; ſchüttle mir die (my) Hand und plaudre friedlich mit mir.[2] 4. Der Dieb haßt das Licht des Tages wie das Kind die Dunkelheit[3] der Nacht. 5. Ich hoffe, daß dein geſunder Verſtand[4] dich leiten wird und daß du nach Geſetz und Recht darin handeln wirſt. 6. Wie kannſt du erwarten, daß die Menſchen dich lieben, wenn du ſie haſſeſt. 7. Mit was für Worten und in welchen Zügen hat der Schriftſteller den Charakter[5] Cäſars gezeichnet? 8. Mit wem und worüber redeten Sie ſo lange vor meinem geöffneten Fenſter? 9. Was für Unſinn redet er wieder? ſagt er nicht, daß er ſich nie ändre und daß ſich nur die Zeiten ändern? 10. Die Mutter hat uns ſehr getadelt, weil[6] wir allein im offnen Fluſſe gebadet haben. 11. Mein Bruder hat es oft genug mit einem Geſchäfte[7] probiert, aber hat dabei jedes Mal falliert. 12. Wenn ich einige Stunden ſtudiert habe, rudre ich ein wenig auf dem See, atme friſche Luft, und dann arbeite ich wieder ebenſo gut wie zuvor.[8]

[1] drum (darum), *therefore.* [2] friedlich, adv., *peaceably.* [3] die Dunkelheit, *darkness.* [4] der Verſtand, *reason, sense.* [5] der Chara′kter, *character.* [6] weil, *because.* [7] das Geſchäft, *business.* [8] zuvor, adv., *before.*

(*b*) 1. I like to chat with a friend [for] an hour, after I have studied my lessons. 2. What were you talking about with my esteemed and learned (=taught) friend, when I opened the door? 3. From Heidelberg we marched (*perf.* ſind) to Strassburg, where we then took a bath (=bathed) (*perf.*) in the Rhine. 4. Tell me (*dat.*) with whom you go, and I tell you who you are. 5. The boys have been-rowing and fishing the whole afternoon (*acc.*), but they have had no luck. 6. What is he waiting for? Why does he not lead the guests into the large hall? 7. With a smile on her face (=smiling mouth) she told me that she hated (*pres.*) me.

8. My sister Emma is the leading spirit (mind) of the business, and therefore he hates her. 9. Is it a fact that a boy usually draws and figures (=reckon) better than a girl? 10. Did you ever breathe (*perf.*) a purer[1] air than here in these mountains? 11. In what-kind-of a boat did you row across the river? 12. What sort of animals are these? They change their color several times a day (the day, *gen.*). 13. Do you know in whose company and upon which ship he travels to England?

---

[1] pure, rein.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(*a*) 1. Ich habe in meinem Leben ſehr viel gearbeitet und gerungen (fight), aber es iſt mir trotzdem[1] nicht gelungen, ein reicher Mann zu werden. 2. Das ſinkende Schiff ſchwand langſam[2] aus unſeren Augen. 3. Die langen Jahre haben ein herrliches Band der Freundſchaft um uns geſchlungen. 4. Sein älteſter Sohn iſt ſo tief geſunken, daß er ſich wohl nicht mehr in die Höhe[3] ſchwingen wird. 5. Die gedungenen Soldaten drangen in das Schloß und würden den Fürſten gebunden haben, wenn es ihm nicht gelungen wäre, aus einem Fenſter zu ſpringen und ſich zu retten. 6. Die Studenten werden wohl viele Lieder geſungen und manches Glas auf ihre Profeſſoren und ihre Univerſität getrunken haben. 7. Ich würde ſicherlich die Wahrheit ſagen, wenn Sie mich zwängen, darüber zu ſprechen. 8. Sprich nur das Wahre und trink' nur das Klare,[4] iſt ein altes deutſches Sprichwort. 9. Ohne Laut[5] ſank er zu Boden[6]; aber noch eine volle Stunde rang er mit dem Tode und wand ſich vor Schmerzen. 10. Seine Freude am Leben war noch nicht geſchwunden; er fand jeden Tag neue Schönheiten[7] darin.

---

[1] trotzdem, *nevertheless, in spite of it.* [2] langſam, adv., *slowly.* [3] die Höhe, *the height*; in die Höhe, *upward, up.* [4] klar, *clear.* [5] der Laut, *sound.* [6] der Boden, *bottom, ground.* [7] die Schönheit, *beauty.*

(*b*) 1. He would be in (bei) better health to-day, if he did not drink so much. 2. All cares and troubles vanished from (aus) his heart, when you sang that beautiful German song. 3. I should certainly no longer (=more) respect him, if he sank (*subj.*) upon his (= the) knees before you, or if he threw (slung) his arms around your neck.[1] 4. In my absence a thief swung (*perf.*) himself over the garden wall and entered forcibly (pressed) into my house. 5. I have hired a new porter; the old one was too lazy and drank too much. 6. In our museum [there] is a famous statue of a wrestling gladiator.[2] 7. The sun had (was) already sunk behind the horizon[3] and the last rays of light were vanishing, when from the mountains sounded the evening songs[4] of the shepherds. 8. Do not force me to it, for you will find that I shall not succeed. 9. He rarely[5] succeeded, but his courage[6] never lagged (sank). 10. Almost mad for (vor) joy, the boys sang merry (joyful) songs and swung their hats, around which (welche) they had wound wreaths of gay flowers. 11. I should easily console (= comfort) myself, if I found that he did not succeed (*perf.*), for I know that he fought (*perf.*) (ringen) hard (ſchwer).

---

[1] neck, der Hals. [2] gladiator, der Gladia'tor. [3] horizon, der Horizont', *str. decl.* [4] evening song, das Abendlied. [5] rarely, ſelten, *follows the verb.* [6] courage, der Mut.

EXERCISE XIX.

(*a*) 1. Lord Cowley ſagte einſt über Napoleon: Er ſpricht wenig, aber er lügt immer. 2. Lebe, wie du, wenn du ſtirbſt, wünſchen wirſt, gelebt zu haben. 3. Der Müßiggang[1] hat viel Böſes ſchon geſonnen und auch viel Unrecht ſchon begonnen. 4. Der Herr, der bei meiner Tante wohnt und den wir mit ihr geſtern auf der Straße getroffen haben, wirbt um (for) die Hand ihrer Tochter. 5. Ich habe von der Angelegenheit, über welche (die, worüber) der Herr Profeſſor ſprach, ein ſehr klares Bild gewonnen. 6. Er trifft immer das Richtige[2] und ſeine Worte kommen immer von Herzen. 7. Wer nur Geld hat, iſt arm. 8. Sprich nur, was wahr iſt, und trink nur, was klar iſt. 9. Nimm nichts, was dir nicht gehört. 10. Nur wer die Sehnſucht[3] kennt, weiß, was ich leide. 11. Jede Kugel[4] traf, das Blut[5] rann in Strömen,[6] und in wenigen Minuten war das Feld mit ſterbenden Soldaten bedeckt. 12.

Vor Gott gilt ein reines Herz und ein guter Charakter mehr als Geiſt und Talent.[7] 13. Nichts iſt ſo fein geſponnen, es kommt doch endlich an die Sonne(n) (to light). 14. Der König ſagt, daß er ſein gegebenes Wort nie gebrochen habe, und daß er es auch jetzt nicht brechen werde. 15. Es iſt der Fluch[8] der böſen Tat, daß ſie immer nur Böſes gebiert. 16. Der alte Herr, mit welchem wir von Berlin nach Leipzig reiſten, war ein geborener Ariſtokrat[9] und ſicherlich ein Offizier. 17. Das Alte, woran wir als Kinder unſere Freude hatten, iſt es noch, was auch unſeren Kindern Freude macht. 18. Hilf dir ſelbſt, dann hilft dir Gott. 19. Wer nichts wagt,[10] gewinnt nichts. 20. Das Innere der Erde birgt noch manche Reichtümer. 21. Gute Arbeit empfiehlt ſich ſelbſt. 22. Wer ein böſes Gewiſſen[11] hat, erſchrickt ſehr leicht. 23. Milch verdirbt, wenn ſie lange ſteht.

[1] der Müßiggang, *idleness*. [2] richtig, adj., *right*, *correct*. [3] die Sehnſucht, *longing*. [4] die Kugel, *bullet*. [5] das Blut, *blood*. [6] der Strom, *stream*, *river*. [7] das Talent′, *talent*. [8] der Fluch, *curse*. [9] der Ariſtokrat′, *aristocrat*. [10] wagen, *to dare*, *risk*. [11] das Gewiſſen, *conscience*.

(*b*) 1. Whatever you command me (*dat.*) to do, I shall gladly do; but do not scold me before these young ladies, whom I know and who know me. 2. The oath of a man that breaks his word is not worth much. 3. I often meditated about the matter you were just speaking of (von), but I never saw the same in the light in which you see it. 4. Who steals my purse[1] steals trash.[2] 5. What you say is true, but it does not help me in the future (=coming) years of my life. 6. Many of the boys with whom I went[3] to (in) (the) school and whose parents were poor, have won great wealth (*pl.*); others who were rich are poor to-day, or have gone to ruin[4] (verderben). 7. I should gladly have recommended your son to the gentleman whom you met in my house, but he did not come. 8. The book which you began (*perf.*), portrays (draws) in striking (treffen) words the wrongs (*sing.*) of the present time. 9. I believe, they would throw rotten (spoiled) eggs at (nach) him, if he came back. 10. That was certainly the best [thing] (what) he said, but it was the last [thing] I counted on. 11. Do not throw your money away, for the time will come when (wenn) you will need it.

[1] purse, die Börſe. [2] trash, der Schund. [3] went, ging. [4] verbs of motion and change of condition take the auxiliary ſein in compound past tenses.

EXERCISE XX.

(*a*) 1. Wer ſeine Ehre[1] verliert, hat alles verloren. 2. Göthe hatte in ſeinem Elternhauſe eine beſſere Erziehung genoſſen als Schiller. 3. Bis jetzt hat es in dieſem Winter noch nicht gefroren, ſonſt würden dieſe Tiere ſchon in ihre Löcher[2] gekrochen ſein. 4. Das Leben bot dem Armen keine Freude, deshalb ſchoß er ſich in der Verzweiflung[3] eine Kugel in den Kopf. 5. Ich habe einen ganzen Eimer[4] voll ſiedendes Waſſer über mich gegoſſen und habe mich auch an Händen und Füßen geſchunden. 6. Schiebe nichts auf morgen, was heut du kannſt beſorgen[5] (was du heute beſorgen kannſt). 7. Wir ſagen oft von einem Menſchen, der ſehr eigenſinnig[6] iſt, daß er einen hartgeſottenen Kopf habe. 8. Fließendes Waſſer friert nicht ſo ſchnell als (wie) ſtehendes und wird auch im Sommer nie ſo warm als letzteres. 9. Er wird wohl ſchon in ſein neues Haus gezogen ſein, wenn das alte geſchloſſen iſt; vielleicht iſt er auch ſchon vor der Hitze[7] ins Gebirge geflohen. 10. Es verdroß den General nicht wenig, daß ſeine Soldaten ſchon beim erſten Schuß[8] auseinander[9] ſtoben.

[1] die Ehre, *honor.* [2] das Loch, *hole.* [3] die Verzweiflung, *despair.* [4] der Eimer, *bucket.* [5] beſorgen, *do*, *attend to.* [6] eigenſinnig, *self-willed.* [7] die Hitze, *heat.* [8] der Schuß, *the shot.* [9] auseinander, *asunder.*

(*b*) 1. The flowers that were growing (sprout) in your garden last year (*acc.*) were very beautiful, but they had no smell (smelled not). 2. I like to eat hard-boiled eggs, but my physician says that they are not good for me. 3. [For] a few minutes it poured in streams, and my clothes were dripping with (vom) rain. 4. Many tears[1] flowed from the eyes of (the) those whose sons or brothers marched (=moved) into the field yesterday. 5. He weighed less before his illness than

he weighs now. 6. If it freezes to-night,[2] all the sprouting young plants that shot from (aus) the ground (earth) during the last [few] days, will perish (=spoil). 7. Enjoy your life, as long as it offers [to] you joy and pleasures. 8. He bent the bow[3] until it broke. 9. If he enjoyed a better reputation,[4] I should offer him a good position.[5] 10. We found the lost sheep under a rock, under which it had crept during the storm. 11. The hunter shot the eagle just as he was-flying over that high tree. 12. It vexed him very [much] that you offered him no opportunity to speak with the lady.

[1] tear, die Träne. [2] to-night, heute nacht. [3] bow, der Bogen. [4] reputation, der Ruf. [5] position, die Stelle.

(*c*) 1. What would you and all your friends say, if I induced him to help me (*dat.*) in this matter? 2. He never drank fermented wine and I shall not urge (induce) him to-it now. 3. Every cat likes to drink freshly milked milk. 4. If his appearance does not deceive, I think (= believe), he drinks [like an animal]. 5. On the highest mountains of Switzerland the snow never melts. 6. This carpet[1] is not woven, it is braided. 7. During the long winter-evenings the whole family used (pflegen) to sit around the glimmering fire of the chimney (das Kamin'feuer); the children climbed upon my chair, threw their arms around my neck[2] and at last induced me to tell them a nice fairy-tale. 8. If the rain had not poured [down] in streams, the fire would not have gone-out so soon. 9. I have heard that in olden times the enemies often poured molten lead into the mouth of a captured[3] soldier. 10. She chose for-herself a husband after her own heart and not after the wishes of her friends. 11. My friend has grown old, the fire of her eyes is extinguished (erlöſchen). 12. He is the last of his name, and, when he dies, passes away (erlöſchen) the once[4] so famous family.

[1] carpet, der Teppich. [2] neck, der Hals. [3] captured, gefangen. [4] once, einſtmals.

EXERCISE XXI.

(*a*) 1. Man ſagt oft im Scherze,[1] daß man iſt, was man ißt. 2. Es geſchieht nichts Neues in der Welt, und alles iſt ſchon dageweſen. 3. Er bat mich, nichts davon zu ſagen, aber ich habe noch niemanden getroffen, der die Sache nicht ſchon weiß. 4. Ich habe nichts dagegen, mein Sohn, wenn du reiſen willſt, [um] die Welt zu ſehen, aber vergiß nicht, daß die Welt auch dich ſieht. 5. In keinem Land der Welt lieſt man ſo viele Zeitungen als in Amerika. 6. Man ſagt, daß er nichts vergeſſe, was er einmal geleſen hat. 7. Ein Tier frißt und ſäuft ſelten mehr, als es zum Leben braucht ; der Menſch dagegen ißt und trinkt ſehr oft mehr, als für ihn gut iſt. 8. Wenn der Burſche[2] mir wieder vor die Augen tritt, werde ich ihm etwas ſagen, was er nicht gern hört. 9. Es geſchah ſehr oft, daß der Herr Profeſſor über der Arbeit das Eſſen[3] vergaß. 10. Wenn das vor hundert Jahren geſchehen wäre, würde ein jeder ſagen, daß ein Wunder[4] geſchehen ſei. 11. Er hat zu viel gegeſſen und jetzt hat er einen verdorbenen Magen. 12. Nachdem ich wieder geneſen bin, werde ich mein Leben beſſer genießen als früher. 13. Wer nie ſein Brot in Tränen[5] aß, wer nie in kummervollen[6] Nächten auf ſeinem Bette weinend ſaß, der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmliſchen Mächte.[7] 14. Miß die Welt nicht nach deinem Maßſtab,[8] ſonſt mißt ſie dich nach dem ihrigen. 15. Wo ich lag, wo ich ſaß und wo ich ſtand, immer trat ihr Bild mir vor die Augen.

[1] der Scherz, *fun, joke*. [2] der Burſche, *fellow*. [3] das Eſſen, *eating, meal*. [4] das Wunder, *miracle*. [5] die Träne, *tear*. [6] kummervoll, *anxious*. [7] die Macht, *power, force*. [8] der Maßſtab, *measure, rule*.

(*b*) 1. She forgives, but she never forgets. 2. Money he has none, but he has a little property, I believe, a few small houses. 3. If she asked him for it, he would give it to her. 4. The philosophy[1] of his life lay in the words: Eat, drink and be merry (glad). 5. He helps nobody (*dat.*) and never gives the poor (*dat.*) anything, because, as he says, nobody gave (*perf.*) him anything, when he had nothing. 6. You

measure more around your chest[2] than you measured a year ago, when I made you (*dat.*) the last coat. 7. An hour (*acc.*) after we had eaten of-it, we grew sick; but we all recovered very soon, except my little sister, who is-recovering only very slowly. 8. When did this [thing] happen you are reading about? 9. Many have more than they need, but few, perhaps none, have more than they wish. 10. Have you ever read anything more beautiful than this short poem? 11. People (= one) like to believe what gives them (to-one) pleasure. 12. It is said that he speaks and reads most European[3] and a few oriental[4] languages. 13. If he has already forgotten what I told him, or if he ever forgets it, please read to him the letter which I have given you (*dat.*). 14. I asked them for bread, and they gave me a stone.

[1] philosophy, die Philoſophie′. [2] chest, die Bruſt. [3] European, europäiſch. [4] oriental, orienta′liſch.

EXERCISE XXII.

(*a*) 1. Ein Meſſer, welches zu ſcharf geſchliffen iſt, wird ſehr leicht ſchartig.[1] 2. Niemand kann dir ſagen, was ich in den letzten Tagen gelitten habe. 3. Mein Herz gleicht ganz dem Meere,[2] hat Sturm und Ebb'[3] und Flut, und manche ſchöne Perle[4] in ſeiner Tiefe[5] ruht[6] (ruht in ſeiner Tiefe). 4. Wenn ihr euch während des letzten Jahres in der Schule mehr befliſſen hättet, würdet ihr jetzt während des ganzen Sommers frei ſein. 5. Als er mir das Meſſer aus der Hand riß, ſchnitt er mich dabei in die Finger. 6. Sinnend ſchritt er im Zimmer auf und ab; da auf einmal pfiff eine Kugel durch das Fenſter; erſchrocken wich er einige Schritte[7] zurück und brach dann, zum Tode erblichen, zuſammen. 7. Kleine Kinder greifen nach allem, was ſie ſehen. 8. Sonne und Wind ſtritten darum, wer von ihnen der ſtärkere ſei. 9. Als ſeine Mutter neben ihm am Bette ſaß und ihm mit ihren lieben Händen durch die Haare ſtrich, wichen nicht nur alle Schmerzen, an denen er litt, ſondern auch Ruhe[8] und Frieden ſchlichen wieder über ſein Antlitz.[9] 10. Die beißenden Worte meines Freundes ſchnitten tief in meine

Seele.[10] 11. Als der fremde Gaſt durch die Straßen unſerer Stadt ritt, ſchmiſſen einige unartige Kinder Steine nach ihm. 12. Die beiden Schweſtern gleichen ſich (einander), wie ein Ei[11] dem andern.

[1] ſchartig, *notchy.* [2] das Meer, *sea.* [3] die Ebbe, *ebb*; die Flut, *tide*, *flood.* [4] die Perle, *pearl.* [5] die Tiefe, *depth.* [6] ruhen, *rest.* [7] der Schritt, *step.* [8] die Ruhe, *rest.* [9] das Antlitz, *face.* [10] die Seele, *soul.* [11] das Ei, *egg.*

(*b*) 1. She is a quarreling (chiding) old woman (Weib, *n.*) who scolds the whole day (*acc.*). 2. A mad dog bit him and tore (him) a piece [of] flesh out of *his* leg. 3. Because he always acted in accordance with (= after) the wishes of his wife, the people said: He always danced as she whistled. 4. A man who turns pale when (if) he sees blood, or gets frightened when he smells powder and hears a shot,[2] will never become a brave soldier. 5. His son has always applied himself very [much] in (the) school, and he will certainly also apply himself in (the) business. 6. Although they had been-riding the whole day and were tired-to-death when the fight began, they nevertheless fought (contended) like heroes. 7. Diamonds[3] become valuable[4] only after they are cut and ground (ſchleifen). 8. She had no illness that yielded to the art of the physician; she suffered from [a] broken heart. 9. It was a pleasure to see how the ship was-gliding over the waves of the tearing waters (*sing.*). 10. Whom did you resemble when you were little, your father or your mother?

[1] murderer, der Mörder. [2] shot, der Schuß. [3] diamond, der Diamant′. [4] valuable, wertvoll.

(*c*) 1. Don't scream so loud when you speak to (mit) me, I am not deaf. 2. If you had kept (been) silent, everybody would have excused your action, but since you have spoken about it, nobody will pardon you (*dat.*). 3. Let us praise God for all (what) he has given us. 4. I should have (ſein) remained a little longer, if I had not suffered so much from headache. 5. His business was prospering and his profits

rose from year to year; then he lent money to his brother and lost in one year all he had made in ten years. 6. Avoid all bad company (society), my child, for bad company spoils good manners. 7. Cromwell killed (the) King Charles I (the first) and drove his son out of the country. 8. They often quarrelled (contended) with each other, but they always parted as good friends. 9. I hope that the sun will soon shine again; it has not been-shining for (ſeit) a whole week. 10. She seemed to resemble her father more than her mother. 11. What have you been doing (treiben), since you wrote me the last time (*acc.*)? 12. It seems that my neighbor's child is ill; at least it has been screaming the whole night.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(*a*) 1. Heißt die Dame, deren Bild dort an der Wand hängt, nicht Fräulein Braun? Ja, ſo hat ſie früher geheißen, jetzt heißt ſie Frau Weber. 2. Meine Kinder eſſen nichts lieber[1] als gebratene Äpfel. 3. Der Arzt hält[2] die Krankheit meiner Schweſter nicht für[2] gefährlich; er riet ihr nur, jeden Tag in der friſchen Luft ſpazieren zu gehen. 4. Wie hieß der Herr, der vom Pferde fiel, als er geſtern mit Ihnen ſpazieren ritt? 5. Seit ich meine Uhr zur Erde fallen ließ, läuft ſie nicht mehr. 6. Bitte, hängen Sie das Bild ein wenig niedriger,[3] es hängt zu hoch. 7. Die Bauern fingen den Pferdedieb im Walde, aber da er wie ein Wilder mit einem Meſſer um ſich hieb (strike), ließen ſie ihn wieder laufen. 8. Er ſtößt alles zur Seite, was ihm nicht gefällt. 9. Hier unter dieſem Monumente, welches der Künſtler[4] ſich ſelbſt gehauen hat, ſchläft er jetzt den letzten Schlaf. 10. Mein Vater rät uns, nicht auf das Waſſer zu gehen, ſolange (als) der Wind ſo ſtark bläſt. 11. Mein Bruder hielt das Boot, bis wir alle darin waren, und dann ſtieß er uns vom Ufer. 12. Sobald (als) der erſte Ruf[5] erſcholl und das Volk zu den Waffen[6] rief, lief dasſelbe in Haufen von allen Ecken zuſammen und wartete nur ungeduldig, bis es zum Angriff[7] blies.

[1] lieber, comp. of gern, *rather, liefer.* [2] halten für, *take for, consider.* [2] niedrig, *low.* [4] der Künſtler, *artist.* [5] der Ruf, *call.* [6] die Waffen, *arms.* [7] der Angriff, *attack.*

(*b*) 1. I should *have* fallen, if you had not caught me. 2. Why do you run so, Charles, when he calls you? 3. I beg [your] (for) pardon, Sir, is not your name (are you called) Mr. Wagner? 4. Do you (du) not blow your light out, when you go to bed (= to sleep), Henry? 5. He held me by (the) hand and did not let me go, until I pushed him aside (to (zu) the side). 6. He sleeps the sleep of the just. 7. Do you know, what the name was of (how was called) the queen who had the hanging gardens around her castle? 8. My brothers have (ſein) gone out riding (have taken a ride) this morning[1] and we shall take a drive this afternoon, if the horses are not too tired. 9. The monument for the fallen heroes of the last war is hewn out of American marble. 10. I should go through the fire for him, if he bade me [do] it. 11. A traveller told me that some of the savage tribes[2] of (the) Inner Africa[3] formerly roasted the captured (caught) enemies over a fire, until the flesh fell from the bones.[4] 12. I advised him to hang the pictures a little higher, because they hung too low.

[1] this morning, heute morgen. [2] tribe, der Stamm. [3] Africa, Afrika, *n.* [4] bone, der Knochen.

EXERCISE XXIV.

(*a*) 1. Meine Schweſtern ſtanden heute den ganzen Tag in der Küche[1] und buken und brieten, denn ſie erwarten morgen (eine) große Geſellſchaft. 2. Man weiß nie, wo dieſer Politiker[2] ſteht, da er immer auf beiden Schultern[3] Waſſer trägt. 3. Wer gut ſchmiert,[4] der fährt auch gut. 4. Es ſchlug gerade zwölf, als wir durch das Tor der Stadt fuhren. 5. Solange er reich war, trug er den Kopf ſehr hoch; aber jetzt läßt er ihn ſehr tief hangen. 6. So viel (als) ich weiß, wuchs früher kein Wein hier, aber jetzt wächſt er hier ebenſo gut wie am Rhein. 7. Wer andern (for

others) eine Grube[5] gräbt, fällt oft ſelbſt hinein (in dieſelbe). 8. Politiker handeln gewöhnlich nach dem Grundſatz[6]: Eine Hand wäſcht die andere. 9. Ich freue mich ſehr, daß Ihr [Herr] Vater ſich wieder beſſer befindet, und ich hoffe, daß er ſich bald ganz erholt[7] haben wird. 10. Galilei irrte ſich nicht, als er ſagte, daß die Erde ſich um die Sonne bewege. 11. Die Kinder, welche ſich im Walde verirrt hatten, befanden ſich in der größten Not. 12. Wenn er ſeiner mehr ſchonte, würde er ſich bald wieder ebenſo wohl befinden, wie er ſich früher befunden hat.

[1] die Küche, *kitchen.* [2] der Politiker, *politician.* [3] die Schulter, *shoulder.* [4] ſchmieren, *oil*, *lubricate.* [5] die Grube, *pit*, *ditch.* [6] der Grundſatz, *principle.* [7] ſich erholen, *recuperate.*

(*b*) 1. The lightning[1] struck (into) the tree under which we were standing, but, fortunately,[2] it hit no one. 2. This man created a name for himself, because he baked the best bread in (the) town. 3. The ships which sailed (fahren) into (the) port[3] yesterday, were loaded with wood. 4. It is always the gun[4] that is not loaded which causes (the) most misfortune. 5. If you washed (yourself) every morning with cold water, you would not take cold[5] so easily and you would soon be (*refl.*) entirely well. 6. Do you like to eat fresh(ly) baked bread? 7. No man has built (ſchaffen) for himself a more lasting (bleiben) monument than he, for none had done (create) more good for his country. 8. There, where you now stand, stood the tree that bore (tragen) the apples which we liked to eat so [much] as children. 9. If you wore lighter clothes you would feel (*refl.*) much cooler. 10. Not all people rejoice, when others are (*refl.*) well and happy. 11. Look out for[6] the man who says that he is never mistaken. 12. If I am not mistaken, we met (*refl.*) last summer (*acc.*) in Berlin. 13. We took a drive this afternoon, and we should have gone astray in the forest, if we had not met a hunter, who showed us the road.

[1] lightning, der Blitz. [2] fortunately, glücklicherweiſe. [3] port, der Hafen.

[4] gun, das Gewehr. [5] to take a cold, ſich erkälten. [6] to look out for, ſich hüten vor.

EXERCISE XXV.

(*a*) 1. Haben die Zeitungen heute etwas Neues über den Krieg gebracht? 2. Wer kann was (etwas) Dummes,[1] wer was Kluges denken, das nicht die Vorwelt[2] ſchon gedacht (hat)? 3. Ein Menſch, der während des Tages ſchläft, gleicht einem Lichte, welches am Tage brennt. 4. Gebrannte Kinder fürchten das Feuer. 5. Tu', was jeder loben müßte,[3] wenn die ganze Welt es wüßte; tu' es, daß es niemand weiß, und gedoppelt[4] iſt ſein Preis.[5] 6. Obwohl die Sonne ſein Antlitz ſehr ſtark verbrannt[6] hatte, hat ihn ſeine Mutter doch ſofort (at once) wieder erkannt,[7] als er ſein Geſicht gegen ſie wandte. 7. Wenn mancher Mann wüßte, wer mancher Mann wär', tät'[8] mancher Mann manchem Mann manchmal mehr Ehr'. 8. Wenn ich daran gedacht hätte, würde ich Ihnen das genannte Buch entweder ſelbſt gebracht oder mit der Poſt geſandt haben. 9. Was dachten Sie von mir und wofür hielten Sie mich, als wir uns zuerſt kennen lernten? 10. Wenn es in früheren Zeiten irgendwo[9] in der Stadt brannte, rannte das ganze Volk nach dem Feuer, [um] es zu löſchen; heutzutage[10] denkt kein Menſch daran außer den Feuerwehrleuten.[11] 11. Jeder denkende Menſch weiß, daß man nicht alles genau[12] wiſſen kann, was man kennt. 12. Wenn du mehr an deine Eltern dächteſt, würdeſt du nicht ſo oft in Gefahr ſein, Unrecht zu tun.

[1] dumm, adj., *foolish.* [2] die Vorwelt, *the world*, or *people*, *before us.* [3] müßte, subj. impf. instead of condit., *would have to.* [4] doppeln, *to double.* [5] der Preis, *praise*, *price.* [6] verbrennen = brennen, *tan.* [7] erkennen, *to recognize.* [8] tät' = täte, inst. of cond. [9] irgendwo, *somewhere*, *anywhere.* [10] heutzutage, *nowadays.* [11] der Feuerwehrmann, pl –leute, *fireman.* [12] genau, adv. *exactly*, *accurately*.

(*b*) 1. The firemen ran into the burning building and saved two children who were left alone in a room of the top (upper-most) floor (= story). 2. Nowadays we know more about the interior of Africa than we knew a few years ago.

3. I know, the gentleman whom you called your greatest enemy lives here, but I do not know him. 4. If your father brought me the money, or if he sent it to me soon, he would do me a great favor. 5. What were you thinking, my child, when you ran against the lady and forgot to ask her (her for) pardon? 6. It is said that he is acquainted (kennen) [with] many languages, but that he speaks none well, not even his own. 7. As soon as I recognized him I turned my face away. 8. There is a fire (is burning) somewhere in (the) town; I smell smoke and I hear the horses run[ning] through the streets. 9. I like to converse[1] with a thinking person about (*acc.*) the burning questions of the day. 10. If you did this, you would do him (*dat.*) wrong and I should not think much of you. 11. He named a day on which he would send me the money, but he never thought of it, although I have relied upon his promise. 12. It is said that Bayard Taylor, whom his country sent as ambassador to Germany, knew and spoke German as well as a German.

[1] to converse, ſich unterhalten.

EXERCISE XXVI. A.

(*a*) 1. Hier in dieſem Zimmer darf (kann) man rauchen,[1] wie ich ſehe; darf ich Sie vielleicht um Feuer bitten? 2. Vieles, was die Kinder heutzutage tun dürfen (können), haben wir als Kinder nicht gedurft. 3. Du darfſt heute nicht[2] hinaus; die Luft iſt zu kalt und du könnteſt (möchteſt) dich erkälten. 4. Er hätte für den Hund ſicherlich nicht ſo viel bezahlen dürfen, wenn er ſeinen Vater zuerſt gefragt hätte. 5. Karl hat ſeine Aufgabe nicht machen können, obwohl er immer alles kann, wenn man ihn reden hört. 6. Man kann viel, wenn man will, und noch mehr, wenn man muß. 7. Wenn dein Bruder das iſt, wofür ich ihn halte, kann er das nicht geſagt haben. 8. Wenn ich nur dürfte, wie ich möchte und könnte, dann würde ich ihm geben, was er verdient. 9. Meine Schweſter will nicht mit (along); ſie ſagt, der Himmel ſei bedeckt und es möchte vielleicht ſehr bald regnen. 10. Ich hätte ihm die Freude ſehr leicht verderben können, wenn ich gewollt (gemocht) hätte. 11. Wer möchte nicht lieber der erſte in einem Dorfe als der zweite in Rom ſein? 12. Er mochte (konnte) ſagen, was er wollte, [es] glaubte ihm niemand. 13. Früher mochte mein Onkel die junge Dame ſehr gern, aber jetzt darf ſie nicht mehr in ſein Haus kommen. 14. Es mag (kann) ſein, daß auch ſein Vetter ihn gehen hieß, denn [es] mag ihn kein Menſch. 15. Ich habe meinen Vater ſagen hören, daß er das bekannte Buch werde[3] kommen laſſen (kommen laſſen werde).

[1] rauchen, *smoke.* [2] nicht dürfen, in pres. tense usually to be transl. by: *must not.* [3] the inflected aux. verb usually precedes two infinitives.

(*b*) 1. She may be older than he, but she does not know as much as he. 2. Why don't you like him? he always liked (*perf.*) you. 3. Could you [speak] English, before you came to America? 4. You must not[1] do this; it is against the law. 5. Last year my brother could have gone to Europe with a party (society), but he did not want-to (*perf.*), and this year, when[2] he would like to go, nobody wants [to go] with him and alone he is not allowed [to go]. 6. You must stay home to-day, for if the weather remains fine, your friend Carl might visit you. 7. A child cannot have done this, for no child could have done it and no child will be able to do it. 8. Might I give you a cup [of] tea, or would you not rather (lieber) [have] coffee? 9. Have you ever heard my sister sing the German song which I taught her? 10. Although he had seen me come into the house, he made (*perf.*) me wait for (auf. *acc.*) him more than an hour, and his servant did (*perf.*) not even ask (heißen) me to sit [down]. 11. May I ask him whether I may have his pen? 12. We have never been allowed to speak English in our German lessons.

[1] "must not," in the sense of, "it is not allowed" = nicht dürfen; cf. Ex. XXVI, A. *a.*, Note 2. [2] *when*, referring to fut. or pres., or in the sense of *whenever* = wenn; ref. to past = als; interrogative = wann.

EXERCISE XXVI. B.

(*a*) 1. Man muß nicht reicher ſcheinen wollen, als man iſt. 2. Der Freund zeigt mir, was ich kann, der Feind, was ich ſoll. 3. Mein Nachbar hat ſchon ein Haus verkaufen müſſen, und wenn die Zeiten nicht beſſer werden, muß er das andere auch verkaufen. 4. Mein Lehrer hat mir ſagen laſſen, daß er mir heute keine Stunde[1] geben könne, da er ſich erkältet habe und einige Tage zu Hauſe bleiben müſſe. 5. Ich müßte lügen, wenn ich behauptete,[2] daß ich ihn das je hätte[3] ſagen hören. 6. Der [Herr] Paſtor Jäger hätte heute abend im Muſeum vor einer großen Geſellſchaft ſprechen ſollen, aber ſein Arzt hat ihn nicht gelaſſen. 7. Sollteſt du die Rechnung nicht ſchon am erſten des letzten Monats bezahlt haben? 8. Gar[4] vieles kann, und manches muß geſchehen, was man mit Worten gar nicht ſagen mag (will), noch darf. 9. Ihr ſollt nicht ſo viel Lärm[5] machen, Kinder, denn die Dame im untern Stock ſoll heute ſehr krank ſein. 10. Dein Freund ſoll alles beſſer wiſſen wollen, als andere; iſt das wirklich ſo? 11. Kein Menſch ſollte das Unmögliche[6] erzwingen[7] wollen. 12. Wenn du den Brief heute noch ſchreiben willſt, und wenn er heute noch zur Poſt ſoll, wirſt du bald beginnen müſſen. 13. Wo läßt (läſſeſt) du deine Kleider machen, Paul? Seit einigen Jahren habe ich ſie in New York machen laſſen, aber in der Zukunft will ich ſie hier machen laſſen. 14. Er will es mir ſchon vor einem Monat geſagt haben, aber ich kann mich nicht erinnern.[8] 15. Meine Schweſter hat ein deutſches Lied ſingen wollen, aber [es] hat ſie niemand begleiten können. 16. Ich habe oft meinem Freunde Henri, der ein Franzoſe iſt, ſeine deutſche Arbeit machen helfen, wofür er mich franzöſiſch ſprechen lehrte.

[1] die Stunde, *hour*, *lesson*. [2] behaupten, *contend*, *assert*. [3] see Ex. XXVI, A. *a*., Note 3. [4] gar, *very*, *quite*. [5] der Lärm, *noise*. [6] unmöglich, adj., *impossible*. [7] erzwingen, *force*. [8] ſich erinnern, *remember*.

(*b*) 1. These boys will have to work more diligently, if they want to get (come) into the class which is-to read Schiller next fall. 2. My father was just about-to take a drive; but when he saw me coming (*inf.*), he quickly had the car-

riage stopped and I had [to go] with him. 3. Do you mean to tell me that you would have been[1] compelled to pay the bill for your son, if you had not wanted-to? Yes, that is just what I meant to say. 4. My mother sent me word to come (that I should come) home, because she wanted[2] [to go] to the doctor. 5. King August of Saxony is said to have been so strong that he could break a horse-shoe[3] with his (the) hand. 6. I know, I ought to have written you this long ago,[4] and I have always intended (wanted) [to do] it, but I have never been able to find (the) time. 7. Your uncle must be very sick. I hear they have sent for his son, and my wife has seen the physician go to (into) the house three times to-day. 8. Have you never heard me say that you must not write your German exercises with pencil? I do not like it. 9. No boy ought to do anything that (was) he would not be willing (*subj. impf.*), or would not dare, to tell his mother. 10. Every man ought to be willing to do his duty, but I have very often heard men say, who claim to know (it), that (the) most people do only (that) what they have-to.

---

[1] See Ex. XXVI, A. *a.*, Note 3. [2] subj. pres. in indirect speech. [3] horse-shoe, das Hufeiſen. [4] long ago, ſchon lange.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(*a*) 1. Als Knabe bin ich ſehr oft wegen einer Sache getadelt worden, die von einem andern getan worden war. 2. Wenn es gewünſcht wird, wird Ihnen die Ware[1] ins Haus geſchickt werden, ſonſt bleibt ſie hier, bis ſie geholt[2] wird. 3. Wenn die Rechnung noch nicht bezahlt iſt, ſoll ſie ſofort bezahlt werden. 4. War die Tür ſchon geſchloſſen, als Sie nach Hauſe kamen, oder wurde ſie erſt ſpäter geſchloſſen? 5. Von andern Menſchen geachtet und geliebt zu werden, iſt für die meiſten Menſchen das größte Glück auf Erden. 6. Es wird behauptet, daß Gladſtone, obwohl man ihn Englands großen Alten nannte, von vielen ebenſo gehaßt worden ſei, wie er von andern geliebt wurde. 7. Wenn der Feind ſofort in der erſten Schlacht geſchlagen würde, würde der Krieg ſehr bald be-

endigt[3] ſein. 8. Es würde in der Welt nicht ſo viel Großes getan worden ſein, wenn der Menſch nicht oft durch die Not dazu gezwungen worden wäre. 9. Man hat mich oft getadelt, weil ich früher ſo ſchlecht ſchrieb, aber man hat [es] mich in der Jugend nicht beſſer gelehrt. 10. Die Menſchen laſſen ſich an ihren Werken beſſer erkennen als an ihren Worten. 11. Es läßt ſich nichts ſchwerer ertragen,[4] als eine Reihe[5] von guten Tagen. 12. Wenn ihm geglaubt würde, [ſo] würde ihm auch geholfen werden, aber es wird ihm nicht geglaubt. 13. Es ließ ſich natürlich[6] nicht beweiſen,[7] daß ihm etwas darüber geſagt wurde, aber man traute ihm nicht mehr.

[1] die Ware, *ware, goods*. [2] holen, *to fetch, send for*. [3] beendigen, *to finish*. [4] ertragen, *to bear*. [5] die Reihe, *series, row*. [6] natürlich, adv., *naturally, of course*. [7] beweiſen, *to prove*.

(*b*) 1. The Cathedral of Cologne is now finished; it was finished by Emperor William I. (the first) of Germany. 2. Rome was not built (*perf.*) in one day. 3. Modern languages are taught more nowadays than they were taught twenty years ago. 4. The banks of this town were closed yesterday; they close (*pass.*) on every legal[1] holiday. 5. If the Moors[2] had not been defeated (ſchlagen) by Charles Martel, [the] whole [of] Europe would perhaps have been conquered by them. 6. Much has been said by my honored and esteemed friend that must be denied by me, because it cannot (ſich laſſen) be proved. 7. After the war is finished, the soldiers will be dismissed. 8. If to the study of modern languages as much time were given as formerly was given to the ancient [languages], better results would be reached. 9. I have been told[3] that he was taken (*perf. of* halten) for a great scholar, until he was heard[3] to speak before the literary society. 10. In that book [there] are found[4] very many errors which cannot[4] be explained. 11. The German language is more easily written[4] than the English, for it is written as it is spoken. 12. He was given[5] a large sum [of] money which he returned (sent back) with the words, that he could not be bought.[4]

[1] legal, geſetzlich. [2] Moor, der Maure. [3] see Less. XXVII, 274, 1. [4] see Less. XXVII, 274, 2. [5] see Less. XXVII, 275.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. My father informed (*perf.*) me that he inspected (*perf. subj.*) a new house outside of the city in order to buy it, but whether [it is] above or below the same, he did not say (*perf.*). 2. I have heard that formerly all [the] houses both on this and the other side of the street (have) belonged to your family. 3. He has insulted me often; but on account of our old friendship and for his parents' sake, I have always pardoned him. 4. By dint of energy[1] and zeal (diligence) more is attained[2] in this world than by dint of genius[3] alone. 5. On account of (halber) the bad weather, I had to stay indoors (within the house) during the last two weeks. 6. According to the (zufolge) latest reports[4] my brother has been elected, in spite of the attacks of the newspapers, and notwithstanding the fact that he was nominated[5] against the wishes of his party.[6] 7. Conformably to the law, by virtue of which you were dismissed, he cannot hold[7] his office longer. 8. Besides him and his wife, only my brother accompanied (*perf.*) me as far as the steamer. 9. During the last night the large stable, opposite the market and not far from the church, burned down[8] (together) with all its horses and wagons. 10. In order to please me (*dat.*), the child often told me that next-to his mother he loved (*pres. subj.*) me best (am beſten).

[1] energy, die Energie′. [2] attain, erreichen. [3] genius, das Genie′. [4] report, der Bericht. [5] nominate, nominieren. [6] party, die Partei′. [7] hold an office, ein Amt bekleiden. [8] burn down, verbrennen.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. I asked him to copy this letter once more, because it did not look (ausſehen) well. 2. His family spent (passed) the whole winter in the city, and spent more money in (an) one day than he took-in in (in) a whole week. 3. My brother telegraphed me: "Come-for[1] me (*dat.*). I departed (*perf.*) yesterday by (with) the twelve o'clock train, and shall arrive to-morrow, toward evening." 4. If you wish to

come-along, we shall call for[2] you, for it is pleasanter to travel together. 5. It seems[3] to me that (als ob) you look (*subj.*) worse now than before you began to go out again. 6. At what time does the train leave, and when will it arrive (*pres.*) in Chicago? 7. We dressed more quickly than they undressed. 8. When[ever] you meet[4] a lady whom you know on the street, take-off your hat, Karl; it does not look well for a young gentleman to keep (if he keep) it on.[5] 9. A good position was offered (to) your son in New York, but he did not accept it, because he prefers [it] to stay with (bei) us. 10. Was it an out[6]-going or an in[7]-coming train that fell[8] [down] into the river?

---

[1] come-for, entgegenkommen. [2] call for, abholen. [3] seem, vorkommen. [4] meet, antreffen. [5] keep on, aufbehalten. [6] offer, anbieten. [7] out — in hinaus — herein. [8] fall down, hinein- or hinunterfallen.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. The teacher asked the pupils to rewrite the poem and then to paraphrase it, but they (have) misunderstood[1] him; for some only paraphrased it and others only rewrote it. 2. The man who (has) ferried us across is a scholar; he (has) translated a German book into (the) English. 3. I don't think (glaube) that William has repeated his lessons for to-day, for he has not yet brought back the book which he left at my house last week. 4. Is not the rain running through here? Please, hold this bucket[2] under, until I have mended[3] the roof. 5. When[ever] I am in my country-house, I rise very early; after (the) breakfast I hastily run through[4] the papers, and then I go out into the open (fresh) air, roam-about through field and forest the whole day, and in the evening I entertain my friends and neighbors. 6. In many European cities the second stories (*sing.*) of old houses project (*sing.*). 7. Every few[5] years this sickness makes its round (goes round), but almost in all cases it is easily overcome. 8. After the hunters had caught the bear, they bound him, laid him over on his back, pierced[6] his nose and pulled a ring through. 9. He is a degenerate boy; he frequently runs off, deceives his parents where he can, and evades all (every)

serious[7] work. 10. The general has disapproved [of] the action of the officer, not only because he (had) abused his power, but also because he (has) disregarded (despised) his command. 11. He considers everything too long and accomplishes, therefore, very little. 12. He reserved for himself the right to oppose (himself to) my views; I acknowledged his right, but supposed that I had (*subj.*) the same.

[1] misunderstand, mißverſtehen. [2] bucket, der Eimer. [3] mend, ausbeſſern. [4] run hastily through, durchflie′gen. [5] every few, alle paar. [6] pierce, durchſte′chen. [7] serious, ernſt.

EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Last week we had the most peculiar[1] weather: on Monday it was (*perf.*) snowing and freezing; on Wednesday it lightened, thundered and hailed, and [ever] since Thursday it has been (is) raining without interruption.[2] 2. Never eat unless[3] you are hungry, and never drink unless you are thirsty. 3. What is the matter with her (what ails her)? she does not look well. She says[4] she does not feel (*subj.*) well. 4. Was there (*perf.*) not a knock at the door? No, but there is a ring. 5. My father always felt afraid to go across a narrow bridge, because he always felt (was) dizzy. 6. It is [a matter] of course that we shall undertake it, but it is a great (ſehr) question whether we shall succeed. 7. I often tell (to) my pupil [that] there are (*subj.*)[4] no mistakes which he does not make (*subj.*), but this time there is not a single [one] in his exercise. 8. I am very sorry to hear that your father has taken (fallen) sick again, especially[5] since he has only just[6] recovered from a serious illness. 9. I never spent (*perf.*) a pleasanter summer than (in) this year; I walked (*perf.* laufen) more, rode and drove more, and rowed and sailed more than for (ſeit) years, and I should have remained longer, if the misfortune had not occurred[7]-to my friend who was with me. 10. Three weeks ago we left[8] (*perf.*, from) Berlin; as far as (bis nach) Cologne we rode on (with)

the railroad; from Cologne we drove over Bonn to Coblenz, and then we walked together to Bingen.

---

[1] peculiar, ſonderbar, eigentümlich. [2] interruption, die Unterbrechung. [3] unless, außer, takes normal order. [4] If the conjunction daß is omitted the subordinate clause takes normal order. [5] especially, beſonders. [6] only just, gerade eben. [7] occur, begegnen. [8] leave, abreiſen.

EXERCISE XXXII.

NUMBER, TIME, DATE, WEIGHT AND MEASURE.

1. One [thing] I tell you; I value (achten) more the judgment of *one* man whom I know than that of hundreds or thousands whom I don't know. 2. How many days has the month of December, and on what-day-of-the-month is Christmas? 3. At what time did you rise this morning? We rose at four, breakfasted at half past four, left the hotel at ten minutes to five and reached the top of the mountain at a quarter to ten, where we rested[1] [for] about an hour and a half. 4. I have told you that many times already; must I tell you the same [thing] a dozen times a (the) day? 5. Do you know what-day-of-the-month it is to-day? 6. Yes, it is (we have) to-day the 29th of February — a date which comes only once every (alle, *pl.*) four years. 7. I meet here all-kinds-of people, but all are of (*gen.*) one (kind-of) opinion, namely,[2] that they pay in this hotel the double or triple of (that) what they ought to pay. 8. My youngest brother is only fifteen years and seven months old, but he is already five feet and six inches[3] tall. 9. I must walk every day an hour and three quarters to and from (the) school, because the schoolhouse lies two-and-a-half miles from my house. 10. This box,[4] which has cost me forty-two marks[5] and sixty-six pfennigs,[6] contains one dozen bottles of wine, two dozen new glasses, ten pounds of sugar, two pairs of shoes, ten yards of cloth and five quires of paper. 11. This is the end of the thirty-second and last exercise. I finish it on the — day of —, 19 —, at — o'clock.[7]

---

[1] rest, ruhen. [2] namely, nämlich. [3] inch, der Zoll. [4] box, die Kiſte. [5] mark (coin), die Mark. [6] pfennig, der Pfennig. [7] Write date in words.

Heath's Modern Language Series.

INTERMEDIATE GERMAN TEXTS. (Partial List.)

Schiller's Geschichte des dreissigjährigen Kriegs. Book III. With notes by Professor C. W. Prettyman, Dickinson College. 35 cts.

Schiller's Der Geisterseher. Part I. With notes and vocabulary by Professor Joynes, South Carolina College. 30 cts.

Selections for Sight Translation. Fifty fifteen-line extracts compiled by Mme. G. F. Mondan, High School, Bridgeport, Conn. 15 cts.

Selections for Advanced Sight Translation. Compiled by Rose Chamberlin, Bryn Mawr College. 15 cts.

Benedix's Die Hochzeitsreise. With notes and vocabulary by Natalie Schiefferdecker, of Abbott Academy. 25 cts.

Aus Herz und Welt. Two stories, with notes by Dr. Wm. Bernhardt. 25 cts.

Novelletten-Bibliothek. Vol. I. Six stories, selected and edited with notes by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 60 cts.

Novelletten-Bibliothek. Vol. II. Selected and edited as above. 60 cts.

Unter dem Christbaum. Five Christmas stories by Helene Stökl, with notes by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 60 cts.

Hoffmann's Historische Erzählungen. Four important periods of German history, with notes by Professor Beresford-Webb. 25 cts.

Wildenbruch's Das edle Blut. Edited with notes and vocabulary by Professor F. G. G. Schmidt, University of Oregon. 25 cts.

Wildenbruch's Der Letzte. With notes by Professor F. G. G. Schmidt of the University of Oregon. 25 cts.

Wildenbruch's Harold. With introduction and notes by Prof. Eggert. 35 cts.

Stifter's Das Haidedorf. A little prose idyl, with notes by Professor Heller of Washington University, St. Louis. 20 cts.

Chamisso's Peter Schlemihl. With notes by Professor Primer of the University of Texas. 25 cts.

Eichendorff's Aus dem Leben eines Taugenichts. With notes by Professor Osthaus of Indiana University. 35 cts.

Heine's Die Harzreise. With notes by Professor Van Daell of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. 25 cts.

Jensen's Die braune Erica. With notes by Professor Joynes of South Carolina College. 25 cts.

Holberg's Niels Klim. Selections edited by E. H. Babbitt of Columbia College. 20 cts.

Lyrics and Ballads. Selected and edited with notes by Professor Hatfield, Northwestern University. 75 cts.

Meyer's Gustav Adolfs Page. With full notes by Professor Heller of Washington University. 25 cts.

Sudermann's Johannes. Introduction and notes by Prof. F. G. G. Schmidt of the University of Oregon. 35 cts.

Sudermann's Der Katzensteg. Abridged and edited by Prof. Wells. 40 cts.

Dahn's Sigwalt und Sigridh. With notes by Professor Schmidt of the University of Oregon. 25 cts.

Keller's Romeo und Julia auf dem Dorfe. With introduction and notes by Professor W. A. Adams of Dartmouth College. 30 cts.

Hauff's Lichtenstein. Abridged. With notes by Professor Vogel, Massachusetts Institute of Technology. 75 cts.

Par 4.17

419
420
421

Heath's Modern Language Series.

INTERMEDIATE GERMAN TEXTS. (Partial List.)

Arnold's Fritz auf Ferien. Notes and vocab. by A. W. Spanhoofd, Director of German in High Schools, Washington, D.C. 25 cts.

Heyse's Das Mädchen von Treppi. With introduction, notes, and English exercises by Professor Joynes. 30 cts.

Stille Wasser. Three tales by Krane, Hoffman and Wildenbruch, with notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 35 cts.

Seidel's Leberecht Hühnchen. With notes and vocabulary by Professor Spanhoofd, High School, Washington, D.C. 30 cts.

Auf der Sonnenseite. Humorous stories by Seidel, Sudermann and others. With notes and vocabulary by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 35 cts.

Frommel's Eingeschneit. Notes and vocabulary by Dr. Bernhardt. 30 cts.

Keller's Kleider machen Leute. With notes and vocabulary by M. B. Lambert, Brooklyn High School. 35 cts.

Liliencron's Anno 1870. Notes and vocabulary by Dr. Bernhardt.

Baumbach's Die Nonna. Notes and vocabulary by Dr. Bernhardt. 30 cts.

Riehl's Der Fluch der Schönheit. With notes by Professor Thomas, Columbia University, and vocabulary. 30 cts.

Riehl's Das Spielmannskind; Der stumme Ratsherr. Two stories with notes by A. F. Eaton, Colorado College. 25 cts.

Ebner-Eschenbach's Die Freiherren von Gemperlein. Edited by Prof. Hohlfeld, University of Wisconsin. 30 cts.

Freytag's Die Journalisten. With notes by Professor Toy of the University of North Carolina. 30 cts. With vocabulary, 40 cts.

Wilbrandt's Das Urteil des Paris. Notes by A. G. Wirt, Denver University. 30 cts.

Schiller's Das Lied von der Glocke. With notes and vocabulary by Professor Chamberlin of Denison University. 20 cts.

Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans. With introduction and notes by Prof. B. W. Wells. Illustrated. 60 cts. With vocabulary, 75 cts.

Schiller's Maria Stuart. Introduction and notes by Prof. Rhoades, University of Illinois. Illustrated. 60 cts. With vocabulary, 75 cts.

Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. With introduction and notes by Prof. Deering of Western Reserve Univ. Illus. 50 cts. With vocab., 75 cts.

Schiller's Ballads. With introduction and notes by Professor Johnson of Bowdoin College. 60 cts.

Baumbach's Der Schwiegersohn. With notes by Dr. Wilhelm Bernhardt. 30 cts. With vocabulary, 40 cts.

Onkel und Nichte. Story by Oscar Faulhaber. No notes. 20 cts.

Benedix's Plautus und Terenz; Die Sonntagsjäger. Comedies edited by Professor B. W. Wells. 25 cts.

François's Phosphorus Hollunder. With notes by Oscar Faulhaber. 20 cts.

Moser's Köpnickerstrasse 120. A comedy with introduction and notes by Professor Wells. 30 cts.

Moser's Der Bibliothekar. Introduction and notes by Prof. Wells. 30 cts.

Drei kleine Lustspiele. *Günstige Vorzeichen, Der Prozess, Einer muss heiraten.* Edited with notes by Prof. B. W. Wells. 30 cts.

Helbig's Komödie auf der Hochschule. With introduction and notes by Prof. B. W. Wells. 30 cts.